

---

# Genre – Text – Interpretation

---

Edited by

Kaarina Koski and Frog  
with Ulla Savolainen

---

Manuscript submitted to the series *Studia Fennica Folkloristica*, published by the Finnish Literature Society.

## Contents

<b>A NOTE FOR THE REVIEWER</b> .....	<b>4</b>
<b>PREFACE AND ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>AN INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>6</b>
<b>PART I:</b> .....	<b>19</b>
<b>THEORETICAL APPROACHES TO GENRE</b> .....	<b>19</b>
<b>‘GENRES, GENRES EVERYWHERE, BUT WHO KNOWS WHAT TO THINK?’</b> .....	<b>20</b>
FROG .....	20
<b>LINGUISTIC GENRE ANALYSES, INTERTEXTUALITY, AND IDEOLOGY</b> .....	<b>60</b>
VESA HEIKKINEN .....	60
<b>GENRES AS REAL KINDS AND PROJECTIONS</b> .....	<b>84</b>
TOMI KOKKONEN AND INKERI KOSKINEN .....	84
<b>PART II:</b> .....	<b>107</b>
<b>RELATIONS BETWEEN AND WITHIN GENRES</b> .....	<b>107</b>
<b>THE LEGEND GENRE AND NARRATIVE REGISTERS</b> .....	<b>108</b>
KAARINA KOSKI .....	108
<b>GENRE, PRAYERS AND THE ANGLO-SAXON CHARMS</b> .....	<b>134</b>
REBECCA M. C. FISHER .....	134
<b>NOTES ON REFLEXIVITY AND GENRE IN ‘ALTERNATIVE’ STAND-UP COMEDY ROUTINES</b> .....	<b>150</b>
ANTTI LINDFORS .....	150
<b>THE POETICS OF QUOTATION</b> .....	<b>180</b>
LOTTE TARKKA .....	180
<b>PART III:</b> .....	<b>210</b>
<b>THE POLITICS OF MEANING-MAKING</b> .....	<b>210</b>
<b>GENRE AND IDEOLOGY</b> .....	<b>211</b>
RAY CASHMAN .....	211
<b>CONCEPTUAL DILEMMA?</b> .....	<b>231</b>
PAULIINA LATVALA .....	231
<b>THE REPUTATION OF A GENRE</b> .....	<b>258</b>

GREG DALZIEL .....	258
<b>TEXTUAL POLITICS OF THE INTERPRETATIVE ACT .....</b>	<b>282</b>
VESA KYLLÖNEN.....	282
<b>PART IV: .....</b>	<b>309</b>
<b>EMIC AND ETIC DEFINITIONS.....</b>	<b>309</b>
<b>PROVERBS – A UNIVERSAL GENRE? .....</b>	<b>310</b>
PEKKA HAKAMIES .....	310
<b>THE PROVERB GENRE .....</b>	<b>331</b>
LIISA GRANBOM-HERRANEN .....	331
<b>MAJOR GENERIC FORMS OF DOGRI <i>LOK GATHAS</i> .....</b>	<b>355</b>
MRINALINI ATREY.....	355
<b>MANIFESTATIONS OF HUMOUR IN SERBIAN FOLKLORE MATERIAL .....</b>	<b>377</b>
VESNA TRIFUNOVIĆ.....	377
<b>PART V:.....</b>	<b>399</b>
<b>BETWEEN FOLKLORE AND LITERATURE.....</b>	<b>399</b>
<b>THE GENRE OF REMINISCENCE WRITINGS .....</b>	<b>400</b>
ULLA SAVOLAINEN.....	400
<b>THE CHRONOTOPE OF THE LEGEND IN ASTRID LINDGREN’S <i>SUNNANÄNG</i> .....</b>	<b>432</b>
CAMILLA ASPLUND INGEMARK .....	432
<b>GENRE AND THE PROSIMETRA OF THE OLD ICELANDIC <i>FORNALDARSÖGUR</i> .....</b>	<b>454</b>
HELEN F. LESLIE .....	454
<b>FROM TRADITIONAL TO TRANSITIONAL TEXTS.....</b>	<b>483</b>
ALEKSANDAR PAVLOVIĆ.....	483

## **A Note for the Reviewer**

Some of the articles in this collection were returned with revisions following peer-review too close to the submission of the volume for final language checking. These issues will be resolved prior to the publication of the volume.

# **Preface and Acknowledgements**

[Omitted for anonymous review.]

# An Introduction

Frog, Kaarina Koski and Ulla Savolainen

‘Genre’ is a fundamental term in the analytical vocabulary of many disciplines. Its use has varied considerably by time, location and field of study. In addition to its function as an analytical tool, the term genre is used in standard language to denote style or category of art, music, or literature (OED s.v. ‘genre’). Academic debates about genre have from time to time been heated among the researchers of texts, expressions and meanings. Different approaches have concerned linguistic, oral, literal, visual, musical, narrative, traditional and many other forms of expression and focused on their various characteristics, such as style, structure, function, purpose, context or distribution. Various opinions about how genres as forms and categories should be understood and defined and what is the purpose of the defining have resulted in several different lines of development.

## A short history of genre

As terms go, ‘genre’ has had a rather short, if adventurous life, which in English started with flare.<sup>1</sup> The term first pops up in the late 18<sup>th</sup> century, and then as an exotic foreign term – it was actually the French word *genre*, meaning ‘kind, sort, style’, and became viewed as a native English word in the mid-19<sup>th</sup> century.<sup>2</sup> Even at its most broad, it should be observed that the term ‘genre’ normally implies a technical distinction of some sort and it is regarded as a term suitable as analytical tool. Like the corresponding use of its Latin ancestor *genus*, it describes “an assemblage of objects which are related or belong together in consequence of a resemblance in natural qualities” (Lewis & Short 1969: s.v. ‘genus’). However, the term ‘genre’ is not used for just any “assemblage of objects”: it is particularly reserved for assemblages of texts that are products of human expression – if ‘text’ is approached in the broad sense of “any coherent complex of signs” (Bakhtin 1986 [1976]: 103).

---

<sup>1</sup> When approaching this concept, particular attention is given to the English term *genre* and its cognates. Outside of French, *genre* is particular to the concept addressed here. This facilitates unambiguous technical and analytical use of both term and concept. Translation of the term frequently follows the French etymology with a vernacular word connected to biological classification that may be used metaphorically or generally for ‘type, sort, kind’ (e.g. German *Gattung*, Spanish *género*, Finnish *laji*; cf. however Icelandic *tegund* [‘model’]). This difference becomes relevant when advancing to a more refined definition to which these other terms may not be as well suited owing to their broader patterns of use.

<sup>2</sup> Etymologically, the word goes back to Latin *genus*, meaning ‘birth, descent, origin; a race, stock’, but also used “[o]f an assemblage of objects (persons, animals, plants, inanimate or abstract things) which are related or belong together in consequence of a resemblance in natural qualities; a race, stock, class, sort, species, kind”.

While 'genre' essentially emerged as a fancy French word employed in the discussion of so-called high culture, the establishment of the term in academic discussions of high literature and the fine arts invited it to be borrowed into discussions of traditional cultural expression. At that stage, however, it was employed as a formal term for 'type' and many categories that were already established became labelled as 'genres'. These were often intuitive or practical groupings that had developed according to research questions and priorities of that time and earlier. In itself, this is not a problematic use of the term (even if the groupings of items themselves may be): it is simply a phenomenon of language. Problems arise when this phenomenon goes unrecognized. The outcome was that almost any category for human expression could potentially be addressed as a 'genre'.

As text-type categories, literature, music and the arts were concerned with describing sets of unique works, although these might have slightly variant texts according to different published editions or performances. Some genres such as 'anthem' or 'epic' were potentially one-of-a-kind works within a culture and categorized with typologically similar works found in other cultures according to its social perception or even governmental declaration. Folklore research reduced individual orally documented texts to versions of a single, ideal or prototypical text (a particular narrative, song, etc., equivalent to a work), which were then organized into larger categories in archives according to typological similarities. However, the criteria for categorization were constructed historically – inherited through research discourse on the one hand and shaped in relation to current research emphases and priorities on the other. Concern was for the categories and quite often distinguishing categories from one another, whether this was a question of distinguishing memoir, biography and the novel or legend, folktale and myth. However, the categories themselves were accepted as genres without critical concern for what qualified a category *as* a genre, with the outcome that categories described as 'genres' have not been determined according to consistent criteria.

Up through the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the discussion of genres seems to have precipitated out of diverse discussions of different types of products of human expression. These diverse discussions were not necessarily in dialogue with one another and only gradually merged into discussions of genre *per se*. The formalization of such categories through discussion not infrequently led to a general, prototypical description of the grouped items. In the 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> century, it was easy to lose sight of the intuitive and practical motivations that produced many such groupings of texts and take for granted that these represented real categories out in

the world. It was thus only logical that extracting an abstract description of the items in the group could be reciprocally applied as a definition of the particular genre – without recognizing even the possibility that categories developed for analysis might not correspond to natural kinds in the objective world (cf. Kokkonen & Koskinen, this volume). This presents significant methodological issues that only came to light later, requiring radical reassessments of the term and concept.

The discussion of ‘genre’ seems to have come into bloom in the second half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century – it became a hot topic. This coincided with a number of developments that are difficult to disentangle from one another. Categories identified as genres had tended to be regarded as ideal and even universal across the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. Advances in epistemological reflections and analytical knowledge about conceptualization turned the focus into the categorization process itself. Post-Modernism overthrew the hegemonic modelling on which the earlier ideas were based. Presumptions of an objective, uniform view were replaced by the acknowledgement of diverse, intersecting perspectives, subjective interpretations and a multiplicity of voices – which enabled a shift in attention to precisely that multivocality and previously marginalized voices and views as uncharted territory for research. This process had numerous ramifications for genre as a term and concept and its use as a tool in research, penetrating into different disciplines at different rates and in different ways. Beginning in the late 1960s and especially in the 1970s, the Post-Structuralist movement challenged ideal models and categories as templates through which culture was projected, and turning attention to meaning-generation. Particularly prominent in this was the emergence of discourse on so-called ‘intertextuality’, as the term was initially coined by Julia Kristeva (1980 [1969]), which marked the initial introduction of M. M. Bakhtin’s (cf. Bakhtin 1981) ‘dialogism’ into the West, and the concept was nurtured especially in a circle of French literary scholars (see Allen 2000; cf. also Savolainen, this volume). This changed the way people looked at how images and motifs were meaningful in generic contexts by turning attention to their patterns of use. Perhaps more significantly, it turned attention to ‘genres’ as metasemiotic entities (cf. Agha 2007). In other words, genres as such were viewed as recognizable by authors and audiences, and when the use of the language, structures and expressive devices were recognized as associated with a genre, this was perceived as meaningful and affected how the text was interpreted – even when one set of generic markers were found embedded in another genre. In linguistic anthropology, this has been described as a principle that “No element can enter into the work purely on the basis of its form, without importing its value coefficients with it” (Hanks



1987: 671), and this fed into the interest and concern that “how something is said is part of what is said” (Hymes 1986: 59).

Although it is often appealing to attribute such developments to particular individuals, this may perhaps be better regarded as offering expression to changing interests and attention developing in many areas of research. In folklore research, there was a gradual shift in attention to perspectives of individuals in concrete situations. This turned attention from continuity of ‘texts’ in transmission to confer value on variation and folklore as a living phenomenon in communities and social networks, effectively redefining the discipline (Frog 2013). The shift of attention to living communities led to the revaluation of earlier overly-ideal models of genre as well as to heated debate regarding genres as analytical tools constructed by researchers as opposed to vernacular categories in living communities (cf. Ben Amos 1976; Honko 1989; cf. also Hakamies, this volume; Kokkonen & Koskinen, this volume). These developments were connected to the movement toward performance-oriented approaches to genre (e.g. Bauman 1975). These changes in perspectives evolved into increasingly sophisticated views of genres as generative frameworks for the production and reception of texts. In tandem with these processes, whole new fields of study were emerging, and the term and concept of ‘genre’ was adopted into their disciplinary discourses. For example, as discourse analysis emerged as an area of inquiry, Robert E. Longacre (1968: 1–50) presented ‘genre’ as a term to refer to “a class of discourse types when that class is defined by certain common characteristics” defined according to function in discourse such as “*narrative, procedural, expository, and hortatory*” (Longacre 1968: 1, original emphasis) – types describing variations on an expressive strategy with certain conditions that were so broad that they might be seen as supergenres from the perspective of another discipline.

Also significant in linguistics, was the formalization of ‘register’ as a term for a variation of language according to communicative context (see Sampson 1997: 699–703; Agha 2014; Shore 2014). Register, adopted or adapted as a tool in several articles in this collect (see the contributions of Frog, Tarkka and Koski) was then placed in a hierarchical relation to genre, which produced further diversity and also variation in use of the term (see e.g. Biber 1995: 7–10), leading to definitions such as a “system of staged goal-oriented social processes” (Martin 1997: 13). These approaches were complemented by the introduction of Bakhtinian ‘speech genres’ (Vološinov 1930 [1929]; Bakhtin 1986 [1955–1956]) which were readily reinterpreted through current theories and methodologies when they reached Western discourse and were

taken up along-side dialogism as viable tools in modern research (cf. Lindfors and Savolainen, this volume). Amid all of the variation, the approaches and disciplines involved, genre was elevated to a central position. This diversity and long history of debate is the background against which the present collection has emerged.

### **An invitation to a multivocal discussion**

The present volume brings together a number of perspectives, approaches and applications of genre in different disciplines. Appreciating the wide range of expressive forms and the rich variety of scholarly perspectives on genre, we do not seek a consensus about the meaning and use of the term. Instead, we hope that interaction between disciplines, scholarly traditions and approaches can be fertile and lead to deeper and more all-encompassing insights in the variation of human communication. The articles presented here are no more homogeneous than the discussion of genre itself. Many of them wrestle with controversial topics, present alternative approaches and carry discussion in new directions. Genres are, in this volume, approached as analytical tools and vernacular categories, as textual items and as discursive strategies. The reader is invited to ponder, who is entitled to define the characteristics and boundaries of a genre? How are genres as local communicative devices utilized, combined and shaped for the needs of self-expression, argumentation and meaning-making?

The contributions have been thematically organized in five sections, in which they offer multiple, intersecting perspectives resulting in a dynamic image of the particular topic and the discussions surrounding it. At the same time, particular genres, theoretical approaches, interpretive frameworks and broad phenomena of culture are recurrent across articles in different sections. These linkages between contributions give additional cohesion to the many voices and views of the discussions offered here, interweaving the sections into a larger whole.

The opening section of the volume, *Theoretical Approaches to Genre*, offers discussions and reviews of different approaches to genre. The collection opens with a highly theoretical discussion, in “‘Genres, Genres Everywhere, but Who Knows What to Think?’: Toward a Semiotic Model”. In this article, Frog addresses the problematics of the diversity of approaches to genre especially prominent in folklore studies and sets out an innovative new approach to genre according to a four-aspect model. The four-aspect model builds on earlier approaches to genres and genre systems by taking into consideration formal aspects, conventions of content represented by a genre or what it enacts, conventions of situated use, and also its roles or functions within society and situation in the broader semiotic system. Attention then shifts from

folklore and cultural practice to language in “Linguistic Genre Analysis, Intertextuality, and Ideology”. Here, Vesa Heikkinen offers a metatheoretical approach and evaluates previous theory building in Fennistic genre studies. Heikkinen presents genre as a gap-bridging concept between disciplines, since it widens the scope of linguistics towards culture and society. He proposes new interdisciplinary research perspectives especially in connection to the proximate concepts of intertextuality and ideology, and highlights the benefits of genre awareness in language use and society. A central problem in both discussions of genres and their uses in research has been the distinction of analytical constructs used as research tools by a researcher and categories with social reality in the world. The section closes with “Genres as Real Kinds and Projections: Homeostatic Property Clusters in Folklore and Art”, a theoretical discussion of precisely this problem viewed from the perspective of the philosophy of science. In this article, Tomi Kokkonen and Inkeri Koskinen discuss the potential for both of these types of genre categories to be applied as tools in research for producing different kinds of information. They offer a new way of thinking about the sets and systems of elements and features characterizing a genre in terms of a ‘homeostatic property cluster’. At the same time, the authors highlight the limitations of the different categories and the hazards of confusing them when making inferences about particular material. Together, these three articles offer a number of valuable perspectives for viewing genre and the problematic issues surrounding the term and concept in research. This section provides a background against which subsequent discussions can be considered.

The second section of the collection turns to *Relations between and within Genres*, which considers linkages between closely related genres and distinctions between them as well as interrelationships across different genres. Kaarina Koski offers a strong opening to the section in “Legend Genre and Narrative Registers”, in which she reassesses the differentiation of legends, fabulates and memorates according to an innovative new approach. The model for approaching variation developed in the register theory of systemic-functional linguistics according to *field*, *tenor* and *mode* is adapted to rendering narratives associated with the legend tradition. Koski shows how products of expression that have been classed as separate genres or subgenres can be accounted for as situated variation within the genre of legends, and the model that it offers can be easily adapted to other genres of expression. The theme of belief in traditional practice is then carried forward by Rebecca Fisher, in “Genre, Prayers and the Anglo-Saxon Charms”. This article addresses the relationship between genres and their construction in the history of scholarship from the perspective of philology. It wrestles with

the problems of differences between etic genre categories applied by researchers across much of the 20<sup>th</sup> century and the emic categories of the vernacular culture in which genres belonged to living practice. Fisher highlights the role of ideologies and preconceptions of earlier researchers in producing and shaping artificial categories that still impact how we view historical traditions today. These academic constructs are placed in contrast to the vernacular categories that can be discerned behind the corpus, in which categories presumed as disparate in earlier research could be applied together as complementary.

The potential for the juxtaposition and recombination of genres are then foregrounded by Antti Lindfors in “Notes on Reflexivity and Genre in ‘Alternative’ Stand-Up Comedy Routines”. This contribution highlights the multivocality of genres and the potential to construct meanings in performance and communication. In a synthesis of theoretical models, Lindfors presents a genre founded on engagements with genres as recognizable strategies of expression that can be wilfully inhabited for the production of contextual meanings. Particular attention is given to the processual aspect of this genre not only in development through a progression of thematic unity but also through strategies of semantic and contrastive parallelism that create cohesion in otherwise unrelated embedded texts. The voice carrying the rhetoric of text is then picked up by Lotte Tarkka in the illuminating discussion of “The Poetics of Quotation: Proverbial Speech, Entextualization and the Emergence of Oral Poems”. This article brings the section full circle by returning to the theme of distinguishing genres from variation on the model of registers. Here, the distinction is between the genre of proverbs proper and the flexible register of proverbial speech as well as from poetic aphorisms. Tarkka looks especially at the interplay between proverbs and genres of Kalevala-meter oral poetry, in which metrical proverbs can be employed and the ability of lines of epic to function as proverbs and the practice of performing meaningful series of proverbs and aphorisms as oral poems. This group of four articles examine the thresholds of genres, relations between them and variation of the resources identified with genres in different contexts. The different perspectives that they offer on particular genres and corpora complement one another in a dialogic manner that produces a rich overall picture in this section.

A major emphasis in genre research today is regarding them as socially conventional frameworks for regarding the production and reception of texts. Thus the collection advances from looking at textual relationships of genres to one another to various agencies in meaning-making processes. Normally it is people – the communities or the researchers – who define the

genre. However, genres, as well engage in the defining and meaning-making processes inside communities. The third section, *The Politics of Meaning-Making*, starts with Ray Cashman's article "Genre and Ideology in Northern Ireland", in which he shows how two different genres shape the political atmosphere and the relations between different sects to opposing directions. Cashman applies Bakhtin's idea of monologism and dialogism. Annual commemorative parades are performed monologically by only-Catholic and only-Protestant organizations separately, while local character anecdotes function dialogically and create unity in the community. Cashman offers an elegant conceptualization of the capacity of local genres not only to express but also to instill coexisting ideological tendencies in the community and to manage the relationships between the two groups. The meanings and distinctions are made by people who engage in the parades and narrating, but the genres provide the traditional means to strengthen and mitigate the social distinctions.

From the uses and meanings of genres in social contexts we proceed to the meaning-making in the collecting and archiving processes. The hermeneutics of folklore collection has been an oft-considered topic. Attention has predominantly fallen to the interview situation's creation of an exceptional discursive space in which folklore can be realized through interaction. But collection can even produce new arenas for discourse in which the applicability of established genre categories become problematic. The question is raised whether collection may itself produce new genres. In "Conceptual Dilemma? – Oral History Texts in the Context of Collection Campaigns in Finland", Pauliina Latvala turns attention to the corpora of written collection campaigns organized in Finland and tests the question of whether these documents, written by informants, should be regarded as belonging to the genre of oral history. This article resonates with the discussions of the preceding section by considering the combination of multiple genres that these collection campaigns have produced and situates these artefacts of expression – the physical documents in the archives – as narrative testimonies of history. It highlights the frames in which researchers perceive the texts in valuing and interpreting them as resources in research.

Greg Dalziel follows this discussion by analysing the motives and methods of scholarly and authoritative categorization. In his contribution "The Reputation of Genre: Understanding the Changing Meaning of Rumor" Dalziel evaluates the attempts in various disciplines to find a satisfactory definition to rumor. Rumor is a genre which itself carries a stigma and labels the truth-value of the text it is attached to. Dalziel suggests that instead of trying to find a stable

definition for such a genre, we should ask by whom and for which purpose an item is categorized as a rumor. Unverified information is not always false, and often the disapproval of spreading it has political grounds. Rumor is a category which is often given to a verbal utterance only afterwards. Similarly, a rumor can cease being a rumor when the information is verified.

To conclude this section, Vesa Kyllönen studies a meaning-making process which engages both the novelist and the reader. In his article “Textual Politics of the Interpretative Act: Generic Reading and the Metaphysical Detective Story”, Kyllönen turns attention to the role of genre and interpretive frameworks in the reader’s interaction with literary texts. Kyllönen points out that reading involves political participation because by reading one shows interest not only toward the meanings connecting to the text that are shared among the community, but also toward changing, contesting or supporting those meanings. He investigates a genre called the metaphysical detective story, which has been defined as liminal and transgressive group of texts connected to the late modernist narratives applying conventions of the detective story. This genre includes works by such authors as Umberto Eco, Thomas Pynchon, Paul Auster and Alain Robbe-Grillet. Together, these kinds of texts formulate a detective genre with new mixtures of registers and styles. Kyllönen argues that a special feature of the metaphysical detective story is that it mimics the reading act itself and therefore reminds its audience that the act of interpretation not only affects and changes the form of the text but also acts on the reader as well. According to this approach, the transformation is determined in the process of reading on the basis of shared configurations of meanings in these texts as well as of formal qualities of the genre that guide and restrict the reader.

The role of genre as an interpretive framework in both grouping texts and interpreting them also highlights the potential for varying those frameworks according to analytical categories constructed by researcher or the vernacular categories of living practices. The fourth section, *Emic and Etic Definitions*, resonates with several articles in preceding sections as attention is turned directly to these types of perspectives. Pekka Hakamies launches discussion with an analytical review of the debate surrounding a particular genre in “Proverbs: A Universal Genre?”, carrying it forward to develop a synthetic perspective on the issue. This discussion provides an important background for other contributions to this section because the particular can be seen as representative of the controversies in folklore studies surrounding the distinction between etic and emic categories in the latter half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. These debates contested

earlier models of genres as ideal and universal categories and produced the perceptions of genre and directions of genre research today. Hakamies connects with that history of discussion, enabling a moderated framework for considering the genre of proverbs in particular, while showing that the perspectives of the present are unavoidably developed through that past. Liisa Granbom-Herranen carries forward the discussion of proverbs by turning attention to the category as it is manifested in culture today. In “The Genre of Proverb: A Relic or Very Much Alive?”, perspectives are offered on the resituation of the proverb in the cultural environments of the present. This article reviews a range of uses of the proverb in Finnish and Estonian cultures with attention to how this category of expression is perceived by people today and how, as a resource for expression, it has adapted to, for example, electronic media and the social networks of today.

In “Major Generic forms of Dogri *lok gathas*”, Mrinalini Atrey shifts focus to living traditions in India, reviewing the diverse types of *lok gathas*, a vernacular term broadly designating narrative poetry which has been taken up by research. Artye’s contribution reviews the discussion of these genres in India and sets out a new perspective on them, and placing that model and the traditions considered in dialogue with international discussions on genre. This discussion of this vital and diverse living tradition highlights the significance and potential of research on traditions in India to offer insights into the functioning of dynamic systems of genres such as these in social practices. In “Manifestations of Humor in Serbian Folklore Material: An Example of *šala*” Vesna Trifunovic draws the section to a close by offering a survey of the conditions for defining this spontaneous and transient form of humor. She argues that, based on its form and usage in a contemporary Serbian context, *šala* refers to utterances and acts and therefore should not to be confused with humorous narratives. The meaning of *šala* is wider than for example *joke* in English language as it also encompasses other notions such as *pranks*. Trifunovic reveals that this everyday and seemingly simple form of humor has a complex nature and that it serves special functions in communication such as the confirmation of shared identity among group members as well as testing social norms. It is argued that the particular origin and ephemeral nature of the *šala* have not prevented it from remaining in the community’s memory as a durable, shared phenomenon. The four papers in this section present quite different perspectives on a broad range of practices of cultural expression, yet together they foreground the multidimensionality of genres in cultural practices as well as the diversity of scholarly perspectives on genre.

The volume is brought to a close with a final section *Between Folklore and Literature*, centering on a topic that has already been anticipated in several articles in the preceding sections. Ulla Savolainen provides a start to discussion, linking to earlier topics and themes on a well-grounded theoretical background in “The Genre of Reminiscence Writings: Applying the Bakhtin Circle’s Theories of Genre”. Savolainen examines two different kinds of texts about childhood memories of Karelian child evacuees: archived autobiographical writings and the Finnish novelist Eeva Kilpi’s published memoirs and fiction. The Bakhtinian approach to genre here aids in understanding the overlaps and links between genres as an important dimension of meaning-creation. In the article, the emphasis is not on seeking to set reminiscence writings apart as a category distinct from other categories but on creating an analysis of the characteristics that connect it with other genres. One aspect that prevails throughout this analysis is the comparison and relation between the collected reminiscence writings and other historically oriented or retrospective forms of narration, such as literary memoir, oral history accounts, and autobiographies. In “The Chronotope of the Legend in Astrid Lindgren’s *Sunnanäng*”, Camilla Asplund Ingemark continues with uses of Bakhtinian theory, applying the concept of ‘chronotope’. Bakhtin defined the chronotope as “the intrinsic connectedness of temporal and spatial relationships that are artistically expressed in literature” (Bakhtin 1981: 84). Asplund Ingemark employs this as a tool to address the adaptation of traditional legends as resources in the production of literature, through the case of two short stories by Astrid Lindgren from the collection *Sunnanäng* [‘South Meadows’]. The author argues that the chronotope of the legend provides these stories their special atmosphere and that the major influence that the legends have had on these stories had not previously been recognized because the topic had not been analysed in terms of chronotopes.

Helen F. Leslie shifts focus from uses of legends and oral traditions in contemporary literature to the formation of early vernacular genres of literature on the basis of such oral traditions during the medieval period. In “Eddic Poetry and the Genre System behind the *fornaldarsögur*”, attention is given to the vernacular prose saga literature of medieval Iceland and a category of these sagas concerned with the mytho-heroic past of Scandinavia. Leslie places focus on the role of poetry integrated into these sagas. The article considers that the evolution of this subgenre from a background of oral epic discourse produced conventions of integrated verse which, once established, conditioned the production of new written sagas. This is placed in a broader systemic model of interaction between subgenres, with particular consideration of translations of continental romance literature, which interacted with the



vernacular mytho-heroic sagas both in the emergence of their written form and the later production of generic hybrids. Questions of interaction between orality and literacy are carried forward by Alexandar Pavlovic, who turns from the adaptation of oral epic discourse to written genres to focus more directly on oral epic forms. His article “From Traditional to Transitional Texts: South Slavic Oral Tradition and its Textualization” reviews this problem against the background of research on Oral-Formulaic Theory, looking at the different forms in which interactions between orality and literacy may be realized. Pavlovic opens these questions in order to query whether ‘transitional texts’ realized at these interfaces should be regarded as a distinct generic category. The diversity of articles brought together in this final section offer a multifaceted look at the ways in which oral and written discourses interact, enabling the section as a whole to offer a rich picture of this important topic.

The present collection lays bare the diversity of approaches to genre and discussions surrounding it that are current today. Genre is fundamentally a theoretically-based research tool, and this is precisely the site of tensions and controversies surrounding the identities and uses of ‘genre’ within different methodological frameworks. Theory is thus fundamental to approaching genre but also often presents the most challenging area to penetrate. The opening section, *Theoretical Approaches to Genre*, will therefore present contributions which may be in some respects the most demanding for a reader precisely because they are oriented to such a broad frame and background for considering the term and concept. However, these contributions also establish a number of themes and concepts that will be opened and discussed in later sections from different angles and in relation to different materials. Contributions to the second section, *Relations between and within Genres*, is concerned with precisely the issues of assessing and testing the thresholds of genre and the relevance of typologies of categorization. The third section, *The Politics of Meaning-Making*, is anticipated by discussions in the preceding sections. It carries forward questions of the distinction of typologies of categorization while shifting emphasis to the role and functions of genres in relation to interpretation, both in practice and in research. This builds toward the fourth section, *Emic and Etic Definitions*, which penetrates into the issues and functioning of categories identified or constructed as genres. The final section, *Between Folklore and Literature*, turns to the dynamics of interfaces between oral and written culture where genres can be most challenging to approach and analyze, as the culmination of an issue that intersects with at least one paper in every preceding section. Although the sections present a progression of thematic centers, each of those themes is also found recurrently in every section, situating both

individual contributions and whole sections in dialogue with one another, and it is through that dialogue of many voices that *Genre – Text – Interpretation* forms a volume as a whole.

## Literature

- Agha, Asif 2014 (forthcoming). Register, Language and Semiotics. In *Registers of Communication*. Ed. Asif Agha & Frog. Studia Fennica Linguistica. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society.
- Bakhtin, M. M. 1981. *The Dialogic Imagination. Four Essays by M. M. Bakhtin*. Ed. Michael Ed. Michael Holquist. Trans. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Bakhtin, M. M. 1986 [1952–1953]. The Problem of Speech Genres. In Bakhtin 1986: 60–102.
- Bakhtin, M. M. 1986 [1976]. The Problem of the Text in Linguistics, Philology, and the Human Sciences. An Experiment in Philosophical Analysis. In Bakhtin 1986: 103–131.
- Bakhtin, M. M. 1986. *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Ed. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Trans. Vern W. McGee. Austin.
- Bauman, Richard. 1975. Verbal Art as Performance. *American Anthropologist* 77 (2): 290–311.
- Ben-Amos, Dan. 1976. Analytical Categories and Ethnic Genres. In Ben-Amos, Dan (ed.). *Folklore Genres*. Ed. Dan Ben-Amos. Austin: University of Texas Press. Pp. 215–242.
- Biber, Douglas. 1995. *Dimensions of Register Variation. A Cross-Linguistic Comparison*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Frog 2013. Revisiting the Historical-Geographic Method. *RMN Newsletter* 7: 18–34.
- Hanks, William F. 1987. Discourse Genres in a Theory of Practice. *American Ethnologist* 14(4): 668–692.
- Honko, Lauri 1989. Folkloristic Theories of Genre. *Studia Fennica* 33: 13–28.
- Kristeva, Julia. 1980 [1969]. Word, Dialogue, and Novel. In *Desire in Language. A Semiotic Approach to Literature and Art*. Ed. Leon S. Roudiez. Trans. Thomas Gora, Alice Jardine & Leon S. Roudiez. Oxford: Blackwell. Pp. 64–91.
- Lewis, Charlton T., & Charles Short. 1969. *A Latin Dictionary*. Oxford: Clarendon.
- Longacre, Robert E. 1968. *Philippine Languages. Discourse, Paragraph and Sentence*. Publications in Linguistics and Related Fields 21. Santa Ana: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Martin, J. R. 1997. Analyzing Genre. Functional Parameters. In *Genre and Institutions. Social Processes in the Workplace and School*. Ed. Frances Christie & J. R. Martin. London: Cassell. Pp. 3–39.
- Nunan, David 2008. Exploring Genre and Register in Contemporary English. Looking at Two Concepts, How They Differ, and How They Can Be Used for the Analysis of Texts. *English Today* 94 (24/2): 56–61.
- OED = Oxford English Dictionary I–XX*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1989.
- Sampson, John. 1997. ‘Genre’, ‘Style’ and ‘Register’. Sources of Confusion? In *Revue belge de philologie et l’histoire* 75(3): 699–708.
- Shore, Susanna 2014 (forthcoming). Register in Systemic-Functional Linguistics. In *Registers of Communication*. Ed. Asif Agha & Frog. Studia Fennica Linguistica. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society.
- Vološinov, V. N. 1930 [1929]. *Марксизм и философия языка*. Ленинград: Прибой.

# **PART I:**

## **Theoretical Approaches to Genre**

# ‘Genres, Genres Everywhere, but Who Knows What to Think?’

## Toward a Semiotic Model

### Frog

The formation and distinction of categories and typologies – the ability to generalize and abstract – is a cognitive phenomenon that is essential to human thought and signification systems through which human thought has the capacity to operate (see e.g. Lakoff 1986; Sebeok 1994; Goldberg 2006). ‘Genre’ has become a term for approaching categories of cultural expression reflected or realized in ‘texts’ when these are addressed in formal and analytical discourses. The discussions and debates on genre in the West have been ongoing for close to two and a half millennia. Some of the major written works on these subjects have been in circulation since the fourth century B.C. For example, complaints about ‘transgressions’ of genre are iterated and discussed by Plato through dialogue (see e.g. Nagy 1990: 108–109) while Aristotle offers a more clear-cut analysis with discrete typological distinctions in his *Rhetoric* (Cooper 1932). This does not mean that ‘genre’ or its cognates was always used by these authors, or distinguished categories or types in the same ways as is done today.<sup>1</sup> The term and concept of genre is presently encountered across a wide range of disciplines and used in a variety of ways which are not necessarily consistent or compatible.

The present paper will open some of these questions and issues, approaching the problem from the perspective of folklore studies where the term and concept of genre have been explored, tested and developed most rigorously across the past half century. It will begin by considering various approaches to genre in more recent scholarship and the variation in use of the term and concept across different fields. Looking at variation in the term will highlight the reality that genre is a construct of research and academic discourse shaped by research interests and research priorities, irrespective of whether genres are handled as *etic* types or categories imported by researchers for the description and analysis of material, or genres are *emic* types or categories observed as emergent implicit vernacular categories or explicitly designated and described by their users. In either case, ‘genre’ is always a term employed as a practical tool

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. for example the use of *genos* as a term in Classical Greek musical analysis (Nagy 1990: 99–101).

by the researcher, and the researcher determines the broad typology to which it will be applied, both at what level of expression and also at what level of sensitivity to variation generic categories will be distinguished. The paper will then address the term and concept of genre in folklore research and variation encountered in that field, with some consideration of historical reasons for some of this variation. This will be situated in relation to the broader overview of genre in order to sort the wheat from the chaff, so to speak. It will provide some foundations for distinguishing categories describable as ‘genres’ from categories and typologies which are not ‘genres’ in a more refined sense. It will also provide approaches to some riddles of generic categories and their use, such as whether a summary of an epic is still an ‘epic’ or whether something is a ‘joke’ because it successfully makes people laugh. The title of this paper presents such a riddle of genre: ‘Genres, Genres Everywhere, but Who Knows What to Think?’ presents a structural, rhythmic and acoustic play on the famous line from Samuel Coleridge’s *The Rime of the Ancyent Marinare* (1898 [1789]), “Water, water everywhere, nor any drop to drink!” This represents a common play on a famous line of poetry or literature, among which some have maintained particularly vital status, such as “To be, or not to be, that is the question” (*Hamlet* III.i), which is interesting because most people know this expression better from its widespread referential uses – ranging from high literature and *The Simpsons* to jokes at parties and in bars (e.g. ‘to drink, or not to drink’). This sort of intertextual playing with expressions seems to qualify as some a sort of folklore, yet it is a riddle of genre whether making a play on a famous line of poetry constitutes a ‘genre’ of folklore.

An approach to genre through semiotics will be outlined according to a four-aspect model that contextualizes an individual genre in a genre system and more broadly within social and semiotic systems. Rather than a typology of texts, genre is approached as a system of social resources that can be flexibly applied in text production. Consequently, products of application are not the production of a genre as an ideal text-type, but rather produced in relation to a genre as a semiotic resource. This provides a framework for distinguishing the relationship of generic products to generic categories. Although socially acceptable ranges of flexibility in the employment of the social resources as a system varies from genre to genre and the number of variables impacting variation in generic production are potentially infinite, several basic determinants on variation will be briefly mentioned for discussion. This model is developed in relation to a usage-based approach to folklore or cultural expression. Discussion will therefore include an address of the horizons of descriptive models of a genre and their relevance to different types of research and discussion. A semiotic approach to genre has the potential

of drawing the diverse definitions of different disciplines into harmony. It can also help refine and delimit the concept in folklore studies, where genre exhibits almost chaotic diversity, because not every vernacular category is a genre.

### **The Term ‘Genre’**

‘Genre’ has become a term particularly associated with formalized distinctions between text-type categories in analytical discourses. Use of the term normally implies that it designates a category appropriate as an analytical tool. However, use of ‘genre’ has varied considerably by time, location and discipline: in spite of the term’s function as an analytical tool, its use frequently appears more practical than consistent. The term was introduced in this role when a number of categories were already established as tools for research in the different disciplines where it came into use. At that stage, many such categories were intuitive or practical groupings. These became labelled as ‘genres’ as a formalized term for a ‘type’ applied to products of expression. In itself, this is not a problematic use of the term (even if the groupings of items themselves may be): it is simply a phenomenon of language. However, the value of ‘genre’ as an analytical term is problematized when ‘genres’ are not defined according to consistent criteria because the categories described as ‘genres’ are incommensurate. In other words, comparing different ‘genres’ is then not simply like comparing ‘apples’, ‘oranges’ and ‘peaches’ but is instead like comparing ‘apples’, ‘purple’ and ‘think’.

Of course, the issue of commensurability is an issue of categorization generally and not dependent on using the term ‘genre’ *per se*, and many fundamental categories took shape as tools in different disciplines before commensurability was seriously brought into question. For example, folklore research had first reduced individual orally documented texts as versions of a single, ideal text of a narrative, song, etc. (cf. Dundes 1962; Honko 1989: 14). These text-types were then organized into larger categories in archives according to typological similarities that were most often labelled by familiar vernacular terms (cf. Ben Amos 1976c: xiii). The aim was the practical ordering of vast quantities of material so that a researcher could find commensurate material for the (comparative) investigation of a particular ideal text or group of texts. However, organization was according to typological similarity *or* historical relationship, compromising the coherence of materials represented in any single category: material from potentially any other genre or resource could be included owing to its relevance to the dominating historical-comparative research priorities of the time (cf. Frog 2013: 19–23), without distinguishing their relationship to the organizational category as such. Precisely these

(fuzzy) typologies, later equated with ‘genres’, provided a fundamental organizational principle for archiving and publication, which reciprocally constructed problematic images of genres as ideal or universal types (cf. Ben Amos 1976c). As the problematic nature of early images of folklore genres was foregrounded, attention gradually turned to contextual variation, meaning-generation and performance. By placing the magnitude and diversity of folklore material increasingly in dialogue with social practices, folklore research richly elaborated genre theory, especially across the past half-century (cf. Valk 2012: 41). Nevertheless, the vocabulary and categories rooted in the 19<sup>th</sup> century remain fundamental to the discipline. As Lauri Honko observes:

Genres are named at least on the following criteria: 1. content (e.g. animal tale, saint’s legend), 2. form (chain tale, wellerism), 3. style (yoik, priamel), 4. structure (unfinished tale, repetitive song), 5. context (cult myth, dance song), 6. function (warning legend, charm), 7. frequency (popular saying, idiosyncratic belief), 8. distribution (migratory legend, local legend), 9. origin (exemplum, broadside). Sometimes two or more criteria may be applied simultaneously in defining a genre; examples of this are the lament (form + function) and the riddle song (content + structure). (Honko 1989: 17.)

Such diversity was complicated where different disciplines handled the same materials with different text-type distinctions that were oriented to other research priorities. This produced, for example, a parallel concept of genre in anthropological research (cf. Briggs & Bauman 1992). The discussion of ‘genres’ seems to have exploded in the wake of Post-Modernism. In cultural studies and folkloristics, this emerged as a shift in focus from continuities and text-products to contextual variation and expressive performance (for a brief overview, see Honko 2000b). Ideal ‘etic’ genres were problematized as “relative and ambiguous, dependent on culturally-accepted canons of differentiation rather than universal criteria” (Finnegan 1977: 15). Such genres were challenged or even completely rejected.<sup>2</sup> Attention shifted to emergent ‘emic’ categories that had previously remained largely ‘invisible’ to scholarship (cf. Lotman 1990: 58; Survo 2012), and how emic categories “relate to other forms in the same network of communication” (Ben-Amos 1976: 231). Rather than resolving disparities in uses of ‘genre’, these were doubled and tripled as etic and emic genres were contrasted, used in parallel, and not always clearly distinguished. On the other hand, ‘genre’ was taken up as an analytical term in emerging fields that connected with the changing interests in folklore studies, such as discourse analysis and linguistics (see e.g. Longacre 1968: 1–50; Sampson 1997: 704; Labov

---

<sup>2</sup> This position was advocated especially by Dan Ben Amos (e.g. 1976; cf. Hakamies, this volume).

1972: 359–370; 2002: 10–11; Nunan 2008). In addition, Post-Structuralism provided conditions for the enthusiastic reception of M. M. Bakhtin’s ‘dialogism’. Although ‘dialogism’ was rooted in an ideology of ideal genres,<sup>3</sup> it offered a new approach to meaning-generation through the contextual juxtaposition of typologies (or genres) of language (cf. Briggs & Bauman 1992: esp. 146–149).<sup>4</sup> Along with Bakhtin came V. N. Vološinov’s *rečevyx žanry* [‘speech genres’],<sup>5</sup> an approach to ‘utterances’ as physically, socially and temporally contextualized in discourse,<sup>6</sup> and which eventually penetrated into ethnopoetics, linguistic anthropology and folklore studies (through Bakhtin 1986 [1952–1953] as in e.g. Hanks 1987: 670; Bauman 1999). This diversity may seem to border on chaos, yet the developments across the past several decades may also sign-post solutions. The concentration here is on folklore, but the principles under consideration are wide-ranging, extending to literature, art and other areas of culture.

### **Toward a Definition**

Formalized use of the term ‘genre’ in research and analysis is a construction of individual researchers and disciplinary discourses in dialogue with research materials, research questions, and inherited patterns of use of the term. The diversity in the usages of this term has been enabled by its widespread use for individual categories in isolation from one another. This has produced the situation noted above: a researcher can (hypothetically) identify any grouping of research materials as materials of a certain type, label that type a ‘genre’, and then reciprocally construct a definition of the particular genre on the basis of shared qualities of the materials. The circularity of category construction may be tempered by a dialectic development of the definition in relation to the grouping of materials, yet the problem remains that ‘genre’ becomes

---

<sup>3</sup> Bakhtin’s dialogism was therefore generically bound – e.g. the novel’s engagement in dialogism by representing and commenting on patterns of language use and on other genres is a function of the novel as a genre that sets it apart from other genres, which were considered monologic (see e.g. Bakhtin 1981). Thus Bakhtin saw this as a binary opposition rather than as a consequence of aspirations to verisimilitude tempered by a genre’s conventional formal and stylistic constraints on expression occurring on a spectrum (cf. Todorov 1981: 18–19).

<sup>4</sup> Bakhtin’s dialogism arrived in the West as Julia Kristeva’s (1980 [1969]) “intertextuality”, which she later redesignated “transposition” (1984 [1974]: 59–60); see also Allen 2000. The Bakhtinian model tends to conflate ‘genre’ with the resources associated with the particular genre owing in part to its formulation before an infrastructure of terms, concepts and research findings was available for addressing the phenomenon, which can now be much more effectively addressed through register theory (on which see e.g. Halliday 1978; Foley 1995; Agha 2001; 2007; Agha & Frog 2014).

<sup>5</sup> For different uses of this term and how it is qualified, see e.g. Vološinov 1930 [1929]: 20–28, 97–101; 1973: 17–24, 95–98. The work of Vološinov and others of the so-called ‘Bakhtin Circle’ has often been reattributed to Bakhtin (see e.g. Ivanov 1978; cf. Bakhtin 1986: xv), but this is problematic (see e.g. Wehrle 1978: xii).

<sup>6</sup> This approach never advanced to a typology beyond listing diverse criteria of users and contextual factors (increased by Bakhtin 1986 [1952–1953]). Rather than delimiting ‘genre’, this idea of speech genres opened to more or less any socially distinguishable type of language or of language use.



a term for the particular category to be addressed analytically rather than a term for an analytical category of a particular type that functions as a research tool applicable to different materials. This leads to an initial proposition:

*(1) If 'genre' is to function as an analytical tool, qualification as a genre must be determined according to consistent criteria.*

Before pursuing relevant criteria for the qualification of genre as a category, it is necessary to acknowledge that diverse and incommensurate categories were accepted as genres before there was any attempt to define genre as a tool in research and analysis. As a consequence, a working definition of genre as an analytical tool cannot simply be abstracted and formalized by comparing all categories conventionally called 'genres', because these categories are not all referred to as 'genres' on the basis of qualities that they share with one another. However, if Principle 1 is accepted, this leads to a second proposition:

*(2) If the categories conventionally designated as 'genres' have not been determined according to consistent criteria, it follows that not all of these categories will qualify formally as genres when consistency of criteria is given precedence.*

Principle 2 does not deny the potential validity of diverse categories, either as social realities or as practical research tools. This principle merely makes explicit the inevitability that if the term genre is defined as an analytical tool, not all categories that have been referred to as 'genres' will necessarily qualify to that definition. The question of determining *which* criteria should qualify 'genre' as a category highlights the fact that the analytical term is a construct. This remains true whether the definition is oriented to emic or etic categorization. This leads to the following hypothesis:

*(3) The general value and utility of 'genre' as an analytical tool is in relation to: a) the range of materials to which it is applicable; and b) the range of questions and analyses to which it is relevant and expedient to employ.*

The relevance and practical value of the term 'genre' is implicit in the degree to which it permeates instruction, research, analyses and publications today. As an analytical term, genre could of course be defined on the basis of a single category (e.g. ballad, greeting, belief). However, Principle 3 suggests that such a definition will have limited value and utility for application to other materials or for the range of materials to which it can be applied. This does not mean that the immediate (and perhaps presently impracticable) goal should be the determination of criteria that are universally applicable to all disciplines. The emphasis on folklore here nevertheless promotes developing the criteria to be readily adaptable across a

range of categories of cultural expression. These categories of cultural expression are not limited to any single mode of expression and may be multimodal. In many cases, the objects of folklore research intersect with genres of other disciplines (e.g. Anthropology, Literature Studies, Media Studies) and the objects under scrutiny may range in scope from epics that parallel novels in their length to sayings and dialogic practices that are at the level of a phrase, sentence or the interrelationship between utterances. For these reasons, the qualifications of genres of cultural practice should be sufficiently flexible to be applicable across this range of diversity. This gives rise to the following hypothesis:

*(4) The greatest general value and utility of 'genre' as an analytical tool can best be achieved by developing a definition and approach through the dialectic engagement of academic discourses concerning genre, its definition and use as a tool rather than placing emphasis on specific genres or groups of genres as a point of departure.*

In Folklore Studies, the heritage of discourse has maintained widely varied use of the term 'genre'. The significance of the category 'genre' continues to be taken for granted rather than defined,<sup>7</sup> or distinguished from categories that are 'not genres'. For the most part, genres tend to remain defined on a case by case basis while the definition of 'genre' as a category remains implicit, whether this is addressing an abstract category applied across cultures such as 'epic' (e.g. Honko 1998; Foley 2004; Martin 2005), or constructing images of local emic genres (e.g. Ben Amos 1976a; Kallio 2013).<sup>8</sup> The increased attention to interactions between genres did not lead to a clearer distinction of 'genre' as a category from other types of categories,<sup>9</sup> which also problematized attempts to model 'genre systems' without consideration for the commensurability of categories identified as genres (e.g. Honko 1989). Rather than focusing attention on refining 'genre' as an analytical tool *per se*, much of this discourse has concentrated on advancing from understanding genres as ideal types that define (textual) cultural products to viewing genres as frameworks in relation to which texts and expressive behaviours were realized and interpreted, how these could be used in relation to meaning-

---

<sup>7</sup> For example, John Miles Foley (e.g. 1988: 109–110; 1993 [1991]: 3–17; cf. Foley 2002: 34–36) consistently highlights “genre-dependence”, but precisely what is meant by genre remains implicit.

<sup>8</sup> Discussions of vernacular genres not infrequently further problematize definitions of genre by collapsing the distinction between use of vernacular terms and the cultural practices associated with them. The designation of a genre with a vernacular term does not necessarily indicate a formalized awareness of how that genre should be distinguished from others, nor that all members of a community use emic term consistently. Categories designated by vernacular terms may also not correspond to genres as such. The lack of a specific term for a genre in a language does not indicate that categories of cultural expression and their conventions remain undistinguished and unevaluated.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. Tarkka 2013 (in press): “genres are analytical categories constructed by the researcher using diverse criteria.”

generation, and their variation or interpenetrability in practice (e.g. Valk 2012: 41; Tarkka 2013). Folkloristic approaches have increasingly subscribed to approaches of linguistic anthropology and ethnopoetics that “emphasize the linguistic constructedness of all forms of discourse” (Harris 1995: 524) and the characterization of genres through “a constellation of systematically related, co-occurrent formal features and structures” (Bauman 1999: 84; cf. Hanks 1987: 670). These trends have become fundamental to approaching genres across disciplines and can be characterized by the following proposition:

(5) *‘Genres’ are generative frameworks for the production of expressions and in relation to which expressions are also received and interpreted when the genre of the expression is recognized.*

According to Principle 5, recognisability of the genre of expression is fundamental to processes of successful interpretation (cf. Abrahams 1976 [1969]: 194). Implicit in this principle is a postulate that genres are characterized by cuing devices that enable an expression to be recognized as an expression of a certain genre – or at least related to a certain genre. When genres are viewed as generative frameworks rather than ideal categories to which individual products of expression are (or should be) necessarily subordinated, then not all expressive products will necessarily reflect the criteria of a genre equally or in the same way. This process merely maps an identity onto that expression whereby “how something is said is part of what is said” (Hymes 1986: 59), situating the expression in relation to a categorical identity and framework for interpretation. However, not all expressions generated in relation to the genre as a framework will necessarily qualify as generic products *per se* (e.g. parody). This highlights that genres cannot simply be extrapolated and defined as analytical categories on the basis of materials that have been gathered together according to inconsistent criteria (e.g. typological similarity on the one hand and genetic relation on the other). In such cases, according to Principle 5, not all examples relevant to a genre will have equal weight when developing an account of that particular ‘genre’ as an analytical category, nor will all examples archived under the heading of that genre (e.g. for comparative research) qualify as generic products and need to be accounted for by the description of the analytical category.

The developing definitions of genre in linguistic anthropology and ethnopoetics concentrate on formal and structural qualities of language use on the one hand and social or behavioural interaction on the other. These definitions have been well-suited to the shift in research emphasis to the discourse contexts and practices in which folklore is used ‘today’. It is also suited to many of the genres of folklore that research has turned toward as ‘classic’ genres have

disappeared from Western cultural arenas. However, definitions focused on formal qualities and behavioural interaction as two categories of criteria are not well-suited for more structured narrative and poetic genres like epic, *Märchen* and the ballad. These genres cannot be defined without a third category of criteria related to represented or communicated content (cf. Abrahams 1976 [1969]; Ben Amos 1973a). Nevertheless, these approaches belong to a more general trend in developing uses of ‘genre’ especially in disciplines that have only emerged or distinguished themselves since the mid-20<sup>th</sup> century. These trends involve the integration of both formal aspects and functions or social contexts and have concern for meanings, communication and/or representation. Like the rising concern over ‘genre systems’, these approaches tend to situate different genres in relation to one another. (Cf. Longacre 1968: 1–50; Labov 1972: 359–370; Sampson 1997: 704; Martin 1997; Nunan 2008.) These approaches to genre seem to have developed to a greater extent in a dialectic process with material that is not as burdened by inherited categories and with greater attention to defining genre as an analytical category of a particular type for distinguishing and studying flexibly generative expressions in practice. These same trends are also observable in literature studies: attention has turned to genre as a socially recognizable modelling system for the production and reception of texts (e.g. Todorov 1981: 62). This is construed as “a semiological procedure” (Jauss 1970: 12) that occurs as a historical process of internalizing these models on the level of individuals in relation to the changing prominence and significance of individual textual models. When discussions of genre in Folklore Studies is situated in this broader cross-disciplinary context, the same trends are observable. Even regarding highly structured genres that have always received attention for their formal features, emphasis has turned to contextual variation and significance in communication (e.g. Foley 2002; Siikala 2012; Kallio 2013). In folklore studies, as in other disciplines with long histories, these trends have continued to compete with the diversity of earlier uses of the term genre carried by the momentum of the heritage of disciplinary discourse through which specialists are inevitably initiated into the field. Looking across these approaches, use of ‘genre’ as an analytical tool exhibits variation in relation to research emphases and the materials under discussion. Nevertheless, Tzvetan Todorov’s observation (regarding literature) that use of ‘genre’ within any one discourse “must be interpreted at the level of the investigation and not of its object” (Todorov 1977: 248) can here be advanced to the following synthesis:

(6) *Academic discourses exhibit a general pattern of considering genre in terms of a socially assimilated mechanism governing the production and reception of texts as*

*meaningful expression; a genre is qualified by a) formal aspects such as language and structures, b) meanings, significance or representation, c) uses or social contexts, and d) relationships of genres to one another and/or to society.*

Among the different aspects of genre addressed in Principle 6, formal features tend to be highlighted as essential indicators that make a genre recognizable and thereby enable the appropriate reception of the expression (cf. Abrahams 1976 [1969]: 194). This postulate suggests that multiple types of factors should be accounted for in qualifying a category as a genre. In this case, ‘poetry’ or poetry in a particular meter or meters would not qualify as a genre if this only designates formal quality of representation; ‘myth’ would not qualify as a genre if it only designates the quality of content represented or communicated; ‘joke’ would not qualify if it only designates a quality of interpersonal interaction.

When Principle 6 is acknowledged, much of the variation across different types of uses appears rooted in tendencies at the level of investigations that are variously rooted in the discipline, the diversity of approaches or research questions within a discipline, and according to the object of research. For example, studies of discourse will delimit the utterance as the fundamental unit of investigation, even where this is situated in dialogue. When ‘genre’ is analyzed at that level, the category may appear incredibly broad, such as Longacre’s (1968: 1) “*narrative, procedural, expository, and hortatory*” genres of utterance, or the focus of investigation may narrow these considerably to categories of utterance nearer Vološinov’s (1930 [1929]) speech genres. In literature, the work as a textual whole becomes the basic unit against which genre is defined although a novel can be approached as permeated by discourse genres (cf. Bakhtin 1986 [1952–1953]), while the particular investigation will be a determinant on whether the definition of the ‘novel’ as a genre is bounded by culture and historical period or extends to include *The Tale of Genji* and medieval Icelandic sagas and so forth. Similarly, in linguistics the acknowledgement that “[e]ach genre has its own characteristic structure and grammatical form that reflects its social purpose” can nevertheless allow oral directions to a bus station, a recipe for pumpkin pie scribbled on an index card and electronic instructions for opening an e-mail account to all be situated in the ‘genre’ of ‘procedure’ (Nunan 2008: 57). The same types of variation appear quite prominently in folklore research, where the primary unit is textual or performative wholes, even if these are embedded in larger contexts. Rather than emic and etic definitions being competing or mutually exclusive, these are distinguished by the scope of material considered, whether local, cultural or international, and whether synchronic or across a vast scope of history (cf. Ben Amos 1976a: 215). Folklore research is more unusual because

the primary units may vary considerably according to the research questions and more specific object of investigation: a wedding may be approached as a unit even where these are characterized as an organized arrangement incorporating many other genres of oral performance, or the unit under investigation may be the proverb, of which many may occur in the context of different genres across a traditional wedding. Rather than arbitrary inconsistency, this can be viewed as an aspect of the adaptability of genre as a tool expressed in the following proposition:

*(7) 'Genre' exhibits flexibility as an analytical tool in its ability to be calibrated to units of different magnitude, the scope of material to which it is applied, and varying degrees of sensitivity according to the conventions of disciplinary investigation.*

Principle 7 does not resolve the question of “how much variation is permissible before [...] texts represent different genres” (Nunan 2008: 58) as such. Instead, this principle acknowledges that the distinction between two or more genres may vary as may whether different categories should be regarded as different genres or as sub-genres within a single genre: the analytical category ‘genre’ may be recalibrated according to the conventional units addressed within a discipline and the aims of the particular investigation. This principle highlights that genre is a dynamic tool for research rather than genres being wholly objective, uniform and invariable categories. The seven principles outlined here provide foundations for outlining a new approach and definition.

### **Outline of a Semiotic Approach**

Following from Principle 5 above, genre can be reasonably approached as an essentially semiotic phenomenon – i.e. related to signs (cf. Todorov 1977: 248). More specifically, genre functions as an iconic sign (cf. Sebeok 1994: 28–31, 81–92): it allows a produced text to be identified as a text of a certain genre, and it is the recognition of that identity that allows the text to be correctly interpreted. This is the unifying basis for Principles 6–7 and will be developed in the following sections as a semiotic approach to genre as a category and analytical tool.

As a social phenomenon, genre must be approached in terms of what is socially transmitted. The characteristics of a genre must be assessed according to the criteria of emergent products associated with it. Although genres of written literature may be wholly verbal, folklore genres are transmitted, maintained and socially negotiated through cultural practices. Genre is therefore bound to practice (Hanks 1987; cf. Bourdieu 1977). The verbal element is only one

aspect of oral and physical expression as a unified whole; although verbal text may be practically treated in isolation for reasons of analysis, it remains inextricable from the realities of multimodal human expression (cf. Lord 1960; Fine 1984; Foley 1993 [1991]; Pawley 2009: 7). Moreover, formal and structural aspects are not randomly applied: people *do* things with them in social, situational, spatial and temporal contexts (cf. Vološinov 1930 [1929]; Agha 2007). The social value of genres as tools and resources for rhetoric and economy in communication is directly connected with their recognisability in when, where and why they are applied (cf. Foley 1991; 1995; Briggs & Bauman 1992).<sup>10</sup> Those uses are connected to what a genre conventionally ‘does’ – what it communicates, such as a narrative, greeting, etc., or what it actualizes, such as accomplishing a ritual change of state like marriage or magical healing. In other words, genres are not purely signifiers and signification systems; they are used predictably, to do predictable things under predictable circumstances.

Genre have been approached according to a simple Saussurian dual model of signifier (*form*) and signified (*content/enactment*) as the two aspects of a sign (e.g. Todorov 1977: esp. 248). Some definitions have complemented these aspects with a third descriptive aspect aligned with contexts and conventions of use to address social patterns of who, where, when, why and how a generic product is actualized through expression (*practice*).<sup>11</sup> Taken together, these three aspects can be employed to construct a descriptive account of an individual genre. Yuri Tynianov has emphasized that “the study of isolated genres is impossible outside the system in which and with which they are in correlation” (quoted in Todorov 1977: 249). Whereas early approaches to folklore addressed genres in isolation, the identification of any genre now presupposes a genre typology. Within that typology, other genres form a context within which the particular aspects of each genre are shaped and their conventions are realized (cf. Ben-Amos 1976a: 230–231; Honko 1989: 15). The context of these relations may be approached through the complex model of a ‘tradition ecology’, addressing the co-existence and interaction of different traditions according to a biological metaphor.<sup>12</sup> The three-aspect description of the

---

<sup>10</sup> “Each utterance is filled with echoes and reverberations of other utterances to which it is related y the communality of the sphere of speech communication” (Bakhtin 1986 [1952–1953]: 91).

<sup>11</sup> E.g. Ben Amos 1976a; although it should be noted that the performance-oriented turn involved a reaction against early content-oriented folklore typologies, as a consequence of which content could be marginalized as a criterion for generic categorization (e.g. Briggs & Bauman 1992) with an outcome that the earlier form–content binary qualification could appear reinvented as a form–practice binary qualification (e.g. Bauman 1999).

<sup>12</sup> See e.g. Honko 1981b; 1985; for an overview of the concept and history of the term, see Kamppinen 1989: 37–46. On biological metaphors in folklore theory, see Hafstein 2001.

individual genre is thus complemented by the fourth aspect, describing the relationship of the individual genre to social and semiotic functions within a broader genre system (*functions*).

### **A Usage-Based Approach**

Generating an analytical understanding of any ‘type’ such as a genre can be loosely described as forming “a hypothetical abstraction deduced statistically from the variants” (Dégh & Vázsonyi 1975: 207, referring to folktale types). The development of hypothetical abstractions is a necessary process in research (Lotman 1990: 218). Rather than defining a genre and its place in a genre system, this model is oriented to assessing social patterns of conventions and associations (as well as alternatives) of a genre. This model is built on a usage-based approach to tradition according to which exposure to and participation in the cultural activity of a genre allows individuals to internalize a tradition and develop cultural competence (cf. Bakhtin 1986 [1952–1953]: 80–81; Honko 2000a; Hymes 2001). Rather than the model being a purely quantitative statistical assessment, it should be tempered by qualitative considerations. This is because not all voices in a tradition community carry equal weight (Honko 1962: 126), and also because factors such as frequency, (physical, social, emotional) proximity and authority result in certain exemplars or elements to be perceived as more prominent in these processes.<sup>13</sup>

Conventions of behavioural and performative expression emerge, develop and function at the level of small groups. In other words, traditions function at the level of small-group communities and networks of those communities in interaction. In these small-group communities, individuals are acculturated and they internalize traditions through exposure to and participation in cultural practices. All traditions only have reality at the subjective level of the individual and the emerging intersubjective spaces of small-group communities.<sup>14</sup> Within that frame, tradition functions as an “enabling referent (Foley 1995: 213). In other words, each individual handles and manipulates a tradition on the basis of a personal, subjective knowledge and understanding with expectations concerning the knowledge and understandings of others; others interpret expression on the basis of what they subjectively know and understand with expectations about the speaker or performer (hence ‘intersubjective’). Those subjective and

---

<sup>13</sup> See Goldberg 2006 on exemplar categories. Folklore studies and cultural research have focused on these factors as synchronic social processes, but they are little different from diachronic processes approached in literature studies (e.g. the historically changing “horizons of expectations” of Hans Robert Jauss [1970]) except in the corpus, mode of communication and technologies of text-circulation.

<sup>14</sup> The following is a model of tradition according to the theory of the Activating Power of Expression presented in Frog 2010a. For a usage-based approach to language, see Tomasello 2003.



intersubjective understandings develop through exposure to and participation in cultural practices across a full spectrum of cultural activity – from epic poetry and proverbs to parody and contesting discourse. The subjective reality of a tradition is therefore always bounded by both the space and time that describe the limits of an individual’s experience, and the negotiation of that understanding as a social process. Approaching the social transmission of culture through practice provides an essential model for how both slow and rapid changes in the cultural activity of a tradition become socially conventional, although participants in the tradition may only be aware of contemporary conventions – conventions which they help to construct and maintain – with no concept of historical variation (cf. Gills 1996). However, those social activities, in which cultural practices occur, are maintained and internalized, are built on the foundation of small-group interactions and the networking of small groups. These processes are directly related to functions of a tradition for individuals in a community (e.g. magical, ritual, socializing, entertainment).

Social practices do not exist in isolation: they are maintained in relation to one another within and across communities. Within a community, a tradition is *socially negotiated* as an intersubjective referent – the ‘enabling referent’ through which expressions are apprehended as meaningful as (or at least in relation to) expressions of a certain type. Variation emerges at intersections of convention, competence and intention within realities of contexts (and displays of competence may not reflect social convention). The ability for a tradition to function as a referent is dependent on its recognisability, and recognisability places constraints on variation as a social process (Abrahams 1976 [1969]: 194), but patterns of individual variation can nevertheless impact social processes and play a role in the development of variation as a historical process. The ideal description of an emic genre should be able to (ideally) approximate the intersubjective referent of the tradition that is being subject to social negotiation, including aspects of its ranges of variation in actual social processes.

### **Form**

A genre is characterized by “a constellation of systematically related, co-occurrent formal features and structures” (Bauman 1999: 84). This can be described as a system of signification: it is the system of language, images, symbols, motifs and broader structural patterns for their organized arrangement as they are used for the particular genre. In the present approach, *form* will designate the level of a signification system. The present approach addresses these at two levels.

The first level is comprised of signs at the first order of representation and the structures associated with that order of representation. This aspect of form is characterized by a ‘register’ of representation, which warrants brief comment and distinction from ‘genre’ with which it is sometimes conflated (Biber 1995: 9–10). In linguistics, ‘register’ emerged as a term for variation in language according to communicative context (see Sampson 1997: 699–703). In systemic-functional linguistics, this was developed into a model for language associated with social roles, subject domains and variation according to the social relations of participants (Halliday 1978). This approach overlaps with so-called speech genres (Vološinov 1930 [1929]; Bakhtin 1986 [1952–1953]), but with a more sophisticated model for approaching determinants on register and the shaping of register as an emergent process (see also Koski, this volume). As attention to the multimodality of expression has increased, register was expanded to all elements with the capacity to signify and the constructions governing their combination (e.g. Foley 1995; Agha 2007). Like genre, register is a tool that can be calibrated according to the research inquiry. The conflation with genre arises both from the variation with which both terms have been handled and also from the interest in the identification of register with cultural practices through which it develops indexical meanings and social significance. The present approach distinguishes register as the system of signifying elements and conventions for their meaningful combination (which may include, e.g. fundamental metaphors through which signs are interpreted) from characteristics of the mode of expression (e.g. meter), devices of style or texture (e.g. parallelism, repetition) that may be other aspects of the first order of representation, as well as aspects of structure organizing larger units of representation (e.g. stanzas, songs in a cycle, etc.).<sup>15</sup> Register is distinguished from genre as the primary system of signifiers and conventions for their meaningful combination through which generic expression is realized while conventions of generic expression inform the meaningfulness of the register which can (potentially) be deployed in alternative contexts. Many folklore genres may be very strongly marked at this level of representation, such as poetic epic, in which case the register can play a primary role in cuing that an expression is an expression of a certain genre. Other genres may be nearer unmarked speech, whether marked with a clear formulaic

---

<sup>15</sup> This is equivalent to proposing that although line-breaks may belong to the register of written languages in order to indicate the conclusion or onset of a paragraph as a structural unit, the paragraph unit itself does not belong to the register insofar as the the paragraph as a unit is not determined by the meaningful and structured combination of signs of the first order of representation (i.e. words and grammar) but by the meaningful and structured combination of what these communicate or represent at the next order of representation. Similarly, page-breaks in printed academic publications are determined formally by the mode of representation, and can vanish when the printed mode is exchanged for oral delivery or publication as continuous text on a webpage.

cuing device (e.g. ‘Did you hear the one about ...’ opening a narrative joke) or more fluidly integrated into conversation (e.g. memorates).

The second level of form is at the second or higher order of representation – i.e. that which is represented through the register at the first level of form. This includes images, motifs, themes and the structures of their organization represented through the register and which are, for example, employed to constitute a narrative. Lauri Honko emphasizes that “*genre subordinates [...] theme*” so that “the same theme behaves differently from one genre to another” (Honko 1989: 15, original emphasis). Just as words and phrases can develop refined and specialized semantics, syntax, connotations, associations and patterns of use at the level of a genre’s verbal register, other signifying elements that are represented through that verbal register may develop correspondingly specialized use. This can be quite pronounced, for example, in genres like the riddle or proverb, which may also exhibit conventional structures for the organization of these elements (cf. Abrahams 1976 [1969]: 197). Some genres are more strongly marked at the second level of representation than at the first, as for example in belief legends. The first and second levels of representation may both be quite pronounced, as lyric poetry where poetic expression is connected to emotionally loaded image-systems. In some traditions, the primary order of representation may even be so conventionalized that it is largely inseparable from what it is used to represent, as is encountered in kalevalaic epic (Frog 2010b; cf. Frog 2011: 8–12). The different levels of form should not be conflated nor should the role of genre in shaping the significance of images and motifs at higher levels of representation be underestimated.

Actualizing expression through generic strategies is the actualization of expression through the generic form. This includes the surface level of representation and extends through all of the levels of its signification system (e.g. images, motifs, narrative patterns) as well as all of its structuring resources. This does not mean that generic form will always be ideally realized, but rather that emergent generic form is governed by socially recognizable conventions which are fundamental to tradition as an enabling referent. The use of those conventions in emergent expression then simultaneously participates in maintaining their social recognisability.

### **Content or Enactment**

Generic form, as a signification system, is always employed to signify something. What is signified may vary considerably from genre to genre. Here, this is addressed according to two very broad or loose categories referred to as *content* and *enactment*. In many familiar genres,

the generic form is rather unambiguously employed to signify specific content – i.e. it represents information or knowledge as in a legend, lyric song or a proverb. This may sometimes be quite dynamic as in genres of jokes and riddles. There is quite a range of diversity here, but this is no different from the signifiers of individual words such as *chicken*, *purple* and *juggle* not easily falling into a single class although nouns, adjectives and verbs all present basic propositional information. Other genres may *do* things rather than represent them. What they signify may function as an illocutionary speech-act (on which see Austin 1962; Searle 1969), affecting a social reality. For example a genre may greet, curse, marry, etc. What these signify may also actualize something as reality at a mythic level. For example, the unseen world can be addressed and possibly described in magical or ritual contexts in order to accomplish interactions with it, to remove the cause of a disease from a patient, etc. (Frog 2010c). This might be compared to the signifiers of individual words such as *hello*, *yet* or the expletive *fuck* that lack basic propositional information and instead affect the relation between discourse participants, between verbal expressions, or signify a relationship of the speaker to an event or phenomenon. Content and enactment should not be seen as exclusive categories: a genre may conventionally signify both, for example, carrying content in verbal description of a bride, deceased individual or the inhabitants in the unseen world while that content is simultaneously essential to an enactment that will change social, physical and/or mythic realities (cf. Abrahams 1977). The content/enactment aspect of individual genres may vary considerably, and it is not the purpose here to outline a typology of them.

The importance of the content/enactment of a genre should not be underestimated, because the conventional patterns of content/enactment that are signified through generic form reciprocally produce the predictability and meaning-potential of that generic form. This is an aspect of genre which holds prominence for linguistic and discourse studies, where genre is directly linked to functions in communication (cf. Briggs & Bauman 1992). Folklore genres may be highly complex in this regard. For example, ritual dialogues may be constituted of different roles and parts and also whole performances of other genres, whereas traditional epic tends to be characterized by the same sort of complexity that Bakhtin attributed to the literary novel.<sup>16</sup> It is also important to recognize that the value and significance of form for many ‘classic’

---

<sup>16</sup> Bakhtin (1981) considered the novel unique in this capacity without consideration of its relation to the verisimilitude to which certain genres aspire and that the formal conventions of certain genres (e.g. metrical expression) can condition strategies employed to obtain to such verisimilitude.

genres of folklore is directly dependent on and constructed through an essential set of socially recognizable ‘texts’ or content material. For example, the understanding of a genre of ‘epic’ emerges through, and is dependent on, socially recognizable epics; a genre of ‘proverb’ is correspondingly dependent on socially circulating proverbs. The formal rendering of unfamiliar texts and contents may be received through the understanding of the genre – i.e. a narrative presented as an epic will be received as an epic – but the genre is not in general freely generative of new texts or the representation of new content. For the present discussion, it is sufficient to observe that genres are not simply formal, but are also conventionally employed to represent or ‘do’ certain things. Accordingly, a genre will exhibit a conventional form–content/enactment relation. On a case by case basis, the content/enactment aspect of a genre can be defined in very specific terms, although for the present, general model, the content/enactment of a genre may be approached in quite general terms of ‘appropriate’ versus ‘inappropriate’.

### **The Form–Content/Enactment Relation**

It was stated above that genre functioned as an iconic sign for a generic product. This can be approached according to the Saussurian model of the sign as a combination of *signifier* and its *signified* that together form a meaningful unit (Saussure 1967 [1916]: 97–100).<sup>17</sup> Accordingly, generic form functions as a signifier while conventionally appropriate content/enactment is its signified; in combination, these function as an iconic sign of a generic product:

Signifier + signified = sign

Form + content/enactment = generic product

When a generic product is approached in terms of a form–content/enactment relation, the absence of either form or content/enactment no longer qualifies as a product of the particular genre. It is quite natural to address a children’s prose rendition of the *Odyssey* as an ‘epic’ or to archive and approach prose summaries of traditional epics as ‘epic’ (e.g. *SKVR* I<sub>1</sub> 723). In these cases, the content of presentation is sufficiently indexed with a generic form of realization that content alone can metonymically activate the broader frame of the generic form and its significance. According to the present model, however, these are not ‘epics’ in the sense of a

---

<sup>17</sup> For example, the sequence of sounds /hors/ is a signifier for the being or category ‘horse’ as a signified, which together constitute the spoken word “horse” as a meaningful sign.

generic realization. Content without form can only be considered to be *metonymically* identified with a genre; a summary of an epic is therefore not an epic *per se*, it is only *metonymically epic*.

Within the present model, the rather simple distinction of ‘appropriate’ versus ‘inappropriate’ content/enactment is equally relevant to whether the product of an expression employing generic form realizes a generic product. Appropriate content/enactment aligns with the conventions of form in uses of generic production, being both consistent with its indices and affirming them. When the content is inappropriate, it does not align with the conventions of form and accordingly does not qualify as a generic product. This does not mean that the form has not been used in an intentional or meaningful way. For example, parody frequently employs form in order to generate meanings through contrast with content, whether parodying the genre or traditional products associated with it, such as the *Batrachomyomachia* [‘Battle of Frogs and Mice’] parodying Homeric epic through the employment of epic form, or trivializing content by contrasting it with the form of a less serious genre such as the fairytale (cf. Clunies Ross & Martin 1986). In these cases, the formal features of genre are mapped over actual content, and meaning is generated through the correlation and contrasts of that content that is conventionally appropriate, producing meaning through the relationships between them (cf. Bakhtin 1981: 44–48, 51–68). These uses of form can be considered only *metaphorically* identified with the genre: *Batrachomyomachia* is accordingly not an epic *per se*, it is only *metaphorically epic*.

### **Practice**

The signification of content/enactment through generic form always occurs as an individual or interpersonal activity in a context. These invariably occur in relation to patterned social behaviours and can be considered to reflect and construct conventions associated with the genre. *Practice* is here employed as a blanket term for conventions of who, where, when, how and why actual applications of generic form and content occur. Practice is employed to designate patterns of concrete contextual application rather than specific meanings or broad social and semiotic functions that may remain implicit or unconscious – *practice* refers to what people ‘do’ with a genre in immediate and concrete terms and the structuring of the context in which it is done.<sup>18</sup> It is inclusive of users (which may vary according to age, gender,

---

<sup>18</sup> On the ‘structure of context’, see e.g. Dundes 1980 [1964]; Abrahams 1968: 145–146.

occupation, social role, etc.), social and situational contexts of use (public events, private dialogue, in secret, etc.), temporal contexts (time of day or year, holidays, etc.), spatial or physical contexts (indoors, outdoors, in the forest, field, near water, etc.), immediate goal-oriented intentions of application (abuse, pedagogy, entertainment, magical effect, information sharing, etc.). Practice also has positive and negative aspects. Negative aspects are conventions of who, where, when, why and how the genre is *not* used (e.g. a child giving a sermon; contexts in which jokes are ‘inappropriate’; addressees or requests ‘inappropriate’ for prayer; magical danger from ritual genres employed outside of ritual contexts, etc.). Of course, conventions of practice vary considerably between genres and across cultures. Practice is most easily addressed for genres with specialized and limited applications. The narrower and more regularized the patterns of practice, the more strongly any practice will index those conventions of practice. This degree of indexicality enables use of the genre to actualize and confer structures of context including interactant roles onto any situation (cf. Agha 2007). For many genres, however, practice may also appear as the most flexible of the three aspects outlined here and may appear highly diversified. Rather than rigorously limited by prescriptive conventions, practice may congregate around one or several patterns of social activity or behaviour. The particular conventions may appear very liberal and they may even appear at first glance to be characterized by only a single, broad feature such as a structure of interactant roles with genres of joke. Nonetheless, there is no genre which is without conventions of practice and which can thus be employed freely in any social context. For the present, general model, the practice of a genre may be approached in broad terms of ‘appropriate’ versus ‘inappropriate’. According to the present model, practice governs aspects of production and reception. It therefore does not govern whether or not an emergent expression is a generic product as an iconic sign *per se* (*contra* e.g. Bauman 1984). Instead, it governs the pragmatics of that sign in use and the ongoing negotiation of that sign’s values, associations (indices) and rhetorical potential or emotional investment as a socio-historical process.<sup>19</sup>

### **The Form–Content/Enactment–Practice Constellation**

Although no description can be wholly without interpretation, the elucidation of the three aspects of a genre outlined above will construct a descriptive model of that genre. The precise

---

<sup>19</sup> This is similar to the phenomenon addressed as Bakhtinian ‘intertextuality’ by Charles Briggs and Richard Bauman (1992: 146–155); it overlaps with the broader phenomenon described by John Miles Foley (1995) as ‘word power’; it occurs at the level of social practice enabling the phenomenon referred to by Asif Agha (2007) as ‘enregisterment’ occurring at the level of registers.

role and prominence of any one aspect will vary from genre to genre, which will be characterized by their particular qualities in a particular constellation. Practice holds a central role in the social construction of genre. Practice is, first and foremost, the actualization of a form–content/enactment relation in generic production. Consequently, practice has a central role in how form and the corresponding content/enactment interrelate and are regarded socially, both independently and in generic production. The patterns of actual practice produce indexical associations with whom, where, when, why and how the genre is used. This not only constructs the conventions of practice; it also constructs how form and its content or enactment are understood, their meaningfulness and their meaning-potential. For example, the more exclusively a genre is associated with a particular religious or secular authority, the more it will index that authority in other contexts (cf. Briggs & Bauman 1992). Similarly, exclusive association with ritual contexts leads a genre to index those contexts which reciprocally inform its significance socially and its reception in other contexts. Conversely, the practice of an epic genre solely in free variation with narratives of other genres as secular entertainment and in common conduits of transmission will lead the index of the epic genre to merge with or become identical to that of those other genres (cf. Siikala 1990b: 14–19; Siikala 2002: 28; Frog & Stepanova 2011: 202). This would result in a dependence on extra-generic uses of the specific content narratives (i.e. ‘epics’) in order for the epic genre to maintain a status distinguishable from other narrative genres with which it would co-occur (e.g. fairytales). Thus the form–content/enactment relationship produces an iconic sign through which generic products are recognized and interpreted, but it is social practice which constructs, maintains and also historically develops the distinctive qualities, meaningfulness and social significance of genre as an iconic sign.

Use of a genre is correlative with intention. Human expressive behaviour is not random, and is naturally and intuitively apprehended with a “presumption of semioticity” (Lotman 1990: 128) – i.e. that it is meaningful. Insofar as practice takes the form of patterns of use and these are internalized in conjunction with the genre, the internalization of genre cannot be divorced from intentionalities. Intentionality is inevitably steeped in ideologies. Ideologies provide frames of interpretation and valuation from the level of the broad structural genres of linguistics (Halliday & Martin 1993: 37), to the semiotic register through which genre is actualized (Vološinov 1930 [1929]; Agha 2007), specific contents (Frog 2012) or mythic actualizations (Frog 2010a; 2014) as well as whole languages (Kroskirty 2001). Form, content/enactment and applications in practice form an interrelated constellation at which these various ideologies



intersect in complementary and contrasting ways. No one of them can change without impacting the constellation because these are all reciprocally informative in constructing the genre for its users.

### **Functions**

The three-aspect constellation presents descriptive model for an individual genre in a particular environment. This is complemented by a fourth aspect of *functions*. Functions are distinguished from use in practice: use in practice describes social conventions of concrete realizations of genres and their products by individuals; functions describe the roles filled by the genre within the genre system, and within broader social and semiotic systems. In other words, practice is descriptive of *what people do with a genre*, or how, when, where and why a genre *occurs* in social activity; functions describe *the role of a genre* in broad social, cultural and semiotic senses and *how* it accomplishes this – not through individual occurrences, but through the broader patterns of use. Functions may be related to socialization (e.g. entertainment, instruction), personal practical physical realities (e.g. health, economic resources), or the semiotic system and ideologies (e.g. epic). The relationship between use and functions narrows to the degree that use is specific to certain social or semiotic roles within a genre system. It may nevertheless remain relevant to distinguish between, for example, the practice of courtly praise poetry in terms of conventions of how it is used and contextually deployed (Clunies Ross 2005) from functions of courtly praise poetry in structuring social relationships between specific individuals and as political propaganda (cf. Abram 2011: 120, 141). A genre will, of course, often serve multiple social and semiotic functions or the practice of the genre or its products may exhibit a broad range of different uses that may connect (or appear to connect) with diverse functions. This is to be expected for socially central traditions which provide a community or cultural group with prominent, emotionally invested resources that present common frameworks of reference. Within a genre system, multiple genres will fill similar or corresponding functions, often with particular emphasis, strategies or contextual relations. Functions should therefore not be viewed as necessarily exclusive to each genre or invariable in living social practice.

A primary or characteristic function may be a key feature in the distinction of one genre from others or identifiable as the distinctive center of a genre which may flow into others at the peripheries of its range of use in practice. For example, epic genres are generally characterized by a function of providing socially centralized identity representations and representations of

society and social practices which can in turn be employed as resources for various personal and social aims or needs. The genre's relation to this function can be directly related to particular epics (content) holding iconic associations with the social identities for a group or culture which is maintained and reinforced through how they are used (practice), situating them hierarchically in a position of greater authority relative to other genres (e.g. Honko 1998; Foley 2004). When this function associated with particular epics (content) is sufficiently associated with conventions of representation and communication (form), new or unfamiliar narratives or narrative material presented in the same way becomes identified as epic (or at least asserted as of epic quality) as the genre advances to an iconic sign indicating 'epic' (rather than of narratives more generally). At this point, the genre is characterized by the social and semiotic functions of epics that are its products including a hierarchical relationship to other genres which may participate in the same and related functions. Thus legends may also engage in corresponding functions of negotiating personal identities and social realities as quite a flexible resource, yet legend genres are generally characterized by a central function of narrative resources for the communication and negotiation of beliefs in relation to their connections to and relevance for the physical and social realities of living communities in which legends are told.<sup>20</sup>

The relevant and necessary functions of a genre will vary from cultural environment to cultural environment. The functions of any genre will develop structural relationships to other genres according to patterns of social practice, which may considerably extend those functions, limit them, or even displace them with alternatives (in which case a whole genre could potentially lose its social position in the genre system as 'epic', for example). Honko (1981b; 1989) proposed that communicative and functional labour were distributed across genres. Put another way, social and semiotic functions are not evenly distributed across them; where functions overlap, genres may fill the same function in different contexts or accomplish it from different angles.

### **The Four-Aspect Model of Emergent Genre**

This modelling system outlined here can offer a frame of reference when approaching genres and their products. This approach enables the following working definition of 'genre':

---

<sup>20</sup> One might say the question of belief–nonbelief is an active problem in any community where legends are told (Dégh & Vázsonyi 1976 [1971]: 109).

*(8) A genre is a generative framework for the production and reception of expressions, which, as an analytical category, is qualified by four aspects, which may vary in relative prominence: (i) an aspect of form, which signifies that expressions are generic products or to be considered in relation to the particular genre, (ii) conventional content or enactment realized through that form, which together qualify a generic product, (iii) conventions of practice, through which the social significance of the genre and its products are constructed and maintained as significant and meaningful, and (iv) social and semiotic functions of the genre developed in relation to the practice of other genres, social life and the semiotic resources available for expression, communication and meaningful action.*

This configuration of qualities distinguishes genre as a category from other types and typologies. This multifaceted approach excludes the identification and description of genre according to only one or two aspects (e.g. ‘form’ or ‘content’). In addition, some distinctions that were formerly considered to describe a difference in genre, can be seen to describe something else (e.g. distribution in the distinction between ‘migratory legends’ and ‘local legends’). In cases of genres that have been identified primarily or exclusively on the basis of only one aspect, this approach requires consideration of others aspects that might be overlooked. For example, personal experience narrative is easily considered a genre without formal conventions, but as Linda Dégh observes:

The telling of a personal experience is a social act, as is any other narration. It has rules and strategies. Tellers reach their appropriate audience using communal (traditional) means to succeed in their goal: personal gratification, identity presentation, status elevation, or other, while the listener’s expectation is met. This means that the manner of telling, the choice of words, phraseology, stylistic turns, emphases, must follow the local etiquette, fitting the referential framework shaped by tradition. (Dégh 1985: 104.)

Similarly, this approach demands a critical assessment not only of genre as a category, but also of qualifying generic products and approaching the relationship between individual expressions and generic categories. For example, ‘singing’ the same personal experience narrative in a metrical form would equate to translating it into a different form (Lotman 1990: 15). In this case, the product of expression would most probably be associated with a different genre.

The four-aspect model outlined here is primarily descriptive of genre as a type of expression within a broader typology. As such, it constructs a frame of reference for approaching emergent products of genres, as well as of adaptations of generic form or conventional generic contents for different applications, mixing and juxtaposing generic strategies, and so forth (cf. Hymes 1975). It must be stressed that this approach does not bind genre-identity to any single aspect in the four-aspect model. Addressing genre as an analytical category is therefore distinct

from and complementary to studies concentrated on, for example, particular plot resources (e.g. tale-types, motifs) that may be mobilized across multiple genres of expression, or potentially diverse genre resources actualized according social context, practice or broader function. This model may also be situated in dialogue with research on emic categories of expressive behaviour, not all of which may qualify as genres according to this approach. Modelling genres according to the four aspects here describes also enables more sophisticated consideration of synchronic and diachronic variation within and across genres as well as in cross-cultural comparisons of genres and their products.

### **A Usage-Based Approach to Variation**

Approaching genre as a framework for emergent expression and the corresponding reception of such expression requires consideration of factors that promote or determine variation in those expressions. There are a number of factors that can be considered potential determinants on variation – and also on the choice of genre as a resource in expression (cf. Halliday 1978; Hymes 1981). Variation in generic expression is in part related to an individual's competence, understanding, communicative intentions and so forth. The user's attitude in application may be especially significant in shaping variation – serious, dismissive, joking or otherwise (cf. Hymes's 'key'; Halliday's 'tenor'). The mode of expression is also significant: this is highly prescriptive in many oral genres, but nevertheless will vary from spoken to written modes of expression, from sung to dictated, and so forth (cf. Tannen 1982; Honko 1998: 75–88; Saarinen 2013; Halliday's 'mode'). What is presented through a genre may also impact variation. *Subject* is here used with reference to a specific phenomenon or material at the level of content or enactment in expression, such as death, lawyers, a troll or Santa Clause. A *subject domain* refers to the broader network of elements or phenomena associated with a subject (e.g. court rooms, briefs, etc. associated with the subject 'lawyers') or may also be used to refer to a broader category (e.g. supernatural beings, including trolls, elves, etc.). Subjects and subject domains are normally connected with ideologies that may vary between genres, but simultaneously develop laterally across them and outside of them. Subjects and subject domains can also become associated with strategies of representation including levels of language, images, motifs, and potentially also larger units and structures, including whole narratives and narrative patterns. This does not qualify the subject or subject domain as a genre according to the present approach, but it interfaces with aspects of a genre in practice (cf. Asplund 2004; Stepanova 2009: 18–20; Frog 2010b: 110–111). This can result in variation in *form* and/or *content/enactment* when realizing a generic product.

Patterns of social activity lead locations and times – both separately and in combination – to become conditioning factors on appropriate and inappropriate expressive behaviour (cf. Hymes’s ‘setting’; Halliday’s ‘field’). The same expressive behaviour may be regarded very differently in a courtroom and in an Irish pub or on a public beach. Temporal contexts are equally significant. Thus an alleyway at night presents a different environment than on a sunny afternoon; in many places in the West, Sunday is still a day shaping behaviours and social activities; different holidays are associated with different activities as are different seasons. This sort of conditioning extends to underlying cognitive models, to the extent that “[t]he set of beliefs and desires actualized in one situation [...] may be profoundly different [...] from the set of beliefs and desires at work in another” (Kamppinen 1989: 19). Put simply: we are more likely to be afraid of ghosts in the dark. However, these social constructions of spatial and temporal contexts engage with *practice* to shape how and whether certain genres are realized within them, and how those genres will be received.

Expression is normally directionally oriented in the sense of having an addressee, direct or indirect (and sometimes reflexive) audience, or as a goal-oriented enactment. The relationships and roles of individuals (or other beings, such as God, a bear, the dead, etc.) shape the intersubjective space of interaction and accordingly open generic expression to variation. The presence or absence of individuals within the sphere of possible observation also functions as a potential determinant on expression, even if they are not engaged in the particular situation. (Cf. Hymes’s ‘scene’ and ‘participants’; Halliday’s ‘field’.) For example, the language and images employed may be edited or censored if the use is in the presence of children, members of the opposite sex, clergy or drug addicts. Even if there is no more than a haunting possibility that a policeman or one’s parents might ‘walk in’, expression may be tempered and adapted accordingly. Time, location and those present intersect as factors as, for example, when a woman enters a pub where normally only men are seen, or when a new parish priest interviews a bare-legged washerwoman, etc. These factors only increase as role relations and personal relationships are introduced for consideration. Across these sorts of contexts, what is appropriate or inappropriate is shaped in relation to (varied) small-groups – e.g. the regulars at the pub; the local washerwomen – and conventions are tested and negotiated through new and emerging situations in which appropriate versus inappropriate expressive behaviour may reflect competence (or its lack) or may present conscious and meaningful displays (e.g. disapproval).

The social and semiotic *functions* of genres develop through regular patterns of practice, but these are often implicit and may remain completely beyond metadiscursive address. Genres are conventionalized social resources that allow varying degrees of flexibility. That flexibility allows variation in relation to diverse determinant factors present or potential in the context of expression. Assessment of qualities of both practice and functions through evidence of a tradition or cultural practice may be significantly problematized by this variation. This is because only quite a small proportion of cultural practices are oriented to the generation of physically (or now electronically) enduring products:<sup>21</sup> research materials for most traditions have been dependent on exceptional factors impacting the context of documented expressions. These contextual variables may affect the form and content/enactment of generic products in varying ways, but they may have a transformative affect on individual examples as evidence of practice, and the significance of conventions of practice in the construction of a genre's functions can lead such evidence to obscure as much as we might want it to reveal.

### **Problems of Horizons and Historical Genres**

A description of an emic genre could, ideally, present an approximation of the intersubjective referent of the tradition that is being subject to social negotiation, including, for example, ranges of acceptable variation in actual social processes. Such an approximation would be an ideal reflection of the social reality of the tradition at the level of a small-group community. The resulting hypothetical abstraction would provide a frame of reference for approaching individual competence and contextual variation in specific performance situations. It would also provide a frame for considering the significance of the individual's understanding of the tradition and relationship to it (cf. Siikala 1990a.) However, even the best hypothetical model will remain an academic construct as a descriptive tool for analysis, and this tool can never do more than approximate a social reality.

Every tradition is ultimately rooted in the subjective understandings of individuals engaging in social processes, and there will always be variation between the subjective understandings of those individuals, and still more variation in their projections of intersubjective realities. Moreover, their projections of intersubjective realities will normally – if not always – be context-specific interfaces with spatial, temporal and social realities of the situation rather than

---

<sup>21</sup> Cf. Bengt R. Jonsson's observation that "*the natural state of oral poetry is to remain oral* and... such poetry is rarely written down without a real incitement" (Jonsson 1991: 145, original emphasis).

the more ideal hypothetical model of the emic tradition arrived at by a researcher. As a hypothetical description of this sort is extended to be inclusive of other communities, differences in the understanding and use of the emic genre across those communities will necessarily be minimized. The more widely that such a hypothetical abstraction is adapted to be applicable, the less sensitive it becomes to specific small-group traditions. As the abstraction is advanced to the level of a regional area including many communities, it becomes less relevant as a frame of reference for approaching individual performances and performers than as a frame of reference for approaching traditions at the level of small-groups communities and their relationships to one another. As the scope extends further and advances toward a tradition across a broad linguistic-cultural area, it becomes increasingly removed from social realities and its value shifts to approaching broader social and historical processes.

The particular constellation of aspects of any genre will be locally dependent on social realities in small-group communities and their networks. These constellations change as a historical process within small-group communities and through their networks. Whether these develop slowly or rapidly, fluidly or in fits and starts, they produce variation across communities. As they do so, their social and semiotic functions may change in the process of adapting to the environment of a changing milieu. For example, changes in society (e.g. industrialization) or even in the social arena or in the tradition environment (e.g. women begin frequenting a men's pub) can enable situational variations in practice to stabilize into new conventions of form, content or practice as a process, which could ultimately affect the functions of a genre. Kalevalaic mythological epic adapted to changes in culture in different ways across North Finnic cultural areas. In the region of Olonec, it became divorced from the ritual life of the community and its applications were centrally as social entertainments with other narrative traditions, leading it to be treated more in the manner of secular folktales (Siikala 2002: 28; Frog 2010a: 81–82). In Ingria, similar processes led the genre to drop from men's traditional practices and it was maintained only in the women's singing tradition in the context of other women's songs, leading to its development into a so-called 'lyric-epic' form, in which earlier mythological narratives were even performed in the first person (Siikala 1990b: 14–19; Frog & Stepanova 2011: 202; cf. Kallio 2011: 399). Historically, these are reflexes of the same genre and they maintained a common core system of epic songs. However, different historical processes resulted in changes in their functions within the genre system and in society: the differentiation between these songs and fairytales was narrowed in one region while these songs came close to women's lyric narratives in the other (while in many regions, this genre

disappeared entirely). This raises the question: “how much variation is permissible before the two texts represent different genres?” (Nunan 2008: 57, regarding linguistic genres).

In general, the flexibility of ‘genre’ as an analytical tool shifts attention away from whether variations should be considered to reflect ‘the same’ or ‘different’ genres: this is a question at the level of investigation. This is significant to consider with genres in which conventions may shift more rapidly as a historical process. As a consequence, the full system of conventions may not be consistent across communities that are otherwise quite close. The social conventions of prose narration, for example, may therefore not be readily discernible on the basis of only a few examples, and it might not even be apparent whether a few examples should be considered to reflect the conventions of one or several small-group communities. On the other hand, if the kalevalaic traditions of Olonec and Ingria are seen as ‘the same’ genre, the criteria of the genre must be defined with sufficient flexibility that both historical variations can be accounted for. Practicalities may in certain investigations invite simply referring to these as ‘the same’ genre because they are historical reflexes of a common antecedent. However, extreme caution (and clarification) is required in such cases, which were quite problematic in earlier research. Motivations for this use of ‘genre’ is frequently rooted in examining continuities in formal elements and/or particular plot resources that might be adapted across genres. In this case, the respective traditions each underwent a different genre shift that affected it in fundamental ways. The four-aspect model can be employed as a tool for assessing differences between these traditions of Olonec and Ingria and the developments that gave rise to them, but the continuities of formal resources in representation and continuities of plots should be placed in dialogue with considerations of genre rather than treated as reflecting a common genre at the time they were documented.

### **Cultural and Cross-Cultural Genre Typologies**

Cross-cultural genre types are a reality of academic discourses. These are no longer ideal, prescriptive models of universal genres, but rather provide a frame of reference for approaching and comparing traditions (cf. Finnegan 1977: 15). Cross-cultural genre type descriptions have generally had a Eurocentric origin, and in several cases are even rooted in Classical models.<sup>22</sup>

---

<sup>22</sup> This is unsurprising considering the history of the academic scholarship, and is little different than the challenge faced by the international tale-type system (Uther 2004), which was originally modelled on the Finnish archive holdings and obtained to an international frame of reference on the basis of local library collections at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.



They have not escaped decades of ongoing re-evaluation and testing against the traditions of diverse cultures (Honko 1989: 16; cf. Hakamies, this volume). Cross-cultural typologies are necessary because they provide tools, vocabulary and frames of reference for accessing research on unfamiliar traditions and for considering the relationship and relevance of that research to our own. A frame of reference is essential for any cross-cultural comparison, whether this is oriented to considering common historical roots, reciprocal influence between groups or cultures, or comparison is purely typological. It should be stressed that typological comparisons are fundamental to a broad range of cultural research: they stimulate perspectives on how cultural practices function, their potential for users and what users do or do not do with them. This is less significant for investing a single tradition in a single culture on emic terms, but cross-cultural typologies may nevertheless sensitize a researcher to aspects of a tradition or its social functions that might be overlooked or simply taken for granted.

The basis for qualifying cross-cultural typologies is itself problematic. Tzvetan Todorov has emphasized that absolute classifications of genres is impossible when all aspects of a genre can vary to some degree independently of one another: “Any static classification must keep one of these faces the same, whatever the [others’] variations” (Todorov 1977: 248). Within the four-aspect model, *form* is necessarily culture-dependent, even where the corresponding genres found across cultures are historically related (e.g. European ballad traditions, the modern novel), as will be the *content* or *enactment* conventional of a genre. This problematizes their value as criteria for a cross-cultural genre typology. Conventions of *practice* are perhaps still more culture-dependent – i.e. who uses the genre when, where, why and how. These three aspects of genre account for its specific features and its actualization in real-time contexts. Although any of these features or their combinations might be taken up as the basis for a cross-cultural type of genre, none of these can be applied consistently as a base category of criteria for cross-cultural genre typology. In contrast, social and semiotic *functions* – what the genre *does* and *how* it accomplishes this – more abstractly accounts for the relationship of a genre to other genres and semiotic resources as well as to society or to social and natural environments. This leads to the following proposition (which has been more commonly arrived at intuitively rather than analytically):

(9) *The social and semiotic functions of a genre are consistently definable in terms of relations and these social and semiotic roles and relations of a genre can be compared across cultures independent of incongruities of culture-specific elements, structures, contexts and participant roles characteristic of other aspects of the genre.*

Of course, not every culture will maintain every genre, and perhaps the majority of genres of cultural expression will be relatively limited in their international distribution (with the exception of the internet, where the opposite may be or become the case). Any cross-cultural genre will always describe a pattern of equivalence rather than identity. Considering the fourth function in this regard should help temper the deep-rooted Eurocentric models that have frequently led to one or more of the first three, culture-dependent aspects of a genre as defining or essential characteristics in a cross-cultural typology (e.g. length as a defining qualification of ‘epic’). Function may of course condition other aspects of the genre. For example, functions of a proverb as a genre in discourse and embedded in other genres is dependent on being a short atomic unit of utterance; a riddle is correspondingly dependent on structure of the context as a dialogic engagement of limited (if variable) duration; an epic genre is dependent on the social relevance and negotiation of the social significance of the narratives maintained in the genre; etc. Like the example of kalevalaic epic above, historical background may be a relevant consideration when approaching the development of such cross-cultural genre typologies (e.g. *Märchen*). In addition, it should not be taken for granted that shared language or national borders define a shared ‘culture’: any survey of variation in a tradition should consider the question of when a cross-community comparison or a cross-regional comparison becomes equivalent to cross-cultural comparison (cf. Frog 2014). Once again, this highlights that even where genre is ideally or broadly descriptive, it is a construct that functions as an analytical tool, and the scope of the tradition subject to abstraction and the degree of historical orientation therefore become functions of research priorities rather than being social realities themselves.

### **Genres, Social Resources and Application**

The products of expression that are related to genres reflect systems of social resources that have been employed in communication, representation or some sort of enactment. These include registers, images and motifs. They may employ poetic systems, melodies and acoustic devices such as alliteration or rhyme. Structuring strategies such as parallelism, repetition, binary or trinary organizational strategies may be used. They may also employ specific recognizable content such as an epic narrative or activate the same narrative referentially. Such applications draw on the social recognisability of the resource, and the value of that resource related to its broader cultural activity. Most of these resources, taken individually, will not be exclusive to one genre any more than individual terms in the verbal lexicon. Social resources can be inter-generic, and their value and significance develops accordingly, while a particular genre is distinguished from others by the conventionalized systems of social resources

associated with it and their constellations. Nevertheless, applying the package of social resources does not result in the product of every application being a ‘generic’ product, as was mentioned in connection with Principle 5, above. Instead, applications are made in relation to socially recognizable strategies for their value, rhetorical force and meaning-potential.

The four-aspect semiotic model of genre advocated here approaches genre as a system of socially circulated semiotic resources that can be flexibly applied. Different genres nevertheless have different ranges of flexibility, while even generic products are always realized *in relation to* conventions rather than invariably attempting to realize those conventions in an ideal way. This provides a framework for distinguishing the relationship of generic products to generic categories. The model it produces is of limited horizons (cf. Jauss 1982). It only retains full validity in small groups and networks of small groups. Those horizons appear to increase in relation to the conservatism of genre (conditioned by historical processes) as a consequence of maintaining a consistent system of social resources, which reciprocally instantiates the genre as a shared intersubjective referent on a broader scale. The value of this model as a hypothetical abstraction is not in conforming the product to the ‘genre’ but as a frame of reference for approaching the product in discourse. The hypothetical abstraction gradually becomes increasingly removed from actual social activity as horizons of analysis are extended. As conventions related to form, contents/enactments and practice shift independently, social and semiotic functions of the genre become central for comparison and contrast and provide the central frame of reference for cross-cultural comparisons. The value of this type of hypothetical abstraction is as a point of reference for comparisons and contrasts of social and communicative processes, how the genre relates to specific social resources, and how it relates to other genres. This model presents a framework that brings the definition of genre in folklore studies into alignment with those of other disciplines. It simultaneously highlights that genre is a versatile and practical research tool conditioned by the primary units of analysis within a discipline and the priorities of the particular investigation.

### **Epilogue: Genres, Genres Everywhere...**

This returns us to the opening challenge and title of the paper: can *Genres, genres everywhere, but who knows what to think* be categorized as a generic product? This is an adaptation of social resources in a conventionalized conjunction of those social resources parodying a socially recognizable textual entity. Parody does not qualify as a genre more generally according to the present model: it is a manipulation of socially recognizable resources in order

to comment on those resources or some other object. According to the model above, this can be seen as a type of ‘enactment’ to which the specific form and content remain relative to the object of the parody. However, the present case is not just *any* parody, but a parody of a certain type which can be considered wide-spread and conventional. First, the object is a short quoted phrase that circulates with a proverb-like quality and the word-play is accomplished by transposing words contextually appropriate to the situation for key words in the original phrase. This aspect of form is bound up with the enactment of parody in order to comment on a topic or theme in a humorous or witty way. This is itself bound up with the pattern of practice regarding contextual uses of this form–enactment combination. Conventions associated with form, enactment and practice may therefore be reasonably considered sufficient to qualify the expression *Genres, genres everywhere* as the product of a generic strategy. Caution is warranted regarding the functions of such a genre without a more general study. However, it can be immediately observed that the genre is unambiguously situated in relation to a genre of short quotations that circulate with a proverb-like quality (and this genre of parody may equally engage proverbs) and transfers the significance or rhetorical force of the referent expression to a new object: it has particular semiotic functions that can be situated in a broader system of genres and resources.

The use of this genre in the title of an academic publication can itself be seen as a particular practice with which this genre is associated, and the present title can be compared to others even developed from the same poetic line, such as “Water, Water Everywhere, and Not a Bite to Eat” (Smith 2006), “Numbers, Numbers Everywhere – and Not a Drop of Meaning” (Felsot 1998), “Standards, Standards Everywhere, and Not a Spot to Think” (Thomas 2001), “Data Data Everywhere – and Not a Byte of Use?” (Abott 2001), “Dollars Dollars Everywhere, Nor Any Dime to Lend” (Khwaja Mian & Zia 2010), and so forth, although this particular referent is relatively rare in contrast to plays on more socially central expressions such as ‘To be, or not to be’.<sup>23</sup> This genre can therefore be seen as a resource employed in generating ‘catchy’ titles,

---

<sup>23</sup> E.g. “To See or Not to See” (Rensink, O’Regan & Clark 1997), “To Tell or Not to Tell” (Arata 1998), “To Feel or Not to Feel” (Hudlicka 2003), “To Die or Not to Die” (Hetts 1998), “To Eat or Not to Eat” (Korner & Leibel 2003), “To Normalize or Not to Normalize? – Fat Is the Question” (Hebert & Keenleyside 1995), “To Culture or Not to Culture” (Choi 1996), “To Slow or Not to Slow” (Nordaus 1991), “To Veil or Not to Veil?” (Read & Bartkowski 2000), “To Gloss or Not to Gloss” (Lomicka 1998), “To Code, or Not to Code” (Gastpar, Rimoldi & Vetterli 2003), “To Plan or Not to Plan?” (Aarts, Dijksteruis & Midden 1999), “To Charge or Not to Charge?” (Sanchez-Ruiza & Makhatadze 2001), “To Parcel or Not to Parcel” (Little et al. 2002), “To Quantize or Not to Quantize” (Wüthrich 2005), “To Sialylate, or Not to Sialylate: That Is the Question” (Vimr & Lichtensteiger 2002), “To Euro or Not to Euro?” (Risse et al. 1999), “To Ghetto or Not to Ghetto” (Borjas 1998), “To Seek Help

or engaging the attention of a potential audience for reasons of publicity, marketing and memorability (even if scholars themselves do not see it in such objective terms). As such, it is integrated into or embedded in a broader genre of titles for academic publications, where we might quite tentatively generalize that it most frequently appears as a main title often followed by a subtitle that more explicitly presents the topic of the publication. According to the four-aspect model, these formal aspects could be used as grounds to approach such titles as a sub-genre (or genre) of academic publication titles owing to qualities of form and enactment that set it apart from the broader genre, and also that the practice of titles of this sort is associated with aims of engaging an audience that minimal descriptive titles, for example, do not share. Thus qualities of form, content/enactment and practice can all be seen as exhibiting specific regular variations that are here associable with blending of the genre of titles with another genre of verbal art. Conversely, use of the genre of parodying recognizable phrases and expressions in titles forms a subgroup within the genre, this subgroup seems to be differentiated according to only one aspect of the genre – practice. Uses may exhibit some minimal contextual variation in form, but this seems only to occur insofar as its formal qualities are subordinated to the formal conventions of the genre of titles in which it is embedded and such variations do not appear prominent, frequent or to have produced a variation in the normative standard of the genre as such. Variation in the aspect of practice alone does not offer grounds to qualify this group as a sub-genre (or genre) of this category of verbal art.<sup>24</sup> Of course, the challenge remains that genres are everywhere, but perhaps the present approach to genre as an analytical tool will facilitate the examination of cultural practices by making that *tool* more systematic, even if the realities of human expressive behaviours will remain forever fluid and illusory.

## Literature

- Aarts, Henk, A.P. Dijksteruis & Cees Midden 1999. To Plan or Not to Plan? – Goal Achievement or Interrupting the Performance of Mundane Behaviors. *European Journal of Social Psychology* 29: 971–979.
- Abott, Julie 2001. Data Data Everywhere – and Not a Byte of Use? *Qualitative Market Research* 4 (3): 182–192.
- Abrahams, Roger D. 1968. Introductory Remarks to a Rhetorical Theory of Folklore. *Journal of American Folklore* 81 (320): 143–158.

---

or Not to Seek Help” (Vogel & Wester 2003), “To Think Aloud or Not to Think Aloud” (Leow & Morgan-Short 2004), “To C or Not to C: These Are the Questions” (Alter 1995) – just to mention a few.

<sup>24</sup> Cf. Eila Stepanova’s (2014) argument that sub-groupings of lament genres are best approached in terms of context-dependent variation rather than as distinct sub-genres, as has been customarily done in the history of scholarship.

- Abrahams, Roger D. 1976 [1969]. The Complex Relations of Simple Forms. In Ben-Amos 1976b: 193–214.
- Abrahams, Roger D. 1977. Toward an Enactment-Centered Theory of Folklore. In William Bascom (ed.) *The Frontiers of Folklore*. Washington D.C.: American Anthropological Association. Pp. 79–120.
- Abram, Christopher 2011. *Myths of the Pagan North: The Gods of the Norsemen*. London: Continuum.
- Agha, Asif 2001. Registers of Language. In Alessandro Duranti (ed.) *A Companion to Linguistic Anthropology*. Malden: Blackwell. Pp. 23–45.
- Agha, Asif, & Frog (eds.) 2014 (forthcoming). *Registers of Communication*. Studia Fennica Linguistica. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society.
- Allen, Graham 2000. *Intertextuality*. New Critical Idiom. New York: Routledge.
- Alter, Harvey J. 1995. To C or Not to C: These Are the Questions. *Blood: Journal of the American Society of Hematology* 85 (7): 1681–1695.
- Arata, Catalina M. 1998. To Tell or Not to Tell: Current Functioning of Child Sexual Abuse Survivors Who Disclosed Their Victimization. *Child Maltreatment* 3 (1): 63–71.
- Asplund Ingemark, Camilla 2004. *The Genre of Trolls: The Case of a Finland-Swedish Folk Belief Tradition*. Åbo: Åbo Akademi University Press.
- Austin, J. L. 1962. *How to Do Things with Words: The Williams James Lectures Delivered at Harvard University in 1955*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Bakhtin, M. M. 1986 [1952–1953]. The Problem of Speech Genres. In Bakhtin 1986: 60–102.
- Bakhtin, M. M. 1986 [1976]. The Problem of the Text in Linguistics, Philology, and the Human Sciences: An Experiment in Philosophical Analysis. In Bakhtin 1986: 103–131.
- Bakhtin, M. M. 1981. *The Dialogic Imagination. Four Essays by M. M. Bakhtin*. Ed. Michael Ed. Michael Holquist. Trans. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Bakhtin, M. M. 1986. *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Ed. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Trans. Vern W. McGee. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Bauman, Richard 1984. *Verbal Art as Performance*. Prospect Heights: Waveland Press.
- Bauman, Richard 1999. Genre. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 9 (1–2): 84–87.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1976a. Analytical Categories and Ethnic Genres. In Ben-Amos 1976b: 215–242.
- Ben-Amos, Dan (ed.) 1976b. *Folklore Genres*. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1976c. Introduction. In Ben-Amos 1976b: ix–xlv.
- Biber, Douglas 1995. *Dimensions of Register Variation: A Cross-Linguistic Comparison*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Borjas, George J. 1998. To Ghetto or Not to Ghetto: Ethnicity and Residential Segregation. *Journal of Urban Economics* 44 (2): 228–253.
- Bourdieu, Pierre 1977. *Outline of a Theory of Practice*. Trans. Richard Nice. Cambridge Studies in Social and Cultural Anthropology 16. Cambridge.
- Briggs, Charles L., & Richard Bauman 1992. Genre, Intertextuality, and Social Power. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 2 (2): 131–172.
- Choi, S.W., C. H. Park, T. M. Silva, E. I. Zaenker & R. L. Guerrant 1996. To Culture or Not to Culture: Fecal Lactoferrin Screening for Inflammatory Bacterial Diarrhea. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* 34 (4): 928–932.
- Clunies Ross, Margaret 2005. *A History of Old Norse Poetry and Poetics*. Cambridge: D.S. Brewer.
- Clunies Ross, Margaret, & B. K. Martin 1986. Narrative Structures and Intertextuality in *Snorra Edda*: The Example of Þórr's Encounter with Geirröðr. In *Structure and Meaning in Old Norse Literature: New Approaches to Textual Analysis and Literary Criticism*.

- Ed. John Lindow, Lars Lönnroth & Gerd Wolfgang Weber. Odense: Odense University. Pp. 56–72.
- Coleridge, Samuel 1898 [1789]. *Coleridge's Rime of the Ancient Mariner*. Ed Lincoln R. Gibbs. Boston: Ginn & Co.
- Cooper, Lane 1932. *The Rhetoric of Aristotle*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Dégh, Linda 1985. 'When I Was Six We Moved West ...': The Theory of Personal Experience Narrative. *New York Folklore* 11: 99–108.
- Dégh, Linda, & Andrew Vázsonyi 1976 [1971]. Legend and Belief. In Ben-Amos 1976b: 93–123.
- Dégh, Linda, & Andrew Vázsonyi 1975. The Hypothesis of Multi-Conduit Transmission in Folklore. In Dan Ben Amos & Kenneth Goldstein (eds.) *Folklore: Performance and Communication*. Approaches to Semiotics 40. The Hague: Mouton. Pp. 207–254.
- Dundes, Alan 1962. From Etic to Emic Units in the Structural Study of Folktales. *Journal of American Folklore* 75 (296): 95–105.
- Dundes, Alan 1980 [1964]. Texture, Text, and Context. In *Interpreting Folklore*. By Alan Dundes. Bloomington: University of Indiana Press. Pp. 20–32.
- Felsot, Allan S. 1998. Numbers, Numbers Everywhere – And Not a Drop of Meaning. *Journal of Environmental Law and Litigation* 13 (1): 91–114.
- Fine, Elizabeth Calvert 1984. *The Folklore Text: From Performance to Print*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Finnegan, Ruth 1977. *Oral Poetry: Its Nature, Significance and Social Context*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Foley, John Miles 1988. *The Theory of Oral Composition: History and Methodology*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Foley, John Miles 1991. *Immanent Art: From Structure to Meaning in Traditional Oral Epic*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Foley, John Miles 1993 [1991]. *Traditional Oral Epic: The Odyssey, Beowulf, and the Serbo-Croatian Return Song*. Los Angeles: University of California Press.
- Foley, John Miles 1995. *The Singer of Tales in Performance*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Foley, John Miles 2002. *How to Read an Oral Poem*. Urbana: University of Illinois Press.
- Foley, John Miles 2004. Epic as Genre. In Robert Louis Fowler (ed.) *The Cambridge Companion to Homer*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 171–187.
- Frog 2010a. *Baldr and Lemminkäinen: Approaching the Evolution of Mythological Narrative through the Activating Power of Expression. A Case Study in Germanic and Finno-Karelian Cultural Contact and Exchange*. UCL Eprints. London: University College London.
- Frog 2010b. Multiformit kalevalamittaisessa epiikassa. In Seppo Knuuttila, Ulla Piela & Lotte Tarkka (eds.) *Kalevalamittaisen runon tulkintoja*. Kalevalaseuran vuosikirja 89. Helsinki: Suomen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 91–113.
- Frog 2010c. Narratiiv kui ravi: Riituse-etendus ja narratiivi aktualiseerumine kogemusena. *Mäetagused* 45: 7–38.
- Frog 2011. Distinguishing Continuities: Textual Entities, Extra-Textual Entities and Conceptual Schemas. *RMN Newsletter* 2: 7–15.
- Frog 2012. Confluence, Continuity and Change in the Evolution of Myth: Cultural Activity and the Finno-Karelian Sampo-Cycle. In Frog, Anna-Leena Siikala & Eila Stepanova (eds.) *Mythic Discourses: Studies in Uralic Traditions*. Studia Fennica Folkloristica 20. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 205–254.
- Frog 2013. Revisiting the Historical-Geographic Method. *RMN Newsletter* 7: 18–34.

- Frog 2014 (forthcoming). Myth, Mythological Thinking and the Viking Age in Finland. In Frog and Joonas Ahola (eds.) *Defining and Contextualizing the Viking Age in Finland*. Manuscript proposed for the Studia Fennica Historica series. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society.
- Gastpar, M., B. Rimoldi & M. Vetterli 2003. To Code, or Not to Code: Lossy Source-Channel Communication Revisited. *Information Theory* 49 (5): 1147–1158.
- Gills, John R. 1996. *A World of Their Own Making: Myth, Ritual, and the Quest for Family Values*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Goldberg, A. E. 2006. *Constructions at Work: The Nature of Generalization in Language*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Hafstein, V. 2001. Biological Metaphors in Folklore Theory: An Essay in the History of Ideas. *Arv* 57: 7–32.
- Halliday, M. A. K. 1978. *Language as Social Semiotic: The Social Interpretation of Language and Meaning*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Halliday, M. A. K., & J. R. Martin 1993. *Writing Science: Literacy and the Discourse of Power*. Routledge.
- Hanks, William F. 1987. Discourse Genres in a Theory of Practice. *American Ethnologist* 14 (4): 668–692.
- Hanks, William F. 1990. *Referential Practice: Language and Lived Space among the Maya*. Chicago: Chicago University Press.
- Harris, Trudier 1995. Genre. *Journal of American Folklore* 108 (430): 509–527.
- Hebert, Craig E., & Karen A. Keenleyside 1995. To Normalize or Not to Normalize? – Fat Is the Question. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* 14 (5): 801–807.
- Hetts, Steven W. 1998. To Die or Not to Die: An Overview of Apoptosis and Its Role in Disease. *Journal of the American Medical Association* 279 (4): 300–307.
- Honko, Lauri 1962. *Geisterglaube in Ingermanland*. FF Communications 185. Helsinki: Suomalainen Tiedeakatemia.
- Honko, Lauri 1981a. Four Forms of Adaptation of Tradition. In Lauri Honko & V. Voigt (eds.) *Adaptation, Change, and Decline in Oral Literature*. Studia Fennica 26. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 19–33.
- Honko, Lauri 1981b. Traditionsekologi: En Introduktion. In Lauri Honko & Orvar Löfgren (eds.) *Tradition och Miljö: Ett kulturekologiskt Perspektiv*. NIF Publications 11. Lund: Liber Läromedel. Pp. 9–63.
- Honko, Lauri 1985. Rethinking Tradition Ecology. *Temenos* 21: 55–82.
- Honko, Lauri 1989. Folkloristic Theories of Genre. *Studia Fennica* 33: 13–28.
- Honko, Lauri 2000a. Text as Process and Practice: The Textualization of Oral Epics. In Lauri Honko (ed.) *Textualization of Oral Epics*. Trends in Linguistics 128. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter. Pp. 3–54.
- Honko, Lauri 2000b. Thick Corpus and Organic Variation: An Introduction. In Lauri Honko (ed.) *Thick Corpus, Organic Variation and Textuality in Oral Tradition*. Studia Fennica Folkloristica 7. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 3–28.
- Hudlicka, Eva 2003. To Feel or Not to Feel: The Role of Affect in Human–Computer Interaction. *International Journal of Human-Computer Studies* 59 (1–2): 1–32.
- Hymes, Dell 1975. Breakthrough into Performance. In Dan Ben Amos & Kenneth Goldstein (eds.) *Folklore: Performance and Communication*. Approaching Semiotics 40. The Hague: Mouton. Pp. 11–74.
- Hymes, Dell 1981. *In Vain I Tried to Tell You: Essays in Native American Ethnopoetics*. Philadelphia.



- Hymes, Dell 1986. Models of the Interaction of Language and Social Life. In John J. Gumperz and Dell Hymes (eds.) *Directions in Sociolinguistics: The Ethnography of Communication*. Oxford. Pp. 35–71.
- Hymes, Dell 2001. On Communicative Competence. In Alessandro Duranti (ed.) *Linguistic Anthropology: A Reader*. Oxford. Pp. 53–73.
- Jauss, Hans Robert 1970. Literary History as a Challenge to Literary Theory. *New Literary History* 2 (1): 7–37.
- Jauss, Hans Robert 1982. *Toward an Aesthetic of Reception*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Jonsson, Bengt R. 1991. Oral Literature, Written Literature: The Ballad and old Norse Genres. In *The Ballad and Oral Literature*. Harvard English Studies 17. Cambridge: Harvard University Press. Pp. 139–170.
- Kallio, Kati 2011. Interperformative Relationships in Ingrian Oral Poetry. *Oral Tradition* 25 (2): 391–427.
- Kallio, Kati 2013. *Laulamisen tapoja: Esitysareena, rekisteri ja paikallinen laji länsi-inkeriläisessä kalevalamittaisessa runossa*. Helsinki: Helsingin yliopisto.
- Kamppinen, Matti 1989. *Cognitive Systems and Cultural Models of Illness: A Study of Two Mestizo Peasant Communities of the Peruvian Amazon*. FF Communications 244. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Khwaja, Asim Ijaz, Atif Mian & Bilal Zia 2010. Dollars Dollars Everywhere, Nor Any Dime to Lend: Credit Limit Constraints on Financial Sector Absorptive Capacity. *The Review of Financial Studies* 23: 4281–4323.
- Korner, J., & R. L. Leibel 2003. To Eat or Not to Eat: How the Gut Talks to the Brain. *New England Journal of Medicine* 349 (10): 926–928.
- Kristeva, Julia 1980 [1969] Word, Dialogue, and Novel. In Leon S. Roudiez. Trans. Thomas Gora, Alice Jardine & Leon S. Roudiez (eds.) *Desire in Language: A Semiotic Approach to Literature and Art*. Oxford: Blackwell. Pp. 64–91.
- Kristeva, Julia 1984 [1974]. *Revolution in Poetic Language*. Trans. Margaret Waller. New York.
- Kroskrity, Paul V. 2001. Language Ideologies. In Alessandro Duranti (ed.) *A Companion to Linguistic Anthropology*. Malden: Blackwell. Pp. 496–517.
- Kuiper, Koenraad 2009. *Formulaic Genres*. Palgrave Macmillan
- Labov, William 1972. *Language in the Inner City: Studies in Black Vernacular English*. Conduct and Communication 3. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Labov, William 2002. *Ordinary Events*. [online]  
<ftp://www.ling.upenn.edu/%7Elabov/Papers/OE.pdf>
- Lakoff, George 1986. *Women, Fire, and Dangerous Things. What Categories Reveal about the Mind*. University of Chicago Press, Chicago.
- Leow, Ronald P. & Kara Morgan-Short 2004. To Think Aloud or Not to Think Aloud: The Issue of Reactivity in SLA Research Methodology. *Studies in Second Language Acquisition* 26 (1): 35–57.
- Little, Todd D., William A. Cunningham, Golan Shahar & Keith F. Widaman 2002. To Parcel or Not to Parcel: Exploring the Question, Weighing the Merits. *Structural Equation Modeling* 9 (2): 151–173.
- Lomicka, Lara 1998. ‘To Gloss or Not to Gloss’: An Investigation of Reading Comprehension Online. *Language Learning & Technology* 1 (2): 41–50.
- Longacre, Robert E. 1968. *Philippine Languages: Discourse, Paragraph and Sentence*. Publications in Linguistics and Related Fields 21. Santa Ana: Summer Institute of Linguistics.

- Lord, Albert B. 1960. *The Singer of Tales*. Harvard Studies in Comparative Literature 24. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Lotman, Yuri M. 1990. *Universe of the Mind: A Semiotic Theory of Culture*. Trans. Ann Shukman. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Martin, J. R. 1997. Analyzing Genre: Functional Parameters. In Frances Christie & J. R. Martin (eds.) *Genre and Institutions: Social Processes in the Workplace and School*. London: Cassell. Pp. 3–39.
- Martin, J. R. 2001. Language, Register and Genre. In A. Burns & C. Coffin (eds.) *Analysing English in a Global Context: A Reader*. Clevedon: Routledge. Pp. 149–166
- Martin, Richard P. 2005. Epic as Genre. In John Miles Foley (ed.) *A Companion to Ancient Epic*. Oxford: Blackwell. Pp. 9–19.
- Nagy, Gregory 1990. *Pindar's Homer: The Lyric Possession of an Epic Past*. Baltimore: John Hopkins University Press.
- Nordhaus, William D. 1991. To Slow or Not to Slow: The Economics of the Greenhouse Effect. *The Economic Journal* 101 (407): 920–937.
- Nunan, David 2007. *What Is This Thing Called Language?* London: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Nunan, David 2008. Exploring Genre and Register in Contemporary English: Looking at Two Concepts, How They Differ, and How They Can Be Used for the Analysis of Texts. *English Today* 94 (24/2): 56–61.
- OED = Oxford English Dictionary I–XX*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1989.
- Pawley, Andrew 2009. Grammarians' Languages versus Humanists' Languages and the Place of Speech Act Formulas in Models of Linguistic Competence. In Corrigan et al. (eds.) *Formulaic Language I–II*. Typological Studies in Language 82–83. Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing. Pp. 3–26.
- Propp, Vladimir 1958. *Morphology of the Folktale*. Ed. Satava Pirkova-Jakobson. Trans. Laurence Scott. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Read, Jen'nan Ghazal, & John P. Bartkowski 2000. To Veil or Not to Veil? – A Case Study of Identity Negotiation among Muslim Women in Austin, Texas. *Gender & Society* 14 (3): 395–417
- Rensink, Ronald A., J. Kevin O'Regan & James J. Clark 1997. To See or Not to See: The Need for Attention to Perceive Changes in Scenes. *Psychological Science* 8 (5): 368–373.
- Risse, Thomas, Daniela Engelmann-Martin, Hans-Joachim Knope & Klaus Roscher 1999. To Euro or Not to Euro? – The EMU and Identity Politics in the European Union. *European Journal of International Relations* 5 (2): 147–187.
- Saarinen, Jukka 2013. Behind the Text: Reconstructing the Voice of a Singer. *RMN Newsletter* 7: 34–43.
- Sampson, John 1997. 'Genre', 'Style' and 'Register': Sources of Confusion? In *Revue belge de philologie et l'histoire* 75 (3): 699–708.
- Sanchez-Ruiza, Jose M., & George I. Makhatadze 2001. To Charge or Not to Charge?. *Trends in Biotechnology* 19 (4): 132–135.
- Saussure, Ferdinand de 1967 [1916]. *Cours de linguistique générale*. Paris: Éditions Payot & Rivages.
- Searle, John R. 1969. *Speech Acts: An Essay in the Philosophy of Language*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Sebeok, Thomas A. 1994. *An Introduction to Semiotics*. London: Pinter Publishers.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena 1990a. *Interpreting Oral Narrative*. FF Communications. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena 1990b. Runolaulun käytäntö ja runoston kehitys. In Pekka Hakamies (ed.) *Runo, alue, merkitys: Kirjoituksia vanhan kansanrunon alueellisesta muotoutumisesta*. Joensuu.

- Siikala, Anna-Leena 2002. The Singer Ideal and the Enrichment of Poetic Culture: Why Did the Ingredients for the *Kalevala* Come from Viena Karelia?. In Honko 2002: 26–43.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena 2012. *Itämerensuomalaisten mytologia*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- SKVR = *Suomen Kansan Vanhat Runot I–XV*. 1908–1997. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Smith, Nathan 2006. Water, Water Everywhere, and Not a Bite to Eat: Sovereign Immunity, Federal Disaster Relief, and Hurricane Katrina. *San Diego Law Review* 43 (3): 699–732.
- Stepanova, Eila 2009. Itkukielen metaforat ja itkujen dramaturgia. In Pekka Huttu-Hiltunen, Frog, Janne Seppänen, Eila Stepanova (eds.) *Kantele, runolaulu ja itkuvirsi: Runolaulu-Akatemian seminaarijulkaisu*. Juminkeko Julkaisuja 76, Juminkeko-Säätiön Kansanmusiikin Julkaisuja 11. Jyväskylä: Juminkeko. Pp. 13–25, 113.
- Stepanova, Eila 2014 (forthcoming). *Seesjärven Karjalan itkuvirsi*. PhD dissertation. University of Helsinki.
- Survo, Arno 2012. The Mythology of a ‘Forgotten’ Text. In Frog, Anna-Leena Siikala & Eila Stepanova (eds.) *Mythic Discourses: Studies in Uralic Traditions*. Studia Fennica Folkloristica 20. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 380–395.
- Tannen, Deborah 1982. Oral and Literate Strategies in Spoken and Written Narratives. *Language* 58 (1): 1–21.
- Tarkka, Lotte 2013. *Songs of the Border People: Genre, Intertextuality and Tradition in Kalevala-Meter Poetry*. FF Communications 305. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Thomas, P. L. 2001. Standards, Standards Everywhere, and Not a Spot to Think. *The English Journal* 91 (1): 63–67.
- Todorov, Tzvetan 1977. *The Poetics of Prose*. Trans. Richard Howard. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
- Todorov, Tzvetan 1981. *Introduction to Poetics*. Theory and History of Literature 1. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Tomasello, Michael 2003. *Constructing a Language: A Usage-Based Theory of Language Acquisition*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Valk, Ülo 2012. Thunder and Lightning in Estonian Folklore in the Light of Vernacular Theories. In Frog, Anna-Leena Siikala & Eila Stepanova (eds.) *Mythic Discourses: Studies in Uralic Traditions*. Studia Fennica Folkloristica 20. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 40–67.
- Vimr, Eric, & Carol Lichtensteiger 2002. To Sialylate, or Not to Sialylate: That Is the Question. *Trends in Microbiology* 10 (6): 254–257.
- Vogel, David L. & Stephen R. Wester 2003. To Seek Help or Not to Seek Help: The Risks of Self-Disclosure. *Journal of Counseling Psychology* 50 (3): 351–361.
- Vološinov, V. N. 1930 [1929]. *Марксизм и философия языка*. Ленинград: Прибой.
- Vološinov, V. N. 1973. *Marxism and the Philosophy of Language*. Trans. Ladislav Matejka & I.R. Titunik. New York.
- Wehrle, Albert J. 1978. Introduction. In *The Formal Method in Literary Scholarship: A Critical Introduction to Sociological Poetics*. By Medvedev, P. N. / M. M. Bakhtin. Trans. Albert J. Wehrle. Baltimore: John Hopkins University Press. Pp. ix–xxiv.
- Wüthrich, Christian 2005. To Quantize or Not to Quantize: Fact and Folklore in Quantum Gravity. *Philosophy of Science* 72 (5): 777–788.

# Linguistic Genre Analyses, Intertextuality, and Ideology

**Vesa Heikkinen**

Genre analysis is popular in many fields of the humanistic and social sciences; and linguistics does not constitute an exception in this sense. This paper will set out to explore what kinds of genre analyses linguists do and what these analyses can contribute to other disciplines. Besides the concept of genre, this paper will delve into its proximate concepts, intertextuality and ideology.

The objective of this paper is to paint a general picture of the different linguistic conceptions of genre and to shed light on how they can contribute to researchers within other disciplines who are interested in genres. This discussion is based on Fennistics, research into the Finnish language, which has recently started to make use of a variety of genre perspectives (see Juvonen, Virtanen & Voutilainen 2012). In fact, many of the genre-focused Fennists have endeavoured to preserve the connection with questions of grammar and the linguistic orientations exploring them (see Honkanen, Lehti, Makkonen-Craig, Virtanen & Visakko 2012: 619).<sup>1</sup> In general terms we can say that the Fennists interested in genres pursue cooperation across disciplinary boundaries. Recent examples of these include the *Handbook of Genre Analysis*, which was published as a result of a research project driven by a team of Fennists (Heikkinen et al. eds. 2012a) and the auxiliary web publication (Heikkinen et al. eds. 2012b).<sup>2</sup>

Genre as a theme is investigated in many fields; however, genre is by no means the focus of research in all of them. In very general terms, we can talk about 1) core disciplines, including literature research, film studies, and folkloristics; 2) disciplines sensitive to the theme, including translation studies, education theory, and journalistic; and 3) potential genre

---

<sup>1</sup> This basis entails that the present paper often refers to studies on the Finnish language and, at the same time, to studies written in Finnish. In the list of references, the names of the studies have been translated into English. – I wish to thank Marja Heikkinen for translating this paper.

<sup>2</sup> The *Handbook* offers not only conceptual reviews and methods articles, but also thirty-five discipline-specific reviews (e.g. philosophy, semiotics, and history of arts), including reviews on approximately a dozen of branches of linguistics (e.g. onomastics, construction grammar, and sociolinguistics). The minimum objective is that genre researchers representing different disciplines could learn to understand the concepts and language other genre researchers use. As far as I know, genre handbooks as wide as the present one and covering as many disciplines have not been published elsewhere. (For other general reviews of genre and genre research, see, e.g., Bawarshi & Reiff 2010; Bhatia 1993; 2004; Devitt 2004; Martin & Rose 2008; Paltridge 1997; Swales 1990; 2004; see also GXB 2013, Bibliography; for reviews in Finnish, see, e.g., Heikkinen ed. 2009; Honkanen, Lehti, Makkonen-Craig, Virtanen & Visakko 2012; Mäntynen, Shore & Solin eds. 2006; Nieminen 2010; Saukkonen 2001.)

disciplines, including sociology, psychology, and legal studies. In the core disciplines, genre is a central concept, and it has in certain cases had an effect on the birth of the entire discipline. In disciplines sensitive to genre, genre has always been a central phenomenon, but the approach to genre in them has mostly focused on other concepts, and the terminology has not necessarily become established. In the potential genre disciplines, researchers may think that their research has nothing to do with genre. On closer inspection, however, it is found that many of the studies conducted in these disciplines are, in fact, closely connected to genre, even though the researchers have traditionally adopted another approach to their research problems, using different concepts and methods. (See Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 39–45.)

Although genre analysis is popular in many fields of science, the theoretical and empirical potential of genre has remained widely unexploited (see Steen 2011: 24), especially the potential enabled by a multidisciplinary approach. Different fields of research deal with genre questions typically on the basis of the specific traditions and concepts of the field, and interaction crossing the fields' boundaries does not occur naturally. International scenes of genre studies show a tendency to cross the borders (see, e.g., GXB 2013); however, rather steep differences of opinion can be witnessed between the different orientations of genre analysis concerning, e.g., the position of linguistic analysis in research (see Honkanen, Lehti, Makkonen-Craig, Virtanen & Visakko 2012).

This paper aims to show that language is unavoidably at the very core of the genre theme and that the achievements of linguistics can also be applied by others than linguists. The paper draws attention to the fact that you can study language even if you are not a linguist – at least from the genre perspective. In Finland we have, in fact, good examples of, e.g., social scientific research making use of a given sector of linguistic theory (e.g. Vuori's analysis of the genre of parental guides, which was based on the systemic-functional theory 2001; or Hyvärinen's discussions on narratives based on the same theory, see e.g. 2012).

At the core of this paper is an idea of genres as a natural gap-bridging concept that could serve as the basis for more interdisciplinary cooperation. The patterns of human activity are not subordinate to the boundaries between different spheres of life and thus, genre studies, too, should often cross the borders of different disciplines, in some cases even question them (Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 19). The GXB, i.e. Genre across borders project shows a similar tendency. The idea behind GXB is that genre is “a concept and construct that crosses disciplinary, national, methodological, conceptual, and pedagogical borders”. The aim of GXB

is “to advance genre theory and research by helping scholars and students cross these borders”. (See GXB 2013.)

The use of genre as a gap-bridging concept is not necessarily aided by the fact that many fields have their own terms that are more or less established, which researchers use to describe similar things. This causes misunderstandings and talking past each other, as well as intentional disregarding of “strange disciplines”: researchers only engage in discussions with those who use the same terminology, i.e. “speak the same language”.

Instead of genre, parallel to genre, and in connection with genre, Finnish researchers – and this may occur in much wider research circles internationally, too – use terms such as *lajityyppi* [‘variety’] (on sociology, see Aro, Alastalo & Lempiäinen 2012), *perinteenlaji* [‘type of tradition’] (on folkloristics, see Lehtipuro 2012), *moodi* [‘mode’] (on cultural studies, see Vainikkala 2012) and *kategoria* [‘category’] (on social research into work, see Raitakari & Günther 2012). In linguistics, the favourite terms have included *rekisteri* [‘register’] (e.g. Halliday 1978; Martin 1985; Biber 1994; Agha 2007; in Finnish, see Voutilainen 2012a), *tyyli* [‘style’] (e.g. Enkvist 1973; Semino 2011; in Finnish, see Voutilainen 2012b), *diskurssi* [‘discourse’] (e.g. Fairclough 1992; van Dijk 1998; Solin 2001; in Finnish, see Heikkinen 2012a), and *tekstityyppi* [‘text-type’] (Werlich 1975; 1976; Fludernik 2000; in Finnish, see Lauerma 2012).

The concept of genre and, more generally, talking about genre, are often associated with the concepts of language and text. From the perspective of mutual understanding it is problematic that the conceptions of these two basic concepts – language and text – vary considerably in different disciplines. For example, parallel to text, the notions of spoken and written language exist and they are accompanied by the wider concepts of cultural products (e.g. Sevänen 2011: 44–45) and semiotic objects (e.g. Kress 2010: 110), as well as their types. In fact, we can think that text, in a wide sense, can refer to any body of meaning constructed by people and transmitted by people to other people, or a body of meaning constructed in human interaction (coffee table conversations, websites, art paintings, operas, music videos, etc.). This network of concepts is further supplemented by such popular and useful concepts as intertextuality and multimodality. The terms are used in varied ways even within one and the same discipline and it cannot be said that the way the terms are used would be widely established (see Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 39–45).

This is where linguists may have something to contribute: they can try to open the concepts used in different disciplines and thus enhance understanding between researchers. The overall objective could even be to make disciplines that are far from each other (in terms of language) closer by facilitating mutual understanding and even by creating common terminology and language that crosses disciplinary boundaries. Yet, it must be recognized that linguistics as such contains many diverging branches and there is not nearly always a consensus within it concerning the terminology used.

We may have to accept that basically, genre can at best serve as an upper-level concept in multidisciplinary research, used to conceptualize the common field of research and more specific research questions. Other gap-bridging concepts at this abstract level may include ideology and intertextuality, which are closely connected to genre. Even if the origins of all of these concepts can be traced back to sources other than the linguistic tradition and even if they are used in many disciplines and therefore theoretically rather overloaded, it is linguistic text and discourse studies that have pursued to make them more concrete in order that they would be useful in language, text, and discourse analyses in practice. More generally, it can be concluded that the heavy empirical focus of the branches of linguistics taking an interest in genre – the fact that the versatile interpretations of the research material are seen as associated with the linguistic choices and, at the same time, grammar – can provide additional value to the methods of analysis and argumentation when applied to other sciences. Through exact linguistic analysis and, for example, with a well-grounded theory of meaning, interpretations of different generic data can turn even more convincing.

Thus, this paper is metatheoretical and metamethodical in nature, i.e. it describes, summarizes, interprets, and evaluates previous theory building and methodology. Point 1 describes the mainstreams of international linguistic genre thinking (the core source being Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012). Point 2 centres on what kinds of approaches to genre have been adopted in Fennistics (with Juvonen, Virtanen & Voutilainen 2012 as the core source). Point 3 pays attention to genre and the position of the closely connected concepts of intertextuality and ideology in linguistic genre analysis. It also outlines such analytic questions concerning genre, intertextuality, and ideology that can be applied to various generic analyses in a scope wider than that of linguistics (the core sources are Heikkinen 2012b; Heikkinen, Lauerma & Tiililä 2012a; 2012b; and the research literature presented in them). This paper pays attention to both basic research and the application of knowledge acquired through research. Multidisciplinary

genre research creates broad-ranging knowledge that can be applied to education, working life and, more generally, to human interaction – and, above all, it provides a basis for increased language and genre awareness. This aspect will be briefly discussed at the end of the paper.

### **Mainstreams of Linguistic Genre Analysis**

Whilst talking about linguistic genre analysis, we must note that we are not dealing with a uniform field of research or way of doing linguistic analysis. There are many divergent views, starting from the question of what constitutes language, and there are also many different types of linguistics: cognitive, computational, contrastive, formal, functional etc.; diachronic, general, structural, synchronic, theoretical etc. (e.g. Crystal 2008: s.v. linguistics; McCabe 2011: 344–374). Linguistics studies its basic object, i.e. language, from many perspectives, through varied theories and sets of data. Thus, it is by no means surprising that there are varied views in linguistics even about the types of language use and the concept of genre (a summary on the definitions applied in linguistics, see Nieminen 2010: 91–92; and Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 22–23). There is no individual all-encompassing linguistic genre theory and, in fact, there is no need for one, either. Instead, it could be worthwhile to consider what kinds of parallel basic elements the linguistic genre theories contain that could prove useful even in wider contexts.

In some branches of linguistics genre is presently one of the central concepts, especially in the branches that focus on the study of language use. This has not always been so. A large part of the early linguistics focused on the study of phonemes and linguistic features; it was not concerned with language use, texts, and genres. The growing interest in genres has had to do with a shift in the focus of interest towards meaning – linguistics has taken a step “from form to meaning” – and the fact that the scope of research has extended to units larger than words and sentences, now covering entire texts. At the same time, an orientation has gained ground within linguistics which, instead of settling with the analysis of the linguistic system, takes an interest in the investigation of the varied functions of language use.

In general terms we can say that the branches of linguistic genre research – and other types of genre research, too – is divided by how the actual research object is defined. The different approaches to this issue can be divided in two categories: 1) branches focusing on concrete products of events and their structure which are presumed to be an outcome of the genre; 2) branches focusing on the practices of genre production and consumption (Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 24). From the perspective of linguistics, this division in two could be



summarized as two different approaches, one of which sees language as a product (text) and the other of which sees language as action (producing and using texts). In practical analyses, however, the two approaches often merge.

There is yet a third significant approach, which views genres essentially as mentally conceivable, cognitive items (see e.g. Paltridge 1997; Saukkonen 2012; Steen 2011). In practice, the different focuses can be seen in, e.g., what kinds of methods and data are used; however, from the point of view of theory building, the focuses on texts, action, or cognition can be seen as supporting and complementing each other. In fact, in general terms, we can say that many branches of linguistics that have developed genre theory are united on an abstract level by their idea of the basic nature of genres. Genre can be seen in general as a schematic phenomenon at the level of discourse and interaction which prevails behind individual texts and other cultural products, guiding their production and reception, yet being flexible and changing along with them. Such a definition takes into account the textual and social, as well as the cognitive dimensions of genre. Linguistic genre approaches are also often united by the idea that the existence of an abstract and schematic genre cannot be perceived as such. Instead, we can perceive and observe, as well as analyse the concrete outcomes of genre, which are called texts in general terms: conversations, writings, paintings, films, etc. (see Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 23.)

Linguists have attempted to clarify the differentiation of the concepts which is based on the level of abstraction by talking about textual features on the one hand, and about generic features on the other hand at a very general level. Textual features refer to linguistic details. They are concrete, absolute, and can be demonstrated in texts (e.g. *necessive structures*). As for generic features, they are characteristics of texts. They are abstract, relative, and can be interpreted from texts (e.g. *expressions of obligation and necessity*). (Heikkinen 2009: 22–23; Saukkonen 2001: 30–37.) For example, the generic feature of “directivity” in circular letters by government officials may be realized in language as different clauses expressing possibility or necessity and the related verb structures (e.g. Honkanen 2009).

International genre literature often cites the following three orientations of genre studies as the predominant ones: 1) Systemic-Functional Linguistics, 2) ESP, i.e. “English for Specific Purposes”, and 3) New Rhetoric (in this paper, I will be concentrating on these three). Recently, these have been accompanied by other orientations, too, including the Brazilian Genre Studies and French-Swiss Socio-Discursive Interactionism (see Honkanen, Lehti, Makkonen-Craig,

Virtanen & Visakko 2012: 618). Even corpus linguistics has been presented as one of the core branches of genre studies (e.g. Bawarshi & Reiff 2010). Although the different orientations are sometimes referred to as schools, it is essential from the perspective of genre analyses that their views of genre vary internally and that the traditions overlap in individual studies. (See Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012.) The boundaries between the schools are woolly and many studies draw from the views of different orientations. (Honkanen et al. id.)

*Orientation 1: Systemic-Functional Linguistics.* 1) Analyses based on SFL usually focus on concrete texts, their linguistic choices, phrasal and textual structures. However, the SFL theory also strongly underscores the functional nature of language use, and some researchers have drawn attention to the fact that different things are done in different parts of the texts, which means that the different parts serve the purposes of the genre. (See Shore 2012a; 2012b.) In Hasan's (1985) terms, we can talk about generic stages or moves. In fact, the SF theory has played a central role in providing linguistic genre analysis with a structural perspective. What has been an especially significant step forward in genre studies based on text analysis is the observation that lexical and grammatical features are not necessarily divided evenly even within one and the same text but they often vary systematically according to the stage or move of the text. (See Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 25.) However, Shore (2012b: 160), among others, has suggested that although genres are often structured in stages, stages are not necessary for all genres: for example, it may be difficult to detect stages in an advertisement.

There is no consensus on the concepts referring to the genre of language use within the SF theory; for example, the founder of this school, M. A.K. Halliday (e.g. 1978) and his colleague and student J. R. Martin (e.g. 1992) have expressed partly diverging views on this issue. The most significant difference probably stems from the fact that Martin's Sydney School takes primary interest in the meaning of texts and discourse semantics, whereas the Hallidayan School focuses on phrase structures and the description of their meaning. This has been interpreted critically to mean that in Martin's model, discourse semantics has started to diverge from descriptions of grammar and the relationship of textual meanings to grammar is thus unexplicated. The differences in the two lines of thought are also seen in the concepts used: in Halliday's theory, one of the core concepts is register. It refers to the situational variation of language use, i.e. the way in which given linguistic potential is realized in given situations. The Sydney School sees register as a concept narrower than genre. Genre is considered to refer to

the social function of texts. Thus, genre is a purpose-driven social way of acting which progresses in stages. (See Shore 2012a.)

Irrespective of what type of systemic-functional genre analysis we are dealing with, all the approaches are essentially focused on the study of meanings. The analysis of meanings is based on what has been called the metafunction hypothesis (e.g. Halliday 1978). According to this hypothesis, language is used to 1) construe our world of experience and imagination (ideational metafunction), 2) create and maintain social relationships and create our relationship to what we and other people say (interpersonal metafunction), and 3) create cohesion in texts (textual metafunction). (See Shore 2012a: 148–149; Shore 2012b: 159.)

The systemic-functional approach has traditionally emphasized the immediate connection between language and the rest of human and social reality. Language and texts are not detached from the way people think or the ways in which groups of people act. In my view, one of SF theory's significant contributions to other genre-focused disciplines is that the meanings people produce can be analysed accurately and interpretations of texts are connected to the language users' choices that can be detected in the texts. Another essential contribution is the idea of meaning potential and the multi-level and multi-dimensional nature of texts. Meanings are not simply "contents", the way in which the world is described in linguistic terms; the analysis of meanings can also cover, e.g., phenomena associated with people's interactional roles and value choices. This theory has been applied not only to language but also to other systems of meaning production, including images (on multimodality, see e.g. Baldry ed. 2000; Kress & van Leeuwen 2006; Kress 2010).

Another idea that has been emphasized in the SF theory, interesting from the perspective of many other disciplines, is that human interaction is built stage by stage. As manifestations of interaction, texts are not lumps uniform in their dimensions of meaning. One part of a text may be concerned with mostly one specific activity, whereas another part may be concerned with another. Thus, even the linguistic choices in the texts are different: one stage may be mostly descriptive, another may be obliging, and yet another stage may be guiding. This essential observation has affected, e.g., corpus linguistic thinking. Traditionally, corpus linguistics, i.e. research concerned with the quantitative analysis and comparison of different linguistic and textual data (e.g. Biber 1988) has not paid much attention to the stages in texts. In contrast, the differences between genres and registers have been analysed by looking into the morphological, syntactic, or other linguistic features typical of different textual groups in large

sets of textual data or sets of data containing text passages. More recently, corpus linguistics has been developed towards directions that pay more attention to linguistic variation in texts (e.g. Biber, Connor & Upton 2007).

*Orientation 2: ESP (“English for Specific Purposes”.* In addition to Systemic-Functional Linguistics, a structural perspective on genres has been applied within ESP, English for Special Purposes, which is an orientation of applied linguistics. Besides analyzing the overall structure of genres, ESP linguists pay attention to the communicative purpose and position of genres in discourse communities. One of the most influential studies within ESP is John Swales’ paper on the structure of scientific papers (1990). In Swales’ hierarchical model, texts are divided into various obligatory moves. The moves are further divided into partly optional successive steps. (See e.g. Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 26–27.)

In terms of methodology, ESP has been considered to fall between the textual (structural) and action-based perspectives. The ESP analyses have combined various ethnographic approaches with linguistic analysis. Genres are primarily defined according to their communicative purposes, and a careful contextualization of texts is valued. These basic premises are largely similar to those of the New Rhetoric (see point 3). (See Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 28).

A core concept in ESP is that of discourse community. Following Swales’ (2004) definition, it involves the idea that each genre, as it were, belongs to a discourse community united by common goals and social backgrounds. The members of the community share a means of communication, which enables information exchange and feedback within the community. The established members of the community recognize the core genres used in the community and initiate new members to their norms and ways of producing and using them. (See Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 28–29.)

The ESP ideas about the structure of genres, communicative purposes, and discourse communities are more widely useful in many different types of genre studies, including those that are not linguistic. The idea of discourse communities, in particular, challenges any genre analyst irrespective of discipline to think about who “owns” the genres, what the relationships between genres are and how they are built; what kinds of genres can or cannot be owned; and who has access to the conventions of production and consumption of texts belonging to different genres. Analysing discourse communities unavoidably brings into focus questions about the different aspects of intertextuality and ideological meanings (see point 3).

The notion of discourse community has been criticized for, e.g., the fact that it does not sufficiently describe all kinds of genres, as all genres do not have a discourse community like, e.g., that of academic texts, which specialists write to each other. Problematic cases in this sense include such media texts that can be thought to be directed at a universal audience. In fact, the theory about discourse communities has been developed in many directions: we can talk about several and overlapping discourse communities. The communities can be internally heterogeneous. Some discourse communities show high integrity, whereas others hold together loosely. Discourse communities can consist of several subgroups that may have various objectives. (See Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 28–29.)

*Orientation 3: New Rhetoric.* All orientations of genre analysis do not focus on texts, i.e. the concrete manifestation of genres. Instead, many of them focus on analyzing how genres work from the perspective of the communities that use them and what kinds of conventions of production and consumption they involve. (See Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 27–30.) One of the most significant action-focused traditions is that of New Rhetoric (e.g. Miller 1984; Freedman & Medway eds. 1994; Devitt 2004). In New Rhetoric, genres are associated primarily with a given social situation and group, e.g., professional community. In such cases, the analysis is thickly ethnographic (Corbett 2006: 28). Instead of textual details, it brings into focus the situational, cultural, and material frameworks and contexts in which texts are produced and received with the help of genres and through genres (Heikkinen & Voutilainen id: 28).

However, New Rhetoric is not a single uniform orientation but it covers studies drawing on different traditions. On the one hand, we have the North American tradition, Rhetorical Genre Studies (RGS), which combines research into writing and teaching of writing, as well as into rhetoric, discourses, and genres (e.g. Miller 1984; Freedman & Medway eds. 1994; Devitt 2004). On the other hand, we have the philosophy-based, mostly European research tradition, which especially analyses the techniques of argumentation and persuasion. (See Honkanen, Lehti, Makkonen-Craig, Virtanen & Visakko 2012: 615; Mäntynen & Sääsکیlahti 2012: 194).

Carolyn Miller, who has been primarily linked to the North American tradition, defines genres in her watershed paper on New Rhetoric (1984: 151) as typified rhetorical forms, essentially connected to the typification of rhetorical situations. Frequently recurring situations are interpreted as the realizations of the same abstract situational type. They also usually elicit the same kinds of reactions. In this approach of New Rhetoric, a careful contextualization of the

research material plays a crucial role. Ethnographical methods, including fieldwork and interviews, are used extensively. (See Heikkinen & Voutilainen 2012: 28.)

The European New Rhetoric represents, as it were, the second coming of traditional rhetoric. However, rather than being normative, it assumes a more descriptive approach. What is essential from the perspective of genre analyses is the idea that texts are purpose-oriented. The analyses centre on how and how much the texts aim at influencing their recipients, and argumentation analysis may gain more focus than linguistic analysis. In addition, New Rhetoric seems to be based on features of social constructivism that resemble those of linguistic genre analyses. (See Mäntynen & Säaskilahti 2012: 196–197, 206.)

New Rhetoric – whether it refers to the school stressing ethnography or argumentation analysis – has contributed significantly to genre analyses focusing on language on the one hand and texts on the other. The central contribution of these approaches is that their ideas enrich “pure” linguistic analysis. They guide us to pay attention to the fact that texts always also entail activity between people and what is essential in this activity is that it usually involves an attempt to influence other people. These ideas are by no means conflicting with, e.g., the Systemic-Functional Theory or other linguistic genre theories foregrounding the social aspects of language use, even if the methods of analysis may differ in practice.

### **On the Guidelines of Fennistic Genre Analysis**

Multidisciplinarity is not a new phenomenon in the linguistic genre analyses. In Finland, we have had long-term connections with, e.g., folkloristics, literature studies, and social scientific discourse studies. In fact, we can say that folkloristics developed parallel to Fennistics until the 1960s in Finland, and it was folklorists who were particularly concerned with genres in this setting of coexistence (see Lehtipuro 2012). It may be worthwhile to take a look at the situation in Finland as a case example of how modern genre analysis, carried out in different fields, can have roots in several disciplines and how the new cross-disciplinary cooperation in the research into genre themes can be natural even in this sense. The common language of research can be rediscovered.

Fennistics as a whole was inseparable from literature studies and folkloristics until as late as the 19th century. At the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the disciplines started to grow apart, and Fennistics started to concentrate on the phonological and morphological features of the Finnish language. The analysis of Finnish-language texts was left in the hands of, e.g., literature

researchers and folklorists. However, it was as early as the 1960s that Fennistics, which had previously focused mostly on dialectal texts and corpora of fiction, started to turn more versatile even from a genre perspective. (Hakulinen & Leino 2006; Juvonen, Virtanen & Voutilainen 2012). Besides the international schools introduced in point 1, we can say that the present-day genre ideas within Fennistics are essentially based on literature theories (see Juntunen 2012) and, more generally, different fields of the arts (see Raatikainen 2012). For example, the linguistic studies focusing on genre-related use of power have drawn from discourse studies (see Solin 2012). At the same time, in Finland, too, linguistic text analysis and the orientations within linguistics interested in genres have contributed to the social scientific study of narratives (see Hyvärinen 2012), sociopolitical research (e.g. Kääriäinen 2003), and sociology and Women's Studies (e.g. Vuori 2001)

Fennistics developed a strong functional and contextual focus gradually at the turn of the 1990s (e.g. Kalliokoski 1989, a study on coordination and the use of coordinating conjunctions in several genres; Kalliokoski ed. 1996, studies on the relationship between texts and ideology; Karvonen 1995, a study on text book texts). This was seen especially as a stronger position of text analysis and, at a later stage, genre analysis. (See Juvonen, Virtanen & Voutilainen 2012.) At the beginning, genre was seen in the texts as a taken-for-granted variable and fact guiding the choice of the corpora. However, more recently, it has been problematized in many ways and it has become an actual focus of research. This shift in focus is illustrated by one of the theoretical conclusions of my doctoral dissertation on newspaper editorials (Heikkinen 1999): "Genre is an object of research, not a starting point from which meanings are derived for the purpose of interpreting individual texts." (Id. 260.) There are still only a few studies in Fennistics that place genre as an object of systematic theoretical and methodical analysis. Yet, many studies have produced genre knowledge on different types of texts and their linguistic characteristics as a by-product, as it were. (Juvonen, Virtanen & Voutilainen 2012: 454.)

Fennistic genre studies seem to stress perspectives similar to those of linguistic genre studies carried out elsewhere. We can talk about structural perspectives (e.g. overall structure of texts and phrase structures), feature perspectives (based on, e.g., the analysis of an individual feature in a large number of texts or the analysis of several features in a smaller number of texts), contextual perspectives (e.g. the processes of production and reception of texts), and cognitive perspectives (e.g. conceptualizing the world schematically from a given conventional overall perspective). (For more detail, see Juvonen, Virtanen & Voutilainen 2012.)

Fennistics has mostly approached genres from the point of view of qualitative language analysis. The quantitative observations have mainly led to mentions that a given feature occurs typically, usually, or generally. However, in Saukkonen's (1984, 2001, 2008) studies analysing the differences and similarities of extensive textual corpora, the quantitative perspective was adopted as the predominant one. Counting features has also been the basis of the Teko ('Tekstistä korpukseksi'; 'From text to corpus') project by the Institute for the Languages of Finland, which has combined the accurate qualitative analysis of texts with a semi-automatic feature analysis of larger textual corpora (see Heikkinen, Lounela & Voutilainen 2012: 338–340). Combining the quantitative with the qualitative in genre analyses has proved to be a worthwhile option. Corpus analysis carried out with analyser programmes can offer information about, e.g., which linguistic features are common in a given corpus and which features are rare. Detailed text analysis, in turn, shows what tasks these frequent or rare features can have in a text, from the point of view of a genre.

In general, Fennistic genre analysis has focused on well-established genres, especially those prevalent in working life and the media. The genres employed in schools and different educational institutes have recently started to gain more focus. Fennistic genre analysis has favoured the analyses of the overall structure and linguistic features, whereas the cognitive perspective has remained less utilized, at least in terms of methodology. With its strong focus on grammar and its study, Fennistic genre analysis has been considered to deviate from the mainstream of foreign genre analysis. (Juvonen, Virtanen & Voutilainen 2012: 466–469.) In the Handbook of Genre Analysis, this shows not only as the presentation of the genre applications of the Systemic-Functional Grammar (Shore 2012a; 2012b) but also as reviews of cognitive linguistics (Jaakola 2012) and construction grammar (Honkanen & Leino 2012)

### **From Genre to the Proximate Concepts and Application of Research Results**

Fennistic genre analyses, just like the various linguistic genre analyses relying on the international "schools", lead to or are intertwined in multiple ways with questions of the fundamental nature of genres; their significance to how individuals think and how communities made up by individuals act. These questions concern, e.g., language as meaning potential and language use as choices. The genre approach has, for its part, contributed to theories about language, at least in the sense that the linguistic system and grammar, and language as part of cognition, are currently seen more often as being connected with language use and human



interaction, as well as with other societal activity. These views have also become better justified.

We can say that the introduction of genre – or, better yet, if we think about the common history of, e.g., Fennistic linguistics and folkloristics – the return of genre to linguistics has made linguistics more open towards other disciplines, including cognition studies and social studies. At the same time, linguistics has been forced to develop new methods of analysing language and meanings and to adopt new terminology. The genre focus has made linguists more often obliged – but also privileged – to analyse basic questions of human interaction, such as what is understandable in different situations, how communication can succeed or fail, and how people create power and use it in relation to each other.

In particular, in such genre studies that aim to draw from multiple disciplines and create multidisciplinary cooperation, it is essential to have theoretical-methodical discussion on the terms, too, together with their different traditions of use. In the following, I will pay special attention to two proximate concepts of genre that support the linguistic genre thinking and have long been popular in many disciplines. These two concepts are intertextuality and ideology.

Intertextuality is a fundamental characteristic of texts and all production of meanings (see, e.g. Heikkinen, Lauerma & Tiililä 2012a). Language use is always linked to previous and future language use: language is fundamentally dialogic and “our own speech” is always assimilated into “others’ speech” (e.g. Bakhtin 1984; 1986; Vološinov 1990). Genres, too, are intertextual in many ways: texts cannot be understood without genres that guide our interpretations, nor can genres be understood without paying attention to how they function in relation to other genres (Freadman’s Uptake theory 2002; see also Bawarshi & Reiff 2010).

Being much too general, the term intertextuality as such does not necessarily open very significant analytical opportunities in different genre analyses. Thus, we need to dissect the concept and consider it in relation to the genre theme. In fact, analytical questions, such as the following ones, may prove useful in the analysis of different research corpora (see also Heikkinen, Lauerma & Tiililä 2012a; 2012b):

\* What kind of open intertextuality (e.g. quotes and summaries) are there in the corpus? What kind of fundamental intertextuality, ie. interdiscursivity (e.g. allusions, typical features from other genres, and style that may not typically belong to this genre) is there in the corpus? If it is found, for example, that certain specific politicians and authorities are quoted recurrently in the news, instead of, e.g., citizens or NGOs, we are led to think

about the characteristics of the news genre from the perspective of the use of power. We are faced with yet another type of discussion on genres and power if, e.g., an official communication resembles commercial marketing communications or if a news broadcast on TV advertises a forthcoming TV show.

\* What kinds of texts are used, and what kinds of texts are not? What are the texts called and how are they used? What elements are chosen from other texts and how accurately are the formulations in the other texts followed? In which parts of the author's own text are other texts present and in what ways? What kinds of structures of reported speech and reporting verbs are used; are they perhaps value-laden? Through questions like these, we get to consider, e.g., questions about hidden agendas: a text may be presented, e.g., as a piece of news (which is as objective as possible), and yet it only refers to certain limited sources or contains subtle value commentary on the bodies quoted (e.g. *The Prime Minister kept reassuring* 'tried to reassure, but did not seem convincing').

\* Are the instances of open and fundamental intertextuality typical of texts falling within this genre? Is it, as it were, natural to adopt a given stand towards other texts in this genre? At what level of the genre hierarchy do we find those texts that authors adopt as elements of their own texts? What kinds of social power relations does this kind of a relationship produce and maintain? What motives can be seen behind the intertextual choices? Do the intertextual choices influence the status and position of the genre in the genre hierarchy? Questions like these arise, e.g., when a genre analysis covers, for example, the emergence of genre chains (e.g. study > news release > news report > blog entry > web discussion). It is interesting to analyse whether a piece of news simply relies on a press release or whether the journalist actually undertakes to read the study. Does the stance-taking blog entry repeat the formulations of the news release (that may be generalizing or deficient) and do those engaging in the web discussion care about the original study at all? Most likely, it will turn out that the public discussion boils down to one "truth" (e.g. "studies show that boys are worse than girls at learning languages"), although the actual study has presented such generalizing claims as subject to many reservations ("on the basis of this set of data"; "a small calculatory difference between these groups", etc.).

Like intertextuality, ideology is a very useful concept applicable to wide variety of fields. In particular, it has been used in analyses of power within different disciplines. Ideology has been used in different connections either in a "neutral" sense (referring, in a dictionary-like manner, to a system of ideas and beliefs); in a "negative" sense (referring to twisted awareness that impedes people's understanding of reality); or in a "critical" sense (referring to the ways in which power relations are generated and maintained in society) (for more details, see Heikkinen 2012b: 114–116).

Some of the linguistic approaches, especially those part of what have been called the critical schools (critical linguistics, critical text analysis, critical discourse analysis), have tended to generalize the concept of ideology to cover all kinds of linguistic and other ways of producing

and communicating meanings. These approaches are based on the idea that language does not passively reflect reality but actively generates it. Reality must be interpreted and turning the interpretations into language is based on choices. These choices are always affected by our ideological positions. (See Heikkinen 2012b: 117.) Thus, ideological meaning is, in fact, about what kinds of groups of our own and those of others are produced in the texts, as well as evaluations about what is good and bad, right and wrong. We can talk about the active or unconscious naturalization of meanings. (See Heikkinen 1999: 92–93; see also Heikkinen 2012b: 116–118.)

Genres are community-specific and, at the same time, normative. Just like we talk about the natural norms of a language (e.g. *red house* instead of “house red”) and institutional norms (e.g. recommendations by the Finnish Language Board), we can talk about the twofold norms of genres in a general sense. For example, fairytales, novels, or news articles, and especially the ideas of what they should be like, have taken on specific forms in genuine situations of language use over centuries, i.e. “naturally”. As for the institutional genre norms, they are guidelines laid down by language-using communities, as well as conventions about which genres are recommendable in which situations and what kind of language use is correct in different genres. In practice, the natural and institutional norms are inseparable. They are intertwined and both types are associated with endeavours to establish power relations between people. We should note especially that even the “natural” norms are an outcome of human activity, which is often, in fact, very target-oriented. (Heikkinen 2013.)

As social and normative constructs, genres are necessarily ideological: they create juxtaposition between our group and the groups of others; they take a stance towards right and wrong, good and evil. The clearest examples of this are regulatory texts. Researchers talk about discourse communities whose members are united by common goals and established ways of communicating, often even social background. Socializing into a community entails, in part, that we learn the genres used by the community and that we conform to the norms the genres involve. The groups stick together partly on the basis of these genre norms and the related hierarchical power structures. (Heikkinen 2013.)

We can make use of the general theory of ideology in genre analysis and different sets of data, e.g., by asking the following analytical questions (see also Heikkinen 2012b; Solin 2012: 559):

\* What kinds of groups have access to different texts and their genres? What genres each of us can influence and in what ways? Who decides on the adoption of a genre; is a given genre obligatory or optional to its users? Who gets to produce the texts belonging to different genres, who are they intended for? What genre skills and ways of genre management are different groups built on? These questions are essential, for example, in genre analyses concerning the practices associated with the nature of democracy and social influencing, including the ways in which citizens can affect political decisions or legislation. Various juxtapositions associated with power can also be clarified: for example, a decision by the authorities received by a citizen may emphasize the difference between the authority's expertise and the citizen's status of a layperson.

\* Which genres are high in social hierarchy, and which are low? Are there genres whose existence and grounds we are not allowed to question or genres we are not used to questioning? What kinds of social power structures do these genres and the related assumptions support? These questions bring into focus especially such genres and generic features that are taken for granted and whose characteristics are taken for granted ("it is okay to lie in an advertisement", "it was on the news, so you've got to believe it", etc.). For example, studies generating information in numeric form have generally been regarded as "true" and therefore especially valuable. Another example is legal texts, which many people consider rational and logical, drafted in the pursuit of public benefit. Yet, studies have disproved this, showing that law-drafting often involves many conflicts of interest and disputes over meanings.

\* Which genres are presented as self-evident, taken-for granted by nature? Which genres are presented as belonging to different activities and situations as their inherent, taken-for-granted parts? Which genres involve strictly predetermined roles for those participating in or joining the genres? What kinds of fundamentally ideological linguistic and other choices are considered natural in different genres? These questions can be used to analyse, e.g., the working culture in a government office: we can ask, for example, whether it is true that all activities by government officials are currently subject to more detailed documentation and reporting – or, for example, whether every child in daycare needs to be provided with an individual early childhood education plan.

\* What kind of interaction do genres and their systems encourage the members of different communities to? Do genres offer opportunities to openness, critical thinking, and equal interaction? Or do they rather lead the members to undertake hierarchical actions that aim to silence and discriminate other members of the community? Such genre questions may be relevant, e.g., whilst analyzing leadership and subordinate culture, as well as the emotional climate of workplaces.

The perspectives of intertextuality and ideology are well suited for combining many different models and premises of genre analysis, especially from the point of view of research applications. Themes such as media literacy (e.g. basic education), genre awareness (e.g. working life), and citizen rhetoric (e.g. citizens' chances to influence politics) are strongly connected to the relations between genres, the ideological nature of individual genres, and the

hierarchical nature of the entire genre system. Linguistic genre analyses show that these important societal themes with far-reaching significance, together with their different interpretations, can be accessed in both research and research applications in a way that can be considered well-grounded: in the analysis of linguistic choices, interpretations – and the whole spectrum of possible interpretations – are anchored in texts and do not manifest themselves as random or target-oriented.

It has been noted that genres and their number reflect the complexity of society (see Miller 1984). From this angle, present-day society, which is based on texts and the media, seems highly complex. The range of genres, made up by language use and other means of meaning making, is huge. This shows even in the Handbook of Genre Analysis whose genre index (Heikkinen et al. eds. 2012a) contains nearly 700 entries. Under these circumstances it is essential to both know about genres and be aware of genres: do we recognize the power of genres and the use of power they are associated with? (On genre awareness, see e.g. Devitt 2004; Devitt, Reiff & Bawarshi 2004.)

Language users who are aware of genres understand the limitations each chosen genre involves and the opportunities it offers. They can evaluate the relationship between the genre chosen and other genres and appreciate the relationships of interaction and power the genre creates and maintains. They can see the linguistic, visual, and other choices as also involving generic choices and evaluate how these choices meet the general expectations towards the genre. At best, genre awareness can entail awareness about how different groups of people and, e.g., professional groups typically act, and shed light on the related power constructions. Genres will establish people's roles in various communities and the entire society. In our lives that are built on interaction, groups of texts are immediately connected to groups of people. One of the key questions of genre awareness is how, for example, immigrants, less educated people, those who are not familiar with information technology, or the socially excluded could access the genres of education, working life, hobbies, influencing in society, and other social activities. (Heikkinen 2013.)

## **Literature**

- Agha, Asif 2007. *Language and Social Relations*. Studies in the Social and Cultural Foundations of Language 24. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Aro, Jari, Marja Alastalo & Kirsti Lempiäinen 2012. Sosiologia [Sociology]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.)

- Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 667–677.
- Bakhtin, Mikhail 1986 [1953]. *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Ed. by Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Transl. by Vern W. McGee. Austin: University of Texas Press. Pp. 60–102.
- Bakhtin, Mikhail 1984 [1929]. *Problems of Dostoevsky's Poetics*. Ed. and transl. by Caryl Emerson; introd. by Wayne C. Booth. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Baldry, Anthony ed. 2000. *Multimodality and Multimediality in the Distance Learning Age*. Papers in English linguistics. Campobasso: Palladino.
- Bawarshi, Anis S. & Mary Jo Reiff 2010. *Genre. An Introduction to History, Theory, Research, and Pedagogy*. Reference Guides to Rhetoric and Composition. West Lafayette: Parlor Press and The WAC Clearinghouse.
- Bhatia, Vijay K. 1993. *Analysing Genre. Language Use in Professional Settings*. Applied Linguistics and Language Study. London: Longman.
- Bhatia, Vijay K. 2004. *Worlds of Written Discourse. A Genre-Based View*. London: Continuum.
- Biber, Douglas 1988. *Variation across Speech and Writing*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Biber, Douglas 1994. An Analytical Framework for Register Studies. In Douglas Biber & Edward Finegan (eds.) *Sociolinguistic Perspectives on Register*. Oxford Studies in Sociolinguistics. New York: Oxford UP. Pp. 31–56.
- Biber, Douglas, Ulla Connor & Thomas A. Upton 2007. *Discourse on the Move. Using Corpus Analysis to Describe Discourse Structure*. Studies in Corpus Linguistics 28. Amsterdam: John Benjamins Pub. Co.
- Corbett, John 2006. Genre and Genre Analysis. In Keith E. Brown & Anne H. Anderson (eds.) *Encyclopedia of Language & Linguistics*. Boston: Elsevier. Pp. 26–32.
- Crystal, David 2008. *A Dictionary of Linguistics and Phonetics*. Fifth edition. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing.
- Devitt, Amy 2004. *Writing Genres. Rhetorical Philosophy and Theory*. Carbondale: Southern Illinois University Press.
- Devitt, Amy J., Mary Jo Reiff & Anis S. Bawarshi 2004. *Scenes of Writing. Strategies for Composing with Genres*. London: Longman Publishing Group.
- Dijk, Teun A. van 1998. *Ideology. A Multidisciplinary Approach*. London: Sage.
- Enkvist, Nils Erik 1973. *Linguistic Stylistics*. Janua linguarum, Series critica 5. The Hague: Mouton.
- Fairclough, Norman 1992. *Discourse and Social Change*. Cambridge: Polity Press.
- Fludernik, Monica 2000. Genres, Text Types, or Discourse Modes? Narrative Modalities and Generic Categorization. *Style* 34 (2): 274–292.
- Freadman, Anne 2002. Uptake. In Richard Coe, Lorelei Lingard & Tatiana Teslenko (eds.) *The Rhetoric and Ideology of Genre. Strategies for Stability and Change*. Cresskill, NJ: Hampton P. Pp. 39–53.
- Freedman, Aviva & Peter Medway eds. 1994. *Genre and the New Rhetoric*. Critical Perspectives on Literacy and Education. London: Taylor & Francis.
- GXB 2013 = *Genre Across Borders Project*. <http://genreacrossborders.org/>
- Hakulinen, Auli & Pentti Leino 2006. Genre fennistiikassa [Genre in Fennistics]. In Mickael Suominen, Antti Arppe, Anu Airola, Orvokki Heinämäki, Matti Miestamo, Urho Määttä, Jussi Niemi, Kari K. Pitkänen & Kaius Sinnemäki (eds.) *A man of measure. Festschrift in honour of Fred Karlsson on his 60th birthday*. A special supplement to SKY Journal of Linguistics. Turku: The Linguistic Association of Finland. Pp. 12–23.

- Halliday, M. A. K. 1978. *Language as Social Semiotic. The Social Interpretation of Language and Meaning*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Hasan, Ruqayia 1985. Part B. In M. A. K. Halliday & Ruqayia Hasan: *Language, Context, and Text. Aspects of Language in a Social-Semiotic Perspective*. Victoria: Deakin University. Pp. 51–118.
- Heikkinen, Vesa 1999. *Ideologinen merkitys kriittisen tekstintutkimuksen teoriassa ja käytännössä* [Ideological meaning in the theory and practice of critical text analysis]. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran toimituksia 728. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Heikkinen, Vesa 2009. *Johdanto. Tekstintutkimusta kielen piirteiden ja tekstilajien suhteesta*. In Vesa Heikkinen (ed.) *Kielen piirteet ja tekstilajit: vaikuttavia valintoja tekstistä toiseen* [Linguistic features and genres: influential choices from one text to another]. Tietolipas 229. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 7–36.
- Heikkinen, Vesa 2012a. Diskurssi [Discourse]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 94–99.
- Heikkinen, Vesa 2012b. Ideologia [Ideology]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 112–119.
- Heikkinen, Vesa 2013. Genrevoimat valloillaan – tietoisuutta tarvitaan [The power of genres on the loose – calling for awareness]. *Kielikello* 1. Helsinki: Kotimaisten kielten keskus. Pp. 4–6.
- Heikkinen, Vesa, Petri Lauerma & Ulla Tiililä 2012a. Intertekstuaalisuus [Intertextuality]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 100–111.
- Heikkinen, Vesa, Petri Lauerma & Ulla Tiililä 2012b. Kolme näkökulmaa intertekstuaalisuusanalyysiin [Three perspectives on the analysis of intertextuality]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 255–270.
- Heikkinen, Vesa, Mikko Lounela & Eero Voutilainen 2012. Aineistot ja niiden käyttö tekstilajitutkimuksessa [Corpora and their use in genre analysis]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 325–350.
- Heikkinen, Vesa & Eero Voutilainen 2012. Genre – monitieteinen näkökulma [Genre – a multidisciplinary perspective]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 17–47.
- Heikkinen, Vesa ed. 2009. *Kielen piirteet ja tekstilajit: vaikuttavia valintoja tekstistä toiseen* [Linguistic features and genres: influential choices from one text to another]. Tietolipas 229. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Heikkinen, Vesa, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela eds. 2012a. *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus.

- Heikkinen, Vesa, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela eds. 2012b. *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käytäntöä*. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen verkkojulkaisu 29. Helsinki: Kotimaisten kielten keskus. [online] <http://scripta.kotus.fi/www/verkkojulkaisut/julk29/>
- Honkanen, Suvi 2009. Lauseet, jaksot ja (ala)laji viraston ohjailevissa kirjeissä [Phrases, moves, and (sub)genres in circular letters by government officials]. In Vesa Heikkinen (ed.) *Kielen piirteet ja tekstilajit: vaikuttavia valintoja tekstistä toiseen* [Linguistic features and genres: influential choices from one text to another]. Tietolipas 229. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 191–217.
- Honkanen, Suvi, Lotta Lehti, Henna Makkonen-Craig, Mikko Virtanen & Tomi Visakko 2012. Genre 20 vuotta myöhemmin [Genre 20 years later]. *Virittäjä* 116. Helsinki: Kotikielen seura. Pp. 615–622.
- Honkanen, Suvi & Jaakko Leino 2012. Konstruktiokielioppi [Construction grammar]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisu 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 551–557.
- Hyvärinen, Matti 2012. Kertomuksen sosiaaliset lajit [The social varieties of narratives]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisu 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 392–410.
- Jaakola, Minna 2012. Kognitiivinen kielentutkimus [Cognitive linguistics]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisu 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 537–545.
- Juntunen, Tuomas 2012. Kirjallisuudentutkimus [Literature studies]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisu 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 528–536.
- Juvonen, Riitta, Mikko Virtanen & Eero Voutilainen 2012. Fennistisen tekstilajitutkimuksen suuntia [Trends in Fennistic genre analysis]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisu 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 453–469.
- Kalliokoski, Jyrki 1989. *Ja. Rinnastus ja rinnastuskonjunktion käyttö* [And. Coordination and use of coordinating conjunctions]. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran toimituksia 497. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Kalliokoski, Jyrki ed. 1996. *Teksti ja ideologia. Kieli ja valta julkisessa kielenkäytössä* [Text and ideology. Language and power in public language use]. Kieli 9. Helsinki: Helsingin yliopisto.
- Karvonen, Pirjo 1995. *Oppikirjateksti toimintana [Textbook texts as action]*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran toimituksia 632. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Kress, Gunther 2010. *Multimodality. A Social Semiotic Approach to Contemporary Communication*. London: Routledge.
- Kress, Gunther & Theo van Leeuwen (2006). *Reading Images. The Grammar of Visual Design*. London: Routledge.
- Kääriäinen, Aino 2003. *Lastensuojelun sosiaalityö asiakirjoina: dokumentoinnin ja tiedonmuodostuksen dynamiikka* [Social work in child welfare as documents: dynamics of documentation and knowledge creation]. Sosiaalipolitiikan laitoksen tutkimuksia 1/2003. Helsinki: Helsingin yliopisto.



- Lauerma, Petri 2012. Tekstityyppi [Text type]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 67–69.
- Lehtipuro, Outi 2012. Folkloristiikka [Folkloristics]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 492–496.
- Martin, James R. 1985. Process and Text. Two Aspects of Human Semiosis. In James D. Benson & William S. Greaves (eds.) *Systemic Perspectives on Discourse 1. Selective Theoretical Papers from the 9th International Systemic Workshop*. Advances in Discourse Processes 15. Norwood (NJ): Ablex. Pp. 248–274.
- Martin, James R. 1992. *English Text. System and Structure*. Philadelphia (PA): John Benjamins Publishing.
- Martin, James R. & David Rose 2008. *Genre Relations. Mapping Culture*. Equinox Textbooks and Surveys in Linguistics. London, Oakville, CT: Equinox Pub.
- McCabe, Anne 2011. An Introduction to Linguistics and Language studies. London: Equinox.
- Miller, Carolyn R. 1984. Genre as Social Action. *Quarterly Journal of Speech* 70: 151–167.
- Mäntynen, Anne & Minna Sääsilahti 2012. Uusi retoriikka genrejen tutkimuksessa [New Rhetoric in genre analysis]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 194–207.
- Mäntynen, Anne, Susanna Shore & Anna Solin eds. 2006. *Genre – tekstilaji [Genre – text type]*. Tietolipas 213. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Nieminen, Tommi 2010. *Lajien synty: tekstilaji kielitieteen semioottisessa metateoriassa* [The origin of genres: genres in the semiotic metatheory of linguistics]. Jyväskylä studies in humanities 136. Jyväskylä: Jyväskylän yliopisto.
- Paltridge, Brian 1997. *Genre, Frames and Writing in Research Settings*. Pragmatics & Beyond. New series 45. Amsterdam, Philadelphia (PA): Benjamins.
- Raatikainen, Panu 2012. Filosofia [Philosophy]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 479–491.
- Raitakari, Suvi & Kirsi Günther 2012. Sosiaalityön tutkimus [Analysis of social work]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 656–661.
- Saukkonen, Pauli 1984. *Mistä tyyli syntyy?* [Where does style originate from?] Helsinki: WSOY.
- Saukkonen, Pauli 2001. *Maailman hahmottaminen teksteinä: tekstirakenteen ja tekstilajien teoriaa ja analyysia* [Perceiving the world as texts: theory and analysis of textual structures and genres]. Helsinki: Yliopistopaino.
- Saukkonen, Pauli 2008. Tekstin kognitiivis-semanttinen rakenneanalyysi [Cognitive-semantic structural analysis of texts]. *Virittäjä* 112: 235–267.
- Saukkonen, Pauli 2012. Tekstilajien kognitiivis-semanttinen rakenneanalyysi [Cognitive-semantic structural analysis of genres]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja* [Handbook of Genre Analysis]. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 228–239.

- Semino, Elena 2011. Stylistics. In James Simpson (ed.) *The Routledge Handbook of Applied Linguistics*. Routledge Handbooks in Applied Linguistics. Milton Park, Abingdon: Routledge. Pp. 541–553.
- Sevänen, Erkki 2011. Kohti kirjallisten tekstien sosiologiaa [Towards a sociology of literary texts]. In Voitto Ruohonen, Erkki Sevänen & Risto Turunen (eds.) *Paluu maailmaan: kirjallisten tekstien sosiologiaa [Return to the world: sociology of literary texts]*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran toimituksia 1346. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 11–46.
- Shore, Susanna 2012a. Kieli, kielenkäyttö ja kielenkäytön lajit systeemis-funktionaalisessa teoriassa [Language, language use, and genres of language use in the systemic-functional theory]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja [Handbook of Genre Analysis]*. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 131–157.
- Shore, Susanna 2012b. Systeemis-funktionaalinen teoria tekstien tutkimisessa [Systemic-functional theory in text analysis]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja [Handbook of Genre Analysis]*. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 158–185.
- Solin, Anna 2001. *Tracing Texts. Intertextuality in Environmental Discourse. Pragmatics, Ideology, and Contacts*. Monographs 2. Helsinki: University of Helsinki.
- Solin, Anna 2012. Kriittinen diskurssintutkimus [Critical Discourse Analysis]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja [Handbook of Genre Analysis]*. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 558–563.
- Steen, Gerard 2011. Genre between the Humanities and the Sciences. In Marcus Callies, Wolfram R. Keller & Astrid Lohöfer (eds.) *Bi-directionality in the Cognitive Sciences. Avenues, Challenges, and Limitations*. Human Cognitive Processing 30. Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing Company Pp. 21–41.
- Swales, John M. 1990. *Genre Analysis. English in Academic and Research Settings*. Cambridge Applied Linguistics Series. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Swales, John M. 2004. *Research Genres. Exploration and Applications*. Cambridge Applied Linguistics Series. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Vainikkala, Erkki 2012. Kulttuurintutkimus [Cultural Studies]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja [Handbook of Genre Analysis]*. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 564–581.
- Vološinov, Valentin 1990 [1929]. *Kielen dialogisuus. Marxismi ja kielifilosofia [Language as dialogic interaction. Marxism and the Philosophy of Language]*. Finnish translation T. Laine. Tampere: Vastapaino.
- Voutilainen, Eero 2012a. Rekisteri [Register]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja [Handbook of Genre Analysis]*. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 70–76.
- Voutilainen, Eero 2012b. Tyyli [Style]. In Vesa Heikkinen, Eero Voutilainen, Petri Lauerma, Ulla Tiililä & Mikko Lounela (eds.) *Genreanalyysi – tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja [Handbook of Genre Analysis]*. Kotimaisten kielten keskuksen julkaisuja 169. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 77–87.

- Vuori, Jaana 2001. *Äidit, isät ja ammattilaiset. Sukupuoli, toisto ja muunnelmat asiantuntijoiden kirjoituksissa* [Mothers, fathers, and professionals. Gender, repetition, and variants in expert writings]. Tampere: Tampere University Press.
- Werlich, Egon 1975. *Typologie der Texte: Entwurf eines textlinguistischen Modells zur Grundlegung einer Textgrammatik*. Heidelberg: Quelle & Meyer.
- Werlich, Egon 1976. *A Text Grammar of English*. Heidelberg: Quelle & Meyer.

# Genres as Real Kinds and Projections

## Homeostatic Property Clusters in Folklore and Art

### Tomi Kokkonen and Inkeri Koskinen

There are several possible ways of classifying the products of human culture, such as texts, oral stories, movies, or songs. Genre-classification is a type of classification that aims to capture a group of, say, texts, that share some relevant properties in their style, thematic contents, or narrative techniques (Bakhtin 1986). Accordingly, much of the study of genre has been the analysis of textual structures from this point of view. But although genre-classifications are fairly often classifications used by the research community rather than by people producing the genres (or “participating” in the genres), they are however often thought to be something that researchers discover in their research subject. Many genres both in folklore and in literature, music and films are socially constructed by people, not only projected by researchers.

In comparative literature, this has led some of the genre research to pay attention to social action and the social production of meaning, especially to the interaction between the text, its production, and the reception – the discursive community – that underlie genres as cultural phenomena, not only the structure of the products of this activity (e.g. Fowler 1982; Jaus 1982; Miller 1984; Barton 1994; Frow 2006). This shift of attention is a move to explain *why* texts and other cultural products tend to take forms that can be categorized as genres, but at the same time, it is a shift *away* from the concept of genre as a tool for textual analysis. Both conceptions of genre may be useful. Also in contemporary folkloristics, genre is studied not only as form, but as communicative practice. Fixed typologies used in older folkloristics and the idea of “universal” genres have been criticized, but nevertheless some universal genre concepts are taken to be useful tools (Shuman & Hasan-Rokem 2012; Ben-Amos 1976; Honko 1989). Furthermore, there are other needs for classifying texts and other cultural products than according to their recurrent, clustering properties. For example, archiving folklore for the use of other researchers, or archiving films in a film archive, both of which rely on the usability of classification, not on the existence of an underlying social production.

In this paper, we are applying some tools from the philosophy of science to clarify certain distinctions relevant in the study of genre. We are not trying to make a theoretical contribution as such in folkloristics or comparative literature, let alone present empirical discoveries. Instead, we are making meta-theoretical observations about the use of genre concepts that, we

hope, constitute a methodological contribution to the study of various phenomena related to genres and theory formation on them. The main point of the paper will be clarification of the distinction between two types of genre notions that should be kept separate: genres as *real kinds* and genres as *projections*. By “real kind”, or just “kind”, we mean a class that reliably shares a vast number of properties and gives the epistemic justification for making generalizations across the class: genre as a kind is out there for the researcher to discover. By “projections” we mean conceptual constructs that researchers make on the basis of a number of properties but that do not necessarily capture real kinds. Instead, they are projected onto the texts under study for some specified research purposes: genre is a projection of the research practices and theories, it is a theoretical tool. This is an important distinction for it is directly linked to what can be done with a genre concept and what genre theories are about. We are going to use the idea of *homeostatic property cluster* (Boyd 1991) to analyze how kinds work and how some genres, as socio-culturally created real phenomena, are real kinds. In summary, *a kind does not have to share a structure or an essence in order to be a real kind*. But whether it is a real kind or a projection, has great methodological significance for how they are treated in theories and what kind of research methods and inferences about them are epistemically justified. We also make some observations about the human nature of the “mechanistic” basis of genres as property clusters – that is, the social activity producing, maintaining and transforming the genres as kinds. In this, we are discussing especially how the classification itself and awareness of it affects what is being classified.

We will start by distinguishing three aims that classification as genres may have: classification for organizing materials (e.g. for archiving or as for the basis of further analysis), classification for analysis (e.g. interpreting a text *as* an instance of a genre), and classification for purposes of making generalizations about the research subject. The first two roles of genre concepts belong to the projection use of genre. The last one requires a more substantial notion. After that we will explicate the notion of homeostatic property cluster and apply it to genre as a kind. Then we will make some remarks on what it means that people and their practices constitute the mechanisms of homeostatic property clusters. Finally we will draw some conclusions about what consequences all this should have for theories and practices related to genres. The main conclusion is that the research object is very different in the case of genre as a projection and genre as a kind and the role of the text under analysis is – or should be – very different.

### **What is the Purpose of Genre Classification?**

The concept of genre and various genre-concepts (such as “fantasy” or “legend”) are used for *classification* of the research subject in several disciplines, including folkloristics and various art studies. The reasons for using genre terminology may vary both in the broader aims of the classification and in the basis by which the classification is done, and both between disciplines and within them. One reason for classification is simply the organization of the research object (e.g. texts, performances, or movies) for practical or theoretical purposes such as archiving or further analysis. The basis for classification may be whatever serves those purposes. This could be, for example, some particular property or a group of properties (that set a group of classified objects apart from other objects) in the content, style, narrative techniques etc. of a text. The classification may use a definition specifying these properties, but alternatively the basis of the classification may be a similarity to a *prototypical* instance of the class: a specimen defines the class and the membership of the class depends on closeness to the specimen, without a reference to any particular property of this prototype (see Putnam 1975; Rosch 1977; Lakoff 1987). In both cases, however, classes may be vague and change into each other gradually rather than distinctly. Some instances may belong to a class partially or be hybrids. The members of a category may have *family resemblance* (Wittgenstein 1953) with each other rather than shared essential properties: each member of the group resembles most of the other members, but in different ways, just like all the members of a family resemble each other but in different ways. But no matter how the properties that the classification is based on are chosen or defined, the membership of the genre is a consequence of having these properties. If the purpose of classification is simply organizing the research material according to a property, it depends on the definition of the genre which texts go together.

In other words, genre categories like this are *projections*: they are constructed by the researchers. But they are projections for a purpose. They are tools. Not every possible way of classifying serves a purpose. There needs to be a theoretical or practical need that entails the criteria for which the classification is useful, for that practical or theoretical purpose. Genre-concepts may be tools for organizing the research materials for further investigation or for archiving, for example, or they could serve a central role in interpretation of a text. In any case, if the need for classification would be different and it would be done by using other properties as a basis, the classification would end up being different. Many instances that need classification may also fall “in between” the used categories. They may be, therefore, classified as members of either class, as “hybrids”, as a category of their own, or just something

uncategorizable. For example, detective stories could be seen as a hybrid of crime stories and mystery stories or a genre of its own. Decisions about how to classify new instances may be a matter of just that: decisions, of a researcher or a wider research community. These kinds of decisions are not true or false – the justifications for them can only be better or worse, depending on what kind of practical purposes the classification is used for. Classifications of this kind are not fixed into infinity, but *finite*. Each new decision shapes the category. But it is worth noticing that only the *classification* is constructed. The classes still bind together real objects that have the similarities that the researcher is looking for. Although projected classification does not go any deeper than the properties that are the basis for the projection, there is every reason to be a realist about the classes as far as only these properties are considered. Furthermore, the properties themselves may be of interest in research.

Let us consider for instance the “western” genre. It can be defined, for example, as fiction taking place west of the Mississippi River between the American Civil War and the First World War. This definition does not necessarily imply any clustering properties that are not implied by the definition itself. Let us suppose for the sake of the argument that the fiction that is captured by this definition is unified only by those things that are directly implied by the definition, such as the places, life-styles and such. The definition nevertheless refers to a mythical time and place with cultural significance. This is itself a sufficient reason to ask questions about this class of literature. A researcher may be interested in, for example, how nature is used as a narrative motif in the western fiction. The result may not be a uniform view that could be generalized as a typical “western” view of nature, but it would still be an answer to a research question that can be considered reasonable.

On the other hand, we might find generalities in western fiction that can be used in making a theory of typical western fiction (see e.g. Newman 1990). This theory may serve the purpose of being a basis of an analysis and interpretation of a text or a movie. It might even be that a significant portion of what falls into the definition of western by the definition above does not belong to this category, but it could still serve an analytic purpose. If we have a clear picture of what kind of properties a stereotypical western story has and how they are related to each other, we have a theoretical tool to analyze a text or a movie *as* western fiction. Furthermore, we could take a novel or a movie that is *not* taking place in the proper mythical west but in, say, modern day American west, in Australia, or in a distant future in another planet among the

settlers there, and we could have an interesting analytical perspective for analyzing it *as* a western through the theory that has developed for analyzing proper westerns.

If genre categories are used like this, as projective tools for research and interpretation, treating a particular text as a member of a genre is not right or wrong, it is simply useful or it is not. For example, the 1990s television series *X-Files* mixes detective stories, horror, fantasy and science fiction, and does not fall easily into any of them. Approaching the series through each of these genres brings a new and potentially interesting perspective by directing the focus of analysis toward different things (such as different narrative or stylistic devices or properties of the characters or storylines) and enabling conceptualizing same things in alternative ways. And the same goes for the genre categories themselves: they are not right or wrong, just useful or unhelpful, whether for the purposes of research, archiving, or for reaching the right audience in marketing. This also means that there may be several overlapping, alternative classificatory systems and the same genre-terms may be used differently in different theories and by different researchers. For example, a researcher who is interested in fantasy literature as an extension of fairy tales may be using a very different concept (and theory) of fantasy than a researcher who is interested in contemporary fantasy genres and how these differ from and are related to the genre of science fiction. These researchers may end up misunderstanding each other and disagreeing about which stories should be included, but they are both using artificial conceptual constructs as tools for their own research purposes. One way to classify does not exclude a completely different way to classify. Different practical purposes for classification may lead into different ways of classifying the same objects – and the same terminology, for example genre-titles like “fantasy” or “legend”, may be defined differently by different theories, individual researchers, or different disciplines. If practical purposes are what motivate the classification, there are no right and wrong classifications. Different ways of conceptualizing the same texts, or different ways of using the same term for a class are only problems in communication between researchers.

There is, however, another reason for classifying the research subject. This is the traditional idea of “carving nature at its joints”, as Plato put it in *Phaedrus* (265d–266a): the world in which we live in consists of “natural” classes or *kinds* that share properties, and a traditional idea of the aims of science has been to discover true natural kinds, their properties, and their law-like relations to each other (see Bird & Tobin 2012). In this case, the classification either captures the natural order or does not, it is right or wrong. Classification is not only the



researcher's way of ordering things according to some chosen properties – it is how the research subject itself is self-organized. It is often thought that looking for such classes of “natural order” is what *natural sciences* do, but for humanities (and for *human kinds*, that is, the categories used in humanities and social sciences) the story is very different – and for many good reasons, some of which we will mention later. However, this old separatist idea, methodological contradistinction between natural and human sciences, is falling out of fashion among philosophers of science for a couple of simple reasons. First, the traditional picture of natural sciences as well as of natural kinds does not apply outside physical sciences (including chemistry) even among natural sciences. Biological kinds, for example, are very different from chemical kinds like gold or water that have traditionally been prototypes of natural kinds (see Wilson 1999). Secondly, although there are real differences regarding issues like “naturalness” of classification, it is a matter of *degree* in precision, distinction and possibility of exceptions that ranges from physical sciences through biology and social sciences to humanities.

It seems quite clear that, also in humanities, classifications like genre-classifications, at least sometimes, refer to groups of objects that fall together “naturally” in the sense that the research subject itself (e.g. a tradition or an art form), has a structure of its own that the researcher might or might not capture. The researcher does not project the classification, but tries to discover pre-existing kinds. The difference is important. If researchers *try* to refer to such structure, they could be right or wrong about it. It is not only about usefulness anymore. There is a clear difference between the two cases – projected and natural (or perhaps “quasi-natural”) classification – even though both have their use in research. The tools that have been developed for making sense of such “quasi-natural” kinds in biology and social sciences apply to humanities, too. We will discuss them shortly.

But why is this difference so important, except for purely philosophical reasons? The answer is clear: there are several methodological implications. The most important difference between projected categories and categories that capture (quasi-)natural kinds, is in what can be done with the categories regarding *inductive inferences*: *new properties* can be discovered from the sample being studied and epistemically justified generalizations about other members of the category become possible. Kinds are what give grounds for that. An extreme example of kinds would be an *essentialist natural kind* such as a chemical element like iron or water that has virtually infinite amount of properties that are shared by all its instances. In this case, we could define the category with a handful of properties, but the similarities within the category would

not be limited to those. With a category like that, if we have identified it correctly, we could make *new discoveries* of its properties using only a small sample of the kind and generalize those findings across the whole class. However, if a genre category is nothing more than a projection, there is no epistemic justification for making inductive inferences. All we could say about that category in general would be what we can say about that single, classificatory property in general. We could not study a handful of instances of that category *as* members of that category and think that our observations could be generalized to be about the whole category. We discussed westerns as an example of a genre defined by a single property, but since westerns do have other (discovered) shared properties more than what is in the definition, let's take a structurally similar but hypothetical example. Let's say we are interested in fiction written about France between the Napoleonic wars and the First World War (but written after that) and let's say we label this as a new genre of "postnapoleonica". This could be an interesting research topic and we could perhaps make generalizations that relate to how France of that time is depicted later. But in order to make those generalizations, we would need to study a statistically significant amount of postnapoleonica fiction to make those generalizations and it is very doubtful that we would find a significant number of shared properties not directly related to that.

The kinds that we have been calling "quasi-natural" so far are something in between. We will argue that at least some genre-concepts are referring to "quasi-natural" kinds, although not necessarily all. It is important to notice that the possibility of making inferences across the whole category depends partly on how "natural" the category is: the more natural, the more we are justified to trust the generalizations and inferences made about the category. Furthermore, the possibility to have substantial theories about particular genres, making generalizations on the properties of that genre beyond those properties that are used to *define* it in the first place, depends (partly) on whether the genre-concept captures a real kind. In what follows, we will introduce and apply some philosophical tools to make this distinction and assess its significance.

### **Genres as Homeostatic Property Clusters**

The concept of natural kind, in its classical use, refers to a class that can be found in reality with recognizable borders and a set of properties shared by its members (see Bird & Tobin 2012). In human sciences, the difference between a clear natural kind and a purely projected class (i.e. an artificial classification based on contingent properties) is a matter of degree with

possibly nothing to be found in either end of the spectrum. The real members of classes may share only partially the properties of what would be considered a prototypical representative of the kind. The distinction is still meaningful, for the more “natural” a class is, the more properties its members can be assumed to share and the stronger the generalizations and claims about the class can be. Partial natural kinds can be found in a human social context in the form of “homeostatic clusters”. There is no shared essence or uniform structure (like in some kinds in natural sciences), but some properties are linked together (they *cluster*) in a reliable way because something binds them together. This binding factor might, of course, also be an essence or a shared internal structure, but it does not need to be, and in human sciences in general, it rarely is. The heart of the matter is not, however, whether this “binding factor” is an essence or not, but that something binding the properties together exists. For example, people have implicit ideas about what kind of properties (style, plot turns, character types etc.) go together in a given genre and these ideas inform both readers and writers: recognition of a property triggers expectations and the writer builds on them. In other words, members of a natural kind share several independent features that do not result from projections made by researchers.

Natural kinds make inductive inferences possible. For example it is possible to gather information about laments in a certain region, to find a number of recurrent features, as for example in the Viena region of Karelia, where laments exhibit common stylistic and grammatical features, alliteration and parallelism, use of common images and a common distinctive lexicon. The region could be extended to all of Karelia, which would share all of these basic features but to a lesser degree because, for example, the common lexicon of each region was somewhat different and the shared features across all regions was fewer. The region can be further expanded to include all Finnic laments across different Finnic languages, in which case the shared specific features are increasingly abstract. (Frog & Stepanova 2011: 204–209; Stepanova 2012: 264–273, 282–283.) It is even possible to observe the expand the field under consideration cross-culturally: Finnic and Baltic laments, for instance, also share such stylistic and grammatical features as repetition, alliteration and parallelism, combined with a consistent conception of death and the other world although the language and images employed are culture-dependent (Stepanova 2011). Within any one of these frames – with some reserve, of course – it is possible to infer that these features recur in all laments of the particular region.

Genres do not always resemble natural kinds. By now it should however be clear that sometimes they do, strongly: it is possible to make inductive inferences about them. For example it is possible to make fairly reliable inductive inferences about Finnic laments or detective stories. Nevertheless, Finnic laments and detective stories are kinds that are much more prone to changes and much less homogeneous than many paradigmatic natural kinds, such as iron. Firstly, as most kinds in the humanities, they are historical: the properties we are interested did not exist always, they did not always cluster, the clusters change over time, and they will some day cease to exist. Secondly, even though it is possible to make inductive inferences about Finnic laments or detective stories, the members of the kind, individual laments or detective stories, nevertheless also differ from each other. They do not share a uniform structure, as some natural kinds in the physical sciences and chemistry do. Certain features are prevalent within the boundaries of the kind, but not all individual specimens share all of these features, and additionally, the boundaries are somewhat fuzzy. Thirdly, as is the case in many kinds in the humanities, Finnic laments and detective stories as kinds are constructed and dependent on people's capability to conceptualize, understand and give meaning to things they do. Given these differences, is it possible to see for example Finnic laments as analogous to natural kinds? (Let us now for a while set aside the question whether laments in general can be treated as analogous to natural kinds – we will return to the possibility of “universal genres” later.) Is it possible to treat them as kinds that enable inductive inferences in the way natural kinds do, without losing sight of all these differences? We claim that it is.

Actually, the first two differences do not set the laments apart from kinds in the natural sciences. Especially in biology many kinds are historical, their boundaries are fuzzy and their distinctive features are unevenly distributed within the kind. For example animal species – that however have often been used as paradigmatic examples of natural kinds alongside with the elements – are historical. It is entirely possible that not a single member of a species has all of the properties that characterize the species. In addition, species often have fuzzy boundaries with each other and the speciation itself is a gradual differentiation process (see Wilson 1999). Similarities between biological and cultural spheres have been utilized in other issues by applying biological models and ideas to culture and traditions in order to capture the shared or analogical structural properties, especially similarities in cultural and biological change (e.g. Honko 1985; Sperber 1996; Mace, Holden & Shennan 2005). What we are doing next is to apply Richard Boyd's (1991; 1999) ideas of natural kinds as *homeostatic property clusters*, which was developed to make sense of how and why it is possible to make inductive inferences

about biological kinds like the species, to similar kinds in humanities in general and to genres in particular.

A homeostatic property cluster is a set of properties that cluster reliably (they maintain homeostasis), and thus form a kind. This happens because of some internal or external mechanism, not for example because of some essential factor that would unite the research subject and from which these properties would necessarily follow. This mechanism explains why the properties cluster. Biological species are a good example of this (see Boyd 1999): as long as there is a gene flow between the different parts of the population through breeding, the genetic variation is continuous and spread across the population, and this is a process that constitutes a causal mechanism ensuring the clustering of certain properties within the population. So, even if no specific animal belonging to the population would have *all* of these properties, it is possible to say that the kind in question, the species, has the properties. If the mechanism (interbreeding) breaks and the population is divided, the random changes (genetic drift and mutation) and natural selection will make some properties to be specific to only some descendant populations even if they are very similar at first, and with differences between populations growing, they eventually end up being new, clearly differentiated property clusters. Thus, a kind can be historical and sometimes its borders with neighbouring kinds are not sharp, and nevertheless it is not a projection, but something the researcher finds. The mechanism that causes the clustering of the properties also makes inductive reasoning reliable: a researcher can for example study the properties of a limited number of animals belonging to a species, and make the inductive assumption that the findings largely apply to the whole species, even if not all discovered properties can be expected to be shared by all the individuals.

Similarly, there are property clusters that we call genres: stylistic, thematic and narrative properties cluster within a text, and same properties come together time after time – and there is a reason for this. In the case of literature, the readers and writers (as well as critics and publishers) as a community have assumptions, often implicit, about the properties of the genre and that those properties go together. They have developed these assumptions by engaging in the social practices of this community (e.g. reading and learning to make connections, or using these assumptions as a writer to communicate implicitly and to build expectations), and through the same social practices, they maintain the cluster. For example, there are properties that go together in detective stories. A competent reader recognizes some of the properties and this guides her reading, predicting what is going to happen, interpreting things in a text in a certain

ways that she would not interpret in that way in another text, and so on. These expectations are socio-cultural, readers acquire the knowledge of them (explicitly or implicitly), and the writers are using the conventions guiding the expectations, knowingly or not, whether they go by them or break them, maybe even changing the conventions. These factors constitute the socio-cultural mechanism that keeps the properties of the detective story clustering: the practices bring about the conventions that result in similarities in the members of the genre. These mechanisms explain why certain properties are frequently found together. To explicate the internal logic of detective story framework is to explicate the conventions that are in play in the mechanism.

Genres differ from species, since they have a fundamental semantic element. If the Finnic laments do form a homeostatic property cluster, the mechanism that produces and sustains it is necessarily social and cultural. It is unclear whether it is justifiable, in the case of social and cultural kinds, to talk about *causal* mechanisms: even if a cultural mechanism is related to the reliable clustering of certain properties, one might not want to say that the mechanism *causes* the clustering, but rather that socio-cultural practices *constitute* the clustering properties. Ron Mallon (2003) has, however, used the idea of homeostatic property clusters when discussing social roles. He defends the claim that social mechanisms are causal, and points out that, for example, customs produce quite stable property clusters. Individual properties that result from human convention can be extremely stable. For example, men in western countries wear pants, not skirts. This is a very stable property, and fully a result of a convention. Also kinds whose existence depends fully on conventions can be remarkably stable. This is may be the case especially if the convention is deeply interconnected with other conventions and changing it would therefore have drastic social consequences, or when convention has an important social role. Finnic laments might be a good example of this: the genre had an important social function, as Lauri Honko (1974) notes: laments were a socially regulated way of expressing sorrow, and that function interfaced into public rituals in which grief was expressed, such as funerals and weddings. As long as a genre has such an important social role, it is likely stay stable and alive, but after the disappearance of the role, the genre is prone to disappear as well. For our purposes, the question whether social and cultural mechanisms are causal, is not crucial. If the mechanism that produces the clustering of properties, and thus sustains the kind, is robust enough – that is, if it is not disturbed by small changes, and it works reasonably reliably – it is justifiable to call the kind in question a homeostatic property cluster. If the mechanism is such that it ensures the continuous existence of Finnic laments, and the clustering

properties such as alliteration and metaphorical language stay fairly reliably the same, it is possible to make inductive inferences about the laments produced by that mechanism. However, that mechanism was interconnected with traditions of ritual practices within a pre-modern cultural environment. The mechanisms producing those ritual practices ceased to function in the process of modernization and especially in relation to the changes introduced with the Soviet era, with the consequence that the mechanisms producing laments were also affected and gradually ceased to function in a self-perpetuating way. (Stepanova 2013; 2014.)

Let us assume that in addition to properties *a*, *b* and *c* (such as *alliteration*, *parallelism* and *poetic synonyms for most nouns*) which are known to be found from many laments, we also find property *d* (say, a *consistent conception of death and the other world*) in many of them (Stepanova 2011). Perhaps it is not a result of or otherwise related to *a*, *b* or *c*. If we know that the genre is "out there" in the world, that is, that it is not just a projection made by the researcher, we have good reasons to presume that property *d* can be found not only in many of the laments we have studied, but in many other laments as well. Two central features of the clustering need to be noticed here, however. First, none of the properties that cluster need to be present in all cases in order for them to be generalizable properties of the "population" of individuals that constitute the kind (e.g. individual laments). This means that our initial ideas on what properties are central to the kind may be wrong, too. Even if we originally define a genre with a group of properties, we may need to conclude that some of them are not important after all. The main point is that if we want to discover real kinds, then the properties that cluster together in these kinds is *independent of our classification*. This is because the clustering is caused (or constituted) by the underlying mechanisms.

The second important observation is that the property clusters are not "building blocks". They may have fuzzy borders with each other, for one thing. For another, kinds may form hierarchies in which some properties cluster across a wide range of instances (that constitute the kind) and a group of additional properties cluster within a subgroup of instances of the kind, making up another kind. Thus, for example, we see higher order taxa above the species level in biology, as well as sub-species. In humanities, too, it is useful to group whole kinds together in respect of shared properties or divide them into sub-categories, such as sub-genres. Caution is needed here, however. Even if a genre, let us say legends in central Europe, is a real kind and further divisions can be made within this kind in respect of some properties, it does not mean that these sub-divisions are automatically real kinds, too. If a division is based on a difference of a single

property (e.g. whether the legend is migratory or local), this further division may be a projection within a real kind. If, however, there are several properties that cluster and these clusters are alternatives to other clusters of properties, we have found new real kinds within broader real kinds. The main point here is, again, in clustering – that some properties go together in significantly higher frequency than by chance – and, more crucially, that there are underlying mechanisms and processes that explain this clustering.

Our inductive inferences are more justified the better we understand what kind of a process produces and sustains the clustering not only of properties *a*, *b*, *c*, but also of *d*. It might sometimes be illuminating to read theories about a specific genre as descriptions of the mechanism that produces the genre as a homeostatic property cluster. Furthermore, in comparative literature, the various genre theories that focus on genre in general as social action (e.g. Fowler 1982; Jauss 1982; Miller 1984; Barton 1994; Frow 2006) can be seen as theories of the general mechanism for genre in literature. Similarly for example Richard Bauman's view of genres as important elements of social practice (Bauman 1992; Shuman & Hasan-Rokem 2012) can be understood as a theory about the general mechanism that produces genres in folklore. For most practical purposes, however, it is not necessarily to know the details of the mechanisms. For example, some recurring properties of laments such – as the "grieving questions" and "tender address" mentioned by Honko (1974: 10) – may be due to some cognitive or other psychological tendencies, capacities or limitations that fall outside the scope of folkloristics. These can be left as black boxes to be opened by researchers from other disciplines in the division of cognitive labor in academia. However, it is important to recognize that, in assuming a real kind, one assumes the existence of a mechanism or a set of mechanisms maintaining the kind and any knowledge on the mechanistic basis gives knowledge on the scope of the kind and the validity, accuracy and generality of inferences about it.

This brings us to the question about universal genres – genres that seem to exist independently of any such particular, historically bounded mechanisms that we have been discussing so far. In folkloristics, the nature of universal, supra-local genres has been the subject of an intense debate (see Ben-Amos 1976; Honko 1989): are only local genres real, as Ben-Amos claims, or could there be grounds for claiming that some genres are universal? Should such very general, "universal" genres as myth, fairytale and legend be understood just as more or less useful projections? A philosophical distinction between homeostatic property clusters and projections



will not solve the question, as it is – as Honko (1989: 16) rightly notes – an empirical one. Nevertheless, the distinction can be used to clarify the question.

Ben-Amos (1976: xxvi–xxvii) rejects the idea of universal, permanent genres that would share some underlying structural features. In other words, he justly resists the idea that kinds in humanities would resemble essentialist natural kinds, such as chemical elements. However, even in many natural sciences real kinds do not have an essence: they do not share an underlying structure. Even though there are no essentialist natural kinds in biology, there are homeostatic property clusters. Species are real kinds – as are the higher order taxa above the species level. Though the comparison must not be stretched too far, something similar might be true in folklore.

We will set aside for a while the question whether laments in general can be treated as analogous to natural kinds. Now we can rephrase the question: does the existence of Finnic laments as a homeostatic property cluster indeed depend solely on a local mechanism? Or is there a larger scale mechanism that produces and sustains a larger scale kind – namely laments – and also governs the Finnic laments? A universal mechanism that produces similarities around the world could rest on something as simple as what Honko (1974) describes as the "sorrow of all peoples". It could also be that there are universal mechanisms that produce not universal genres, but comparable boundaries between local genres: for example the difference between narratives people believe to be true, and the ones recognized as fiction may be something people all around the world find important because of some universal, psychological mechanism. If this is the case, it can influence genre formation universally. To defend the idea of real, not just projected universal genres, we do not need to believe in universally uniform, underlying structural features – all that is needed are universal mechanisms.

If the mechanism that holds a social or cultural kind together rests partly on characteristics that all humans share, it might in some cases be justifiable to talk about universal social or cultural kinds. Some of the recurrent structures of stories in different cultures may be a result of our cognitive capacities and limitations in understanding and recalling stories (see Sperber 1996). If it is possible to find a mechanism that works independently all around the world and produces homeostatic property clusters similar to each other – for example laments – then the existence of these property clusters does not depend solely on local mechanisms. Of course, if a mechanism that produces similarities around the world rests on something like our cognitive capacities as human beings, the amount of inductive inferences that could be made from a

resulting universal genre would most likely be very limited. In addition, just observing genres that can by some criteria be classified as laments in different parts of the world is not enough for settling the question. For that, one would need to find evidence of the mechanism that works in all of the observed cases.

Mechanisms always work in an environment, be it large or small, and when the environment changes, the mechanism might stop working. A change in the local climate can lead to the extinction of a biological species. A species might also evolve into two if the population for some reason divides into two groups that are no longer in contact with each other. Similarly, changes in the social and cultural environment might lead to the disappearance or disintegration even of long-lived genres. Relatively small changes can deactivate a delicate mechanism, but significant changes are needed for disturbing the functioning of the most robust mechanisms. If there are universal mechanisms that rest on universal features of the human kind and influence the formation of genres, the mechanisms and the resulting genres might disappear only when the whole species either perishes or goes through substantial changes. Genres that stay homeostatic solely due to local mechanisms are more fragile. As we shall see, when a mechanism that sustains a local genre stops working, it is also possible that a notable part of the properties do not disappear, but rather that they just no longer cluster. Before that, a few words are needed about the mechanisms of homeostatic property clusters and the role of people in keeping them together.

### **People, Their Genres, and Their Historicity**

Genres as projections are constructed by researchers, but genres as kinds are constructed by people. This means that they are historical. Some genre-producing mechanisms may also include explicit awareness of a genre and self-classification of what is being done while others do not. As a consequence, even the researchers' conceptualizations and theories can sometimes shape genres, because the researchers' understanding and ways of conceptualization can affect the practices or even become a part of the practices. This has several consequences. But first, a few words on the distinction between emic and etic genres. Emic genres are not always homeostatic property clusters, and not all genres that can be counted as homeostatic property clusters are emic genres. Emic genres can of course be homeostatic property clusters, and they might often be, but not always: the differentiation between two emic genres can be based for example on just one or two features. For example, an emic genre classification might make a clear distinction between religious songs and other songs, and not hold their significant

similarities as a reason to count them as forming just one genre. A researcher might however have good reasons to claim that these songs are a homeostatic property cluster, since they share properties and the reason they share them is that they come from the same musical tradition, are sung by the same people, and influences flow from one to another. In other words, the classifications people use can be projections created for a specific purpose, and do not necessarily correspond with any natural-like kind a researcher might find. Genres that are homeostatic property clusters might often be emic, but for the reasons just mentioned, that also is not always the case. In addition, such situations are possible in which people belonging to a community do not perceive a genre as a genre at all, since they do not know enough about other peoples' genres to make comparisons and to perceive their own genre as a genre amongst other genres.

Nevertheless, people are often very well aware of genres, and lots of meaning is loaded into some of them. For this reason it is possible that even though the mechanism that sustains a genre as a homeostatic property cluster breaks up, the genre nevertheless survives – or it is revived – as a fairly stable property cluster. For example Seto *leelos* used to be disappearing, but the tradition has been revived, and today even young Setos sing *leelos* and form *leelo* choirs (Kuutma 2006). The properties of traditional *leelos* are well known. The revivers of the old tradition aim at both knowing the old genre well, and developing the tradition for example by mixing *leelo* with contemporary popular music. It might be possible to make fairly reliable inductive inferences about contemporary *leelos*. So the *leelo* genre lives as a somewhat homeostatic property cluster, even though the meanings attached to *leelos* and the cultural mechanism that sustains the genre are very different than they were in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. This kind of conscious retention or revival of a kind so that the mechanism that sustains the kind goes through significant changes, is possible – and happens – only with cultural and social kinds.

Ian Hacking (1995; 1999) has introduced the thesis of the "looping effect of human kinds". When people are classified in a certain way, they sometimes change their behavior as a response to the classification, and as a result, the description of the kind has to be changed: when people belonging to a certain human kind no longer behave as they did before, the distinct properties of the kind in question have changed. This makes human kinds unstable. As Mallon (2003) notes, people's reactions to the ways in which they are classified can also stabilize human kinds, not only destabilize them. Especially institutional social roles – Mallon mentions

U.S. Senators and licensed bass fishermen (2003: 322) – can be very stable precisely because people hold on to them and do not wish them to change. Similar stabilization seems to happen in the case of Seto *leelos*, even though it is not a kind used directly for classifying people. *Leelos* are important to the Setos, and they are an important element in the process of reviving Seto cultural identity, so it is not surprising that the kind goes through similar processes than human kinds that people use when making sense of their identities. Similarly, the criticism that much science fiction has received from literary criticism, along with perceived lack of understanding of what science fiction is all about in the first place, has made many science fiction writers and readers to stick to “their ghetto” even more strictly (see Gunn & Candelaria 2005).

Sometimes it happens that a single genre is first a homeostatic property cluster, and thus a quasi-natural kind about which a researcher can make inductive inferences – but then something happens, and the genre turns into a projection. Elsewhere in this volume, Kaarina Koski discusses the legend genre, especially in Finland. It seems that the legends told in Finland have most likely at some point formed a homeostatic property cluster, but in the present day, there are good reasons to count the genre as a justified projection.

It can be argued that the legends collected in Finland in the early 20<sup>th</sup> century form a fairly continuous property cluster. It is also quite clear what kind of a mechanism produced and sustained the relative uniformity of the genre: when repeated, scattered stories and anecdotes started to conform to the legend form people were used to. Sometimes people even told a new story directly in the given, familiar form. In other words, tradition shaped the ways in which people told about things, and influenced both the form and the contents of the legends. Thus tradition was a part of the cultural mechanism that ensured the fairly reliable clustering of certain properties. It was and it still is possible to make inductive inferences about the resulting legend genre.

As Koski notes, urbanisation changed the situation. The turning point of modernization meant such a drastic change in the environment that the mechanism that used to sustain the legend genre broke down. Obviously, tradition rarely entirely disappears in such ruptures, nor did it in this case. The mechanism that produced a relatively uniform legend genre however disintegrated, and as a result, the properties that were formerly typical to legends got detached from each other. Thus properties that were typical to the legend genre can still be found in many kinds of texts, but they no longer cluster in the same predictable way.

However, researchers can still have good reasons for using the classification. Properties typical to legends can still be observed in contemporary tradition, and it might well be fruitful to classify some contemporary text as a legend. In this case, the kind *legend* is however not a homeostatic property cluster, since the properties that earlier characterized legends are now found scattered in many different kinds of texts. Instead, it should be seen as a projection, and the criterion used for identification might be family resemblance. A projection of this kind can be fully justifiable, if it proves to be fruitful. In another study the same text could be classified as something else, and this is not inconsistent with classifying it as a legend, too.

In other words, there is a historical turning point which can be observed in the archives: material classified as legends prior to this point has certain reliably clustering properties, and material classified after it does not, even though the later legends have strong family resemblances with the earlier legends. It is likely that there are other similar intermittent archival classes. The significant consequences for a researcher are easy to grasp: it is possible to make much stronger inductive inferences about the material collected before the turning point than about the material collected after it, and it is not possible to extend the results of these inferences based on the earlier material to the later material.

### **Genres, Classes, and Theories: Some Consequences**

We started by making distinction between genres as projections and genres as real kinds. For one thing, a genre concept that is a projection of research practices or theories may have a use in organizing the research object: it defines what researchers are interested in studying according to a set of properties that are motivated by precisely those intellectual or practical interests. For another thing, in art studies, a rich theoretical framework that is developed around a particular genre concept, even if it is a projection, could serve as a tool for analysis and give a perspective for interpretation. But genre concepts and theories like this are projections. This is not itself a knowledge-producing practice. However, if there are cultural and literary phenomena “out there” that are constituted as homeostatic property clusters, then researchers can make discoveries. They can make generalizations about genres and even find new genres. However, as we have seen, the distinction is not quite that simple. The mechanisms that produce the clusters can be more or less robust, they can sustain the clustering more or less reliably, and they can change, by themselves or when a researcher “intervenes”. Researchers are, after all, people. Genres are also prone to mix and hybridize. Mechanisms can also disappear, which does not necessarily mean that the homeostatic clusters disappear at once –

they can start to break up slowly, leaving us with sets of properties that cluster less and less reliably. This means that the border between being a real kind and a projection is fuzzy.

There are, however, lessons to be learned. For example, theories that focus on the socio-cultural basis of genres should be mindful of what exactly they are theories of: of genre as a general phenomenon or of how individual genres are generated. The latter needs more precision of mechanisms involved. The most important thing is, however, to be precise about what the genre classification *aims* at doing. Take, for example, the western fiction, which probably has some features of a property cluster but is not perfectly homeostatic. We need to specify what we are doing when we are reading a text or watching a movie as western fiction. Not all genre concepts refer to similar things in the world or do the same things from a theoretical point of view. Some genres may be projections and some real kinds even if we are discussing them in the same context, and some uses of the same term, such as “western”, may be used in different ways *even if the reference seems to be the same*, that is, more or less the same group of movies or novels. The concept of western may be aimed at simple categorization of movies with a certain property: where they take place. But as it happens, there are commonalities in these movies and one can make a theory of western fiction based on that – that is, there is a real kind of westerns “out there”. Now, the question arises: is the *aim* of a particular theory to be a conceptual framework for analyzing western movies, or to be description of something that the researcher discovers and that exists within the cultural phenomenon of fiction, independently of the classification? If the first, the theory can only be more or less useful in analysis and it does not make falsifiable claims about fiction as it is outside the academic assessment. If the latter is the case, the theory, first of all, presupposes that there is a homeostatic cluster, and the claims it makes about the cluster can be correct or incorrect.

It also follows that the role of individual texts, movies, and so on, are different. Here we need to introduce one more philosophical distinction: that between *data* and *phenomena* (Bogen & Woodward 1988). Data is produced in an interaction with the concrete research objects, such as texts. A reading of a particular text from a particular perspective produces data either about that text or something else. A phenomenon is the object of interest, a thing independent of the research. The individual text as a work of literature can be a phenomenon of interest in itself: that is, all the properties that the text has that make it possible to have all the interpretations that can be made of it. Individual readings are just data about the text as a phenomenon. Or the phenomenon of interest may be the poetry of a particular culture and the text is data for that.

Or the phenomenon may be a genre, such as western fiction as it is in the cultural reality of fiction.

If the concept of western is used as a projection, it can be used as a tool for analyzing a particular text or a movie *as* a western in order to say something about that text or movie. And as we have said before, there is no need to restrict this perspective to only proper members of the genre. Therefore, movies like Ang Lee's *Brokeback Mountain* (2005) or George Lucas' *Star Wars* (1977) can be analyzed as westerns without any commitments outside that particular analysis. Analyzing them as westerns gives a perspective and conceptual tools to produce data that tells something about that particular movie. On the other hand, if the concept of genre is used as a kind, the genre kind is the object of research. Properties of particular movies are data for that phenomenon existing independently of analysis (the homeostatic cluster of western properties) and the researcher is trying to get information about that. In this case, movies used for study need to be exemplary of the genre and using *Brokeback Mountain* or *Star Wars* would plainly be doing bad research. Both aspirations clearly exist in, for example, comparative literature and film studies, both in the analysis of particular texts or movies and in theory, and this is all fine. This becomes problematic, however, if the two notions of genre are not kept apart, and the notion of genre is treated as one uniform thing.

The distinction is even more difficult to observe – and at the same time, even more crucial to acknowledge – when we shift our focus from interpretation to descriptive research involving generalizations. As mentioned above, projective categorizations can serve as a way to define the research object: if a researcher is interested in, say, a particular type of legend, he or she may create a category for this purpose to delimit the analysis. It makes perfect sense to make inductive generalizations on the chosen type of legends. But these inferences should, then, follow the rules of statistical inferences, including those pertaining to sample sizes. One cannot assume that what can be observed in a small sample, generalizes to the whole category. Furthermore, mere generalizations do not say anything about what is distinctive for this particular type of legends in comparison to other types of legends, for example. Mere generalizations are not evidence for a link between the membership of the category and the properties under study. Both of these inferences, if made, make an *assumption* that there is a connection between membership in the group and the properties that have been found. This assumption is the very idea of real kinds we have discussed here. If a researcher *a*) makes generalizations about certain properties of a category that has been defined in terms of other

properties, and *b*) these additional properties are meant to be properties of the category rather than being arbitrary and *accidentally* shared by many members of the category, there are three possibilities. The first possibility is that the properties are indeed connected and the “discovered” properties are derivative of those properties that define the category. In other words, this is not a question of categories in the world but rather of properties that are derivative of other properties or derivative of particular combinations of other properties. The second possibility is that the researcher is making false, unfounded inferences and the observed phenomenon is simply an accident of convergent probabilities in the data organized in a projected category. The third possibility is that the projected category correlates with a phenomenon in reality and the researcher has discovered a real kind. If we rule out the second possibility in the philosophical analysis of such research practices, we may say that when a researcher makes inductive inferences based on a small sample that is not statistically representative, he or she is *implicitly* making assumptions about kinds, and these assumptions are confirmed or discredited by future research.

In this article, we have shown two things, building on the philosophical discussion on kinds. First, that there are differences with real consequences between the two notions of projected categories and real kinds. Although these are both useful theoretical tools, a clear distinction between a projection and real kind should be kept in mind when discussing genres. Secondly, and more importantly, there are good reasons to think that real kinds exist in the research object of humanities, such as genres, without a need for essences or the sort of universality that is connected to natural kinds in some of the natural sciences. Using the idea of homeostatic property cluster in an analysis of real kinds, we see how local, historical and even fragile categories can be real kinds. Nevertheless, there is consequently an epistemic justification for research practices implicitly assuming kinds.

## Literature

- Bakhtin, M. M. 1986. *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Ed. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Trans. Vern W. McGee. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Barton, David 1994. *Literacy. An Introduction to the Ecology of Written Language*. Oxford: John Wiley & Sons.
- Bauman, Richard 1992. Genre. In Richard Bauman (ed.) *Folklore, Cultural Performances, and Popular Entertainments*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. Pp. 53–59.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1976. Introduction. In Dan Ben-Amos (ed.) *Folklore Genres*. Austin: University of Texas Press. Pp. ix–xlv.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1969 [1976]. Analytical Categories and Ethnic Genres. In Dan Ben-Amos (ed.) *Folklore Genres*. Austin: University of Texas Press. Pp. 215–242.



- Bird, Alexander, & Emma Tobin 2012. Natural Kinds. In Edward N. Zalta (ed.) *The Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy*. Winter 2012 edn. [online]  
<http://plato.stanford.edu/archives/win2012/entries/natural-kinds/>.
- Bogen, James, & James Woodward 1988. Saving the Phenomena. *Philosophical Review* 97: 303–352.
- Boyd, Richard 1991. Realism, Anti-foundationalism, and the Enthusiasm for Natural Kinds. *Philosophical Studies* 61: 127–48.
- Boyd, Richard 1999. Homeostasis, Species, and Higher Taxa. In Robert A. Wilson (ed.) *Species. New Interdisciplinary Essays*. Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press.
- Fowler, Alastair 1982. *Kinds of Literature. An Introduction to the Theory of Genres and Modes*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Frog & Eila Stepanova 2011. Alliteration in (Balto-) Finnic Languages. In Jonathan Roper (ed.) *Alliteration and Culture*. Houndmills: Palgrave MacMillan. Pp. 195–218.
- Frow, John 2006. *Genre*. London: Routledge.
- Gunn, James, & Matthew Candelaria (eds.) 2005. *Speculations on Speculation. Theories of Science Fiction*. Lanham: Scarecrow Press.
- Hacking, Ian 1995. The Looping Effects of Human Kinds. In D. Sperber, D. Premack & A. Premack (eds.) *Causal Cognition. A Multidisciplinary Approach*. Oxford: Clarendon Press. Pp. 351–382.
- Hacking, Ian 1999. *The Social Constructionism of What?* Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Honko, Lauri 1974. Balto-Fennic Lament Poetry. In Pentti Leino, Annikki Kaivola-Bregenhøj & Urpo Vento (eds.) *Finnish Folkloristics 1*. Studia Fennica 17. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 9–61.
- Honko, Lauri 1985. Rethinking Tradition Ecology. *Temenos* 21: 55–82.
- Honko, Lauri 1989. Folkloristic Theories of Genre. *Studia Fennica* 33: 13–28.
- Jauss, Hans Robert 1982. *Toward an Aesthetic of Reception*. Trans. Timothy Bahti. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Kuutma, Kristin 2006. Changing Codified Symbols of Identity. *Folklore Fellows Network* 31: 7–11.
- Lakoff, George 1987. *Women, Fire, and Dangerous Things. What Categories Reveal About the Mind*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Mace, Ruth, Clare Holden & Stephan Shennan (eds.) 2005. *The Evolution of Cultural Diversity: A Phylogenetic Approach*. London: University College London Press.
- Mallon, Ron 2003. Social Construction, Social Roles, and Stability. In Frederick F. Schmitt (ed.) *Socializing Metaphysics: The Nature of Social Reality*. Lanham, MD: Rowman and Littlefield.
- Miller, Carolyn 1984. Genre as Social Action. *Quarterly Journal of Speech* 70: 151–167.
- Newman, Kim 1990. *Wild West Movies*. London: Bloomsbury.
- Plato: *Phaedrus*.
- Putnam, Hilary 1975. The Meaning of ‘Meaning’. *Minnesota Studies in the Philosophy of Science* 7: 131–193.
- Shuman, Amy & Hasan-Rokem, Galit 2012. The Poetics of Folklore. In Regina Bendix & Galit Hasan-Rokem (eds.) *A Companion to Folklore*. Malden: Wiley-Blackwell. Pp. 55–74.
- Sperber, Dan 1996. *Explaining Culture*. London: Blackwell.
- Stepanova, Eila 2011. Reflections of Belief Systems in Karelian and Lithuanian Laments. Shared Systems of Traditional Referentiality? *Archaeologia Baltica* 15: 120–143.
- Stepanova Eila 2012. Mythic Elements of Karelian Laments. The Case of *syndyzet* and *spuassuzet*. In Frog, Anna-Leena Siikala & Eila Stepanova (eds.) *Mythic Discourses. Studies in Uralic Traditions*. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 257–287.

- Stepanova, Eila 2013. Flexibility, Changes and Obsolescence of the Karelian Lament Register”. Unpublished paper presented at the conference Register II. Emergence, Change and Obsolescence, 22<sup>nd</sup>–24<sup>th</sup> May 2013, in Helsinki, Finland.
- Stepanova, Eila 2014 (forthcoming). *Seesjärven Karjalan itkuvirsi*. PhD dissertation. University of Helsinki.
- Wilson, Robert (ed.) 1999. *Species. New Interdisciplinary Essays*. Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press.

## **PART II:**

# **Relations between and within Genres**

# The Legend Genre and Narrative Registers

**Kaarina Koski**

During the last century, the study of legends has encountered essential changes concerning both the research perspectives and the subject itself. Cultural changes accompanied by industrialization and urbanization brought about new topics and contents for legends as well as new forms of discourses in which legends flourish. The insights that developed in the new discourses have broadened the theoretical scope on legends. However, a definition of legend is not generally agreed upon.

The scholarly discussion on defining legend retains as its starting point Jacob Grimm's remarks on folk prose in the 1860s. Grimm's division between tales as more poetic and pedagogic and legends as shorter, historic and attached to named people and places, has been completed, criticized and reshaped dozens of times during the 20<sup>th</sup> century (see e.g. Tangherlini 1990). During last decades, Finnish folklore students have been taught that legends are short, monoepisodic, stereotypic folk narratives with the function of telling the truth (Jauhiainen 1982: 56–57). In fact, defining legends as stereotyped denies their tendency to ecotypification and historization, as being portrayed as local events that have occurred to explicitly named people.<sup>1</sup> C. W. von Sydow had borrowed the term *oicotype* from botany to denote the fact that tales of the same type form special local forms, adapted to local traditions and tastes in different districts. (von Sydow 1948: 50–52, 58–59, 243.) In belief legends, supernatural actors are typically changed to beings that are locally known. Contemporary legends, in turn, are adjusted to refer to currently relevant phenomena, such as commercially dominant companies, as well as to ethnic or social minorities that evoke prejudices in the local life. Timothy Tangherlini suggests that the process of ecotypification could be extended to the entire legend genre: the narratives are adapted to the needs of the culture and its tradition. Tangherlini likens the process of *historicizing* to diachronic ecotypification: legends appear historical because they refer to locally verifiable topographic and geographic features, and rely on culturally credible characters. (Tangherlini 1990: 377–379.)

---

<sup>1</sup> Stereotypification was sometimes the result of the process of collecting legends. The informant's decision to conceal the real names of the local characters and replace them with general labels such as "a farmhand" or "a woman" is occasionally recorded with the legend text. (Koski 2011: 35.)

Another debated point concerns the truth value of legends. The historicity and ecotypification of legends to local life were long interpreted as a claim of truth. The alleged belief in legends was later observed to be overestimated. The modified suggestion was that legends involve a claim to be judged as true or false. (Dégh 1996: 39; Dégh & Vázsonyi 1971: 282, 299–302; Tangherlini 1990: 378–379.) However, the narrator can also choose to frame the legend as a mere story, distancing himself from the narrated content and thus discouraging serious discussion about its truth value (Bennett 1984a; Smith 1981). Nevertheless, it is clear that legends are concerned with exceptional, potentially true events in the margins of the narrators' and listeners' own, conceivable social reality. They debate and contest the stability of everyday knowledge and also give us an opportunity to pretend play and make-believe, challenging the boundaries of reality (Kinsella 2011: 18–19). A recent definition claims that “legend telling is the communal exploration of social boundaries” (Ellis 2003: 11).

We can detect three major trends affecting the study of legends in the course of the last century. First, in the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, there was a quest for a more explicit categorization, which was connected to the classificatory ideals. Second, observations of living narration and variation resulted in questioning the classificatory model and introducing instead the interest in the living meaning-making process and performance. Third, profound changes in Western societies during the 20<sup>th</sup> century changed both the topics of legends and the forms of transmission and expression; the scholarship of contemporary legends started to focus on new questions.

In addition, while legend studies widened the scope outside narrative expression, in narrative studies a strong development towards schematic structures and discourse practices (e.g. Siikala 1984; 1990; 2000) meant redefining the perspective on genres and going past etic labels, such as legend. New scholarly ideas both within and outside legend studies did not, however, lead all researchers to abandon the older conceptions designed to serve studies based on archives. Large archives provide legend collections showing motifs and world views which cannot be recorded or observed as a living tradition any more. Consequently, for several decades now, the study of legends has not followed an unbroken line of inquiry but rather consisted of many. Important but not unbridgeable borderlines exist between preindustrial and contemporary legend material, as well as between the study of archived texts and living processes. Another gap exists between legend studies, focusing on instantiations of recurrent legend motifs, and studies of speech genres, investigating the discursive practices of various topics and genres in

a chosen community. Both these lines of study can analyze partly the same material but approach it from different directions.

During the first decade of the 21<sup>st</sup> century, the term legend has been used in reference to a variety of meanings, ranging from fabulates with a fixed plot (Klintberg 2010) to “mind viruses”, ideas that adopt new forms to survive and spread in human communities (Ellis 2003: 83). If the concept is restricted to denote coherent textual items only, essential characteristics of the use, transmission and meanings of legend motifs would be neglected. However, if the concept includes all possible forms, it would refer to a certain folkloristic perspective but become too wide to be an analytic tool. Nevertheless, other analytical tools would be easily available to study the various forms of legends.

In this article, I will evaluate the background and difficulties of defining the legend as a genre and suggest a linguistic genre analysis to study the narrative performances of legends. The relationship between genre in folklore studies and linguistics is approached from the perspective of systemic functional register theory.

### **Classificatory Ideal and Its Critique in Legend Studies**

Genre has been understood in folklore studies in various ways: as permanent or evolving forms, classificatory categories, or forms of discourse. Each notion of genre has served a particular purpose. New research interests and approaches have needed and will again need reshaped conceptions of genre. (Ben-Amos 1976: 31). In legend studies, the classificatory notion of genre has been perhaps the most influential, albeit it has been criticized and later conceived to have its advantages mainly in archival work (Siikala 2000: 218). At the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, established practices of folklore study essentially leaned on large corpora of archived materials, which were assumed to require classification and labeling before study. The model for discovering regularities in the text masses was taken from Carl von Linné’s botanical systematization. (E.g. Ben-Amos 1976: 30–33; Haavio 1942; Honko 1962, 1964, 1968; Pentikäinen 1968; von Sydow 1948.) During the second half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the classificatory idea developed into theories of genre systems assuming that genres as distinct entities necessarily form a functional system, which covers all the traditional communication of a given group and in which genres have an inherent functional distribution, “a working arrangement” (Honko 1989: 13, 15).

This classificatory interest also guided the formulation of the genre of legend. As a broad and non-specific characterization, Grimm's definition was soon found to be inadequate for scholarly purposes. To repair the situation, C. W. von Sydow proposed a wide range of subgenres in the 1930's. He distinguished memorates as a category of stories about people's own experiences, hence pointing out that they are influenced by legends and could, when stylistically shaped and adopted by other narrators, become memorial legends. Fabulates, in turn, were internationally recognized motifs reflecting tradition and inventive fantasy. He noted that fabulates often lack local places and personal names and that belief in them is only partial. (von Sydow 1948: 73–75, 87.)

Von Sydow's model of classification was adopted and elaborated especially in Nordic folk belief studies (e.g. Granberg 1935, Haavio 1942, Honko 1962). An essential source critical observation, already made by von Sydow, was that fabulates with certain migratory plots and stylistic features kept intact and did not adapt to local life worlds, while other legends functioned as a part of the local folk belief discourse (von Sydow 1948: 63, 74–76). In his study on Finnish house spirit tradition, for example, Martti Haavio characterized fabulates as *fantasy legends*: entertaining stories based on an internationally recognized plot, dramatic enough to spread without adaptation into local milieu and thus not reflections of the actual folk belief. They were distinguished from belief legends proper, which, in turn, had local coloring and were essentially in accordance with the local beliefs. The distinction between fabulates and belief legends has been crucial in Finnish folk belief studies. (Haavio 1942: 9; Honko 1964: 12–13; Jauhiainen 1982: 57–59; see also Koski 2007: 1–3.)

The subcategory of memorates was developed further for source critical ends. The folk belief oriented approach in the 1960's focused on literal interpretations of narratives and their value as reports of authentic supernatural experiences. Especially in Lauri Honko's and Juha Pentikäinen's research, the role of first-hand memorates was crucial as recounts of authentic experiences and as expressions of genuine belief. Memorates were recognized by their incoherent structure, detailed style and idiosyncratic motifs. Traditional features, in turn, revealed that the description had already changed from original to meet collective expectations. A careful comparative genre analysis of fabulates, belief legends and memorates, as well as of functional features of the narratives, was supposed to reveal reliably whether the narrator believed the narrated event to be true or if he had even experienced it himself. (Honko 1964: 10–13, 18–19, Pentikäinen 1968, Honko & Pentikäinen 1970: 57.)

The quest for clear and exclusive distinctions between narrative expressions proved problematic. Lauri Honko suggested that genres are structured as combinations of distinctive features, such as form, content and function. Migratory legends, for example, are structured as a combination of form, geographical distribution, and content. (Honko 1964). The analytic subcategory of memorates optimistically leaned on the assumption that the detailed and incoherent style is a reliable sign of a close relation to experience and truth value. However, this alleged connection proved unsound. First person narration and authentication with a plenty of detail has been found to be a narrative strategy which can be applied for various reasons and to legends as well as to personal experiences. Many performances involve features of them both. Thus, choosing to perform a legend in a fabulate-like or memorate-like manner could be a choice of narrative strategy and not reveal anything about the narrated event's authenticity or traditionality. (Bennett 1984a: 86–87; Bennett 1988: 32–33; Dégh 1991: 26.) All this undermined both the role of classificatory subcategories as analytic tools and the status of folklore classification as a useful system. Furthermore, observation of living communication inevitably reveals the fact that there is always material which does not fit any clearly defined category, or falls into too many. Irrespective of whether the system is supposed to include all discursive forms or only the material we conceive as folklore, there is no way we could provide wholly systematic, mutually exclusive categories. Classificatory folklore genre system was later characterized as an ideal, in which the researchers tried to fit the reality. (Briggs & Bauman 1992: 132, 143–144, 149, 164; Siikala 2002: 218.)

Acknowledging this problem, Lauri Honko explained the gap between genres and real performances by the concept of ideal types. The ideal genre classification would serve as a scholarly tool, to which the variety of real texts, as well as different genre systems, could be related. However, the ideal system was severely criticized. Alan Dundes remarked that keeping to classifications restricts research and even prevents researchers from noting expressions which do not fall into genre categories (Dundes 1972: 94–95). Dan Ben-Amos opposed the pretension to universals and reminded us that genre systems are in each culture an integral part of the local cultural discourse, in which the diversity of concepts and the overlapping meanings of terms belong to reality of folklore. The debate on the need of ideal types in interpreting local communication systems lasted for decades. (E.g. Honko 1968: 1989; Ben-Amos 1976: 1992.) This debate, together with an emergent interest in speech genres, practically put an end to the dominant position of the classificatory genre conception in folklore research.



The second half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century faced crucial developments in the study of narrating and communication. Especially observations on communication situations both in folklore studies and linguistics vitally shaped our understanding of narrating and opened up new directions to the scholarly interest in legends. This progress was expressed in many frontiers. In Europe, the so called *Märchenbiologie* had its roots at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, focusing on the context, function and meanings of narrating and on the significance of the tales to the individual and society (Dégh 1969; Dégh 1995: 47–56). In the United States, the so-called new folkloristics emphasized the unity of text and performance and consequently the insufficient quality of archived materials (e.g. Ben-Amos 1972). New folkloristics turned attention to performing as meaningful action and thus portrayed folklore as behavioral tradition and meaning-making processes, not as textual items. This gradual progress also drove traditional legend scholarship into crisis. The question of whether folklore and consequently legends are primarily texts or performances was embodied in the European legend commission in the 1960s in a dispute about indexing legend types. Early folklorists had approached folk prose as folk literature, excluding considerations of context or performance. Following this tradition, researchers in favor of type cataloguing suggested limiting the term legend only to narratives which had a fixed plot and which could thus be indexed without trouble. In contrast to them, researchers who preferred to study legend-telling as a process involving a great deal of variation could not find it appropriate to reduce this tradition into types and to ignore the personal creativity and intentions of the narrators. With the new, widened perspectives, the opposing parties failed to agree upon a new, mutually satisfactory definition of legend. (Dégh 1996: 41; Klintberg 2010: 11–12; Tangherlini 1990: 372, 377.) The scholars are not to be blamed for discord; rather they stumbled on the true and complex nature of their research object. While the definitions and principles designed for classificatory purposes proved insufficient for further analytic research, they could not be totally abandoned either, because they, after all, formed the basis for the observed variation and fluidity.

The gap between the philological idea of legends as coherent texts and the practical observation of them as variable and conversational is reflected in the use of terminology. While the term legend can refer to a whole corpus of more or less narrative material, the coherent and most typically legend-like versions in the corpus are labelled as legends and divided from other subtypes. Thus a research corpus of legends can be analytically divided into legends proper (fabulates), experience stories (memorates) and belief statements according to the form of expression. Memorates have occasionally been divided into primary and secondary; in that case

the latter category corresponds to local belief legends. (e.g. Dégh 2001: 99; Johansson 1991: 9–10). With this two-level definition, there has been general agreement that only legends proper, i.e. fabulates or migratory legends, are suited for cataloguing. (Dégh 2001: 101.)

### **Terminological Problems – What Do We Mean by Fabulate?**

In many contexts, the Sydowian subcategories have been discarded and the difference between fabulates and memorates has been reduced to style: fabulates describe the same event as stereotyped or distanced, while memorates link it to one's own life or social circle. This should have simplified the meaning of the terminology but, in practice, the change also created confusion. Scholarly arguments based on different meanings of the same terminology may cause misunderstanding. I will illuminate this by comparing two examples concerned with the fabulate.

Linda Dégh and Andrew Vázsonyi have argued that the narrated event's credibility and relevance decrease when there are many links between the narrator and the person involved in the event. Sometimes the chain of links is shortened by a narrator, who may even claim it all happened to himself. Dégh and Vázsonyi's (1974) examples of well-known contemporary legends show that while the legends spread and there is need to retain credibility, the narrative strategies vary flexibly and the same contents can be performed as memorates or fabulates depending on the choice of narrative voice. When arguing that memorates easily become fabulates and vice versa, Dégh and Vázsonyi based the terms on the distinction between first person and third person narration, rejecting the Sydowian division between the content deriving from one's own experience or a traditional plot. (Dégh & Vázsonyi 1974: 230–236.) While I agree with Dégh and Vázsonyi's point that legends located in one's own social reality easily switch from first to third person and back, it needs to be pointed out that their argument about memorates and fabulates could be misunderstood if appeared elsewhere outside its original context (as it does e.g. in Tangherlini 1990: 374). Interpreted through a different understanding of this terminology and applied to preindustrial folk belief tradition, the argument about fabulates and memorates would not necessarily hold true.

Even though we acknowledge that narrative style does not reliably correlate with the content's traditionality or authenticity, the Sydowian notion of fabulate as legends not closely connected to local societies and not wholly believed in still describes a relevant distinction in the old legend materials. Compared to contemporary legends, preindustrial belief tradition included a wider spectrum of ontologically implausible motifs. Some of them were located in the listeners'

own milieu but others in the margins of it, in distanced narrative settings. The latter ones could be expressed as the kind of distanced fabulate narratives that Haavio (1942: 9) called fantasy legends. They were often attached to people who lived formerly in the narrator's own parish. Even so those fabulates depicted situations in which the people entered a margin of the social reality – for example forbidden or sacred times and places. They were very unlikely to be performed as memorates – as accounts describing somebody's experience in detail – unless the plot was essentially altered. For example the international legend of the church service for the dead<sup>2</sup> has been very popular throughout Europe (e.g. Köhler 1987: 934), describing physically repulsive corpses and their interaction with a living person who accidentally entered their church service during a festival night. This plot essentially belonged to a marginal reality: to a sacred time and place, in which ontological expectations could also deviate from normal expectations. In legends located in one's own social reality, ghosts of the dead are, in the 20<sup>th</sup> century Finland, seldom described as corporeal. In memorates connected to this legend type, the dead are not seen at all; only light is seen from the church and interpreted as a sign of the ongoing ceremony of the departed. There seems to be a clear difference between one's personally or socially experienced reality, and the marginal realities or narrative worlds described in fabulates. Certain contents typical to fabulates – such as the corporeal existence of the dead – just seem not to shift into memorates, because they belong to another, marginal reality. (Koski 2007: 7–9.) While the existence of such marginal realities could be found questionable, the popularity of dramatic migratory legends has been based on the intriguing and terrifying possibility of entering one. The distance between the narrative world and everyday reality has enabled exaggeration for aesthetic purposes (Young 1987: 56), which, at its best, results in an effective combination of entertainment, moral reflection, and fear.

Narrative strategies include adjustment of the distance between everyday reality and the narrated event as a condition of stating something to be true. In this case, contrary to the above mentioned assumption of Dégh and Vázsonyi, the credibility of an extraordinary narrative is increased by placing the event in a distanced setting.<sup>3</sup> (see Koski 2008a: 342–349.) Many legends naturally did, in preindustrial societies as well as they do now, attach themselves to the nearest neighborhood and flexibly switch the narrative voice from first to third person and back

---

<sup>2</sup> Legent type number C31A in Klintberg 2010; C 1341 and C 1821 in Jauhiainen 1998.

<sup>3</sup> Dégh and Vázsonyi link credibility to the event's relation to the listeners' immediate reality. Credibility can also be understood as the inner coherence and plausibility of the narrated sequence itself, even though it could not happen in one's own social reality (Koski 2007: 16–17).

in the way suggested by Dégh and Vázsonyi. But the legends which were located in marginal realities formed a distinct category of legends, which could not be attached to everyday reality without trouble. The study of preindustrial belief tradition, which involved the possibility of ontological flexibility beyond one's own life world, benefits from distinguishing these from belief legends. In historical folklore materials this distinction helps to analyze the boundaries and margins of the conception of social reality, which was changing in the course of time. The belief in corporeal ghosts, for example, had been prevalent earlier but faded away during the 19<sup>th</sup> century. The partial belief that they might exist in marginal realities reflects a period of change. In 1959, a typical narrator of the church service of the dead legend already calls it a tale<sup>4</sup> and declares that old people used to believe it before but “now such things are not believed in any more”.<sup>5</sup> Thus, genre analytic perspectives that may not be relevant to contemporary legends can be important in the study of historical materials.

Another question is, whether we should still use the worn-out term *fabulate*, the meaning of which varies so much. To avoid confusion I have elsewhere used the term *plot legends* (Fin. *juonitarinat*) to refer to legend types which seem to have spread and performed because of their dramatic plot, irrespective of their meager or lacking relation to local world view and folk belief. While Dégh has used the term *fabulate* to denote legends and exclude memorates, there has long also been the tendency to restrict the term *legend* to *fabulates* only. Even though both stances practically take *fabulates* as “legends proper”, they can actually denote quite a different set of narratives.

### **Contemporary Legends and the Widening Perspective**

Social and technological transformations of Western societies after the Second World War created new cultural atmospheres, which were soon reflected in the changed topics and contents of legends. Similar new bodies of legends in the USA and Europe were created not only by the mass media but also by the similar fears and anxieties of newly urbanized populations. (Dégh 1996: 35.) The profound cultural change meant that not all genres of preindustrial popular discourse continued in the same form or bearing the same function and significance. The available communication channels influence the forms of popular expression, and also create new forms of folklore (Smith 1986: 31, 37, 42). In contemporary Western societies, ordinary

---

<sup>4</sup> The Finnish word *satu* is often translated ‘fairy tale’.

<sup>5</sup> SKS A 864/ Alatornio. Lauri Simonsuuri 17.7.1959. < Karoliina Nordman, born 1874 Alatornio.

people express their feelings, anxieties, arguments, and comments in their communities not only orally but also through other channels, involving writing, computer graphics and internet-based social media. The character of social groups and networking has changed as well. People can show their communicative and expressive skills, tell jokes, interact with each other, and feel affinity without traditional face to face contact. (Lange 2007.) In this new situation, legends spread in new forms. If the tendency for ecotypification of traditional legends and the attachment to local people and events was an effort towards relevance and urgency, the same effort today requires the use of relevant information channels and written form, hence storytelling or hearsay are not appreciated as accurate information channels. Similarly, if legends strive to be entertaining, it is likely that they are transformed into jokes and appear in popular culture. Not surprisingly, contemporary legend has proved to be more fluid in form than other narrative genres, and this variation correlates with a significant functional variation. (Smith 1989: 95–96, 99.) The fluid structure and the freedom of movement as a crucial characteristic of contemporary legend strengthened the view of legends more as processes than products. To catch up with the process, Linda Dégh declaims that legends need to be collected and studied in all possible forms: “printed on billboards, abstracted in newspapers, dramatized in tabloids, discussed on talk shows, made into a movie or any other format” (Dégh 1991: 19–23).

In the 1980s, there was discussion whether “modern urban legends” should be divorced from their rural counterparts and studied as a separate genre. However, a noteworthy continuity was found, expressing the legends’ capacity for ecotypification and their migratory nature. (Tangherlini 1990: 381–383.) The search for a new definition and the exploration of its boundaries was a central issue in the numerous conferences on contemporary legend held in Sheffield in the 1980s. Gillian Bennett declared that many versions of a well known urban legend, “The Phantom Hitchhiker,” are actually not legends at all; instead, they are personal experience stories or memorates, *dites*<sup>6</sup>, mere conversations, comments or illustrations of a longer story, or news. Consequently, she concludes that the set of the phantom hitchhiker stories would be best studied outside the category of modern urban legends and, instead, in the context of a recurring ghostlore theme. (Bennett 1984b: 46–47, 60.) Even though Bennett at this stage still held onto the traditional definition of legend including a specific form, she argued that sticking to the form hinders the research. Later she notes that legend performances vary in

---

<sup>6</sup> Dites are imperative or assertive, non-narrative arguments, which crystallize a belief or conception.

respect to style and even genre, instantiating as dities, comments within other stories, or tall tales (Bennett 1987: 24).

As indicated above, narrative form or alleged formlessness has been among the most debated questions in defining the legend. While Dégh wrote that the form of legend is subordinate to the message and context (Dégh 1991: 19), in practice, legend was generally defined by its special narrative form in the 1980s. Commenting on Dégh's opinion, there were explicit arguments that legends are necessarily narratives (e.g. Tangherlini 1990; Nicolaisen 1987). These arguments were based on the classificatory legacy of defining genres exclusively by distinctive features and establishing clear boundaries between them. Timothy Tangherlini, for example, explicated the difference between a rumor and a legend, writing that rumor is like a legend which only lives a short but often very intensive transmission period. A crucial distinction is that rumor can also be a short statement whereas legend is always a narrative. He concludes: "If a narrative rumor persists, it is a legend." (Tangherlini 1990: 375.)

In the study of contemporary legends, however, there has been an obvious need to allow gradient and partial membership of the category: to approach as legends also expressions which are simultaneously something else, like rumors, jokes or photocopies. Therefore, contemporary legends, or genres by and large, should rather be approached as prototype categories. A prototype category is formed around a prototypical member, which the other members resemble in a varying degree, thus being more or less typical or even marginal members of the category. Scholarly concepts are supposed to be exact, but if the concept attempts to conform to a popular phenomenon, it has to include the variation, fuzzy edges and partial members integral to it. To apply this to legends, the prototype of legend could be for example a narrative which applies traditional motifs to discuss certain improbabilities or dangers in social reality. Any expression or activity which shares enough similarities with the prototypical legend can be thus approached as a legend, even though it lacks narrative form. (See Koski 2008b: 50–52; Lakoff 1987; Neisser 1987: 20–21; Rosch 1977; Wittgenstein 1958: 30–34.)

Another way to discuss these more and less prototypical legends is to apply Frog's four-aspect model of emergent genre. In this frame of reference, genre is defined by form, content/enactment, use, and function. Frog suggests that a performance which lacks the typical formal features only represents the genre metonymically. He writes: "a summary of an epic is not an epic *per se*, it is only *metonymically epic*". (Frog, this volume.) Frog's approach gives another name to the problem faced in legend studies but does not necessarily solve it. On the

one hand, legends without a narrative form can be defined as *metonymic legends*. But on the other hand, if elasticity and fluidity are seen an essential part of the legends' form, the formal criteria explicitly allow variation. The question is how much variation can be allowed. A practical solution would be to define the form of legend to include a wide variety of narrative styles (or linguistic narrative genres discussed later) but to keep in mind that certain lines of inquiry need to study metonymic legends. This is important when studying legends as processes.

The conception of legend as narrative is epistemologically challenged when folklore is conceived not as text but as process. The new folkloristics introduced the conception of folklore as an interactive process involving the narrator and the audience; the process in which the text gains its meaning. From this perspective, the telling is the tale, and taking only the text as folklore mistakes the part for the whole. (Ben-Amos 1972: 9–10.) Following this line Bill Ellis explicitly states that legends are not folk literature but folk behavior and that legend-telling is a behavioral tradition. Thus, the important part of the event is not the text but the discussion in which the text is interpreted and relived by all the participants. The interaction preceding, following and also interrupting the telling is central to the event's meaning. (Ellis 2003: 10–12.) In their social context, legends fulfill expectations and serve the performer's goals. Gaining control over the situation, good performers may also be able to influence social structures. Legends can manipulate people's attitudes and guide their actions. Therefore Ellis defines legend-telling as a fundamentally political act, which should be observed in process. (Ellis 2003: xiii–xiv, 242–243.)

In addition to the meaning-making process in performance, legends undergo another process as they develop and decline. Ellis has outlined a legend's life span in which the narrative's status develops and consequently changes the expectation of its appropriate form in social discourse. Assuming that a legend starts from a need to express social strains or anxieties, the first stage of a legend being born is that it names a marginal experience. Second, the experience is verbally shared with others who may comment it. Third, interpretation and shaping according to traditional models develops the legend into a finished narrative. It can be performed in this form for various purposes. Fourth, when the legend has become familiar to the members of the group, it no longer needs to be narrated but can be realized metonymically. References to the legend's distinctive elements such as parts of dialogue are used and recognized by the inside group. Fifth, the legend decays further and becomes dormant. It can still circulate in parodic or

summary form but has lost its original energy. (Ellis 2003: 61–65.) During its life span, a legend would be a ‘legend proper’ only at its third stage. The metonymical realization in Ellis’s model denotes short references to the narrative, while in Frog’s model, parodies and summaries would also be metonymic legends. The study of these processes necessarily involves both the embryonic and metonymic forms of legend.

The wide scope in the study of legends also involves behavior triggered by legends, such as ostensive panic around alleged mass murders and satanic cults. In such cases, the actions of the whole society involved “constitute a collective performance of the legend”. (Ellis 2003: 199–206.) Another form of collective legend performances in action is *legend-tripping*. Michael Kinsella writes that a “legend-trip involves a journey to a specific location and/or the performance of certain prescribed actions that, according to local legend, have the potential to elicit a supernatural experience.” The trips usually begin with the telling of a few variants of the legend in question. Not all participants are convinced that the legend is true but are at least curious about the possibility. The intensive even chaotic atmosphere of the event triggers anomalous experiences, which are later on processed and articulated in new variants and interpretations of the local legend. (Kinsella 2011: 27–28.) The phenomenon that people mimic or repeat activities learnt from legends is not a novelty. Narratives which describe legend-inspired actions in graveyards or attempts to enter the church during the night are well presented in the archived materials. What is new is to approach not only the recounts but also the activity itself as part of the legend tradition. These widened views on the legend genre call for a more active role of the legend scholar. Studying folklore in its living context, not as texts divorced from it, requires the researchers’ constant presence in the field and eagerness to grasp any emerging legend-related phenomena. Pertinently, Bill Ellis characterizes the folklorist’s task as chasing a living beast (Ellis 2003: 4).

### **Genre as Practice**

As indicated above, the problem in defining the genre partly stems from the great variety of popular practices that convey and use legend-like material. It also reflects the tension between different conceptions of genre, as well as of folklore. The concept of legend has been largely based on the occurrence of the same motifs in various areas and contexts. The interest in local genres, however, drew scholarly attention away from such comparative perspectives and towards the ethnographic study of discursive practices. This line of inquiry adopted new theoretical conceptualizations of genre.



Mikhail Bakhtin's views have been influential in forming the notion of genres as dynamic and changing as well as overlapping and mutually independent elements of discourse (see also Savolainen, this volume). Seminal to this was Bakhtin's distinction between simple and complex genres, which he also called as primary and secondary, respectively. Simple genres represent the unmediated speech communion, while complex genres are part of highly developed and organized, e.g. artistic cultural communication. These genres' relation can be inclusive: complex genres, such as novels or drama, absorb and digest primary genres, such as letters or everyday dialogue, thus changing their character by removing them out of their immediate relation to actual reality. Another influential argument was that rather than separately existing, genres are realized in social practices of production and interpretation. (Bakhtin 1986: 61–62, 78; Briggs & Bauman 1992: 145; Hanks 1987: 671, 676–677; Siikala 2000: 218–220.) In a practice-based framework, in William Hanks' words, "the idea of objectivist rules is replaced by schemes and strategies". Thus genres are viewed as "a set of focal or prototypical elements, which actors use variously and which never become fixed in a unitary structure". (Hanks 1987: 681.)

Following Bakhtin's idea on the dialogic nature of speech genres (e.g. Bakhtin 1986: 91–94) Charles Briggs and Richard Bauman emphasize the intertextual aspect of genre. They see structure, form, function and meaning "not as immanent features of discourse but as products of an ongoing process of producing and receiving discourse", reminding us that the process lies in the text's interface with other utterances and in relation to them. The meanings of an utterance are thus shaped within its intertextual relations to prior discourse. Genres provide textual models for producing and interpreting. In addition, they carry historical associations as well as political, social and ideological connections: they can be associated with certain social groups, statuses or roles, thus invoking an expectation of authority. (Briggs & Bauman 1992: 146–148.) Genres and discourse fields have different degrees of institutionalization, cultural significance or ideological, moral or religious value (Siikala 2000: 216). While emphasizing the fluid nature of genres in practice, Briggs and Bauman nevertheless establish their approach on the existence of genres as culturally recognized, relatively stable models (see also Bakhtin 1986: 60). Moreover, contextual elements necessarily affect the process of producing and receiving discourse in relation to these models. Briggs and Bauman have introduced the term *intertextual gap* to emphasize that actual utterances often differ from the generic models known by the speakers. Authors can attempt to minimize the intertextual gap between their utterance and the generic model by adopting conservative modes of creating textual authority, or they

can maximize it through individual creativity. By manipulating the intertextual gap they adjust their relation to the social or religious authority or other interpretative expectations that the genre invokes. The genre's institutional, political or ritual status increases the significance of these practices. (Briggs & Bauman 1992: 149–151.)

This view is compatible with the above mentioned idea of legend as a prototype category. The question of authority of legends, however, is twofold. While legends had an authoritative status in traditional societies in teaching and controlling social morals, the situation of contemporary legends is somewhat different. To claim that a story or news delivered by a friend as true is actually an urban legend is to question the speaker's reliability. The term legend carries a label of erroneous conceptions and misunderstanding. Thus, an attempt to transmit a message as true requires maximizing the intertextual gap to the genre. However, performing legends consciously as legends frames them outside the ordinary discourse. In such a fabulate-like form they continue the discussion on the topic and spread forward, possibly providing symbolic devices to discuss social boundaries or possibly being delivered as true in some other form and context. The precise form and function of a legend is not preset but is created in practice in relation to the intentions of the narrator and the social and ideological aspects of the content and context.

The range of forms a legend can take is wide. Legends can work in the Bakhtinian sense as primary genres ingested in complex genres such as novels or movies. In novels, it is common to embed not only legend plots but whole narrative performances. This is not exceptional in filmed form, either.<sup>7</sup> On the other hand, the concept of legend is wide enough to represent a complex genre itself. As elaborated artistic expressions, traditional legends can include dialogue, proverbs, and also short songs and charms. For example, murdered children typically reveal the place of their hidden remains by performing a short song or rhyme included in the legend (C 961, C 966, C 968 in Jauhiainen 1998). Bakhtin made a distinction between everyday communication and artistic expressions, but folklore includes and mixes both these areas, and the inclusiveness of genres is realized in more than two levels. However, the relation of legends

---

<sup>7</sup> An old but fine example is the popular Finnish TV-series *Tankki täyteen* ("Fill it up") shown in 1978–1980. One character in this gas station comedy was a distinguished narrator whose repertoire included jokes, legends and anecdotes. The character, Reinikainen, not only embroidered the simple plot with his performances but became so popular that a spin-off comedy with his name was produced and shown in 1982–1983.

to other genres is not primarily one of inclusion but instantiation. Legends are instantiated in a variety of narrative genres as well as in non-narrative forms.

### **Narrative Genres in Linguistics**

The concept of genre clearly differs in linguistics from the folkloristic approach. In the linguistic study of discourse, approach to genre stresses the relationship between language and its social and cultural function. Thus, genres serve different culturally established purposes and have evolved over time to achieve their goals by a particular structure, constituted of functional stages. Even though genre has been acknowledged to have thematic features as well, the primary interest has focused on the stylistic and structural features, especially the relationship of the structure and function. Genre has been defined as a linguistically realized staged, goal oriented, purposeful social activity. (Eggins & Martin 1997: 236; Eggins & Slade 1997: 56, 231, 233, 270; Martin 1992: 505.) Narrative genres have been one of the most investigated genres in linguistics. In sociolinguistics as well as in systemic functional approach, narrative is defined in Labovian terms, the stages equating the narrative components introduced by William Labov (1972). A fully formed narrative consists of abstract, orientation, complication, evaluation, resolution and coda. The function of a narrative is to discuss and evaluate an unusual or remarkable event and its outcome. For this purpose, abstract and coda are optional, while the others four are obligatory. Labov's model of narrative has been later on divided into four related categories, *recount*, *anecdote*, *exemplum* and *narrative*, which each have a distinct structure. (Eggins & Slade 1997: 233–234, 236, 243; Labov 1972: 363–366; Martin 1992: 564.) Such groups of related genres have been called *genre families* in pedagogical contexts. (Martin & Rose 2008: 49–51, 97.) While *narratives* follow the essence of Labovian model, relating a series of events and culminating the tension between complication and resolution, *recounts* can be mere records of events in which nothing actually went wrong, so there is no resolution. Recounts do not necessarily include evaluation or make a clear point. What are referred as *anecdotes* are open narratives that give the narrator and listeners the opportunity to share a reaction to a remarkable event – laughter or possibly a terrified gasp. They can describe a crisis but do not offer a resolution to it. *Exemplums* are defined as moralizing parables or anecdotes designed to make a moral point. They consist of an orientation and an incident, followed by the moralizing interpretation. (Eggins & Slade 1997: 243–244, 257–259; Martin 1992: 565.) This division, which was produced for pedagogical purposes, may not be exhaustive or accurate, but it shows that narrative performances are subject to functional variation.

Performances of legend are clearly subject to this kind of variation. Researchers have recurrently noted that both the narrators and the situational contexts significantly influence the form that the legend may take (e.g. Hobbs 1989: 57). Gillian Bennett has explored narratives about supernatural encounters and showed that the purpose of narrating determines narrative structuring. Bennett has compared fully formed narratives with conversational, non-linear performances. She has interpreted the latter to be explanatory and evidential (Bennett 1984a) or to serve “expository function” (Bennett 1986) as exemplum-like indications of an opinion. Variation is not only narrator specific but also depends on other contextual variables. In her seminal study *Narrative and Narrating*, the Finnish folklorist Annikki Kaivola-Bregenhøj compared one narrator’s performances and their variation. One of the analyzed narratives was a humorous belief legend, which was, on one occasion out of four, instantiated without the resolution, therefore as an anecdote. In an exceptionally merry atmosphere, and due to the similar nature of the preceding story in the discourse, the audience grasped the point and burst into laughter straight after the complication. (Kaivola-Bregenhøj 1996: 143–146, 168–169, 190.) Kaivola-Bregenhøj concluded from a larger corpus of narrative performances that the three most important sources of contextual variation in the narratives were 1) the narrated topic, 2) the participants, and 3) the preceding discourse and the role of the narrative in it. (Kaivola-Bregenhøj 1996: 188–192.) These actually parallel *field*, *tenor*, and *mode*, the sources of variation in linguistic register theory, introduced below.

### **Genre and Register**

In linguistics, contextual variation has been analyzed with the concept of register, essentially developed by M.A.K. Halliday. In linguistic research, registers represent not genre-specific but contextual variation in language.<sup>8</sup> They cover a community’s or an individual’s linguistic repertoire which is put into various uses in different situations. (Halliday 1973: 22.) Much like genre as practice, register has been characterized as an open system of beliefs, attitudes and expectations about what kinds of linguistic expressions are likely or appropriate in certain contexts. What kinds of topics are conceived as meaningful and relevant also depends on the context of situation. Thus, registers are not only diverse ways of expressing the same thing, but ways of expressing diverse things: *what* is an essential part of predicting *how*. (de Beaugrande 1993: 17–18; Eggins & Martin 1997: 234; Halliday 1979: 32–34.) Halliday conceptualized the

---

<sup>8</sup> In the study of oral poetry, register has been used to denote a genre specific linguistic style, referring to the special contexts in which epic poetry is performed (Foley 1995; Honko 1998: 63–65.)

sources of contextual variation as field, tenor, and mode. *Field* refers to the social action taking place, including the subject matter and the way reality is presented. It involves e.g. the vocabulary needed and the specificity or familiarity of the topic. *Tenor* denotes the social and hierarchical roles of the participants. It includes both the permanent statuses or relationships they have and the speech roles they are taking on in the situation. *Mode* refers to the communicative channel, as well as to the role of language in the situation. For Halliday this includes the variation between oral and written, as well as the goals of communication. (Eggins & Martin 1997: 233, 238; Halliday 1979: 62; Martin 1992: 499–500.) James Martin stresses the cultural connectedness of genre, but defines genre in linguistic terms as a staged, goal-oriented linguistically realized activity type. As Martin notes, the field, tenor and mode variables are not combined freely in any culture. The system of social processes constitutes the culturally appropriate options available in one or another context of situation. (Martin 1992: 562.)

The context of situation can be understood as consisting of a performance event possibly involving a lengthy discourse before and after the analyzed narrative. However, the preceding discourse can also be something which has been going on in the same social group for a longer time. Bill Ellis has pointed out that legends cannot be reperformed to the same audience without radically altering their nature as a speech act. Hearing the same legend the second time, the audience no longer falls under its spell but may listen to it as an aesthetic performance. (Ellis 2003: 60–61.) Becoming known by everybody also changes the legend's status, as indicated in Ellis's life span model earlier. The variation outlined by Ellis falls into the domain of both field and tenor. When the narrated event (field) is familiar already, the subject matter is not treated in detail. However, this condition holds only when the audience consists of the in group members (tenor). Legend metonyms need to be reversed to narrative form if a new member enters the group (Ellis 2003: 65).

Halliday's contextual variables field, tenor, and mode work together with his model of *semantic metafunctions* as choices for meaning. Here I apply them as choices of the narrator in structuring the meanings of his narrative. In Halliday's model, metafunctions are realizations of the context variables. The context variable field is realized typically in the *ideational metafunction*, which here denotes the narrators' devices for building the content and mapping the reality. Tenor corresponds to the *interpersonal metafunction*, denoting his resources for interacting, addressing the listeners and shaping social roles, as well as his attitudes to his topic.

Mode corresponds to the *textual metafunction*, the resources for organizing texts. (Eggins & Martin 1997: 233, 238–242; Halliday 1978.) The metafunctions can be used in analyzing the semantic structuring of both oral and written expressions. Pauliina Latvala, for example, has employed Halliday's model of textual metafunctions to study how meanings are transmitted in written narratives of oral family history (Latvala 2005: 39–47, 275–277). In narrative legend performances, the ideational metafunction includes the legend motifs, as well as the orienting framework, which, in turn, involves the time, place and characters of the narrative. The ideational realization thus brings on stage the traditional core and also determines whether it is attached to the local surroundings or not. To the interpersonal metafunction belong addressing the listeners and taking into account their comments and expectations, as well as the personal intentions and goals of the narrator and *distancing*, by which the narrator adjusts his personal relation to the narrated content according to the context (Smith 1981). The textual metafunction consist of the models and skills of structuring the narrative to reach the intended goals. Those include knowledge of local generic practices, narrative and stylistic devices such as signifying formulas, changes of the tense from past to present, dialogue or quotations, imitation, and many paralinguistic devices such as the pitch, tempo of the speech, pauses, and laughing (see Kaivola-Bregenhøj 1996). Contextual variables and their realizations are interconnected: the appropriate narrative structure is chosen by the narrator according to his estimation in which register certain contents should be delivered to the present audience.

In narrative analysis, these ideational, interpersonal and textual metafunctions can be seen as the relevant meaning-making variables accounting for the variation in *narrative registers*. I have argued above that legends are primarily defined by content and setting, while their structure and functions vary contextually. In narrative discourse, the contextual variation of legends is instantiated as various linguistically defined narrative registers. This view has been vigorously inspired by the works of Gillian Bennett (1984a; 1986; 1999), who has explicitly analyzed this variation in empirical narrative material. To conceptualize the variation within legend instantiations, I have suggested applying Halliday's conception of register to folklore.

### **Narrative Registers as Instantiations of Legend**

Variation is an essential characteristic of folklore. Legends have been a challenging object for classification because of their tendency to elasticity and ecotypification. Attempts to solve the problem have been manifold. Lauri Honko followed von Sydow's line by defining subcategories of legend and noted that legend genre actually involves and overlaps with several

other genres. The categorizing endeavor was softened by the notion that generic models are ideal types and most performances are settled somewhere between them. (Honko 1980: 23–24; Honko 1989: 25–26.) These types have also been approached as forms of functional variation. Kyrill Čistov suggested in 1967 that von Sydow’s categories (Sagenbericht, Memorat, Fabulat) are not genres but basic forms of delivering the same legend motifs. The choice between these communicative variants depends on contextual factors, such as the contact between the narrator and listeners, and the familiarity of the motif in the local belief system. Čistov argued that unlike tale motifs, legend motifs are autonomous and can be used without the original plot, as well as serve as a basis for further narratives. When a legend is based on beliefs which are unknown to the listeners, Čistov suggests that only the belief core of the legend is likely to be conveyed. This usually happens in the form of legend summaries (Sagenbericht) or rumors/conceptions (Gerücht–Meinung). When the belief system underlying the legend is familiar to the listeners, the legend can be performed in a full narrative form, as fabulates. Furthermore, when the narrative is widely known in the community, it will generate new episodes about people’s reactions to the legend events happening in their life world. These can be conveyed in all three forms, including memorates. (Čistov 1967: 34–36.) In the last decades of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, Čistov’s idea of understanding these forms as functional variation could, unfortunately, not compete with the interest in categorization. Lauri Honko, obviously missing Čistov’s point, characterized Čistov’s view as a step backwards. Honko recommended that distinction should not be made between genres and non-genres just when the Sydowian terminology had been widely adopted. (Honko 1989: 23.) However, Čistov’s functional approach is compatible with 21<sup>st</sup> century’s views on legends as processes, as well as with the register model introduced above. The contextual factors mentioned by Čistov – the contact between the narrator and the listeners, and the familiarity of the topic – roughly correspond to tenor and field in Halliday’s register theory.

Čistov’s remarks on contextual variation can be compared with Ellis’s notions on legends’ life span. However, while Ellis is concerned about the plot’s familiarity in a small group, Čistov writes about the narrative’s relation to a whole belief system. In both cases the variation falls into the domains of field and tenor, concerning the relations of the topic and the narrator to the listeners. Mode would enter when the legends are removed from the oral discourse of everyday life and for example conveyed in colloquial writing in the internet or published in collections.

The concept of genre has, due to cross-disciplinary perspectives, become wide and multi-faceted. The genre-as-practice approach (Hanks 1987; Briggs & Bauman 1992; Siikala 2000) understands genres as local models for discourse strategies, which in this case means various models for conveying legends in different forms depending on the context. While the linguistic conception of narrative genres (e.g. Eggins & Slade 1997; Eggins & Martin 1997) offers a precise but narrow definition based on structure and function, the genre-as-practice approach involves more flexibility accounting for the intertextual statuses of genres in relation to different speakers. If fabulates, memorates, their summaries, anecdotes, legend-trips and legend-related conversations as discourse strategies are to be defined as genres, then the legend, existing on a higher level of abstraction and involving all those forms, could be characterized as a *metagenre*. Anna-Leena Siikala has used the term in connection to the *korero*, the oral history in the Cook Islands. The *korero* involved the same mythical-historical content and the same functional field even though represented and performed in different forms: legend-like narratives, sung or recited poems, song and dance performances, or in performances by authoritative *tumu koreros* who incorporated the content to local genealogies and political issues. (Siikala 2000: 221.) However, unlike the *korero* tradition having a particular authority especially when performed by the specialists, legend is a more commonplace genre varying more freely by the narrator, context and the communicative channel. Historically basing on recognition of recurrent content elements, legends are a narrative folklore genre at the same level as fairy tales or saints' legends. Compared to them, legends are more conversational and thus have a more fluid structure, instantiating in various forms, approached here as narrative registers.

Narrative register is not the same as linguistic register which marks different uses of language for different purposes. Instead, narrative register marks *recontextualizations of the legend* in different contexts. The variation includes the range between realistic and fabulated, personal and distanced, conversational and dramatic, as well as summarized and detailed. It also involves the setting, narrative structure and the choice to include or leave out a particular moral point, as well as the way to address the listeners. Even though narrative register also involves linguistic features, most of the relevant points concern units larger than a clause. More important than syntactic or lexical choices are the decisions to include or exclude certain details and the choice of the setting or the narrative world.



Major changes in legend instantiations have happened, first, when everyday discourse has entered colloquial writing in email and SMS, and second, when popular culture and various internet sites have changed the structure of legend audiences. Instead of debating whether the new forms are legends at all, we benefit from studying the characteristics of each discourse field as well as the functional forms of legend in different stages of its life span and the forms it is likely to be conveyed to different audiences having different knowledge about the background of the plot.

## **Conclusion**

The genre of legend involves human tendency to discuss extraordinary events, to use given models and motifs when interpreting them, and to process one's relation to phenomena and behaviors alien to one's own life world and outlook. Early folklorists were mostly attracted to the coherent narrative expressions produced by these tendencies and the supernatural imagery representing the other. Contemporary scholars also scrutinize how these processes work and how they affect societies, expressing fears and suspicion and even guiding people's behavior. In the role of the other, supernatural phenomena have in contemporary legends been accompanied by extraterrestrial aliens, ethnic, religious and other minorities, criminals, mental patients, new technology, as well as the faceless power of the state and big commercial companies. Even though legends have got new forms of expression, the practice of oral narrating has persisted and deserves attention, as well. I am suggesting that narrative expressions of legends be analyzed with linguistic genre analysis. Keeping in mind that the intertextual cultural meanings of the expressions are nevertheless processed at the level of the folklore genre, the linguistic narrative genres are conceived as registers, representing the contextual variation in the situational level. In a given social group, contextual variation is subject to certain conditions. For example, narrators develop relatively stable interpretations of repeated narratives and preserve their personal attitude towards topics and genres (Siikala 1984: 96–97). However, approached on the level of the folklore genre of legend and compared to other instantiations of the same set of motifs, the contribution of the narrator can be conceived as an interpersonal variable together with the activities and expectations of the audience.

In traditional legend telling, the personality of the narrator and his view on the narrated content are the major variables, although the role of audience and the preceding discourse can also have an influence, making the narrator to change his conventional interpretation. The variation thus

mostly happens in the domains of field and tenor. However, a remarkable change of mode occurs if the same legends are transmitted in the form of photocopies, by email or in web pages. Such a change of mode also profoundly affects the roles of the narrator and audience, reducing the role of immediate feedback. Similarly, when the same legend is written down by a folklorist, the new variant is crucially affected by the change of mode: by its transformation from oral to written form. The new audience may not be familiar with the field of the legend and the plot has to be more carefully communicated, without elliptic indications. A handwritten archived record of a legend clearly represents a linguistic genre different from the oral performance it replicates. We can also say that it is not folklore any more but a document about folklore. However, it remains a legend all the same. The point is that there are different sets of generic categorizations and their relations to each other need not be presumed to be stable.

Legends combine with a variety of genres. *Legend + written archive record* may not be an interesting combination to scholars who would rather be thrilled with *legend + everyday conversation* or *legend + ghost excursion*. Studying different forms of legend separately and together can open interesting perspectives on their functional variation.

## Literature

- Abrahams, Roger D. 1972. Personal Power and Social Restraint. In Americo Paredes & Richard Bauman (eds.) *Toward New Perspectives in Folklore*. Austin and London: University of Texas Press. Pp. 16–30.
- Bakhtin, Mikhail 1986. *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Ed. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Trans. Vern W. McGee. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- de Beaugrande, Robert 1993. ‘Register’ in discourse studies. A concept I search of a theory. In Mohsen Ghadessy (ed.) *Register Analysis. Theory and Practice*. London: Pinter Publishers. Pp. 7–25.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1972. Toward a Definition of Folklore in Context. In Américo Paredes and Richard Bauman (ed.) *Toward New Perspectives in Folklore*. Austin and London: University of Texas Press. Pp. 3–15.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1976. The Concepts of Genre in Folklore. In Juha Pentikäinen & Tuula Juurikka (eds.) *Folk Narrative Research*. Studia Fennica 20. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 30–43.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1992. *Do We Need Ideal Types (in Folklore)? An Address to Lauri Honko*. NIF Papers No 2. Turku: Nordic Institute of Folklore.
- Bennett, Gillian 1984a. Women’s Personal Experience Stories of Encounters with the Supernatural. Truth as an Aspect of Storytelling. *ARV. Scandinavian Yearbook of Folklore* 40: 79–87.
- Bennett, Gillian 1984b. The Phantom Hitchhiker. Neither Modern, Urban nor Legend? In Paul Smith (ed.) *Perspectives on Contemporary Legend*. Proceedings of the conference on contemporary legend Sheffield, July 1982. Sheffield: The Centre for English Cultural Tradition and Language. Pp. 45–63.

- Bennett, Gillian 1986. Narrative as Expository Discourse. *Journal of American Folklore* 99 (394): 415–434.
- Bennett, Gillian 1987. Problems in Collecting and Classifying Urban Legends. A Personal Experience. In Gillian Bennett, Paul Smith and J.D. A. Widdowson (eds.) *Perspectives on Contemporary Legend*. Vol 2. CECTAL Conference Papers Series No. 5. Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press. Pp. 15–30.
- Bennett, Gillian 1988. Legend. Performance and Truth. In Gillian Bennett and Pauls Smith (eds.) *Monsters with Iron Teeth*. Perspectives on Contemporary Legend Vol. III. Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press. Pp. 13–36.
- Bennett, Gillian 1999. *Alas, Poor Ghost! Traditions of Belief in Story and Discourse*. Logan: Utah State University Press.
- Briggs, Charles & Bauman, Richard 1992. Genre, Intertextuality, and Social Power. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 2 (2): 131–172.
- Čistov, Kirill 1967. Das Problem der Kategorien mündlicher Volksprosa nict-märchenhaften Charakters. *Fabula* 9: 27–40.
- Dégh, Linda 1969. *Folktales and Society. Story-Telling in a Hungarian Peasant Community*. Transl. Emily M. Schossberger. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Dégh, Linda 1991. What is the legend after all? *Contemporary legend* 1: 11–38.
- Dégh, Linda 1995. *Narratives in Society. A Performer-Centered Study of Narration*. FF Communications No. 255. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Dégh, Linda 1996. What Is A Belief Legend? *Folklore* 107: 33–46.
- Dégh, Linda 2001. *Legend and Belief. Dialectics of a Folklore Genre*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Dégh, Linda & Vázsonyi, Andrew 1971. Legend and Belief. *Genre* IV (3): 281–304.
- Dégh, Linda & Vázsonyi, Andrew 1974: The Memorata and the Proto-Memorata. *Journal of American Folklore* 87: 225–239.
- Dundes, Alan 1972. Folk Ideas as Units of Worldview. In Américo Paredes & Richard Bauman (eds.) *Towards New Perspectives in Folklore*. American Folklore Society. Austin and London: University of Texas Press.
- Eggs, Suzanne & Martin, J.R. 1997. Genres and Registers of Discourse. In Teun A. van Dijk (ed.) *Discourse as Structure and Process*. Discourse Studies. A Multidisciplinary Introduction Volume I. London: SAGE Publications. Pp. 230–256.
- Eggs, Suzanne & Slade, Diane 1997. *Analysing Casual Conversation*. London and Washington: Cassell.
- Ellis, Bill 2003. *Aliens, Ghosts, and Cults. Legends We Live*. Jackson: University of Mississippi Press.
- Foley, John Miles 1995. *The Singer of Tales in Performance*. Bloomington and Indianapolis: Indiana University Press.
- Granberg, Gunnar 1935. *Skogsrået i yngre nordisk folktradition*. Skrifter utgivna av Gustav Adolfs akademien for folklivsforskning 3. Uppsala: Lundequistska bokhandeln.
- Haavio, Martti 1942. *Suomalaiset kodinhaltijat*. Porvoo–Helsinki: Werner Söderström Osakeyhtiö.
- Halliday, M.A.K. 1973. *Explorations in the Functions of Language*. Explorations in Language Study. London: Edward Arnold.
- Halliday, M.A.K. 1979. *Language as Social Semiotic. The Social Interpretation of Language and Meaning*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Hanks, William 1987. Discourse Genres in a Theory of Practice. *American Ethnologist* 14 (4): 668–692.

- Hobbs, Sandy 1989. Enough to Constitute a Legend? In Gillian Bennett and Paul Smith (eds.) *The Questing Beast. Perspectives on Contemporary Legend* Vol IV. Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press. Pp. 55–76.
- Honko, Lauri 1962. *Geisterglaube in Ingermanland*. FF Communications 185. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Honko, Lauri 1964. Memorates and the study of Folk Belief. *Journal of the folklore institute* 1 (1/2): 5–19.
- Honko, Lauri 1968. Genre analysis in folkloristics and comparative religion. *Temenos* 3: 48–66.
- Honko, Lauri 1980. Kertomusperinteen tutkimustavat ja niiden tulevaisuus. In Pekka Laaksonen (ed.) *Kertoajat ja kuulijat*. Kalevalaseuran vuosikirja 60. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp.18–38.
- Honko, Lauri 1989. Folkloristic Theories of Genre. In Anna-Leena Siikala (ed.) *Studies in Oral Narrative*. Studia Fennica 33. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 13–28.
- Honko, Lauri & Pentikäinen, Juha 1970. *Kulttuuriantropologia*. Helsinki–Porvoo: Werner Söderström Osakeyhtiö.
- Jauhiainen, Marjatta 1982. Uskomustarinat. In Irma-Riitta Järvinen & Seppo Knuuttila (eds.) *Kertomusperinne. Kirjoituksia proosaperinteen lajeista ja tutkimuksesta*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Jauhiainen, Marjatta 1998: *The Type and Motif Index of Finnish Belief Legends and Memorates*. Revised and enlarged edition of Lauri Simonsuuri's *Typen- und Motivverzeichnis der finnischen mytischen Sagen* (FF Communications 182. Helsinki 1961) FF Communications 267. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Johansson, Kerstin Louise 1991. *De dödas julotta*. Bergen: Forlaget Folkekultur.
- Kaivola-Bregenhøj, Annikki 1996. *Narrative and Narrating. Variation in Juho Oksanen's Storytelling*. FF Communications 261. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Kinsella, Michael 2011. *Legend-tripping online. Supernatural folklore and the search for Ong's hat*. Jackson: University Press of Mississippi.
- Klintberg, Bengt af 2010. *The types of the Swedish folk legend*. FF Communications 300. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Koski, Kaarina 2007. Narratiivisuus uskomusperinteessä. *Elore* 14 (1): 1–21. [online] [http://www.elore.fi/arkisto/1\\_07/kos1\\_07.pdf](http://www.elore.fi/arkisto/1_07/kos1_07.pdf)
- Koski, Kaarina 2008a. Narrative Time-Spaces in Belief Legends. In Mirjam Mencej (ed.) *Space and Time In Europe. East and West, Past and Present*. Ljubljana: Univerza v Ljubljani. Oddelek za etnologijo in kulturno antropologijo. Pp. 337–353.
- Koski, Kaarina 2008b. Conceptual Analysis and Variation in Belief Tradition: A Case of Death-Related Beings. *Folklore. Electronic Journal of Folklore* 38. [online] <http://www.folklore.ee/folklore/vol38/koski.pdf>.
- Köhler, Ines 1987. Geistermesse. In *Enzyklopädie des Märchens. Handwörterbuch zur historischen und vergleichenden Erzählforschung*. Band 5. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- Koski, Kaarina 2011. *Kuoleman voimat. Kirkonväki suomalaisessa uskomusperinteessä*. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society.
- Labov, William 1972. *Language in the Inner City. Studies in the Black English Vernacular*. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
- Lakoff, George 1987. Cognitive Models and Prototype Theory. In Ulric Neisser (ed.) *Concepts and Conceptual Development. Ecological and Intellectual Factors in Categorization*. Emory Symposia in Cognition 1. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 63–100.
- Lange, Patricia G. 2007. Publicly Private and Privately Public. Social Networking on YouTube. *Journal of Computer-Mediated Communication* 13(1), article 18. [online] <http://jcmc.indiana.edu/vol13/issue1/lange.html>

- Latvala, Pauliina 2005. *Katse menneisyyteen. Folkloristinen tutkimus suvun muistitiedosta*. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society.
- Martin, J.R. 1992. *English Text. System and Structure*. Philadelphia / Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Martin, J.R. & Rose, David 2008. *Genre Relations. Mapping Culture*. London: Equinox.
- Neisser, Ulric 1987. From Direct Perception to Conceptual Structure. In Ulric Neisser (ed.) *Concepts and Conceptual Development. Ecological and Intellectual Factors in Categorization*. Emory Symposia in Cognition 1. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 11–24.
- Nicolaisen, W.F.H. 1987. The Linguistic Structure of Legends. In Gillian Bennett, Paul Smith and J.D.A. Widdowson (eds.) *Perspectives on Contemporary Legend Volume II*. CECTAL Conference Paper Series 5. Sheffield: The Centre for English Cultural Tradition and Language, University of Sheffield. Pp. 61–76.
- Pentikäinen, Juha 1968. Grenzprobleme zwischen Memorat und Sage. *Temenos* 3: 136–167.
- Rosch, Eleanor 1977. Human Categorization. In Neil Warren (ed.) *Studies in Cross-Cultural Psychology* 1. London: Academic Press. Pp. 1–49.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena 1984. *Tarina ja tulkinta. Tutkimus kansankertojista*. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena. 1990. *Interpreting Oral Narrative*. FF Communications 245. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena 2000. Variation and Genre as Practice. Strategies for Reproducing Oral History in the Southern Cook Islands. In Lauri Honko (ed.) *Thick Corpus, Organic Variation and Textuality in Oral Tradition*. Studia Fennica Folkloristica 7. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 215–242.
- Smith, Georgina 1981. Urban Legend, Personal Experience Narrative and Oral History. *ARV* 37, 167–173.
- Smith, Paul 1986. Communicating Culture; or, Can We Really Vocalize a Brownie? In Peter Narváez & Martin Laba (eds.) *Media Sense. The Folklore–Popular Culture Continuum*. Bowling Green: Bowling Green State University Popular Press.
- Smith, Paul 1989. Contemporary Legend. A Legendary Genre? In Gillian Bennett and Paul Smith (eds.) *The Questing Beast. Perspectives on Contemporary Legend Vol IV*. Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press. Pp. 91–102.
- von Sydow, C. W. 1948. *Selected Papers on Folklore published on the occasion of his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday*. Edited by Laurits Bødker. Copenhagen: Rosenkilde and Bagger.
- Tangherlini, Timothy 1990. “It Happened Not too Far From Here...”. A Survey of Legend Theory and Characterization. *Western Folklore* 49 (4): 371–390.
- Wittgenstein, Ludwig 1958. *Philosophical Investigations*. Translated by G.E.M. Anscombe. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
- Young, Katharine Galloway 1987. *Taleworlds and Storyrealms. The Phenomenology of Narrative*. Dordrecht: Martinus Nijhoff Publishers.

# Genre, Prayers and the Anglo-Saxon Charms

**Rebecca M. C. Fisher**

Any modern reader of the Anglo-Saxon charms will come across critical issues concerning the limits of the genre.<sup>1</sup> Traditionally, texts that fall within the genre of charms have been regarded as more or less pagan and magical, depending on their contents. This is decided, generally speaking, by classifying formal elements of the texts as either a charm or a prayer based upon whether the formal elements within a text are assumed to be essentially Christian or pagan. For instance, a text containing verse and demands for assistance from an unnamed supernatural force that is written in the vernacular is placed firmly in the ‘charm’ category, thanks to each of its elements being associated with pagan or magical ideologies. On the other hand, a prose text in Latin that appeals to God for relief counts as a prayer, due to the assumption that each of its elements are inherently Christian. Unfortunately, though, not all of the texts that one reads falls so neatly; one must decide what to make of a text that is in verse but appeals to God, or that invokes a curse in Latin. The standard, traditional response to this situation has been that such a text has been somehow doctored, altered to satisfy an audience needing to erase pagan beliefs or prove to an unconvinced congregation that Christianity is not all that different to native religious beliefs (see Storms 1948: 115–117).

This method of dealing with charms, however, is problematized by several unavoidable facts. First, texts that are traditionally labelled as ‘charms’ live side by side with ‘prayers’ in their manuscripts, which seems to point to the fact that the divide between these two genres might not be as clear-cut as the traditional viewpoint suggests. Secondly, the method assumes that values can be ascribed to formal elements without recourse to any contextual contemporary material. Thirdly, the method assumes that these beliefs and their genres can be placed in opposition to one another without any chance of organic intermingling; the only admixture of ‘charms’ and ‘prayers’ occurs when a text is altered after its initial creation.

This article will explore how traditional methodologies such as these have affected how the genre of Anglo-Saxon charms has been understood. This exploration will show that the seminal works of charm scholarship are predicated on the basis that charms are pagan and magical, and are regarded as separate, and in opposition to, religious and Christian texts such as prayers. At

---

<sup>1</sup> Problems with defining verbal charms and prayers are not only limited to those raised by the Anglo-Saxon texts. James A. Kapaló has recently examined charms and prayers in the Hungarian corpus (see Kapaló 2011).

the root of the problem with defining the genre of Anglo-Saxon charms lies the fact that a charm (or indeed any historical text) cannot be defined by terms which are bound up with modern values and culture. A modern reader will naturally think of a charm in terms of his/her relationship to the world and the semantic meanings that s/he assigns to terms as a result. Doing so, however, means that the modern reader does not read the charm as an Anglo-Saxon might, as part of a cultural environment which did not always draw the line between magic and religion in the same place, or even at all. A result of this is that, since the inception of charm scholarship, readers have wrestled the charms into fitting to the perceived dichotomy between religion and magic, and in doing so, have elided the essential nature of charms and prayers as texts that exist on continua of belief rather than a single binary. This article will show how the texts fit much more naturally in to this new taxonomy, removing unhelpful associations of values with typological markers and relying instead on the evidence provided by the contents of the texts themselves and their manuscript contexts.

Felix Grendon (1909) and Godfrid Storms (1948) – have produced editions of the charms that address the issue of defining the charm genre, but their analyses make use of particular terms that arise from the tendency to associate formal elements with values. For example, both scholars rely on terminology that, for the modern reader, is loaded with meanings that are not necessarily congruent with a reading of the texts that takes account of their context. Terms such as ‘magic’, ‘charm’, ‘spell’ and ‘prayer’ carry connotations that are located in the scholars’ contemporary worldview, resulting in interpretations of the charms that are founded on anachronistic ideologies. Emerging from these analyses is the problem of generic hierarchies. Both Grendon and Storms talk about the charms in terms of flat binaries: a text is either magical, or religious; it is pagan, or it is Christian. This article will suggest that a hierarchical understanding of genre, which allows for the blending and shifting of boundaries, is more appropriate for texts that arise from a culture with a similarly fluid attitude to the differences between magic and religion.

This new system rests on the fact that Anglo-Saxon texts must be read in their original context, allowing interpretations to arise from an understanding of the environment in which the text was produced and used. Whilst it is true that there are exceptions to every rule, it is tenable that Anglo-Saxon texts were recorded in and used as part of collections within manuscripts, and so they should be read as such. By paying attention to the arrangement of texts within manuscripts, as this article will show, it is possible to see that the Anglo-Saxons thought of ‘charms’ and

‘prayers’ in a very different way to that presented by Grendon and Storms. It is true that Grendon and Storms’ readings are valuable in and of themselves as records of contemporary academic and cultural mores, but, unlike the twentieth-century scholarly practice of examining texts as individual artefacts in order to divide these texts into two opposing genres, the Anglo-Saxon scribes recorded these texts alongside one another without any apparent difficulty. By placing these texts back into their original context and reading them as part of organic wholes, we can reveal that, far from being disparate, they share many common features with texts that Grendon and Storms would be inclined to distinguish as separate from the charms. Indeed, all the texts that are represented by Grendon and Storms as ‘charms’ share three typical characteristics: they are intended to heal; they effect this healing through a performance; and they engage with the supernatural.<sup>2</sup> However, the texts that Storms represents in his appendix (Storms 1948: 312–318) as ‘prayers’ *also* share these characteristics: what is more, several of these ‘prayers’ appear alongside ‘charms’ in their manuscripts, suggesting that, in their original contexts, these texts were perceived to be similar enough to be comfortable bedfellows.<sup>3</sup>

Just as the Old English poem *Soul and Body* describes the relationship between the soul and the body as kinsmen, inseparable, fated to experience this life and the next as one, this new system is founded on the fact that, as this article will show, ‘charms’ and ‘prayers’ are similarly bound together by their concern for both the bodily and spiritual health of the performer. This article will argue that most ‘charms’ and ‘prayers’ – certainly those that are collected together in one manuscript – share a similar relationship, bound together by their concern for both the bodily and spiritual health of the performer. Thus, Grendon and Storms’ flat, binary model is not appropriate; rather, the ‘charms’ and ‘prayers’ discussed here are part of one taxonomic structure which could be referred to as ‘curative supernatural texts’. Within this overarching structure is the possibility to slide between physical or worldly ills and spiritual health, and to

---

<sup>2</sup> At this point it is necessary to qualify the term ‘supernatural’. I mean the unseen, the aspects of life which are beyond the human realm. In the Anglo-Saxon worldview, the ‘supernatural’ encompassed a much wider spectrum of concepts than in the modern mind; the ‘supernatural’ is the unseen forces of nature, God and fate. Jennifer Neville has written an extremely helpful book on this topic: see Neville 1999.

<sup>3</sup> For example, London, British Library, Harley 585 (also known as the *Lacnunga*, the largest extant collection of healing texts from the period; Storms edits 29 ‘charms’ from this manuscript) contains several ‘prayers’ (A3, A7 and A12–15 in Storms, for pox, sore eyes and the collection of herbs respectively). London, British Library 2.a.xx contains several blood-staunching ‘charms’ (numbers 55–60 in Storms) and ‘prayers’ against pox and all evils (numbered A8 and A16 in Storms); Cambridge, Corpus Christi College 41 contains 7 ‘charms’ (1, 12, 14, 15, 16, 43 and 48) and a ‘prayer’ for eye ache (A4); LBL Cotton Caligula A.xv contains 3 ‘charms’ (34, 68, 69) and 2 ‘prayers’, for pox and swelling (A9 and 10); LBL Cotton Vitellius e.xviii contains 3 ‘charms’ (50, 85, 87) and a ‘prayer’ (A2), for fruitful land; Cambridge Gonville and Caius 379 contains two ‘charms’ (62 and 72) and two ‘prayers’ (A5 and 6) for ear ache and stomach ache.



take account of those texts which seem to make use of God and as well as other unnamed supernatural forces. By using this structure to organise the texts, it is possible to reinforce what the evidence reveals: these two concepts are intertwined and bleed from one into the other.

### **‘Charms’ and ‘Prayers’**

The Anglo-Saxon texts that we know as ‘charms’ constitute a diverse body of texts, ranging in length from one line to over fifty lines in a variety of iterations of verse and prose.. Some contain instructions to the performer, whereas as others deliver instructions implicitly; some are to be said or sung, while others are to be written, and yet others are to be performed silently; most are for healing physical medical problems, but some relate to everyday problems (such as theft); some invoke God or call upon saints, while others contain no religious material at all. This diversity in form and content makes it difficult to delineate the boundaries of ‘charm’, a task which has been complicated by approaches inherited from previous scholars that do not necessarily recognise the multiplicity of types of texts within the wider genre. Furthermore, these seminal editions rely on values associated with formal characteristics of texts to assign them to categories of ‘charm’ or ‘prayer’, a methodology which is anachronistic, obscuring rather than clarifying the nature of the texts discussed.

To begin at the beginning, then, the first problem to tackle is the range that is exhibited by the body of texts that is now known as the Anglo-Saxon charms. The members of this corpus have traditionally been identified by two classic editions of the charms (Grendon 1909 and Storms 1948). Both authors state that they aim to present all of the extant charms but in fact their collections differ greatly, with Storms’ collection being the larger. Part of the reason for this might be that neither editor elucidates the criteria by which they diagnose a text as a charm. Erring on the side of caution, Grendon lists the “general characteristics of spells” (Grendon 1909: 110–123) as:

- (1) Narrative introduction;
- (2) Appeal to a superior spirit;
- (3) The writing or pronouncing of potent names or letters;
- (4) Methods of dealing with disease-demons;
- (5) The exorcist's boast of power;
- (6) Ceremonial directions to patient and exorcist;
- (7) The singing of incantations on parts of the body and on other objects;
- (8) Statement of time for performance of rites;
- (9) Sympathy and the association of ideas;
- (10) Minor superstitious practices.

Despite this extensive list of types of chunks of text that can be slotted in to charms, Grendon does not explicitly define what he perceives to be the essential nature of a charm. It is not clear whether one of these characteristics within a text mean that it is a charm, or whether a certain

number of these characteristics creates a critical mass, thus making a text a charm. What is clear, however, is that throughout his edition, Grendon uses the term ‘spell’ interchangeably with ‘charm’. ‘Spell’ is a word inherently associated with magical and arreligious practices; this association between the charms and magic is made explicit by Grendon’s assertion that – some of the “remedies [collected depend] for efficacy on the *superstitious beliefs* of the sufferers” (Grendon 1909: 110, emphasis added). Furthermore, he expresses his incredulity that even the Greeks would use such irrational practices, exclaiming that “such jingles were in great favour even among later Greek physicians of a superstitious bent” (Grendon 1909: 114). He is quick to point out that only the superstitious would make use of charms, choosing the word “jingle” – meaning a nonsensical collection of words – to refer to unintelligible sections of the charms. Grendon could have selected a less loaded term (such as ‘formula’ or ‘section’) to refer to these parts of the charms, but opts to leave the reader with the sense that the charms are part of a genre which is firmly located within the magical and the occult.

Similarly, Storms does not provide a list of criteria by which one might identify a charm, jumping straight in with a definition of magic (Storms 1948: 1):

By magic primitive man attempted to obtain results by means that seem to be abnormal and supernatural, at any rate by the methods that strike us as distinct from those that we like to call normal and natural. Magic assumes the existence of an invisible, intangible and impersonal power. It is primarily a practical concern and success is the only thing that matters.

By greeting the reader with a definition of magic, Storms situates his discussion of the charms firmly within this realm. Furthermore, he selects key items of terminology that slot neatly into the semantic field of magic, and so reinforce the ‘magical’ nature of charms: “primitive”, “abnormal”, “supernatural”, “invisible” and “intangible” are provided as connotations of “magic” and therefore of ‘charm’.

These definitions are problematic because they are vague, and because they are grounded in the editors’ cultural environment and academic agenda. The editors assume that charms fall into the sphere of magic. Storms makes this assumption because he is keen to identify the relationship between charms and the process of Christianisation, tracing “the gradual change that came over Anglo-Saxon magic on account of the new religion embraced by the Anglo-Saxons” (Storms 1948: 129). By referring to Christianity as “the new religion” Storms sets up the charms as evidence of ancient English culture that predates the new-fangled religion of the missionaries to England. While he states that “both practices and formulas [within the charms]

show the close connection there was in Anglo-Saxon times between magic and religion”, in this very statement he *separates* “magic” from “religion” (Storms 1948: 6). In a similar way, as a result of his interest in pagan Anglo-Saxon England, Grendon presents the charms as wholly separate from Christian practices, devoting a whole section of his article to “Christian elements in the charms” (Grendon 1909: 140–160). By adopting this approach of identifying the dividing lines between ‘charms’ and Christian material, Grendon emphasises the difference between charms and Christianity.

The question, then, is how and why Grendon and Storms draw their lines between charms and prayers, and between magic and religion. A closer inspection of their analyses reveals something interesting: not only are they attributing charms as a whole to the sphere of magic, but they are also aligning various components of the charms with the categories of ‘pagan’, ‘magic’, ‘Christian’ and ‘religious’. For instance, Storms’ discussion of a text intended to deal with eye pain (*wip sarum eagum* [‘against eye pain’], Storms 1948: 314) and a text intended to deal with theft (*ne forstolen ne forholen* [‘neither stolen nor hidden’], see Olsan 1999 for transcription and translation of *ne forstolen*) demonstrates how certain elements of the texts are perceived to have more a magical or more Christian feel. Storms categorises *wip sarum eagum* as a “prayer”, but refers to *ne forstolen ne forholen* as a “charm”. What differences does Storms perceive between these two texts that cause him to align them into opposite categories?

### **Wip sarum eagum**

Domine sancte pater omnipotens aeternae deus sana oculos istius N sicut sanasti oculos filii Tobit et multorum cecorum, manu aridorum, pes claudorum, sanitas egrorum, resurrectio mortuorum, felicitas martirum et omnium sanctorum.

Oro domine ut ergias et inlumnias oculos famuli tui N. In quacumque valitudine constitutum medellis celestibus sanare digneris; tribue famulo tuo N., ut armis iustitiae munitus diabolo resistat et regnum consequatur aeternum. Per.

### **Against Eye Pain**

Holy lord, omnipotent Father, eternal God, heal the eyes of this man, your servant N., just as you healed the eyes of Tobit's son [sic] and of many other blind persons, [you are] the hands of the poor, the feet of the lame, the health of the sick, the resurrection of the dead, the joy of the martyrs and all saints.

I pray lord that you will raise and illumine the eyes of your servant N. in whatever the condition of his health, you would deign to heal him with heavenly cures, to grant that

your servant N., fortified with the arms of justice, may resist the devil and may reach the eternal kingdom. Through...

### **Ne forstolen ne forholen**

Ne forstolen ne forholen nanuht  
ðæs þe Ic age ðe ma þe mihte herod urne drihten  
Ic geþohte sancte eadelenan  
and ic geþohte crist on rode ahangen  
swa ic þence ðis feoh to findanne næs to oðfeorrganne  
and to witanne næs to oðwryceanne  
and to lufianne næs to oðlædanne.  
Garmund godes ðegen  
find þæt feoh and fere þæt feoh  
and hafa þæt feoh and heald þæt feoh  
and fere ham þæt feoh  
þæt he næfre næbbe landes  
þæt he hit oðlæde  
ne foldan þæt hit oðferie  
ne husa þæt he hit oð hit healed  
Gyf hyt hwa gedo ne gedige hit him næfre.  
Binnan ðrym nihtum cunne ic his mihta  
his mægen and his mihta and his mundcræftas.  
eal he weornige swa syre wudu weornie  
swa breðel seo swa þystel  
se ðe ðis feoh oðfergean ðence  
oððe ðis orf oðehtian ðence Amen

### **Neither Stolen nor Hidden**

Neither stolen nor hidden may be anything I own, any more than Herod could hide our Lord.

As I thought of St. Helen and I thought of Christ, hanged on the cross, so I expect to find these animals, not have them gone far away and to know where they are, not have them harmed and to care for them, not have them led off. Garmund, God's thane, find these cattle and fetch these cattle, and have these cattle and hold these cattle, and bring these cattle home, so that he who took them may never have any land to put them on, nor country to carry them to, nor houses to keep them in. If anyone tries it, he would never accomplish it. Within three nights I would know his might, his main and his might, and his hand-strength. May he thoroughly wither, as dry wood withers, as bramble does, so the thistle, as [and also] he who intends to carry off these goods or drive away these animals.

The first difference that becomes apparent is that these two texts have different purposes. *Wip sarum eagum* is intended to remedy a medical difficulty, whereas *ne forstolen ne forholen*

ensures the return of stolen livestock. It is perhaps more congruent with Storms' perception of Anglo-Saxon Christianity that one could ask God to heal a sickness of the body in the form of a 'prayer', but appealing to "Garmund" – that is, not God – and then threatening the thief with 'withering' is a non-Christian action which is more appropriate to a 'charm'. Secondly, the two texts are different in form: the 'prayer' is in prose, whereas the 'charm' is in verse. A little bit of detective work shows that all of the texts that Storms includes in the appendix as 'prayers' are prose, whereas less than half of the 'charms' he edits include any prose. This argument echoes Grendon's earlier assumption that verse is somehow un-Christian and more magical, in which he states that "rhythmical formulas", alliterative pairs and similies are "Heathen in tone" (Grendon 1909: 223). Thirdly, the 'prayer' is in Latin, whereas the 'charm' is in the vernacular. This is no coincidence: all of the 'prayers' in Storms' appendix are in Latin, whereas over three quarters of the 'charms' are in the vernacular. Grendon does not include any Latin texts in his edition at all, which shows rather conclusively that, for Grendon, charms cannot contain Latin. Around a quarter of Storms' 'charms' contain Latin; however, he does not comment at length on any of the texts which only include Latin, and rarely explores the role of the Latin text within the charm.

Therefore, for Storms, it seems that the purpose of a text can have some sort of effect on whether it is perceived to be a 'charm' or a 'prayer'. Of the sixteen 'prayers' in Storms' appendix, half are for some sort of painful ailment, with the remainder being blessings for herbs or general apotropaic texts. Of the eighty-six 'charms', only four are specifically for painful ailments (such as tooth-ache), but presumably a *færstice* 'sudden stitch' would also be painful. There is nothing particularly conclusive to be drawn from this observation, except that perhaps Storms sees pain as being something more appropriate a problem to bring to God. Much more conclusive, however, is the evidence for the fact that Storms perceives verse and the vernacular as central formal characteristics of the 'charm' genre, whereas prose and Latin are essential characteristics of 'prayer'.

Turning to another example from Storms' edition, it is possible to see that Storms not only assesses charms by their formal contents, but that he also makes distinctions between texts depending on various stylistic factors. In his interpretation of a charm against flying venom, Storms identifies sections which are to be regarded as separate from the 'charm' because of their language, images and content (Storms 1948: 254–256):

### **Wip fleogendan attre**

Wið fleogendan attre asleah IIII scarpan on feower healfa mid  
æcenan brande. Geblodga ðone brand, weorp on weg.

Sing this on III:

+ Matheus me ducað + Marcus me conservæð

+ Lucas me liberat + Iohannes me adiuvat semper.

Amen.

Contrive deus omnem malum et nequitiam per virtutem  
patris et filii et spiritus sancti.

Sanctifica me Emanhuel Iesus Christus, libera me  
ab omnibus insidiis inimici.

Benedictio domini super caput meum.

Potens deus in omni tempore. Amen.

### **Against Flying Venom**

Against flying venom cut four incisions on the four sides with an oaken stick. Make the  
stick bloody, throw it away.

Sing this three times:

+Matthew lead me + Mark save me + Luke free me + John help me always. Amen.

Lord, crush all evil and wickedness by the power of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit.

Sanctify me, Emmanuel, Jesus Christ, free me from all insidious enemies.

The benediction of the Lord (be) over my head; mighty God in every season. Amen.

The performance directions state that the charmer should sing all the following lines from  
“Matthew lead me”; this suggests that the text to be verbally performed is part of the charm,  
the active ingredient in the remedy. Storms (1948: 257), on the other hand, states that

The Latin prayers that follow in the charm text do not represent psalms or hymns but are  
complete in themselves[...]The forms of the verbs in ll. 4–5 (*Matheus me ducat...*) may  
stand for the indicative or the subjunctive. Perhaps the write or the copyist did not know  
the difference. They may be religious prayers for help or magical expressions of power.  
Ll. 8–9 [*Sanctifica... inimici*) show their magical nature in the use of the imperative and the  
last line is a threat rather than a mere statement.

This analysis is dense and contains several interesting points that need to be unpicked. First of  
all, Storms makes clear that he believes that the Latin sections are separate from the preceding  
instructions. Just as in the previous example, he is associating Latin with prayers and is using  
this to distinguish the latter section from the instructions. In and of itself, this distinction is not  
problematic; it is the case that some charms are in Latin whereas other are in the vernacular,  
and yet more contain a mixture of these two languages. Recognising that there are different  
types of charms is actually quite helpful; the problem here is that Storms unbendingly  
associates Latin with prayers and charms with the vernacular, even when the meaning of the  
text suggests that the Anglo-Saxon user would have read straight through the text in one

continuing performance. Storms' association of Latin texts with 'prayers' is so strong that he cannot consider that 'charms' and 'prayers' might converge with one another, even when the text itself is evidence of the breaking down of his organisational system.

Secondly, Storms suggests that the form of the verb is somehow central to the ascribing of the text to either 'charm' or 'prayer'. The indicative suggests an assertion of the performer's power, which is appropriate for charms; the subjunctive suggests a supplication, a request for assistance, which is congruent with the category of prayer; the imperative suggests a demand for assistance, thus demonstrating the performer's magical power and forming a charm. In this way, Storms' suggestion that ll. 4–5 and 8–9 might be expressions of power rests on the form of the verb: reading these phrases as subjunctive (i.e. 'May Matthew lead me') implies a supplicatory and therefore 'prayer'-like mood, whereas the imperative and indicative (i.e. 'Sanctify me'; 'Matthew leads me') suggests that the speaker possesses the power to instruct the four evangelists. Again, in and of itself this sort of distinction is not problematic. It may well be that charms tend to state or demand, whereas prayers tend to request. The issue is that these two techniques, in Storms' opinion, cannot coexist.

This brings us to the real crux of the problem: the texts examined do not consistently support a binary system of organisation that is based on the principles of magical versus religious texts, which are categorised according to sub-binaries (verse versus prose; vernacular versus Latin; supplications versus demands). It is only when one applies culturally-bound ideologies to the texts that a binary system can be perceived; if readings are allowed to arise from the texts and their surroundings, it is clear that these texts are coherent units, composed of other, smaller units that, when combined, make up a whole performance. That is not to say that the Anglo-Saxon reader could not or would not perceive the differences, for example, between the vernacular and Latin sections in the charm above, but that s/he would be unconcerned by their proximity. Whereas Storms arranges texts using an exclusive either/or set of binaries, the Anglo-Saxon reader might have been more likely to see texts as various different units that slot in to one another and are comfortably contained within a genre which can be inhabited by both charms and prayers.

Thus, it is possible to present charms and prayers types within a larger genre of curative supernatural texts. Though there are outliers in each category, both charms and prayers can be used to heal and both extend out to the supernatural world. However, there are certain formal distinctions that can be drawn between the two types, although these do shift and change and

some appear to be contradictory. These typological distinctions could be represented thus, with the middle line understood as permeable and moveable:

### Curative supernatural texts

Charms	Prayers
Reach out to the unknown and unseen	Reach out to God
In the vernacular	In Latin
In verse	In prose
Demand assistance/state the situation	Ask for assistance
For physical/worldly problems	For spiritual problems
For all sorts of problems	For painful ailments

Further evidence for the cohabitation of charms, prayers and their various constituent parts within one larger genre can be found in the manuscript context of charms. Texts which Grendon and Storms keep at separate ends of their binaries in fact live side-by-side in their manuscripts, and, depending on other factors, can often be read as part of a larger, coherent whole.

#### **Case study: Cambridge, Corpus Christi College 41**

A convincing example of charms and prayers being recorded and used side by side by their Anglo-Saxon scribes can be found in Cambridge, Corpus Christi College 41 (CCCC41 hereafter). CCCC41 is dated to 1025; its origin is unknown, although Leofric's donation notice indicates that it was held in Exeter by 1070, when Leofric died (Gneuss 1997: 31). CCCC41 is a good candidate for this case study because it presents a relatively small corpus of texts recorded at roughly the same time by the same person. This reduces the variables of date and ownership as much as possible, allowing one to formulate an accurate interpretation of how these texts were used. This case study will focus on the marginalia of CCCC41, as the texts relevant to this argument are all present in this context. The marginalia is unrelated to the main text (Bede's *Historia Ecclesiastica*, along with mass sets and office chants), but within the margins there is evidence that the monastic scribe who composed the marginal texts was attempting to create a collection of texts that were useful to him on a daily basis. The marginalia in the manuscript is extraordinarily diverse, containing a "fragmentary Old English martyrology and the beginning of the poetic *Solomon and Saturn*", as well as liturgical material (in Latin) and Old English homilies, charms and medical recipes (Bredehoft 2006: 772n. 5). All of these additions were made by one scribe (who was not one of the two scribes who



originally worked on the main text). According to Thomas Bredehoft, these additions can be separated into four stages according to the date of their entry into the manuscript (Bredehoft 2006: 729–730).<sup>4</sup>

The ink, spacing and ruling of the marginalia indicate that the additions were an effort to create a collection of useful texts (Bredehoft 2006: 721 n.2). The texts were embedded into the daily life of the priests, who used them as part of their ministrations in the lay community (Hollis 2001: 154, n. 38), and recorded them in CCCC41 as an aid to memory.<sup>5</sup> The marginalia of CCCC41 provides evidence that texts divided by Storms and Grendon into the categories of ‘religious’ and ‘magical’ or ‘prayers’ and ‘charms’ were not held apart by the Anglo-Saxons, but were in fact grouped together as ways of dealing with the unseen influences on a community’s spiritual and physical welfare. Although charms and prayers – and indeed the liturgical texts also added by the same scribe into CCCC41 – might be different types of text, this does not prevent them from being used in a religious context. That the marginalia includes liturgical texts alongside texts traditionally known as ‘prayers’ or ‘charms’ suggests that the Anglo-Saxon scribes perceived a commonality among the texts that is obscured by the application of twentieth-century binary definitions to the texts. Indeed, CCCC41 is by nature a monastic text, planned, written and used by priests. Therefore, it is both unhelpful and illogical to read the texts – as Grendon and Storms propose – as evidence of practices *separated* from Christian religious life. Several charms require equipment and skills that would not necessarily have been available to the lay community, and required ritual actions that might have been

---

<sup>4</sup> This article is interested in the first and third stages, in which several charms were recorded. The first stage consists of four items: ‘Against theft 1’, *Gif feoh* (Storms 1948: 206–207); ‘Against theft 2’, *ðis man sceal cweðan* (Storms 1948: 206–207); ‘Against theft 3’, *Ne forstolen* (Storms 1948: 208–211); ‘Against the atrocities of all the fiends’, *Wiþ ealra feonda grimnessum* (Storms 1948: 285); ‘Against sore eyes’, *Wiþ sarum eagum* (Storms 1948: 315) *Sator* childbirth charm (Storms 1948: 261); and ‘Journey charm’,  *Ic me on þisse gyred beluce* (Storms 1948: 216–219). The third stage consists of an Old English martyrology and the charm ‘Against the swarming of bees’, *Wið ymbe* (Storms 1948: 132–133) Stage 2 consists of Latin liturgical texts that were added at various points in the manuscript, one of which is on the same folio as a charm in recorded in Stage 3. The other texts recorded in Stage 3 are an OE martyrology, *Solomon and Saturn* and some OE homilies. Stage 4 consists of OE homilies.

<sup>5</sup> With thanks to an anonymous peer-reviewer, it should be noted that under Leofric, Exeter was not a monastery, but a community of canons following the Rule of Chrodegang. Members of this community, therefore, should be referred to as “priests” rather than “monks”. They were, in other words, not monks, though many were no doubt priests. Furthermore, the work of Keith Thomas in *Religion and the Decline of Magic* is a useful resource for the reader, as Thomas discusses how magic is related to a more broad acceptance of spiritual intercession (see Thomas 1971).

regarded as the province of those members of the community that were perceived as having the most direct line to the supernatural. Take, for example, text XXIX from the *Lacnunga*:

***Pis is se halga drænc***

Pis is se halga drænc wið ælfsidene 7 wið eallum feondes costungum:

Writ on husldisce: ‘In principio erat verbum usque ‘no conperherderunt’ ...

**This is the Holy Drink**

This is the holy drink for elfish magic and for all the temptations of the Devil:

Write on a paten [communion dish]: ‘In the beginning was the Word’ as far as ‘comprehended it not’ ...<sup>6</sup>

The performer is expected not only to own a *husldisc* [‘paten’, a communion dish], but also to know the first fifteen verses of John and to be able to write them in Latin. A monk or other member of the clergy would have been the only person with access to this equipment and level of training in Latin, and so would be able to perform the text on behalf of a layperson. Almost all of the Stage 1 and 3 texts added to CCCC41 relate to everyday activities that would characterise both monastic and lay life: thieves, runaway bees and painful eyes could plague a priest or a layperson. Fiends might be a concern more close to the hearts of those concerned with spiritual welfare on a daily basis, and childbirth might appear to be more of a lay concern, but with a direct connection to God priests must have been the natural choice to be present at the dangerous and often deadly process of giving birth.

The *Sator* childbirth charm in CCCC41 is so interesting that it deserves a slight digression. It can be said that the existence of this charm in CCCC41 proves that priests were involved with aspects of lay life, which in itself unsettles Grendon and Storms’ certainty that, for the Anglo-Saxons, religious and non-religious or irreligious practices and beliefs were mutually exclusive. The *Sator* childbirth charm in CCCC41 tells us that the woman giving birth is clearly not the performer, but is being assisted by the priest who is performing on her behalf. The performer of the charm is to say: *da super terram huic famulam tuam .N., ut prospere et sine dolore parturit* [‘Give this to the earth thy servant N., that she may bear happy and without pain’]. The named servant is the woman in labour. The passivity of the female performer here is not restricted to the CCCC41 *Sator* childbirth charm: of the four childbirth texts extant from Anglo-Saxon England, three require monastic intervention. Like the *Sator* text, the two texts below require a knowledge of Latin and/or the ability to write, skills possessed almost exclusively by

---

<sup>6</sup> See Pettit 2001 vol. 1: 17.

priests; and they specify (explicitly, in the case of the first text) that someone other than the woman is carrying out the action:

**Wiþ wif bearn eacenu**

Maria virgo peperit Christum, Elisabet sterelis peperit Iohannem baptismam.

Adiuro te infans, si es masculus an femina, per Patrem et Filium et Spiritum sanctum, ut ex eas e recedas, et ultra ei non noceas neque insipientam illi facias. Amen.

Viden dominus flentes sorores Lazari ad monumentum lacrimatus est coram Iudeis et clamabat:

Lazare veni foras. Et prodiit ligatis minibus et pedibus qui fuerat quatruiduanus mortuus.

Writ ðis on wece ðe næfre ne com to nanen wyrce, and bind under hire swiðran fot.

**For a Woman Big with Child**

Mary, virgin, brought forth Christ: Elizabeth, sterile, brought forth John the Baptist.

I adjure you, infant, whether you be masculine or feminine, by the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, that you awaken and move, and no longer do any injury or foolishness. Amen.

The Lord, seeing the sister of Lazarus weeping at the tomb, wept in the presence of the Jews and cried out: Lazarus come forth. And he came forth with hands and feet bound who had been four days dead.

Write this on a wax tablet which has never been used and bind under her right foot.<sup>7</sup>

**Gif wif ne mæge bearn beran**

Solve iube deus ter catenis

**If a Woman Cannot Bear Her Child**

Free [her], God, from these three chains.<sup>8</sup>

*Wið wif bearn eacenu* [‘For a Woman Big with Child’] requires that someone write a story of fertility and rebirth – an appropriate narrative – on a wax tablet on behalf of the woman. *Gif wif ne mæge bearn beran* [‘if a woman cannot bear her child’] requires that someone with knowledge of Latin speaks to God on the woman’s behalf. Both texts are evidence that monastic practices were intimately connected to the requirements of the secular world, and that, at the very least, for the Anglo-Saxon monastic scribe there was no simple distinction between religious and secular activities, or between monastic lives and ‘charms’.

---

<sup>7</sup> See Storms 1948: 283. This text can be found in Oxford, Bodleian Library, Junius 85

<sup>8</sup> See Storms 1948: 295. This text can be found in the *Lacnunga*, f. 183a.

Thus, we can see that ‘charms’, rather than the magical rituals the word itself suggests, were actually integrated into religious monastic life: the charms describe actions that would be undertaken by priests, as evidenced by their appearance in collections of well-used everyday texts. Storms directly contravenes – or does not take into account – this evidence from the manuscript in his edition. All of the texts in CCCC41’s marginalia are edited by Storms as ‘charms’ – except for *Wið sarum eagum* [‘against eye-ache’], which is included in the appendix of ‘prayers’. According to Storms’ organisational system, the text does fit neatly into the genre of ‘prayer’: it is prose rather than verse; Latin rather than the vernacular; and the performer beseeches rather than demands. However, there are aspects of the text which match closely with the other CCCC41 texts that Storms has classified as ‘charms’. *Wið sarum eagum* [‘against eye-ache’] uses a narrative – of the healing of Tobit – to set up a ‘just as this, so that’ cause and effect system: ‘just as Tobit’s son was healed, so may I be’. However, five of the other seven texts in CCCC41 also use narratives to achieve their goals: the three theft texts invoke Helena, who found the Cross after it was stolen; *wið ealra feonda grimnessum* [‘against the wickednesses of all fiends’] relates a psalm and a quotation from Exodus which narrates the defeating of enemies; and the *Sator* charm tells stories of conception and creation. It seems, therefore, that the use of ‘just as this, so that’ narratives is a characteristic that unites curative supernatural texts rather than dividing them. Storms’ analysis would have been more helpful if, instead of stopping at identifying differences between the texts, he went on to examine the ways in which their manuscript context connects them.

## Conclusions

Categorisation is a logical reaction to something one’s everyday experience of the world. At its most basic level, categorisation must occur so that one may assess whether a situation is dangerous. Abstracted out to textual criticism, it is natural that Grendon and Storms would react to the charms with a system that organised a seemingly chaotic mixture of ‘pagan’ and ‘Christian’ elements. However, in order to ensure that a reading of a historical text is as accurate – i.e. as close to the original understanding – as possible, the modern reader must ensure that they locate systems of categorisation within the worldview of the culture concerned (insofar as is possible). One must use the evidence present within the context of a text to inform our interpretations, as well as being conscious of the tendency to apply one’s own values to texts that were generated in very different cultural environments. By reading charms in this more sensitive way, it is possible to see that traditional approaches to the charms divided one type of text from another where no functional divide existed for the Anglo-Saxons. The Anglo-Saxons

may well have recognised the formal differences between charms and prayers, but were not discomfited by them; modern distinctions between ‘pagan’ and ‘Christian’ did not seem to trouble the scribe who used two types of healing texts – charms and prayers – as part of his/her daily life. This is why reading the charms and prayers as formally distinct but united by purpose and use is preferable to more traditional methodologies.

## REFERENCES

### Sources

Bradley, S. 1982. *Anglo-Saxon Poetry*. London: Dent.  
Cambridge, Corpus Christi College 41.  
London, British Library, Harley 585.  
Oxford, Bodleian Library, Junius 85.

### Literature

- Arnovick, L. 2006. *Written Reliquaries. The Resonance of Orality in Medieval English Texts. Pragmatics and Beyond* 153. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Bredenhof, T. 2006. Filling the Margins of CCCC41. *Textual Space and A Developing Archive. The Review of English Studies* 57: 722–732.
- Gneuss, H. 1997 Origin and Provenance of Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts. The Case of Cotton Tiberius A.iii. In Pamela Robinson & Rivkah Zim (eds.) *Of the Making of Books. Medieval Manuscripts, Their Scribes and Readers*. Aldershot; Brookfield: Ashgate Publishing. Pp. 13–48.
- Grendon, Felix 1909. The Anglo-Saxon Charms. *Journal of American Folklore* 22: 105–214.
- Hollis, S. 1997. Old English ‘Cattle-Theft Charms’. *Manuscript Contexts and Social Uses. Anglia* 115: 139–164.
- Jolly, K. 2006. Prayers From The Field. Practical Protection And Demonic Defense In Anglo-Saxon England. *Traditio* 61: 95–147.
- Kapaló, James A. 2011. Genre and Authority in the Scholarly Construction of Charm and Prayer. A View from the Margins. *Incantatio. An International Journal on Charms, Charmers and Charming* 1: 79–101.
- Neville, J. 1999. *Representations of the Natural World in Old English Poetry*. Cambridge Studies in Anglo-Saxon England 27. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Olsan, Lea 1999. The Inscription of Charms in Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts. *Oral Tradition* 14: 401–419.
- Pettit, E. 2001. *Anglo-Saxon Charms and Remedies from British Library MS Harley 585. The Lacnunga I–II*. New York: Edwin Mellen Press.
- Rupp, K. 2008. The Anxiety of Writing. A Reading of the Old English *Journey Charm*. *Oral Tradition* 23: 255–266.
- Storms, Godfrid 1948. *Anglo-Saxon Magic*. Nijhoff: The Hague.
- Thomas, Keith 1971. *Religion and the Decline of Magic*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons.

# Notes on Reflexivity and Genre in ‘Alternative’ Stand-Up Comedy Routines

**Antti Lindfors**

In this text, I will look at ‘alternative’ stand-up comedy as an example of complex verbal art exhibiting multiple levels of performative reflexivity (Turner 1979).<sup>1</sup> Originating with a background in American and U.K. vaudeville and music hall, stand-up comedy has emerged as a distinctly verbal form of solo monologue performance defined by “an intensely direct relationship with the audience, improvisation and a firm emphasis on the here and now” (Double 2014: 26). As a combination of conversational speech genres and humorous narratives introduced into a scripted yet also relatively open performance context, stand-up comedy – and perhaps specifically its ‘alternative’ variants characterized by pronounced social realism and ‘honesty’ – provides a unique object of folkloristic study with texts retrieved and analyzed in their actual performative, cultural and historical contexts (see also Gunnell 2009).

The emphasis in the article will be on the characteristics of stand-up as a genre of solo performance as well as on the discursive and textual constitution of ‘stand-up routines’, the bounded pieces of which complete stand-up performances are built. I will undertake preliminary conceptualizations of both a stand-up routine as a unit of textual analysis and stand-up speech as a complex genre system synthesizing multiple speech genres into a unique whole. The interest in issues of genre lies not in pursuing classificatory aims, nor in unearthing prototypical attributes of genres, but in the use-value of various speech genres in humorous narrative performances, in their pragmatics, interrelations and the social implications (Frow 2006).<sup>2</sup>

Turning lastly to an empirical illustration, I will scrutinize a routine by a societally inclined Finnish comic Jukka Lindström, dealing with a dubious Youtube video transmitted via social media, one of the highlights of his recent performances basing on the distinct amounts of sustained laughter invoked. At the time of writing this article I have seen the routine three times

---

<sup>1</sup> I would like to thank Jukka Lindström and Teemu Vesterinen for helping me document their performances as part of the material used in this article.

<sup>2</sup> Koski (2011: 52) characterizes the relationship between (traditional) folkloristic and linguistic genre theories in how the former have mainly aimed at classifying the material recognized as folklore (disregarding much potentially interesting material), whereas the latter try to cover all discourse but are not as interested in the social and cultural meanings of texts. In this regard, my approach would fall somewhere between the two approaches.

in different performances and have three audio/video documentations of it.<sup>3</sup> From the perspectives of textuality and narrative performance adopted in the article, it is worth asking what kinds of textual or extratextual qualities render this routine especially memorable or effective. Particular stress is laid on the interplay between the narrative strategies and the comic techniques utilized in the routine, which I argue to be co-productive in serving the above ends.

In order to elaborate on the dialogic nature of all stand-up speech – i.e. not only the specifically conversational interaction between the performer and the audience members – attention is given to the subtleties and changes in the role alignments and positioning strategically established by the speaker (cf. the distinction between external and internal dialogism in Briggs 1988). It is principally by these structures of address that the performers can be seen to orient the interpretation and reception of their textual products. Michael Silverstein (1993: 35) has underlined the purport of such an analysis in events of language use, because:

[s]uccess in reporting, evoking, presupposing such structures of participation in making text [...] determine a work's evidentiary value along lines of verisimilitude and fantasy, its appeals to/for identification with characters denoted and implied, and hence its overall evocation of a fictive universe locatable with respect to its audience's.

Obviously, these issues are also of utmost importance in terms of the effectiveness and success of narrative performances as well as of genre.

Stand-up comedy can be defined as complex oratorical art with rich layers of paralinguistic elements (gesture, facial expression, proxemics, rhythm, tone of voice, etc.) and metanarrational features (framings, register, pronoun and tense shifts, quotations, references to the performer, the performance, the audience, the message, the generic expectations, etc.).<sup>4</sup> As a cultural phenomenon it has primarily been approached from the relatively distanced perspectives of media, literary and cultural studies (e.g. Limon 2000), even if some of the most penetrating research methods could be found in more ethnographically inclined traditions that would concentrate on the narrative performance event as social interaction (for a history and an inside look at the genre, see Double 1997, 2014; for the Finnish context see Toikka & Vento

---

<sup>3</sup> The material used in the article is in possession of the author.

<sup>4</sup> Originally coined by Babcock (1984) to suit specifically folkloristic needs, metanarration is a term combining both metalinguistics and metacommunication, comprise of signals indexing and calling attention to the linguistic message or code as well as signals indexing and calling attention to the speech event and the relationship between the narrator and the audience (also Bateson 2000: 177–193). As a thought-provoking side note, it is also argued that there are entire stories or genres of stories (e.g. the trickster tale) that are implicitly metanarrational, i.e. predisposed to call attention to the act of narrating and fabricating fictions itself.

2000; Wickström 2005). Earlier and the most well-known research has also been focused on Anglo-American and British contexts (see Brodie 2009 for a literature review); in Finland, as in Estonia for example, academic interest towards the genre is only beginning to emerge, even though as an art form, stand-up has been practiced since the early 1990s (for Estonia, see the historically informed text by Laineste 2012).

### **Stand-Up Routines as Generic Texts**

As a genre of comedy, stand-up is distinctly verbal, highlighting inventive and multifunctional language use (Jakobson 1960). This is not to neglect the physical side of stand-up (kinesics, proxemics, gestural language), which closely accompanies and can certainly overshadow the linguistic and paralinguistic aspects of a performance, but merely to focus my own approach towards the subject as humorous verbal art, “a form of creative metalinguistic play with the power to affect social reality” (Lucy 1993: 21).<sup>5</sup> As such, the concept of the text will be essential for any analysis of stand-up comedy as verbal art. This concept will be elaborated here in close relation to the popular notion of a ‘stand-up routine’.

Texts, considered here as principal devices in the meaningful presentation of culture (e.g. Bauman 2008; Silverstein & Urban 1996), are analytically understood as being actively shaped out of discourse in processes succinctly conceptualized as entextualization. In short, entextualization here refers to the generically informed, gradual process whereby discourse is molded into bounded, formally cohesive and semantically coherent texts (Bauman 2004; Hanks 1989). The distinguishing quality of a text, then, is its synoptic nature, which, as Tommi Nieminen (2010: 79) stresses, is always linked with the process of interpretation, simply because it is not possible to conceptualize text without a recipient. Of particular interest in the context of stand-up comedy will be the oft-cited views characterizing entextualization as potentiating decontextualization: by means of the patterning and cohesive devices associated with entextualization, texts are prone to being referred to, named, cited, rendered memorable, detached from their contexts and thus redistributable (Bauman & Briggs 1990; also Kaartinen 2010). The parameters, idiosyncrasies and sociocultural functions of said patterning and (potential) detachment are, however, essentially genre-specific, highly variable issues to be

---

<sup>5</sup> It is difficult to overestimate the locus of voice and speech in stand-up, whence the authenticity, believability and efficacy of the performance in large part derives. Suzan Seizer (2011) for instance has intriguingly referred to Richard Bauman and Charles Briggs (2003) in recognizing voice as the metaphorical location of subjectivity and agency in Western thinking.



identified and validated empirically. In this regard, entextualization is primarily a heuristic tool for highlighting and making sense of the discursive processes under scrutiny (Kuipers 1990), and as such, susceptible to be operationalized as a valid vantage point as well on issues of genre.

Stand-up comedy is a form of discourse production partitioned into ‘gags’, ‘bits’, or segments popularly known as ‘stand-up routines’.<sup>6</sup> Routines have been variously metaphorized as the ‘songs’ or ‘numbers’ of the comic (e.g. see the bonus interview on Vesterinen 2010), and on commercial stand-up records, these often constitute the table of contents of the published product. Markku Toikka and Maritta Vento (2000: 26–27) elaborate on the same metaphor and characterize routines – referring to them as headlines or topics – as blocks or structures of material that can be used in a performance, in variable form and order (cf. also Wickström 2005). Consequently, routines are conceived as more or less malleable: depending on the performer and the context, a single routine can be performed in multiple guises and forms, in which the contextual variation can be formal, thematic or pragmatic in nature and either intentional or unintentional (see also Kallio 2013: 86–87). As an emic term, a stand-up routine is a fundamentally metadiscursive, synoptic construct, much like ‘text’ itself in analytic parlance (Silverstein & Urban 1996): a routine is thought of as a situationally bounded stretch of discourse with a fairly conventionalized meaning, recognizable in diverse contexts and available for reanimation through potential, prospective performances. Moreover, and echoing Lauri Honko’s (2002) observation on how the persona of the folktale performer is often part of the ‘truth’ of the tale so that a narrative is deemed authentic only as told by its rightful narrator, a stand-up routine is socially apprehended via an organic relation with its author and animator.

Corroborating the notion of texts being predisposed to reiteration, a stand-up routine – as the term itself certainly implies by its connotations of convention and habit – is an intensely reiterated form of textuality. Forgoing the ostensible appearance of spontaneity, a single routine is designed, produced, performed, reproduced and re-tested for its performative effects in successive performances for various audiences, rendering suspicious or futile all attempts to

---

<sup>6</sup> ‘Routine’ is here adopted as a general term encompassing variously bounded segments of performance, even though some reserve the term for the longer, more developed wholes, and refer to the other segments as ‘gags’ or ‘bits’ (see also Double 2014: 87). Ian Brodie (2008, 163) seems to equate routine with a complete stand-up performance, and refers to the smaller units of routines as bits. It should be noted that a ‘routine’ is also in use in various other theatrical and variety arts, in acrobatics, magic acts etc., and its significance will vary according to these contexts.

document a routine in its supposedly original or definitive form. Then again, it is possible to argue that some routines by some performers do achieve certain ‘finality’, a certain ‘crystallized’ form (Siikala 1990), which might get reproduced as such in several successive performances, even though this is not necessarily a fully entextualized form in the sense of exhibiting high levels of strictly textual qualities and patterns.<sup>7</sup> In addition, comics themselves sometimes talk about ‘burning’, i.e. performing, for one last time, the routine for commercial audio/video documentation (e.g. see the bonus interview on Vesterinen 2010), implying the comic’s satisfaction, saturation or both with the routine – routines run their course and can then fall out of use. In this regard, Brodie (2009: 72–73) makes a problematic generalization in claiming how stand-up performances would be teleological “in that they aim towards a final, definitive version” and by labelling performances prior to the recorded one as “rough drafts”. On the contrary, many comics certainly underline the singularity and the variability of stand-up performances, defining stand-up as a genre by drawing on these aspects: a stand-up performance ‘happens’ each time as a unique actualization and interaction between the performer, the material and the audience.

Significantly, the reiterated nature of stand-up routines as texts is typically effaced in actual performances, receiving no explicit attribution, which can be usefully compared to traditional folklore performances. Folklore as a discursive practice is legitimately managed by intertextual self-positioning against anterior performances: it is marked, maintained and recognized by such intertextual links. Conversely, stand-up performances are managed by a ‘romantic’ rhetoric implying no apparent predecessors, i.e. parthenogenesis. Both patterns are, however, interactional accomplishments with strategic aims that are part of the management of narrative performances and should be analyzed as such. (Haring 1988; on romantic versus classicist inclinations of textual production, see Bauman 2004.)

### **Politics of Performance Aesthetics**

As a recognizable form of performance and comedy, cross-culturally referred to with the English modifier *stand-up*,<sup>8</sup> the question of genre is particularly cogent if complex (see e.g.

---

<sup>7</sup> Mihail Bakhtin (1986: 76–78) defines the ‘finalization’ of textual products as the level of satisfaction of the speaker regarding his or her texts: a finalized text suits its speaker’s aims, needs and desires. According to Bakhtin, finalization takes place on three levels: as 1) a confluence of semantic exhaustiveness of the theme, understood as a mutual process involving both speaker and listener, 2) the speaker’s plan, and 3) the typical compositional or generic forms of finalization.

<sup>8</sup> I would like to credit Marianna Keisalo-Galván for this observation.

Brodie 2009: 57–60 for a review of various definitions) regarding stand-up comedy. Philip Auslander has noted (1992: 125–127) how the distinction between a ‘stand-up comic’ (associated with popular entertainment), a ‘performance artist’ (associated with ‘high cultural vanguard’) or simply an ‘entertainer’ is frequently more a difference of the performer’s professional identification, the venue, and the audience than of the style of the performance itself. Michael Peterson (1997) concurs that it is not possible to find any criteria based on form, content or audience reception that would distinguish stand-up comedy from, say, other forms of solo/monologue performances or live poem recitation. He concludes by referring to stand-up as a discursive and material formation: stand-up comedy performances are recognized as such because they are advertised and referred to in specific ways. The term or keyword (Brodie 2009) ‘stand-up’ is connected to the practices of use of performances or a set of expectations concerning humorously intentioned communication in first person monologue form, also implicated in a folk categorization such as referring to any public speech as verging on stand-up: “That presentation was more like stand-up comedy.”<sup>9</sup>

As an aesthetic, stand-up comedy is defined by “unmarkedness” (Seizer 2011) or primitiveness, accomplished by both scenic/visual and linguistic features of which the latter is the main concern here.<sup>10</sup> The impression aimed at is that of an everyman climbing on the stage and starting to recount entertaining, ‘true’ stories (e.g. Toikka & Vento 2000: 19; Wickström 2005: 43). This generic truth-effect (Double 2014: 159–186) is produced by a nonexistent prop paradigmatically comprising of the microphone and a chair and everyday attire of the performer, complemented by the colloquial speech style that can involve addressing audience members directly in the second person. As informally conversational speech enabled in part by electric amplification (Brodie 2008; 2009), the register<sup>11</sup> of stand-up speech is the most distinguishing of the metacommunicative signals marking the genre and orienting the reception

---

<sup>9</sup> The term refers to a phenomenon comparable to the notion of an experientially constituted ‘performance arena’ as described by John Miles Foley (1995).

<sup>10</sup> Idealizations of stand-up comedy as “the most demanding type of performance” (e.g. Misje 2002: 88) – firmly entrenched by the popular discourses encompassing the genre – often turn on these aspects of the genre. A stand-up comic is said to be simultaneously his or her own author, scriptwriter, actor and director.

<sup>11</sup> Register refers to the situational and stylistic variation of language typically indexing social attributes, statuses, value systems etc., regulated by language ideologies functioning in given linguistic communities (see e.g. Agha 2007). For instance, the use of obscenities is seen as forming a distinguishing feature of the register of stand-up speech, conceivable as keying intimacy and accessibility (see Seizer 2011).

of a single performance by implicating a linguistic kinship and proximity between the audience and the performer.

Stand-up comedy, as other related disciplines often labeled under the general heading of ‘performance art’, then, privileges ‘reality’ over ‘fiction’ and builds strongly on an illusion of directness and ‘presence’ (on this unquestionably tricky concept, Peterson 1997: 16–17), simultaneously challenging some persistent Western notions of theater (see Schieffelin 1998). Not only is the ‘fourth wall’ between the performer and the audience permeable or wholly absent, stand-up speech itself falls on the explicitly opinionated and expressive side of narration with a strong link between the performer and the text performed.<sup>12</sup> Crucially, a stand-up comic is not interpreted as uttering words scripted by an absent author, but as embodying that author-function himself. (Peterson 1997.) It is a generic convention of stand-up speech that it is actively stylized and framed as *unmediated*, preferably topical personal narrative, offered as indexical of the performer’s full personality: “He does not interpret. He speaks.” (Toikka & Vento 2000: 19; translation by the author).<sup>13</sup> Finally, it is perfectly appropriate (if not always considered performatively effective) for a stand-up comic to reflect and comment on his stories, performance, surroundings, etc. Comments on the surroundings might in general be preferred to those referring to the performance, and even deemed mandatory in some accounts: “Failure to respond to a heckler, a dropped glass or the ringing of a mobile phone is a sign of weakness which will result in the audience losing faith in the performer’s ability.” (Double 2014: 19–20; see also Wickström 2005).

Already in his influential monograph on verbal art, Richard Bauman (1984: 22; also Kuipers 1999: 174) noted and filed such performative strategies under the header of the *disclaimers of performance*. His examples were the traditional Malagasy orators (*kabary*) known for downplaying the authenticity of their performances by pointing variously to features of the participants, setting and code use:

---

<sup>12</sup> On the scarcity of traditional jokes in stand-up, see Brodie 2008; 2009.

<sup>13</sup> Needless to say, ancillary mnemonic tools such as crib sheets are considered wholly inappropriate in stand-up. Anne Rajavuori (2012: 190) has noted how the Finnish socialist agitators of early 1900s abstained from reading their speeches off the paper, because the paper was considered not only an aesthetic hindrance but a moral one, as the words did not flow “straight from the heart”. The coincidence of the author and animator in the same person is thus significant considering the responsibility and competence (Bauman 1984) accorded to both the performer and the audience. The stakes of this responsibility are accentuated further in performances that have autobiographical reference, naturally including stand-up comedy, marking the genre with both heroism – “a single performer shouldering the burden of audience’s expectations” – (Peterson 1997: 4) and risk (McKearney 2012).

Such disclaimers are not, of course, incompatible with taking responsibility for a display of competence, but are, rather, concessions to standards of etiquette and decorum, where self-assertiveness is disvalued. In such situations, a disclaimer of performance serves both as a moral gesture, to counterbalance the power of performance to focus heightened attention on the performer, and a key to performance itself.

Whereas Bauman treats the disclaimers as moral gestures, as concessions to social or aesthetic standards, such strategies can also work as an ideological, social distinction, drawing on and further corroborating the distinction between ‘high’ elite art and the supposedly authentic performances in touch with reality (‘the people’). Of further importance is Bauman’s second argument concerning how such metacommunicative cues function as powerful ‘keys to performance’ itself. While ostensibly shattering or minimizing the frame of performance, the various reflexive devices and disclaimers are seen as powerful social-interactive tools that form a crucial part of the epistemology of the performance itself.<sup>14</sup> Michael Silverstein (1993: 40) has similarly noted how “being events, metapragmatically functioning interactional text-segments themselves have a pragmatic dimension”, that is, fulfill certain functions in the course of interaction.<sup>15</sup> Finally, and as will also be seen with the material below, insofar as such reflexive signals can offer potential sites for additional humorous incongruities, the relationship between the functional level of metapragmatic discourse and humor forms another prominent object of study.

### **Genres as Tools of Stand-Up Speech**

Stand-up is a loosely restricted category of discourse production that privileges inventive manipulations of communicative conventions. As such, it can be defined using the notion of a complex genre by Mikhail Bakhtin (1986; also Briggs & Bauman 1992). ‘Complexity’ of a genre alludes to its tendency to incorporate, creatively combine and embed within one another different kinds of text types (narrative, argumentative, descriptive, etc.) and genres (personal experience narratives, anecdotes, legends, gossip, etc.).<sup>16</sup> In the empirical case focused on

---

<sup>14</sup> Expanding on the matter in a later article, Bauman (1993; also 2004: 109–127) mostly concentrates on disclaimers by speakers *actually* disclaiming the ability to perform in a manner deemed culturally appropriate, eschewing the earlier insights on the disclaimers as ‘keying’ performances.

<sup>15</sup> Metapragmatics is a broad concept encompassing discourse that somehow comments on other discursive, pragmatic events, or in Silverstein’s (1993, 33) technical terms: “Signs functioning metapragmatically have pragmatic phenomena – indexical sign phenomena – as their semiotic objects; they thus have an inherently ‘framing,’ or ‘regimenting,’ or ‘stipulative’ character with respect to indexical phenomena.” (See also Agha 2007.)

<sup>16</sup> Cf. Lotte Tarkka’s (1994: 250–251) definition of the ‘epic universe’ as a synthetic level of the genre system, constituting a symbolic network and intertextual space of oral poetry. Tarkka similarly draws on Bakhtin, who characterizes ‘primary genres’ with a notion of an immediate relation with actual reality, whereas complex genres

below, for example, allusions are found to as many genres as expository personal narratives, argumentative preaching, the conventions of telephone conversation, gossiping and anecdotes. In addition, this case will illustrate how the genres engaged by complex genres such as stand-up gather much of their meanings only in relation to each other and to the complete communicative event.

In his pioneering folkloristic overview of stand-up comedy, endowing much thought as well on aspects of genre, Ian Bernard Brodie (2009) draws attention to the alternations of belief stances in stand-up speech by resorting to the classic folkloristic triad of myths, *Märchen* and legends.<sup>17</sup> After providing examples of each arch-genre and their first-person variants (testimonials, tall tales and personal anecdotes, respectively), he eventually proposes “non-consequential” small talk as the most coincident form of talk with stand-up speech: both represent “talk which is understood by the participants as primarily concerned with the establishment or re-establishment of interpersonal relationships and less with instrumental communication for the facilitation of a specific concrete goal“ (*ibid.*, 107). As illuminating and astute as his observations are, however, they are not offered as supplying one with tools for close empirical analyses of how exactly stand-up speech is structured, managed and interactively manipulated by relying on generic models. In the following, it will be argued that attention in analyzing genres as constitutive elements of stand-up speech should be given specifically to the interrelations, combinations and pragmatics of genres in the communicative events under study.

The basic insight of any theory of genre is how texts are never encountered ‘as such’, but always against certain expectations regarding other, similar texts – with and through these other texts (Nieminen 2010: 56, 90). The management of such textual and discursive relations should be understood as being closer to a skill or an art than actual, well-articulated knowledge. That is, generic knowledge is intuitive, diffuse and unanalyzed, characterized in large part by pragmatic, situated interests and motivations (Nieminen 2010: 55; Koski 2011: 51). Genres accord texts with strong social and historical connotations, although functioning as

---

would seem to lose this immediacy and become enhanced ‘literary events’. An important qualification, however, would be that primary speech genres, including several folklore genres (which Bakhtin had excluded from the category), should not be thought of as some ‘base level’ of genres but as already formed of various substances and existing generic conventions (Hyvärinen 2012).

<sup>17</sup> See also Brodie 2008, in which stand-up speech is insightfully contrasted with the genre of legends and particularly their telling, which is characterized as collaborative and dialogic. In addition, useful comparisons between jokes, legend reports (transliterated legend texts) and stand-up ‘bits’ are provided.

fundamentally indexical phenomena, dependent on other discursive formations and contextual factors, they also render texts open-ended and susceptible for novel recalibrations. (Bauman 2004.)

What have come to be termed ‘open’ or dynamic conceptualizations of genre as conventionalized frames of reference (see Koski 2011: 51) not only underline the situational and pragmatic nature of genres but also take the intergeneric transactions and deviations from generic models as natural and fundamental features of genres, and hence as points of departure for the analyst as well (e.g. Dorst 1983). This ‘rhetorical turn’ in the study of genre has in effect amounted to a de-centering of genres as autonomous phenomena: “The meanings conveyed through genres do not arise from substantial ‘centers’ of fixed meaning, but through the margins, the systemic interaction of meaning” (Tarkka 1993: 176). Such theoretical approaches will be particularly apt for the analysis of humorous communication, in which “[t]he high degree of creativity, emergent construction and artistry [...] call for a concept of genre which makes sense of modifications and transgressions in communicative processes” (Kotthoff 2007: 263). Humorous deployments and manipulations of genres can especially highlight how shifts in the illocutionary force and perlocutionary effects of genres can become visible by embedding them within one another and merging them together. The attention that this draws to genres and their conventions then further their potential for artistic or political exploitation.

Questions nevertheless remain regarding how and why performers use, modify, combine and index genres in general and in humorously inclined contexts in particular? Parodic or comic texts have sometimes been described as being ‘parasitic’ of other genres (e.g. Visakko & Voutilainen 2012; Dentith 2000). This raises additional questions especially relevant to comedy, such as whether this is equivalent to using and simultaneously manipulating a conventionalized set of formal, thematic or pragmatic features associated with the ‘host genre’. It also presents questions concerning the relationship between the supposedly original generic features and the new context with new communicative functions and aims for which it is applied. Particular attention in the case of humorous texts should also be laid on the strategic indeterminacy of genre, which can function as a critical method, a source of aesthetic pleasure but equally a disclaimer of social and political responsibility. I suggest a fruitful avenue for approaching all of these issues will be to turn to the ways that speakers frame, contextualize and align themselves *vis-à-vis* their generic textual products as well as their audiences.

### **Managing the Narrative Performance: Framing and Footing**

The observation that texts are regularly encountered as precipitated of discourse, “the processual, real-time, event-bound social action” (Silverstein 2005), has been especially productive in analyses of texts in use, that is, in their sociocultural, narrative contexts (see also Hanks 1989: 119; Bauman & Briggs 1990: 66–72). The central concern in various methodical conceptualizations of the distinction between texts and discourse can be seen to turn on the reflexive, indexical signals and patterns by which speakers link their speech to their immediate circumstances, typifying them in ways that make them recognizable as communications of a certain type or appropriate to a certain context (e.g. Gumperz 1982; Bauman 1986; Briggs 1988). These sites of reflexive self-regulation are also the points where the speaker/performer orients and manipulates his or her reception and interpretation – manages the performance – and as such some of the main foci of interest in analyzing stand-up speech as narrative interaction.<sup>18</sup> In order to attain a firmer and more nuanced grip on them, the concepts of framing and footing will be adopted, the differentiation between which will be subtle yet decisive.

The notion of the frame has gained in import particularly after Bateson’s (2000 [1972]) insight of how all messages are framed by metacommunication indicating the fashion in which their content is to be received (e.g. Goffman 1986; for a historical overview of the concept covering several disciplines, see Tannen 1993). Frames are seen as socially shared definitions of interactive situations and, as such, significant in signaling shifts and transitions amidst discourse, e.g. between generic segments, textually constructed voices, perspectives etc. In an influential, rhetorically oriented definition of framing, the process is associated with the selection of some aspects of a perceived reality and making them more salient in a communicating text, “*in such a way as to promote a particular problem definition, causal interpretation, moral evaluation, and/or treatment recommendation for the item described*” (Entman 1993: 52, emphasis in the original). This sort of selective contextualization (Karvonen 2000) naturally figures prominently in humorous performances, in which unexpected redefinitions of perspective, frame shifts and blends, figure–ground reversals etc. form the stock-in-trade comic techniques (e.g. Coulson 2001). An important aspect of this approach is

---

<sup>18</sup> Orienting and manipulating reception is certainly part of all performances, indeed included in certain definitions of the concept (see f. ex. Duranti 1997, 16). In stand-up comedy, and perhaps specifically in its more ‘alternative’ and serious strands, the anticipation of reception is of major importance: the acceptance of the orienting frames on part of the audience (what are we supposed to laugh at?) is often crucial in terms of the success of the performance.



that the notion of shifting frames immanent in the communicative text also renders the concept of ‘context’ towards an emergent, actor-oriented and interpretive direction as opposed to an idea of a static ground in a disjunctive relation to the text (Briggs 1988; Duranti & Goodwin 1992).

In contrast to framing, footing has been adopted as a term referring to the shifting positioning immanent in narration, the alignments “we take up to ourselves and the others present as expressed in the way we manage the production and reception of an utterance” (Goffman 1981: 128). Such positioning and alignments can be indexed by various textual, prosodic or paralinguistic cues, and are seen as playing a strategic role in stand-up speech by providing the primary means for the organization of contrasting viewpoints, voices, reflexive textual distances etc. In this regard of value will also be Erving Goffman’s deconstruction of ‘the speaker’ into analytically separated, potentially though not necessarily overlapping functions of ‘author’, ‘animator’ and ‘principal’. In short, author refers to the originator of the words, animator to the person uttering the words and principal to the party socially responsible for what is being said (Goffman 1981: 144–146). Footing, then, accounts for the shifts in such statuses that the speaker may assume – in speaking for herself, in quoting, in addressing a collective, etc. – each of which carries distinct social, cultural, and, also performative, qualities. As far as footing refers to the way in which framing is accomplished in verbal interaction (Hoyle 1993: 115), the relationship between frames and footing is seen as hierarchical: frames are invoked and signaled by shifts in footing.

In highlighting the processes by which performers can animate characters and provide indications of their own alignment toward the events being recounted, framing and footing regulate what kinds of subject positions different texts and genres lay out for participants. Insofar as stand-up comics often pursue a collective sentiment, specific attention should be given to the strategies by which their speech is explicitly or implicitly stylized as involving the audience in the position of the universal ‘we’ (both Koziski 1984 and Mintz 1985, the earliest analysts of stand-up, seem to have taken this stylization at face value and present the comic as a cultural mediator or a ‘scapegoat’ of sorts; see also Toikka & Vento 2000: 33). This position, naturally, can be legitimized (by laughter, yells, etc.) or not. Another frequent narrative strategy will be seen to be the deployment of various forms of reported speech, enabling the performer to increase stylistic and ideological heterogeneity by drawing on multiple speech events, voices and points of view (Hanks 1989, 70).

In thus introducing the name of capacity in which he speaks, the speaker goes some distance in establishing a corresponding reciprocal basis of identification for those to whom this stand-taking is addressed. To a degree, then, to select the capacity in which we are to be active is to select (or to attempt to select) the capacity in which the recipients of our action are present. (Goffman 1981: 145.)

The textual ellipticity of humorous narrative genres figures in the process as well: a stand-up performance is replenished by the interpretative work on part of the audience, potentially drawing the performer, the narratives recounted and the active audience in closer communion (cf. Bakhtin 1986: 76–78).<sup>19</sup>

### **The Architectonics of a Stand-Up Routine: Lindström's Elephant**

In the following, I will take a closer look at a routine by Jukka Lindström, a Finnish comic since 2006. Lindström is known for his socially conscious style of comedy or what might, with certain reservations, be called an 'alternative' style, even if the latter term has not (yet) gained in prevalence in Finland. Due to the attributes of realism, honesty and outspokenness often associated with such 'alternative' strands of comedy – and the conventionality of the term in the English-speaking world – the term 'alternative' is here adopted for practical reasons.<sup>20</sup>

Lindström's subjects range from the alienation induced by smartphones and social media to criticizing modern Western complacency, and he often exemplifies his views by drawing on his personal experiences. Significantly, he has been a founding member of a group of four comics called Paukutusjengi since 2013. This group has an explicit aim of diversifying the field of Finnish stand-up comedy, which has been publicly criticized for relying too much on 'feel good' comedy without a serious, 'real world' content.<sup>21</sup> In a clear turn of generic dissociation and self-branding, the group has profiled itself with attributes such as 'honesty', as comedy

---

19 Edward L. Schieffelin (1985) has pointed out how the power and the persuasiveness of a performance lie not in a vivid and unequivocal display of symbolic materials, but in their very incompleteness. A performance does not offer a fixed model for orienting towards reality, but material for active contestation and adoption, emphasized in stand-up by the fragmentary narrative structures and ambiguous or suppressed meanings obliging cognitive if not social (laughter) participation.

20 'Alternative comedy' is a term coined originally for the style of comedy that emerged in the wake of the punk movement in late 1970s and early 1980s London and was defined by a deliberate rejection of material deemed racist or sexist in content and import. Jane Littlewood and Michael Pickering (1998: 296–297) characterize the style with a tendency towards social realism and 'honesty' with routines built around performers' own personalities and everyday experiences (see also Wilmut & Rosengard 1989).

<sup>21</sup> I am thinking in particular of an oft-cited essay in *Nyt-liite*, the additional weekly magazine of the main Finnish newspaper *Helsingin Sanomat*, in which the journalist Erkkä Mykkänen (2013a) scolded the Finnish stand-up scene for steering clear from societal, political and personal subjects. Lindström himself has also argued how the figure of a 'serious' comic has not been part of Finnish popular imaginary.

‘digging deeper’ and addressing the “pains of the individual and of the nation” (see Korhonen 2013).<sup>22</sup>

The routine under scrutiny is from a performance for an audience of around 80–100 people that was documented in a club in Helsinki (1<sup>st</sup> September 2013). This routine has been chosen in order to assess the approaches and tools developed in the article and to illuminate the narrative strategies of (con-)textualization in a stand-up performance in general. In the routine, Lindström dramatizes his statement about the ‘decline of Western civilization’ by recounting an incident on Facebook and illustrating its absurdity with an imaginary temporal analogy. The routine expands directly from prior segments of the same performance, in which the speaker mourns the shortening of attention span as a result of Youtube and the like. The text-artifact presented here has been translated from Finnish into English as well as practically divided into four narrative segments, as indicated by roman letters:

## I

- 1a But it is like this, Internet makes you dumber, slowly but surely.<sup>23</sup>
- 2a I’m certain: the decline of the Western civilization has begun goddammit.  
2b I understood this... the decline of the Western civilization has begun  
2c I understood it last week, my *best friend* Joni sent me a video on Facebook  
2d where there was a normal elephant, just a regular elephant, African elephant  
2e that takes its trunk, puts it in his fellow elephant’s rectum, feels it a little bit,  
takes a turd, *and eats* it. [Laughter]  
2f That’s when I realized the downhill had fucking begun. [L] [pauses for 2  
seconds]
- 3a Well not exactly at that specific moment, but after I had pressed the ‘Like’  
button  
3b but anyway, anyway... [L]

## II

- 4a It has come to this!

---

<sup>22</sup> As an interesting side note, it is noteworthy how the question of speech genres figures implicitly in Lindström’s description of their oeuvre, in the way he denounces their performances as being about ‘preaching’ (cit. in Mykkänen 2013b; cf. Briggs & Bauman 1992 for a similar example.)

<sup>23</sup> [L]: laughter of the audience; *italics*: speaker emphasizing the words; ” ”: characterizations, variations of the tone of voice; [ ]: gestures or movements of the performer; line shifts: ending of a sentence/rhythms of speech.

4b It has come... in the 90s we still recommended each other CDs and, like, some novels.

4c Now we send each other some elephant videos, goddammit.

Lindström starts off by stylizing his message in the form of a conversion narrative culminating in an epiphany-like revelation (line 2b) in which he frames his prophetic conclusion about the Western world by referring to a widespread anti-modern discourse (a ‘counter myth’ in the terminology of Fiske 1992: 222–223) of how technology – in this case, the Internet and social media – deteriorates human capacities and potentials. This is illustrated with a short personal narrative segment about a purportedly revealing incident in the recent past, which, offered as metonymic of the surrounding cultural milieu, thus serves an expository function (Bennett 1986). In lamenting what appears to be a serious social and cultural predicament not to be taken lightly, Lindström relies on careful narrative framing in strategically directing his comic gaze: the sad state of the affairs exemplified by the narrated event is not to be laughed at, but an idiosyncratic experience of it, recounted via a personal narrative in the form of a sudden realization, is certainly susceptible to humorous treatment (cf. Kramer 2011). It is also worth noting how the narrative itself has a highly elliptical structure, and how it is the ideological and highly opinionated frame established and appealed to in the beginning (and in earlier routines) that renders it coherent and humorous. This framing is summoned again and further solidified in line 2f by a repetition underlining the specific moment of the epiphany – if only to be soon retroactively corrected.

The actual narrative storyline is situated in the speaker’s intimate social circles, in the context of a private (though not as private as hoped for, as it turns out) interaction with his ‘best friend’, also identified by first name, and consists of a negligible yet simultaneously recognizable episode of sharing a disgusting video on social media. Part of the effectiveness of the narrative is obviously connected to the fact that Lindström has chosen to portray his best friend in an undesirable light, as partaking in the decline of the whole civilization, suggesting raw honesty on part of the speaker himself (on comic licence, see Quirk 2010). A narrative functioning as expository discourse characteristically implies metonymic universality in contrast to the exceptionality of the portrayed event itself (see Bennett 1986).<sup>24</sup> This further accentuates the implication of the segment: if relaying such a video takes place between *best* friends – and the

---

<sup>24</sup> Gillian Bennett constructs her notion of narrative as expository discourse against the Labovian idea of narratives as recounting exceptional events. In contrast to this, narratives fulfilling an expository function usually typify or suggest the conventionality or universality of events.

affective attribute is repeated a bit further on – it must be an indication of something far more general.

In its focus on the behavior of a single, identified person and its overall evaluative tone, the narrative is also seen to construct an intergeneric reference to the conventions of gossiping (Eggins & Slade 1997: 273–311). However, as the emphasis of Lindström’s routine is not on evaluating the actions of his friend *per se*, but on commenting on the modern predicament of interpersonal relations and communicative practices, such linguistic features of gossiping are merely alluded to for their conventionalized features, not realized in their full pragmatic and social potential (see also Visakko & Voutilainen 2012: 290). The questionable portrayal of the friend is presented as merely an unpleasant yet necessary side effect, as a means to an end so to speak, while at the same time allowing Lindström himself as the narrator to escape the negative connotations associated with the practice of gossiping.

The routine begins in a grandiloquent tone, generically close to mock-preaching, indexed in part by the choice of words (‘Western civilization’) and completed with straightforward declarations (2a) and indirect appeals to include the audience in a collective sentiment of cultural kinship (4b–4c). The operation of increasing the relevance of the text by situating the narrated event (2b–4c) at a temporal and social proximity is in itself a generic performative strategy, i.e. very common in stand-up, which aims at creating an impression of topicality and authenticity: the same temporal reference (the deictic ‘last week’) is repeated in a subsequent performance about a month after the one where this transliteration is taken from. Considering the interests of the present article, of course, it should not concern us whether the incident actually took place. What matters is how certain effects are produced by narrative strategies – a message that is framed as true and as recent is more persuasive, more effective than one framed as temporally remote or, better yet, as overt fiction (see also Zareff 2012, 98).<sup>25</sup>

A twist of confessional self-irony is introduced as a brief coda of the narrative, deflating the grand tone of the routine and simultaneously decreasing the social distance between the performer and the audience (3a–3b). First of all, it could be said that Lindström’s confession of ‘liking’ the video on Facebook mitigates the process of identification and offers

---

<sup>25</sup> Suzan Seizer (2011) unveils the crux of the matter poignantly by drawing on Richard Schechner (1985): in the context of performance, technical mastery (“to perform well”) is what counts, even if that includes telling outright lies.

simultaneous relief for members of the audience, who might have recognized themselves in the familiar narrative – which, it should be remembered, started out in a more critical register. The social kinship between the performer and his audience is fortified in the process as Lindström himself admits sharing the guilty pleasure of enjoying such inane video clips and partaking in the ‘decline’, thus lowering himself on the same level as the practices and persons criticized. In addition, the stark overview and outlook of the societal predicament (‘the decline of the West’) is cushioned and rendered more palatable as a result of the humorous concession. What might be seen as a curious generic contingency solidifying the connotations of the relativism of perspectives associated with stand-up, it is perfectly reasonable for a performer to slightly pervert his own argument in this way.

Secondly, and from a strictly textual perspective, the two lines (3a–3b) represent a prominent case of humorously staged metapragmatic discourse (see chapter two above). In a retroactive frame shift (framing the antecedent discursive segment), here masquerading as a faux-corrective, Lindström reflexively accomplishes an ascent to a logically higher plane, whereby his previous, judgmental diatribe is suddenly turned into an object language. This object language, furthermore, is now rendered itself incongruent with the revelation of Lindström’s own not-so-faultless behavior. In terms of narrative performance, the breach is an implicit disclaimer of performance by Bauman’s terms (see above). This appears to bring about a break in the narrative flow, thwarting the smooth unfolding of the speaker’s argument. However, it instead does the opposite, tightening the link between the narrated story and the narrative event. As such, it certainly functions as further ‘keying’ the performance. By the brief narrative discontinuity, Lindström thus achieves several ends: he increases the social kinship between himself and the audience by undermining his own apparent moral preeminence, solidifies the impression of spontaneous speech in the present tense (Double 2014: 325–338), in addition to milking out a few extra laughs.

Advancing on to the second segment of the presently textualized routine, the lines (4b–4c) segueing the routine from the first narrative episode to the next form a significant parallelism,<sup>26</sup> in which the temporal juxtaposition of ‘then’ (4b) and ‘now’ (4c) hints at the pivotal rhetorical argument of the entire routine. This is indexed by a forceful change in footing with the vocally

---

<sup>26</sup> Parallelism refers to textual repetition with patterned variation, for example a repeating structure setting up formal equivalences, which can be interpreted as encouraging comparisons (Brown 1999).

emphasized phrase “It has come to this!” – the three seguing lines (4a–4c) are addressed directly to the audience. This underlines the communicative and interpretative weight of the juxtaposition while simultaneously drawing on the presumably shared experiences of both the modern social media culture and the sharing culture of the 1990s. The aforementioned phrase (4a) can also be seen to bridge the gap between the previously narrated event and the ongoing storytelling event by phatically reaching out to the audience (Bauman 1986), thus increasing the situated nature of the speech.

Linguistic anthropologist Douglas Glick (2007) has similarly called attention to poetic parallelisms in stand-up comedy and argued that these structures can often function as instructions and guidelines for audiences in interpreting texts in a desired fashion. An instruction inciting a temporal comparison figures strongly in the present case, as the routine continues in a subjunctive mood keyed by a change in footing, evoking a counterpart for the preceding narrative episode:

### III

- 5a If in the 90s my best friend Joni had sent me  
5b a VHS tape, in a brown envelope... [L] [pauses for 4 seconds with an allusive, questioning look]  
5c I would've thought that Joni has something *very meaningful* to show me personally. [L]  
5d And when I would've put the tape in the VCR... [continuous laughter]  
5e ...pressed 'Play'... [physically visualizing the movements associated with using a VCR]  
5f ...and there would've been the fucking elephant... [draws a rectangular TV screen in the air by hand]  
5g I would *not* have sent him back a letter with a hand-drawn 'thumbs up' [L]
- 6a No, I would've called him by phone  
6b [in a worried tone of voice, as if speaking to a telephone, pacing to and fro]:  
“Joni is everything alright for fuck's sake!?” [L]

In a fashion typical of extended or literary comedy, and in contrast to the mere telling of jokes, the humor of the routine is constructed out of a “comic sequence” (Zupancic 2008). In this case, the deliberately failed analogy that connects the two narrative episodes builds up comic

associations as the sequence advances.<sup>27</sup> Lindström sets up his analogy by reminiscing about the social and nostalgically more meaningful sharing culture of the 1990s. He then imaginatively reconstructs and anachronistically resituates the practice of casual video sharing in that context as a historically counterfactual yet potentially viable event.<sup>28</sup>

The procedure is seen to set up another structure of poetic parallelism, at this point familiar to the audience, in this case between the two strictly narrative episodes of the complete routine. The first, factual episode of receiving the Youtube video is rendered meaningful by the second, imaginary one – which, in turn, is rendered humorous – and vice versa, thus increasing the internal coherence of the routine (see also Knuuttila 1992: 209). The outcome of this gradually unfolding juxtaposition is an instance of a conceptual blend, a combination of elements from two temporal and cultural frames, past and present, by which both the similarities and the differences of the frames are made visible (Fauconnier & Turner 2002; Coulson 2001; Hofstadter & Gabora 1989). In the respective blend, comprised of the frames of the 1990s social and technological sharing culture and the present day Facebook communication, the former frame is seen predominating over the latter in the sense that it provides the principal surroundings of the narrated event onto which the salient features of the latter are introduced – i.e. the content of the shared video clip and the approving response of ‘thumbs up’. Following the theoretical import of conceptual blends, it could be said that the humor derives not from a single narrative image but in fact from the emergent superimposition, the simultaneous alternation of both frames.<sup>29</sup>

The interplay between the textual parallelism accomplished narratively and the comic technique of a failed analogy – here conceptualized as a frame blend – increases the cohesion and the coherence of the complete entextualized routine to the extent that it is rendered not only funny but more memorable. In this regard, the sequence is a nice illustration of how

---

<sup>27</sup> As is more than familiar for scholars of humor, analogy is also one of the logical mechanisms that Victor Raskin and Salvatore Attardo (1991) have recognized as constitutive of jokes. Logical oppositions are understood as (partially) resolving or defusing the ‘script oppositions’ of a joke.

<sup>28</sup> Douglas Hofstadter & Liane Gabora (1989, 2) have designated such counterfactuals – of which stand-up provides ample evidence – as “hypothetical variants of an actual event that involve slippages from the true way it happened to ways it might otherwise have happened”.

<sup>29</sup> Indeed, the humorously inclined frame blends have been suggested as being imperfect, failed analogies. Productive in further analyses would be to speculate on just why certain salient elements of the respective frames were chosen for the blend (Hofstadter & Gabora 1989), for example by analyzing successive, evolving versions of the same routine. On some accounts, it is exactly the visibility of borders between such frames that has also been proposed to distinguish humor from metaphor (Krikmann 2009; Kyratzis 2012).



cultural products construct and unveil the past “in light of present-day knowledge” and how the present in turn “is assessed via the changing and changeable past” (Knuuttila 1992: 339), in this case as humorously (and tragically) irrational. And to stretch the argument a bit further, it could be said that the interconnectedness of the different levels of the worldview – in this case, the historical stretch from past to present – is also maintained and revitalized by such analogical and metaphorical bindings (see Tarkka 1993).

Pivotal in structuring the narrative performance, yet easily downplayed or wholly dismissed in exclusively textually oriented analyses, are the paralinguistic devices that add to the effectiveness of the performance by setting its rhythm and accentuating it at the desired sites. In this case, particularly the pause following the beginning of the second episode complemented by a facial expression, as well as the rich gestural language, are of crucial importance. After eliciting the incomplete overture for the crux of his analogy (lines 5a–5b), Lindström adopts a facial expression that could be described as a suspicious interrogation which is understood as foregrounding his distance from the unfolding narrative by a switch of footing. As a parenthetical aside, as it were, his facial expression functions at the level of metacommunication to frame the narrative as a playful imaginary scene: he draws on another channel of communication, and simultaneously aligns himself with the audience in the position of observing the imaginary situation from the perspective of an outsider. Furthermore, by simultaneously verbalizing the imaginary event and enacting the activities of receiving the videotape and the moments that follow through elaborate gestures, a visible and highly evocative link is formed between the narrated episode and the narrative event.

Of interest is how the audience starts to laugh immediately after hearing the beginning of the second narrative episode, without knowing exactly how the analogy will unfold. Together with Lindström’s allowance and encouragement of this through his pause, this highlights the interactive import of the paralinguistic techniques. It is well known how as listeners we posit what the speaker wishes to say, oftentimes well in advance of the completion of the utterance, and how meeting or deviating from these expectations can circumstantially serve several functions (Holquist 2002: 64). Folklorist and humor scholar Seppo Knuuttila (1992: 210) has proposed how in jests with parallel structures the contexts of jest narration and traditional joking relations can be seen as explanatory for this sort of precognition. In the interpretation of stand-up speech, however, such sociocultural conventions are not necessarily available, which

is why the instructions in interpretation are left to narrative techniques and genre-specific conventions, in this case represented specifically by the parallelistic textual structures.

The performative thrust of the routine is located in the shift from the narrative to mimetic mode of presentation. This is found in Lindström's imaginary response to the VHS tape with overt anxiety and anger, which underlines the implications of the absurdity of interpersonal communication and entertainment today. By finishing with a quotation of direct speech, the culmination of the second highly expository narrative chunk is reminiscent of the genre of anecdotes, which omit the resolution to a crisis situation (see Eggins & Slade 1997: 243–257). Here, however, the expressive sequence is better defined as a performed dialogue, which is situated in the spatio-temporal frame of the imaginary narrative (chronotope), which Lindström himself “enters”. In the short interrogative outburst, Lindström transposes the imaginary event into a brief ‘telephone conversation’ and performs his response directly to his friend in imaginary historical ‘real-time’. (Cf. Glick 2007.) By adopting the point of view of himself in the fictional situation and by play-acting the line in front of the audience, this mimetic move is comparable to direct quotation as a mode of reported speech and carries similar aesthetic effects of vividness and authoritativeness by drawing on and instantiating the expressive character of language directly (whereas an indirect quotation represents communication without expression, on which see Lucy 1993: 19–20).

In a subsequent performance taking place in Turku on 25<sup>th</sup> October 2013 (as the first public show of the group *Paukutusjengi*), the main body of the routine analyzed above is further augmented (Haring 1988: 370) by a few closing lines worth taking into account. Given that on this occasion Lindström was competing for the other performers of the evening, his performance was of a decidedly looser structure, interspersed with conversational segments engaging members of the audience and presumably enabling him to perform the routine in its entirety. In effect, Lindström finishes the routine by resuming the earlier footing of addressing the audience directly (‘you’), with an expansion reflecting on the social sanctions of the original event. Typical of narrative codas in general, recourse is made from the narrated text closer to the narrative performance situation:

#### IV

- 7a        And it's not *enough* that you receive it in your private inbox but it can be seen on your damn Facebook wall...
- 7b        Like ‘yeah, these are the types of friends that I have’...

7c [with a different voice] ‘Why don’t you comment on this somehow Jukka?’ [L]  
7d ‘Well...’

Textually, this coda of the complete routine is even more multifaceted than earlier segments. No apparent contextual cues are offered to facilitate the interpretation of the closing lines, in which the frame is yet again shifted from the previous imaginary narrative to the present day real-time and the context of Facebook communication, associating the ending with the original event of receiving the infamous video clip (cf. Hoyle 1993: 124–125).<sup>30</sup> The basic premise of the cultural decline, functioning as the backdrop for the routine and Lindström’s whole performance, is still seen as providing a discursive frame in which the final digression is embedded, even if the immediate, embedded frame is now focused on the interpersonal relations of social media and the public person of Lindström himself.

After a brief descriptive segment (line 7a) orienting the audience for the new narrative frame, Lindström mimetically acts out the reactions provoked by the public video on a personal Facebook profile page, multiplying the layers of the performance by animating voices both of ‘himself’ and of an amused friend in what appears to have been a factual situation. This is textually and prosodically accomplished by shifts of pronouns as well as shifts in tonal inflection. This can be described as a strategy in ‘voicing’, here understood as the linguistic construction of figures of personhood (Agha 2005). The first instance of ‘voicing’ is especially interesting as we decode it as representing the point of view of Lindström himself, even if animated from a distanced position.<sup>31</sup> In a fundamentally ironic move, offered as a representation of his private thought processes, Lindström assumes the voice of a projected self in the now-familiar spatio-temporal frame of Facebook communication, obliging the audience to perceive the distance between the voice and his ‘real’ person and to reconstruct and align with the intentions of the latter.<sup>32</sup>

---

<sup>30</sup> Goffman (1981, 155) notes how the originally established footing often remains labile during brief lapses into foreign footings, “whether to speak of another aspect of ourselves or for someone else, or to lighten our discourse with a darted enactment of some alien interaction arrangement”.

<sup>31</sup> The types of voices frequently animated or invoked can be considered a defining feature of a genre: in this regard, stand-up has a predisposition to imaginary, imitated and stereotypical voices (cf. Keane 1999 characterizing the typical voices of religious genres).

<sup>32</sup> The structure is reminiscent of a combination of two main forms of irony, typically operative in dramatic monologue poetry: “‘verbal’ irony, ‘in which one meaning is stated and a different, usually antithetical, meaning is intended;’ and ‘dramatic’ irony, in which [...] the spectators know more than the protagonist” (Peterson 1997, 27). See also the distinctions of three potentially but not necessarily overlapping subject categories as defined by Kaja Silverman (1983, 46–48).

By contrast, the line 7c is an explicit demonstration of the evaluative perspective of an outsider, in effect objectifying G. H. Mead's classic social psychological notion of the 'me', the attitudes of others that the individual assumes (Miller 1973). This is presented as an essentially 'unnamed voice', not clearly identifiable as the speech of named biographic person (Agha 2005: 40–41). Consolidating Asif Agha's (*ibid.*) observation on how the recognition and typifiability of voices always presupposes 'voicing contrasts', the voices emerge and come to the fore only in relation to an unfolding text structure: by being played against each other and against Lindström's seemingly natural, narrative voice.<sup>33</sup>

By ironically aligning himself and subsequently the audience in the position of an outsider *vis-à-vis* the event evoked by the two fabulated lines, 'looking' at himself in the awkward situation, Lindström manages (for the second time) a mild form of self-deprecation so useful in solo performances, which are easily susceptible to criticism of narcissistic self-exposure.<sup>34</sup> Indeed, part of performative tension increasing the appeal of the complete routine is emergent from the conflict between the light representational self-criticism, downplaying of the ego, and the presentational virtuosity of Lindström as a self-assured performer of humorous stories (cf. Bauman 2004: 82–108; on assurance as a rhetorical quality, see Greenbaum 1999).

As is typical for humorous communication, the routine is seen as functioning on several simultaneous levels: as a social and cultural commentary, as an outlet for psychological frustrations, as a strategic deployment of light self-irony in the course of the complete performance. As such, it also resists one-dimensional attempts at interpretation and deconstruction; all the grand theoretical models of humor (incongruity, relief, superiority theories) can be seen to be viable and overlapping in its construal. Notably, the text closes in the form of a question, foregrounding the propensities of humorous narrative genres towards narrative presentation, not resolution.

## **6. And Then What?**

In this article, the perspectives laid on stand-up comedy routines have been outlined by focusing on the management of narrative performances as social interaction, with particular

---

<sup>33</sup> The naturalness of narrative voices is, of course, always relative. Voicing in general is particularly complex in stand-up because the performer is seen as taking on a double nature: standing on the stage s/he is simultaneously a performer and a role, a version of him- or herself (Gunnell 2006, 9; Glick 2007; Double 2014, 121–139).

<sup>34</sup> Lindström himself has characterized stand-up comedy as a "wonderful hybrid of rhetoric and narcissism", highlighting the persuasive and individualistic aspects of the genre (cit. in Soinen 2013).

stress on the various reflexive linguistic and paralinguistic devices utilized by the speaker. The examined routine has been analyzed as exhibiting multiple strategic shifts and combinations of genres, frames and footings in a relatively short time span: the complete text with the additional, augmented ending spans less than two minutes in real-time performance. This illustrates the complexities of stand-up speech but also the fact that, as language speakers and listeners, we are fluently competent at, and apparently take pleasure in, making sense of such “laminations of experience” (Goffman 1981).

The backbone of the routine has been identified as an aggregation of two expository narrative chunks introduced into an embedding discursive frame putting forward the argumentative notion of ‘the decline of the West’. These chunks are rendered meaningful and emotionally appealing – and furthermore, humorous – only in relation to each other and to their embedding frame, which is seen as supplying the dominating moral stance of the routine, itself fairly extreme although not too controversial. The formal cohesion and the semantic coherence of the routine has been solidified by textual parallelism that stages the narratives in a relation of juxtaposition, by providing an ‘instruction’ in the form of another structure of parallelism on how to interpret it, and finally by reinforcing the parallel formulations with the comic technique of a deliberately failed analogy, conceptualized above as a frame blend.

In the course of the complete text, the speaker is seen to draw on the formal, thematic and pragmatic features of several speech genres connected with various speech events. Continuing from an antecedent routine in a grandiose, argumentative tone that might be best described as mock-preaching, this embedding discursive frame is first given weight with a reference to a personal revelation. The central thesis of the cultural decline and the specific instance of the revelation is exemplified by the first factual expository narrative – itself suggestive of the conventions of gossiping – carefully framed as an idiosyncratic subjective experience. Functioning as a transition between the principal narrative segments, a temporal comparison to a recent past is then constructed in the form of directly and persuasively addressing the audience. The comparison is fortified with the second fictional parallel narrative culminating in two play-acted lines, a strategy often associated with anecdotes. Moreover, generic conventions imported from telephone conversations as well as reflective projections of private thought processes, in both fictively and factually offered spatio-temporal frames, have been uncovered as functional elements of the complete text. All of the genres are seen as being either embedded inside other generic frames or combined with each other, underlining the import of

intergeneric relations and mediations in the general construal of social and cultural meanings (see Tarkka 1993: 176, quoted above).

The alternating footings assumed by the speaker have been analyzed as indicating the alignments of the speaker in relation to his speech, the events recounted as well as his interlocutors, regulating their respective distances. Accomplished by both linguistic and paralinguistic (facial expression, tone of voice, gestural language) signals, the footings are seen as aligning the speaker in various positions: as a self-assured orator preaching the end of times, as a hesitant confessor taking back his own words, or at times in the position of an outsider in league with the audience, reflecting on the narrated events or his own sentiments as if from a distance. Oftentimes the shifts between generic segments can also be localized by the shifts of footings, as when the second parallel narrative is signaled by turning from directly addressing the audience to a somewhat ponderous, subjunctive mood of the imaginary narrative. The alternations between the narrative mode of presentation and the mimetic mode of play-acting have been seen as providing the performer with further means of increasing the perspectival heterogeneity and vividness of the text. Exhibiting high levels of finalization – as is also to be deduced from the fact that the routine is performed with only minor variations on successive performances – the performance of the text has been finished by carefully punctuated timing, rhythm and pronounced pauses offering the audience members room for interpretative leaps of their own.

A number of narrative operations have been addressed, including allusions to generic and stylistic conventions, reflexive shifts of frames and role alignments. These have been interpreted as potent performative strategies providing the stand-up comic with the means for managing such genre-defining features as impressions of honesty, spontaneity, topical relevance and self-irony. Furthermore, manipulations of the distance between the solo performer and his audience, approached in the article as implications of social and cultural kinship and convincingly identified by Brodie (2009) as characteristic of the genre as a whole, can be seen to turn on precisely such tactics.

Insofar as the focus in this article has been on three documentations – two of which have provided the present transliterations – of a single, highly finalized routine, essential in subsequent studies would be to turn to the rich potentials to be found in the variation between successive performances of routines. In another fairly obvious move, the scope of research should be expanded to the interrelations and continuities between the routines, gags and bits

comprising a complete performance, examining how these connect and refer to one another intertextually, building upon or contesting each other. It is the folklorist's predisposition to the sensitivities and creative interplay between "expressive form and social function", "personal action and communicative interaction" (Bauman 1982: 16), which will be of specific import in advancing on these avenues.

Echoing the classical notion of oratory as contrasting practical action with more poetic, entertaining discourse (Kuipers 1999: 173), 'alternative' stand-up is a genre of indirect pleas, functioning in a suggestive, fragmentary and fundamentally reflexive fashion. Linda Hutcheon (1980: 3) has observed that, in metafiction, the relationship between art and reality is on another level than that of the narrated story: it is on the level of narration itself, on the level of the imaginative, and as such, on the level of the social, political and historical, process of creating fiction. This is also the level where the humorous impact of stand-up comedy is often to be found.

## Literature

- Agha, Asif 2005. Voice, Footing, Enregisterment. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 15 (1): 38–59.
- Agha, Asif 2007. *Language and Social Relations*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Attardo, Salvatore & Raskin, Victor 1991. Script theory revis(it)ed. Joke Similarity and Joke Representation Model. *HUMOR. International Journal of Humor Research* 4 (3–4): 293–347.
- Auslander, Philip 1992. *Presence and Resistance. Postmodernism and Cultural Politics in Contemporary American Performance*. Ann Arbor: The University of Michigan Press.
- Babcock, Barbara 1984. The Story in the Story. Metanarration in Folk Narrative. In Bauman 1984. Pp. 61–79.
- Bakhtin, M. M. 1986. *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Ed. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Trans. Vern W. McGee. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Bateson, Gregory 2000 [1972]. *Steps to an Ecology of Mind*. With a New Foreword by Mary Catherine Bateson. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Briggs, Charles L. & Bauman, Richard 1990. Poetics and Performance as Critical Perspectives on Language and Social Life. *Annual Review of Anthropology* 19: 59–88.
- Bauman, Richard & Briggs, Charles L. 2003. *Voices of Modernity. Language Ideologies and the Politics of Inequality*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bauman, Richard 1982. Conceptions of Folklore in the Development of Literary Semiotics. *Semiotica* 39 (1–2): 1–20.
- Bauman, Richard 1984. *Verbal Art as Performance*. With Supplementary Essays by Barbara A. Babcock *et al.* Prospect Heights III: Waveland Press.
- Bauman, Richard 1986. *Story, Performance and Event. Contextual Studies of Oral Narrative*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bauman, Richard 1993. Disclaimers of Performance. In Hill, Jane H. & Irvine, Judith T. (eds.) *Responsibility and Evidence in Oral Discourse*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 182–196.

- Bauman, Richard 2004. *A World of Others' Words. Cross-Cultural Perspectives on Intertextuality*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing.
- Bauman, Richard 2008. The Philology of the Vernacular. *Journal of Folklore Research* 45: 29–36.
- Bennett, Gillian 1986. Narrative as Expository Discourse. *Journal of American Folklore* 99 (394): 415–434.
- Briggs, Charles L. & Bauman, Richard 1992. Genre, Intertextuality, and Social Power. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 2 (2): 131–72.
- Briggs, Charles L. 1988. *Competence in Performance. The Creativity of Tradition in Mexican Verbal Art*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Brodie, Ian 2008. Stand-Up Comedy as a Genre of Intimacy. *Ethnologies* 30 (2): 153–180.
- Brodie, Ian Bernard 2009. *Stand-up Comedy. A Folkloristic Approach*. Ph.D. Dissertation: Memorial University of Newfoundland.
- Brown, Penelope 1999. Repetition. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 9 (1–2): 223–226.
- Coulson, Seana 2001. *Semantic Leaps. Frame-shifting and Conceptual Blending in Meaning Construction*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Dentith, Simon 2000. *Parody. The New Critical Idiom*. London: Routledge.
- Dorst, John D. 1983. Neck-Riddle as a Dialogue of Genres. Applying Bakhtin's Genre Theory. *Journal of American Folklore* 96 (382): 413–433.
- Double, Oliver 1997. *Stand-up! On Being a Comedian*. London: Methuen.
- Double, Oliver 2014 [2005]. *Getting the Joke. The Inner Workings of Stand-up Comedy*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. London: Bloomsbury.
- Duranti, Alessandro 1997. *Linguistic Anthropology*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Duranti, Alessandro & Goodwin, Charles (eds.) 1992. *Rethinking Context. Language as an Interactive Phenomenon*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Eggs, Suzanne & Slade, Diane 1997. *Analysing Casual Conversation*. London: Cassell.
- Entman, Robert M. 1993. Framing: Toward Clarification of a Fractured Paradigm. *Journal of Communication* 43 (4): 51–58.
- Fauconnier, Gilles & Turner, Mark 2002. *The Way We Think. Conceptual Blending and the Mind's Hidden Complexities*. Basic Books.
- Fine, Elisabeth C. 1984. *The Folklore Text. From Performance to Print*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Fiske, John 1992. *Merkkien kieli. Johdatus viestinnän tutkimiseen*. Tampere: Vastapaino.
- Foley, John Miles 1995. *The Singer of Tales in Performance*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Frow, John 2006. *Genre. The New Critical Idiom*. London: Routledge.
- Glick, Douglas J. 2007. Some Performative Techniques of Stand-Up Comedy: An Exercise in the Textuality of Temporalization. *Language & Communication* 27 (3): 291–306.
- Goffman, Erving 1981. *Forms of Talk*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Goffman, Erving 1986 [1974]. *Frame Analysis. An Essay on the Organization of Experience*. Boston: Northeastern University Press.
- Greenbaum, Andrea 1999. Stand-up Comedy as Rhetorical Argument. An Investigation of Comic Culture. *HUMOR. International Journal of Humor Research* 12 (1): 33–46.
- Gumperz, John J. 1982. *Discourse Strategies*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Gunnell, Terry 2006. Narratives, Space and Drama. Essential Spatial Aspects Involved in the Performance and Reception of Oral Narrative. *Folklore. An Electronic Journal* 33: 7–26.
- Gunnell, Terry 2009. Billy Connolly, Jo Brand and Tommy Tiernan. Stand-Ups and Storytellers. Paper presented at 15<sup>th</sup> Congress of the International Society Folk Narrative Research. *Narratives Across Space and Time: Transmissions and Adaptations*. June 21–27, Athens.



- Hanks, William F. 1989. Text and Textuality. *Annual Review of Anthropology* 18: 95–127.
- Haring, Lee 1988. Interperformance. *Fabula* 29 (1): 365–372.
- Hofstadter, Douglas & Gabora, Liane 1989. Synopsis of the Workshop on Humor and Cognition. *HUMOR. International Journal of Humor Research* 2 (4): 417–440.
- Holquist, Michael 2002. *Dialogism. Bakhtin and His World*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. London: Routledge.
- Honko, Lauri 2002. Perinneaineistojen tekijänoikeuksista ja käyttösäännöistä. Luonnollisesta tekijänoikeudesta. *Elore* 2/2002.
- Hoyle, Susan M. 1993. Participation Frameworks in Sportscasting Play. Imaginary and Literal Footings. In Tannen, Deborah (ed.) *Framing in Discourse*. New York & Oxford: Oxford University Press. Pp. 114–145.
- Hutcheon, Linda 1980. *Narcissistic Narrative. The Metafictional Paradox*. Waterloo, Ontario: Wilfrid Laurier University Press.
- Hyvärinen, Matti 2012. Kertomuksen sosiaaliset lajit. In Heikkinen, Vesa et al. (eds.) *Genreanalyysi. Tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja*. Helsinki: Gaudeamus. Pp. 392–410.
- Jakobson, Roman 1960. Closing Statement. Linguistics and Poetics. In Sebeok, Thomas (ed.) *Style in Language*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press. Pp. 398–429.
- Kaartinen, Timo 2011. Handing down and writing down. Gaps and continuities in a performing tradition. *Folklore Fellows Network* 41: 4–12.
- Kallio, Kati 2013. *Laulamisen tapoja. Esitysareena, rekisteri ja paikallinen laji länsi-inkeriläisessä kalevalamittaisessa runossa*. Ph.D. Dissertation: University of Helsinki. [online] <http://urn.fi/URN:ISBN:978-952-10-9566-5>.
- Karvonen, Erkki 2000. Tulkintakehys (*frame*) ja kehystäminen. *Tiedotustutkimus* 23 (2): 78–84.
- Keane, Webb 1999. Voice. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 9 (1–2): 271–273.
- Knuuttila, Seppo 1992. *Kansanhuumorin mieli. Kaskut maailmankuvan aineksena*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Korhonen, Joonas 2013. Naurua yhteiskunnan kipupisteille. *Kansan Uutiset. Viikkolehti* 38: 26–27.
- Koski, Kaarina 2011. *Kuoleman voimat. Kirkonväki suomalaisessa uskomusperinteessä*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Kotthoff, Helga 2007. Oral genres of Humor. On the Dialectic of Genre Knowledge and Creative Authoring. *Pragmatics* 17 (2): 263–296.
- Koziski, Stephanie 1984. The Standup Comedian as Anthropologist. *Intentional Culture Critic. Journal of Popular Culture* 18 (2): 57–76.
- Kramer, Elise 2011. The playful is political. The metapragmatics of internet rape-joke arguments. *Language in Society* 40: 137–168.
- Krikmann, Arvo 2009. On the Similarity and Distinguishability of Humour and Figurative Speech. *Trames* 13 (1): 14–40.
- Kuipers, Joel C. 1990. *Power in Performance. The Creation of Textual Authority in Weyewa Ritual Speech*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Kuipers, Joel 1999. Oratory. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 9 (1–2): 173–176.
- Kyrtzsis, Sakis 2003. Laughing metaphorically. Metaphor and Humour in Discourse. 8<sup>th</sup> *International Cognitive Linguistics Conference*. Theme Session: Cognitive-Linguistic Approaches to Humour. July 20–25, 2003. Spain: University of La Rioja. [online] <http://wwwling.arts.kuleuven.ac.be/iclc/Papers/Kyrtzsis.pdf>.
- Laineste, Liisi 2012. Stand-up in Estonia: From Soviet *estrada* to Comedy Estonia. In Laineste, Liisi; Brzozowska, Dorota; Chłopicki, Władysław (eds.) *Estonia and Poland. Creativity and Tradition in Cultural Communication* 1. Tartu: ELM Scholarly Press. Pp. 73–90.
- Limon, John 2000. *Stand-up Comedy in Theory, or, Abjection in America*. Durham and London: Duke University Press.

- Littlewood, Jane & Pickering, Michael 1998. Heard the One about the White Middle-class Heterosexual Father-in-law? In Wagg, Stephen (ed.) *Because I Tell a Joke or Two. Comedy, politics and social difference*. London & New York: Routledge. Pp. 291–312.
- Lockyer, Sharon & Pickering, Michael (eds.) 2009 [2005]. *Beyond a Joke. The Limits of Humour*. Basingstoke & New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Lucy, John A. 1993. Reflexive Language and the Human Disciplines. In Lucy, John A. (ed.) *Reflexive Language. Reported Speech and Metapragmatics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 9–32.
- McKearney, Patrick 2012. *Religion and Ridicule in Contemporary British Stand-up Comedy. Finding Ritual and Ethics in Unexpected Places*. MA Thesis: Saint John's College, Cambridge University.
- Miller, David L. 1973. *G.H. Mead. Self, Language and the World*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
- Mintz, Lawrence E. 1985. Standup Comedy as Social and Cultural Mediation. *American Quarterly* 37 (1): 71–80.
- Misje, Anne-Karin 2002. Stand-Up Comedy as Negotiation and Subversion. In Klinkmann, Sven-Erik (ed.) *Popular Imagination. Essays on Fantasy and Cultural Practice*. Turku: NNF Publications. Pp. 87–111.
- Mykkänen, Erkkka 2013a. Pop-essée. Suomalainen stand-up on munatonta. *Nyt-liite*. [online] <http://www2.nyt.fi/20130125-pop-essée-suomalainen-stand-up-on-munatonta/>.
- Mykkänen, Erkkka 2013b. ”Nauruissa täytyy olla sisältöä”. Paukutusjengi haluaa tehdä syvällistä stand-upia. *Nyt-liite*. [online] <http://www2.nyt.fi/20131018-nauruissa-taetyy-olla-sisaeltoeae-paukutusjengi-haluaa-tehdae-syvaellistae-stand-upia/>.
- Nieminen, Tommi 2010. *Lajien synty. Tekstilaji kielitieteen semioottisessa metateoriassa*. Jyväskylä: Jyväskylän Yliopisto.
- Peterson, Michael 1997. *Straight White Male. Performance Art Monologues*. Jackson: University Press of Mississippi.
- Rajavuori, Anne 2012. Sosialistiagitatorit villitysmatkoilla. Suullinen performanssi historian tutkimuksen kohteena. *Elore* 19 (2): 181–193.
- Quirk, Sophie 2010. Who's in Charge? Negotiation, Manipulation and Comic Licence in the Work of Mark Thomas. *Comedy Studies* 1 (1): 113–124.
- Schechner, Richard 1985. *Between Theatre and Anthropology*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Schieffelin, Edward L. 1985. Performance and the Cultural Construction of Reality. *American Ethnologist* 12 (4): 707–224.
- Schieffelin, Edward L. 1998. Problematizing Performance. In Hughes-Freeland, Felicia (ed.) *Ritual, Performance, Media*. London: Routledge. Pp. 197–210.
- Seizer, Susan 2011. On the Uses of Obscenity in Live Stand-up Comedy. *Anthropological Quarterly* 84 (1): 209–234.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena 1990. *Interpreting Oral Narrative*. FF Communications 245. Helsinki: Suomalainen Tiedeakatemia.
- Silverman, Kaja 1983. *The Subject of Semiotics*. New York & Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Silverstein, Michael 1993. Metapragmatic Discourse and Metapragmatic Function. In Lucy, John A. (ed.) *Reflexive Language. Reported Speech and Metapragmatics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 33–58.
- Silverstein, Michael 2005. Axes of Evals. Token Versus Type Interdiscursivity. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 15 (1): 6–22.

- Silverstein, Michael & Urban, Greg 1996. The Natural History of Discourse. In Silverstein, Michael & Urban, Greg (eds.) *Natural Histories of Discourse*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press. Pp. 1–18.
- Soininen, Tiia 2013. Naurattajat. *Via Helsinki* 2: 8–11.
- Tannen, Deborah 1993. What's in a Frame? Surface Evidence for Underlying Expectations. In Tannen, Deborah (ed.) *Framing in Discourse*. New York & Oxford: Oxford University Press. Pp. 14–56.
- Tarkka, Lotte 1993. Intertextuality, Rhetorics, and the Interpretation of Oral Poetry. The Case of Archived Orality. In Anttonen, Pertti J. & Kvideland, Reimund (eds.) *Nordic Frontiers. Recent Issues in the Study of Modern Traditional Culture in the Nordic Countries*. Turku: NIF Publications. Pp. 165–193.
- Tarkka, Lotte 1994. Other Worlds: Symbolism, Dialogue and Gender in Karelian Oral Poetry. In Siikala, Anna-Leena & Vakimo, Sinikka (eds.) *Songs Beyond the Kalevala. Transformations of Oral Poetry*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 250–298.
- Toikka, Markku & Vento, Maritta 2000. *Ala naurattaa! Stand up -komedian käsikirja*. Helsinki: Like Kustannus.
- Turner, Victor 1979. Frame, Flow and Reflection. Ritual and Drama as Public Liminality. *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 6 (4): 465–499.
- Vesterinen, Teemu 2010. *Teemu Vesterinen. Live show 13.2.2010 Manala, Helsinki*. PanVision. [DVD]
- Visakko, Tomi & Voutilainen, Eero 2012. Aprillipila tekstilajina. In Heikkinen, Vesa *et al.* (eds.) *Genreanalyysi. Tekstilajitutkimuksen käytäntöä*. Helsinki: Kotimaisten kielten keskus. [online]  
<http://kaino.kotus.fi/www/verkkojulkaisut/julk29/Genreanalyysi.pdf>.
- Wickström, André 2005. *Das Humoristische Manifest. Kirja stand up -komiikasta*. Juva: WSOY.
- Wilmut, Roger & Rosengard, Peter 1989. *Didn't You Kill My Mother-in-Law?* London: Methuen.
- Zareff, Janne 2012. *Journalistinen komiikka. Teoreettisia ja käytännöllisiä avauksia*. Jyväskylä: University of Jyväskylä.
- Zupancic, Alenka 2008. *The Odd One in. On Comedy*. Cambridge, Mass.: The MIT Press.

# The Poetics of Quotation

## Proverbial Speech, Entextualization and the Emergence of Oral Poems

**Lotte Tarkka**

Oral tradition evolves by quoting the speech of others and returning to their texts. Performance by performance, we construct or imagine a continuity from the speech and song of previous generations when we name and value the words voiced by them as traditional. The topics and texts of a culture take shape and gain meaning in a dialogue that I will call the poetics of quotation: the explicit use of expressions traceable to and authorized by previous uses of the same expressions in the community. These processes of using, interpreting and evaluating texts are orchestrated by the vernacular notions of genre and textual practices associated with it.

The proverb – a genre of minor folklore – manifests this poetics in the extreme (Finnegan 2011: 159–160; Hasan-Rokem 1982: 54–55). The very gesture of quoting is the rhetorical function of proverbs. Their crystallized form and content draw attention to the fact that a proverb performance entails extracting an already entextualized item from one context and placing it in another (see Barber 2007: 22–23). Such repeatedness of all discourse is captured in the idea of intertextuality (e.g. Bauman 2004; Finnegan 2011: 199–200). Roland Barthes (1982 [1971]: 160) has described intertextual references as “quotations without inverted commas”: their interpretation overlooks the origin or source of the quotation. As proverb performances highlight the act of quotation and build their authority upon conceived genealogical links between utterances, the term intertextuality fails to catch the logic of proverbs (cf. Barber 2007: 77). While uttering a proverb, the speaker relies on the words uttered by an ancient third party linking the interlocutors as a shared heritage, pre-existent, anonymous, but still recognizable (see Briggs 1988: 133; Lauhakangas 2004: 80–81; Penfield 1983: 17–20).

As small textual units, proverbs are usable in many registers: in everyday conversation, in festive oratory, in poetic discourse, and in disputes. They introduce to their context the power of tradition by alluding to a link with a supposedly shared and ancient tradition (e.g. Hasan-Rokem 1982: 54; Lauhakangas 2004: 80–81, 133, 149). Through this genealogy, the utterance gains significance that surpasses any individual opinion. This is, however, only one communicative task of quoting; we also quote to take distance from the message, to mock, to parody, and to contest.

This essay will build on an analysis of Kalevala-meter poetry in the Viena Karelian parish of Vuokkiniemi during the 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries (Tarkka 2005; Tarkka 2013a). This community was characterized by a low impact of administrative institutions, syncretistic vernacular religion, and an extremely low rate of literacy. Kalevala-meter runo-singing served the functions of aesthetic communication of salient knowledge, social control, and formulation of local issues, personal emotions and practical knowhow. Its dominant position was unquestioned during the time of large scale folklore collection in the 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. Kalevala-meter poetry encompassed various genres, including minor folklore genres such as riddles and proverbs. Some genres were sung; some recited; some were muttered, as it was said, “from within the mouth”, so that only the supranormal addressees could hear (Kuusi, Bosley & Branch 1977: 72–74; Siikala 2002: 264–269; Tarkka 2013a: 104).

The poetic meter, the so-called Kalevala-meter is based on a trochaic tetrameter regulating the word stress, syllable length and the word’s position in the line. The main stylistic features of these poems are alliteration and parallelism, and the poems are stichich or non-stanzaic. (E.g. Leino 1994; Kuusi, Bosley & Branch 1977: 62–68.) The diverse genres comply with these tenets and stylistic ideals in varying degrees. The same applies to the degree of variability in the composition of Viena Karelian Kalevala-meter poems. The compositions of epic poems were relatively stable, but still characterized by variation produced by the flexible use of standard sequences, formulae and formula-families (Harvilahti 1992: 90–91; 2004: 196–199; see also Lord 1987: 307–311; Tarkka 2013a: 90–93). The structure and variation of incantations reflected the ritual procedure which they orchestrated (Siikala 2002: 97–112). The genres treated in this essay, lyric poems and aphorisms, rely on the use of variable elements of poetry, ranging from crystalized idioms, lines, and couplets to larger textual units, repeated and quoted across the permeable boundaries of genres.

Elias Lönnrot, the compiler of the epic *Kalevala*, recognized the meaning of quoting in Kalevala-meter poetry. In his foreword to an edition of lyric poems, the *Kanteletar*, he described redundancy in folk poetry as follows:

The same phrases appear now and then in two, or even in many more, different songs. Readers should not censure us for this, or think that we could have tossed these and those words out of the song because they have already appeared in a previous song. We had no right to do so. If, in one song, we find the words: *on these wretched borderlands, the poor Northern country*, or, *in these bad times, the waning age*, or, *woe is me, the poor boy, woe the boy of poor fate*, it does not mean that they cannot reappear in other places. Such

phrases, like other old saws, must have lived among the people from times immemorial and, as such, they were mixed unaltered into songs. Such things are nothing out of the ordinary in folksongs; indeed, even in educated circles people may use words once uttered by others as if they were their own. (Lönnrot 1985 [1840]: xlix.)

The phrases singled out by Lönnrot are not proverbs proper but formulaic phrases that characterize protagonists and spatial or temporal entities typical of the poems. Such parallelistic couplets in the Kalevala-meter were essential to both the poetic tradition and everyday speech – they “lived among the people”. The phrases expressed individual subjectivities: they were used “as if they were one’s own”. Yet, they were traditional, already uttered and repeated “by others”.

In the following, I will discuss the interplay of Kalevala-meter poetry and proverbs (or proverbial phrases and expressions) in the corpus of Vuokkiniemi. This discussion will consider how proverbs enter speech or emerge as poetry and how the shift from speech to poetic performance relates to the dynamics of genre. The notion of genre employed here stresses the expressive and communicative aspects of folklore: genres are frameworks that guide the production and interpretation of historically specific conventions and ideals (see Bauman 2004: 3–5 *et passim*; Briggs & Bauman 1992: 142–143; Hanks 1987: 670.) For the researcher of archived materials these frameworks are operative both in folklore competences and performances. They manifest themselves as groups of texts that display a variety of differences and similarities in style, content, structure, function and mode of performance. These differences and similarities point to the profound intertextuality of folklore genres. Here, I will concentrate on two forms of generic dialogue or intertextuality, namely the creation of hybrid genres and texts (proverbial poems or aphorisms) and the sequential combination of genres by embedding proverbs into longer narrative texts (see Tarkka 2010: 15–22; forthcoming).

### **From Proverb to Proverbial Speech**

In 1778, the founding figure of Finnish folklore research and collection, Henric Gabriel Porthan (1983 [1766–1788]: 78) noted that, for the sake of mnemonics, most Finnish and Karelian proverbs were cast in the Kalevala-meter. In the Vuokkiniemi corpus, this applies on 60 per cent of proverbs (Kuusi 1978: 55–57). The basic structural unit of the proverb is a line in the Kalevala-meter, and the proverb typically consists of two lines connected through semantic parallelism – for example: ‘Take the learning onto your forehead, the advice onto the bridge of your nose’ (*Ota oppi otsahas, neuvo nenävartehes*) (SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)4713. 1912–1913).

A minimal, loose definition of the proverb offers some basic criteria for an expression to fit into the genre of proverbs. Proverbs are widely known in the community, they have a fixed form, they communicate an independent idea, and they stand out from the flow of speech as figurative or otherwise deviating from the interpretative frame of the surrounding discourse (Krikman 1974: 16–17; Kuusi 1954: 7; Lauhakangas 2004: 18; Taylor 1962: 6–7). Proverbs of this variety will be designated here as *proverbs proper*. When analysing the movement of the proverb within the system of genres, even these rough criteria have to be moderated. Instead of proverbs as such, it is therefore more useful to talk about proverbial speech and the proverbial quality of expressions and phrases.

In an oft quoted and criticized statement (see e.g. Briggs 1988: 102–103; Dundes 1981 [1975]: 44–45), Archer Taylor (1962: 3) pointed at proverbiality as a quality that is decisive in the identification of proverbs and still undefinable, even “incommunicable”. This defeatist argument reflects the problems in defining universal analytical genres. Yet even without access to vernacular articulations of the proverbial quality or an emic understanding of the genre of proverbs, the proverb collections in folklore archives communicate distinct qualities of form, style and content the combination of which approximate the idea of proverbiality. These qualities were recognized by the speech community in Viena Karelia: they characterized a particular register dedicated not just to the use proverbs proper in conversation, but to the use of proverbial expressions more broadly. This register is here designated as *proverbial speech*.

According to Outi Lauhakangas (2004: 14), *proverbial expressions* and *proverbial phrases* fall short of some of the linguistic criteria of proverbs proper, such as propositional form and finite form.<sup>1</sup> This deficiency is not a mistake. Varying upon the ideal generic form makes it easier to fit the expression into the precedent and antecedent discourse and indeed into many genres. Such variation may be a conscious strategy of calibrating the so called intertextual gap.<sup>2</sup> Nevertheless, the interpretation of proverbial expression rests on an understanding concerning the genre of proverbs based on experiences of its uses. The communicative functions of

---

<sup>1</sup> Instead of the adjective “proverbial”, Lauhakangas uses the adjective “proverb-like” to cover both conventional proverbial phrases and other proverbial expressions. Taylor’s (1962: 184) definition of the proverbial phrase stresses its close relation to proverbs proper: “The proverbial phrase exhibits the characteristic rigidity of the proverb in all particulars except grammatical form.”

<sup>2</sup> On the intertextual gap, see e.g. Bauman 2004: 7–8.

proverbs can be fulfilled in communication with performances that do not fully meet the linguistic and performative criteria of proverbs proper.

A key difference between proverbs proper and proverbial expressions is in the degree and nature of *finalization* of the utterances in question. According to M. M. Bakhtin (1986: 76–78), finalized utterances treat the referential and semantic theme exhaustively and match the speaker’s (or the performer’s) intentions (i.e. what he or she wishes to express). Most importantly, these expressive intentions govern the performer’s choice of “speech genre”. For Bakhtin, finalization enables communication: it is only possible to respond to or “responsively understand” finalized utterances. Building on Bakhtin, Peter Seitel (1999: 35–41) has defined three levels of proverb finalization: *a*) finalization of a proverb text itself, as a complete and discrete unit of utterance; *b*) finalization of the discursive context, i.e. of the utterance in which the proverb text is embedded; and lastly *c*) finalization of the social setting in which this utterance is performed. In proverbial phrases and expressions, the criteria of finalization are eased on the level of the proverb text itself. In contrast, the proverb proper is ideally finalized as a textual unit.

Proverbial speech is a register that stands apart from colloquial conversation by frequent use of proverbs or proverbial expressions. The proverb is performed and interpreted as an integral part of conversation but it stands out in communication as an entextualized element:<sup>3</sup> it is clearly recognizable as an entity that could retain at least some of its meaning even outside the context of communication, namely, the basic semantic content of the proverb text. (See Lauhakangas 2004: 14, 18.) Proverbial expressions and phrases can, in general, be more tightly fit into the surrounding discourse through morphological variation (i.e. adapted to the particular context of grammar and syntax) but their entextualization falls short from that of proverbs proper precisely because of this morphous quality which is contrary to the finalization of a proverb text.

Proverbial speech is essentially poetic: its form and its content are complex, and it surpasses the typicalities of ordinary speech; it reflexively draws attention to itself by deviating from the syntax of ordinary speech and by relying on special prosodic traits such as intonation, tone of voice and word stress (Domínguez Barajas 2010: 71). One of the communicative functions of

---

<sup>3</sup> On entextualization, see Barber 2007: 22–24, 68–77 et passim; Bauman & Briggs 1990: 73–74.



the proverbs, the didactic tendency, sets the register of proverbial speech apart from colloquial language also in its stress on the conative function of language (Shuman & Hasan-Rokem 2012: 59). Thus the register of proverbial speech was clearly marked and heightened, but it could easily be activated within the unmarked register of ordinary speech. This interface of conversation and performance fuels the emergence on proverbs and aphoristic poems in the Kalevala-meter.

In Viena Karelia, proverbs were called *povertkka* – a word that also meant indirect, evasive and allusive speech. The alternative generic terms *sananpolvi* [lit. ‘bend of word’] and *sananmutka* [lit. ‘twist of word’] also referred to a skilful and emphatic way of speech (cf. English ‘turn of phrase’). It thus refers to a twisting, turning and bending quality of a word, which in the vernacular vocabulary could refer to a larger unit of utterance than a single lexical item. Rather than determining the proverb as a clear-cut genre, the vernacular system of genres thus signalled the register of proverbial speech and the proverbial quality of expressions or utterances applicable in many texts and generic contexts. In 1836, the folklore collector Juhana Cajan testified that instead of classifying poems, the local terminology for genres served purposes of interpretation and evaluation. Terms such as *sanan polvi* were reserved for texts that had “a poetic shape and therefore a special spiritual meaning” (SKS KRA. Cajan 1. 1836; see Tarkka 2013a: 157–158). They describe and evaluate aesthetic qualities defining both content and form. The meaning in a ‘bend of word’ relied on indirect expression, paraphrase and metaphor, and its structure differed from that of ordinary expressions. The term itself is metaphorical: it presents an image of a spatial entity with a direction, and movement along it. According to the local metapoetic symbolism, songs were thought of in terms of traveling: they were roads or ski tracks in an imaginary landscape (Tarkka 2013a: 158–160).

According to local observers, all vernacular language used alliteration and parallelism and strived towards figurative, aesthetically pleasing yet precise expression. Proverbial speech employed this strategy to the full. It was not neutral, but a heightened and semantically complex ‘way of speech’ (*pakinanluatu*). Consequently, decoding it required some effort: it was said that “[w]hen everybody always spoke in proverbs, understanding it all was hard work.” (Perttu 1978: 187.) The intellectual challenge in producing and interpreting proverbial speech turned it into a recognized test of wit. The more one used “comparisons, derogatory affixes, proverbs and so forth” in one’s parlance, the wiser one was considered (SKS KIA. Marttinen A 1935: iii–iv. 1919). The poetics of quotation relied on the performers’ and the audiences’ mastery of

the special register dedicated to aesthetically pleasing expression. This includes more than just the linguistic competencies required for producing proverbial speech and for framing proverbs in discourse (narrative or otherwise); it also includes command over the lexicon of crystallized, stereotypical proverbs and their constituent parts.

Lönnrot portrayed the emergence of proverbs in the early nineteenth century in the following way:

Proverbs make up half the speech of many a commoner. They just have to add the words *it is said*, or something like that, to introduce a proverb. When two such masters of proverbs meet, they may start to argue, albeit very politely, with proverbs, or they may adjust their speech into an otherwise proverbial form. [...] Such transient proverbs are forgotten as quickly as they are composed; only if they contain an exemplary piece of wisdom or truth will others repeat them, and they gradually join the common stock of proverbs. (Lönnrot 1902: 170).

In conversation, a breakthrough into proverbial speech was indicated by framing the utterance, for example, with the expressions like ‘it is said’ or ‘well, this is the way it is’ (Perttu 1978: 216). The frame pointed out that the utterance to come was traditional and represented unquestioned common sense. It also served to foreground the proverb (Briggs 1988: 105–106; Hasan-Rokem 1982: 55; Lauhakangas 2004: 78) and to fit it into the semantic and narrative context. Framing displays the tension in the proverb: it is simultaneously firmly contextualized within the flow of speech and singled out as an independent semantic unit.

The substrate of the continuous production and testing of proverb-like expressions allows for the birth of proverbs proper: entextualized, singled out of the flux of conversation, tested by the audience and gradually gaining the status of proverbial wisdom. Despite this emergent quality, the wisdom of proverbs was considered ancient. In the late nineteenth century, old people claimed that their ancestors used to converse exclusively in proverbs (SKS KRA. Marttinen c)1–904, accompanying letter. 1893). Indeed, metapoetic discourse associated proverbial speech with the past, even the past of mythical history. The idea is consonant with the nostalgic perception of the past as the heyday of tradition (Tarkka 2013a: 55). More importantly, however, proverbial speech was an enactment of this ancient register. As Charles Briggs has said, the performance of proverbs quoted the speech of the “elders of the bygone days” and guaranteed the presence of the past in the here and now. (Briggs 1988: 101.) Karin Barber (2007: 77) notes that the “the quotedness of proverbs” is made evident with the framing formulae that attribute the words uttered to others, to “the elders”.

Phrases and couplets typically found in epic poetry were used as proverbs in colloquial speech. The formulaic couplet describing the maiden of the mythic North, ‘Well, she is the fame of the land, the choice of the water’ (*Sehän se nyt on moan kuulu, vejen valivo*), was used in conversation to express envy after hearing others being praised. A couplet picturing the catch of the mythic giant pike, ‘A bigger catch has been caught, a bulkier bunch has been brought’ (*Soatu on soalis suurempikin, tuotu on tukutkin turpiemmat*) could be used to comment on any plentiful catch of fish – it replaced the colloquial exclamation ‘Now, you’ve caught a lot!’ Proverbial use of these familiar expressions enabled acknowledgement while avoiding explicit praise, which, with a competitive mood, could easily have triggered notions of envy and magical harm associated with it. Similarly, a formulaic couplet typical of *The Wooing Trial*, an old “legal proverb” (Kuusi 1963: 371), had a function of consolidating an agreement: ‘The promised gift has been given, the vowed maiden has been sold’ (*Annettu on luvattu lahja, myöty neiti toivotettu*) was used as a guarantee that both parties would hold to the agreement – an indirect reply neutralized potential conflict. (SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)6145. 1913, c)10278. 1915, c)7709. 1915.) In proverbial use of all three of these epic lines, recourse to indirect expressive strategies served one of the functions of proverbial speech, avoiding or resolving conflicts (see Lauhakangas 2004: 167–169). The use of proverbs as arguments in conversation or while arguing pointed to the effect of indirect strategies: arguing with proverbs was “polite” (Lönnrot 1902: 170).

### **Proverbial Couplets as Formulae**

Matti Kuusi (1954: 48–49, 148–149) has described the couplet-based proverb in the Kalevala-meter as a formulaic expression or cliché usable in the creation of poems. Couplets or longer chains of poetic lines bound together with semantic parallelism are the elementary structural unit in Kalevala-meter poetry (cf. Anttonen 1994: 116–117, 119; Anttonen 2004: 378). Although longer poems, and narrative poems in particular display a complex hierarchical structure (see Saarinen 1991: 196), many poems seem to be constructed additively, as a succession of seemingly independent and equal couplets.

In his application of ethnopoetics into the study of Kalevala-meter poetry, Pertti Anttonen has foregrounded the role of communal aesthetic evaluations regarding the structure and completeness of the poem. The completeness of a text requires a recognizable structure and cohesion of both form and content. According to Anttonen, the vernacular poetics governed the notions of finalized performances: the poem was supposed to express what the performer

wanted to express and include those artistic elements by which the performer sought to achieve his rhetorical aims. (Anttonen 1994: 119–120.) Taking the three levels of finalization into account, this claim can be modified: even an incomplete text may, in felicitous circumstances, serve to communicate what the performer wished. As noted above, the communicative functions of the proverb proper may also be fulfilled with proverbial expressions finalized only on the two levels of performance (discursive context and social setting).

The finalization of texts is bound to the structural, thematic, stylistic and performative ideals linked to vernacular notions of genre – as Bakhtin noted, finalized utterances manifest genre-specific “relatively stable typical *forms of construction of the whole*” (Bakhtin 1986: 78, emphasis original; see also Seitel 2003: 278). Finalization thus implies a close fit between the generic ideal and the text performed. This not only applies to proverbs proper: but the proverbial quality of phrases or utterances was also acknowledged and interpreted in relation to the generic ideal of the proverb. As we have few documents on how the performers assessed their own and others’ performances, the finalization of poetic texts (such as proverbs), and thus the degree in which they fit into a genre, has to be assessed individually, by looking at the thematic and formal mechanism of the text’s composition and the cohesion of the whole.

According to Matti Kuusi (1978: 43), the couplet ‘It is odd in an odd village, / strange in strange lands’ (*Outo on ouvossa kylässä, / vieras mualla vierahalla*) is an old Finnish and Viena Karelian proverb. This couplet is essentially like the ones mentioned by Lönnrot as “old saws”: formulaic phrases that may be used to describe places, times, persons and mental states. As a separate entity, the proverb proper presents a complete proposition and an independent idea: one feels estrangement on foreign ground. The parallel construction first likens the experience with the environment (both are odd and / or strange) within each line, and then rounds up the image by repeating the content of the main line. Because of its emotive content, the couplet is frequently used in poems to describe the predicament of the speaking subject or the protagonist. The following example comes from an autobiographical poem: the speaker describes his or her exile in Finland, complementing the proverb with one of the redundant formulaic couplets mentioned by Lönnrot:

Outo on ouvossa kylässä,  
vieras on maalla vierahalla,  
näillä raukoilla rajoilla,  
polosillen Pohjan maille.  
(SKSÄ. Gallen-Kallela 509 6b + 510 1. 1921)

**<PARALLEL TEXT>**

It is odd in an odd village,  
it is strange on strange lands,  
on these wretched borders,  
the poor Northern country.

**</PARALLEL TEXT>**

Only in the autobiographical context does the proverb as a generalizing propositional form turn into a subjective statement of emotion. The next example presents a typical lyric insertion in a hunting incantation, which is a markedly different genre. Here, the strange lands and alien villages refer to the forest: the hunter feels sad and strange when the catch is poor. The subject position is spelled out – ‘I’ am the one feeling:

Ikävä minun tulee,  
ikävä tulettelee,  
vieras maalla vierahalla,  
outo ouoissa kylässä.  
(SKVR L<sub>4</sub> 1250)

**<PARALLEL TEXT>**

I get sad,  
sadness comes by,  
strange on strange lands,  
odd in an odd village.

**</PARALLEL TEXT>**

Although the proverb conveys an emotion experienced by the ego, the proverb holds to its generalizing propositional form. Nevertheless, formulaic lines and couplets paralleling the words ‘odd’ and ‘strange’ are often varied and declined into proverbial expressions and phrases (Kuusi 1954: 7) in many genres to give contour to the same experience of alienation. In the next case, taken from epic narration, the mythic hero Väinämöinen wails over his protracted time drifting on the sea by reciting a lyrical poem. ‘Odd’ here refers to the hero’s feeling of disorientation: he is unable to get his bearings in the otherworld.

“Jouvuin mailla vierahilla,  
äkki ouoilla ovilla,  
empä tieä tietä käyä,  
outo matkoja osata  
näillä mailla vierahilla,  
äkki ouoilla ovilla.”  
(SKVR I<sub>1</sub> 63c)

**<PARALLEL TEXT>**

“I found myself in strange lands,  
at ever odd doors,  
I don’t know the road to walk,  
It’s odd to find a way  
on these strange lands,  
at ever odd doors.”

**</PARALLEL TEXT>**

The lyrical insertion hardly qualifies as proverbial speech: the subtle transformation of the formulaic couplet turns a proverb into a full emotive expression. The same strategy is again found in hunting incantations, as in the following example which deals with the hunter’s experience of strangeness facing a barren hunting ground:

Olen ouvoilla ovilla,  
veräjillä vierövillä!  
Omp' on outo ollakšeni,  
katšuokšeni kamala  
näillä ouvoilla ovilla,  
veräjillä vierahilla!  
(SKVR I<sub>4</sub> 1243)

**<PARALLEL TEXT>**

I am at alien doors,  
on rolling gateways!  
I find it odd to be,  
dreary to look about  
at these odd doors,  
strange gateways.

**</PARALLEL TEXT>**

The context-specific meanings vary, but in the two cases above, instead of formulaic variation, the experience could also have been expressed in the basic form of the proverb proper. This strategy would have toned the meaning by stressing the general, shared, and typical quality of the experience (see also DuBois 1996: 243). The collocation of the words ‘strange’ and ‘odd’ with the spatial entities attached to them activates a common understanding, rooted in the knowledge of all the possible contexts of use known by the singer and the audience – like the meaning of formulae in oral poetry (Foley 1991: 6–8; Lord 1960: 148, 65, 94). The examples illustrate the contextualization of formulaic proverbial phrases to fulfill diverse expressive functions and to fit in diverse syntactic surroundings, stretching from the generalized statement

of the basic proverb proper to first-person meditations that rely upon formulaic variations of the proverb. Their contextualization into spoken language was equally flexible, as can be seen in the singer Anni Lehtonen's nostalgic portrayal of evenings "in strange lands", revealing the typical contexts of the use of these expressions: "This is what they always say, those who have been on strange lands. And me too, I have uttered them to those who have asked." (SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)9594. 1915.) The allure and efficacy of the formula is socially grounded. The experience of being far away from home, "at odd doors" was a typical state of mind in Viena, where the available means of livelihood demanded constant traveling (Tarkka 2013a: 405–412).

### **Representing Proverb Performances**

The couplets making up proverbs proper and / or proverbial expressions and phrases were thus used as formulae that could be varied upon. The most striking effect of these couplets on the system of genres was to connect everyday speech to poetic expression and heightened performances of clearly entextualized poems. In epic poetry, the same couplets fulfil different functions and demonstrate the dialogue of genres from a novel angle. Rather than generating poems and contributing to a gradual shift from one genre to another, the embedded proverbs infiltrate and deepen the epic discourse but seldom transform it into something else. As Karin Barber (2007: 79) has noted, the act of embedding or recontextualizing a text that displays clear generic characteristics into a text representing another genre is, essentially, quoting. It foregrounds both the entextualized nature of the embedded text and its recontextualization in a new one.

From the typical paremiological point of view, the relation between proverbs and epic poetry (or narrative in general) is a historical issue: did the proverb originate in the epic or was it borrowed from the epic to spice up conversation (e.g. Hasan-Rokem 1982: 12; Kuusi 1954: 43–52; Lauhakangas 2004: 23–24; Mieder 2004: 142). Instead of the historical processes that shaped the proverb–narrative relation, I will focus on the expressive function of the proverb in the narrative (see Mieder 2004: 143–144; Lauhakangas 2009). As Galit Hasan-Rokem (1982: 11, 15–16) has argued, the meaning of the proverb within the narrative emerges intertextually, from the interaction of the interpretive frameworks of the diverse textual elements within the

narrative.<sup>4</sup> Even if the rhetorical power of the proverb resides in the gesture of quoting ancient wisdom, the actual source of the quotation (epic poetry or colloquial language) is not relevant in this context. Instead, the expressive function is determined by the proverb's position in the structure of the narrative and the creation of thematic cohesion.

In mythic-historical epic poetry, embedded proverbs typically appear in passages that evaluate the poem, and, more importantly, in the dialogues, when the epic protagonists engage in an exchange of words.<sup>5</sup> Such representations of folklore performances are a prominent instance of the dialogue of genres. As an intertextual strategy, an embedded generic quotation involves the insertion of a passage that represents a genre other than the cotext (the host text). These embedded passages broaden the point of view typical of a genre with that of another genre and enliven the monotonous narration by dramatic first-person utterances. (Tarkka 2013a: 97–98 *et passim*; forthcoming.) The protagonists are given the floor, and their speech can be perceived untouched by the narrator's moderation.

Although embedded proverbs also serve to facilitate composition in performance – as formulaic expressions and bridges to link one poem type to another – their first and foremost function is metapoetic: they describe and evaluate traditional speech acts. They comment upon the speech culture and show that ordinary mortals, the singers and their audiences, shared their practices and ideals of verbal exchange with the god-like epic heroes. Both talked with proverbs.

Like the proverbs interlaced in conversation, those embedded in narrative poems were typically framed with formulae indicating the beginning of a second order performance and, simultaneously, the transformation of the genre into a complex one. In epic poems, these frames consisted of one or several poetic lines indicating the subject speaking and the speech genre: whether the subject was speaking or uttering, singing, crying or pondering. (Tarkka 2013a: 181–182.) One of the most common frames, 'he uttered with that word', referred to any kind of speech act, but also to the performance of a proverb, often paraphrased as a 'word':

Tuoko vanha Väinämöini

---

<sup>4</sup> On the shared intertextual framework in the interpretation of proverbs in narrative, see Carnes 1988: 12, 20; Dolby-Stahl 1988: 302; Hasan-Rokem 1982: 54–68.

<sup>5</sup> 72% of proverbs and 88% of aphorisms embedded in epic poems are framed within the protagonists' dialogues – the rest appear as evaluations of coda (Tarkka 2005: table 7a).



sanovi sanalla tuolla:  
“Ei ole vanhasta varoa,  
turvoa tutisovašta.”  
(SKVR I<sub>1</sub> 365)

That old Väinämöini  
uttered with that word:  
“The old one is of no use,  
the shaking one gives no shelter.”

Although the frame primarily served the narrative by articulating the plot and the dialogue it also referred to the similar frames cueing a breakthrough into proverbial speech. Within the fictive or epic universe, framing served to mark the protagonists’ speech as emphatic and traditional, that is, as proverbial speech.

The epic hero Väinämöinen’s voice was recognized by the singers and the audiences as authoritative and proverbial: as the local rune-collector Iivo Marttinen noted, proverbs were “sharp enough to sound as though they had been spoken by Väinämöinen himself” (SKS KRA Marttinen. c)1–904, accompanying letter. 1893). The proverbial quality of the epic hero’s speech did not end in proverbs proper: his words sounded like proverbs (i.e. they were proverbial expressions) even if they were not established as proverbs proper to start with. The formulaic frames and epithets identified the speaker as ‘old and steady’, and activated the interpretative frame of proverbial wisdom.

Väinämöinen utters half of the aphorisms and proverbs embedded in epic poetry (Tarkka 2013a: 204). Inserting common proverbs into the epic and attributing them to Väinämöinen as well as extracting Väinämöinen’s proverbial lines from poetry into proverbial speech depend on the communal expertise that covers both the genres of proverbial wisdom (proverbs, aphorisms, proverbial phrases) and the epic universe with its personages. By internalizing Väinämöinen’s repertoire of wisdom and authority and by contributing to it with ever new embedded proverbs, the singers and the listeners gradually gained command of the genre of *poverkas* and learned to formulate their ideas in an aesthetically pleasing and rhetorically effective way (Tarkka 2013a: 75, 181–182).

In his performances of the *Sampo-Poem*, Ontrei Malinen embedded passages of lyric poems, magic charms, and proverbs (Tarkka forthcoming; see also Tarkka 2013a: 179–181, 406–409). The singer used these in his composition of dramatic and dense dialogues (Apo 2010: 59). The turns of attributed speech consisted of a couple of lines each, which could be filled with

proverbs. The *Sampo-Poem* tells the story of the creation of the world. Väinämöinen is shot and drifts on the water of the primal sea to offer his knee for a pochard to nest on. As the bird is brooding, Väinämöinen shakes his knee, and the eggs fall into the sea. After creating the universe out of the broken eggs, Väinämöinen drifts along, and comments upon his misery with a proverb. He is like a log of wood, sunken in the water and obstructing seafaring:

Siitä kulki Väinämöinen,  
kulki kuusissa hakona,  
petäjässä päänä pölkyn.  
Itsche nuin sanoksi virkko:  
”Haittan’ on hako vesillä,  
köyhät eellä rikkahalla.”  
Jo tunsi tuhon tulevan  
vuotena kaheksantena.  
”Jo jouun poloinen poika,  
jouun puulle pyörivälle,  
varvalle vapisevalle. [...]”  
(SKVR I<sub>1</sub> 79)

<PARALLEL TEXT>

And so Väinämöinen was cast adrift,  
drifted as a branch among spruces,  
as a log among pines.  
He himself put into words:  
“Driftwood troubles the waterways,  
the poor bother the rich.”  
Already he felt his doom’s arrival  
in the eighth year.  
“Now I will end up, poor boy,  
end up on a spinning log,  
on a shivering spray. [...]”

</PARALLEL TEXT>

The thematic association joining the plot to the general semantic content of the proverb is vague – Väinämöinen’s drifting as or like a log is linked to a notion of the harmfulness of driftwood, which serves as a metaphorical parallel line in the proverb. As Väinämöinen’s acts are constantly authorized by displays of a wise and steady mindset it, is tempting to ignore semantics and interpret the whole as a reference to his repertoire of wisdom. This would, however, leave the choice of proverb unexplained. The common proverb ‘Driftwood troubles the waterways, the poor bother the rich’ (Kuusi 1978: 48) comments on social inequality and human worth: for the rich, the poor are an obstacle to the relentless accumulation of wealth.

Instead of this general semantic meaning the proverb seems to be motivated by the image of logs and driftwood: Väinämöinen drifts like one, and after the embedded proverb, the singer returns to the image as a lyric metaphor for the experience of an ailing subject, the poor boy “on a spinning log”. Already the repetition of a simple core image serves to build thematic cohesion into the whole (see Arant 1981).

There is, however, another proverb embedded in the Sampo-poem that pits the rich against the poor. While drifting in the sea, Väinämöinen creates, with his body movements, islets and skerries that harm the sailors and the merchants:

Kussa pohjoa käveli,  
kalahauvat kaivaeli,  
kussa päätänsä kohotti,  
siihen loi luotosia.  
Siitä alko tuumoalla:  
”Köyhän miehen pää mänöö,  
rikkahan raha kuluu,”  
kun loi luotosia merehen,  
kari päitä kasvatteli.  
(SKVR I<sub>4</sub> 2134)

<PARALLEL TEXT>

Where he walked the bottom,  
he dug the fish trenches,  
where he lifted his head,  
he created skerries.  
Thus he started to ponder:  
”The poor man loses his head,  
the rich man his money,”  
'cause he created skerries in the sea,  
made the pointed rocks grow.

</PARALLEL TEXT>

Väinämöinen’s reasoning is again a common proverb in the area (e.g. SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)2601. 1911–1912). Instead of being framed as a proverb proper, the proverb is usually fit into the narrative discourse by declining it morphologically within the grammatical context: Väinämöinen creates the islets ‘for the rich man to lose his money, for the poor man to lose his head’ (e.g. SKVR I<sub>1</sub> 64: *Rikkaan rahan kulu-ksi, Köyhän miehen pään menö-ksi*) (see also Kuusi 1954: 46; Tarkka 2013b: 120, endnote. 8). Here Väinämöinen’s proverbial assessment of his own acts is spelled out with the conjunctive ‘because’ (through in the translative case

inflection *-ksi*): Väinämöinen's deeds have a causal relation to the predicament described in the proverb. Both of these maritime proverbs that are inserted in the epic relate the time of the creation of the world to social dilemmas that were acute in the here and now of the performance: an economic hazard still affects the rich, but for the poor, it is lethal. The uneven distribution of wealth originated in the beginning of time, and was thus a legitimate aspect of social reality.

Later in the poem the heroes utter more proverbs, all of which are recognizable as folklore performances by the audience of the epic. When the listener acknowledges that a traditional register (proverbial speech) mastered by himself is used by the epic heroes and gods, the fictive and mythic universe is domesticated: it gets close to perception and experience. The talk of the heroes was understandable because the audience talked similarly and used the same proverbs. Väinämöinen lent authority to all the consequent real-life proverb performances, and the performances within the epic testified Väinämöinen's wisdom. When the authority of proverbial speech was shown to have its origin in the mythic time, in the talk of gods and culture heroes, colloquial language gained a ritual dimension. It had its origin myth, and it was repeatedly legitimized in performance. In this respect, the proverb relates to songs and magic formulae, the two other Kalevala-meter genres grounding their efficacy and authority in Väinämöinen's mythic performances.

### **From Proverb to Aphoristic Poem**

Proverbs proper and proverbial phrases were not only used in conversation and epic poetry but also in lyric poetry and aphorisms. According to Matti Kuusi, this tendency is strong especially in Viena Karelia where “[t]he same clichés seem to have fit in as elements of song and speech alike” (Kuusi 1970: 302; see also Kuusi 1954: 47–49.) The Kalevala-meter aphorism is a hybrid genre, combining the elements of proverbs and proverbial expressions into longer non-narrative poems of approximately four to even twenty lines – a tentative working definition by Kuusi classifies proverbs of four or more lines as aphoristic poems (Kuusi & Timonen 1997: xxvii). In folklore collections and research, the genre has had many names reflecting its ambiguity: for example, in the authoritative edition of Kalevala-meter poems, the *Old Poems of Finnish People* (SKVR), the Viena Karelian aphorisms are called also didactic and proverb-like poems (SKVR I<sub>3</sub>). The leading scholar on Finnish-Karelian proverbs, Matti Kuusi (1963: 375–376, 381–386), also used the terms epigram and proverb-poem. In Viena, the aphorisms

or proverbial poems were designated with the same generic term as proverbs: they were called *poverkka* or *sananpolvi*.

Paulaharju recorded the following didactic aphorism in 1915. The singer Anni Lehtonen urges the listener to prepare for foreign lands:

Ota oppi otsahas,  
neuvo nenävartehes,  
kun lähet moalla vierahalla,  
uusilla asuin mailla.  
(SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)9232. 1915)

<PARALLEL TEXT>

Take the learning onto your forehead,  
the advice onto the bridge of your nose,  
when you leave for foreign lands,  
new lands to dwell in.

</PARALLEL TEXT>

Anni told that the first two lines, a couplet, was used as a proverb, and it simply meant, ‘Listen when you are being taught’ (see also Kuusi 1978: 18). It is a common element in the poem *The Hare’s Advice* in which a hare instructs her young (SKVR I<sub>2</sub>1059, 1061–1063). Cohesion is built by completing a proverb proper with a description of its context of use, thus showing one of the proverb’s relevant applications and completing the base meaning with a contextual one. Anni’s corpus includes many proverbs in which a similar specification is given in the colloquial register, simply stating how, when and where to use the proverb (e.g. SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)2525. 1911–1912). This poem is clearly a whole; the conjunctive *kun* [‘when’] ties the couplets together.

The hybrid quality of aphorisms is twofold, linking them to proverbs and to lyric poetry. Lyric poetry in the Kalevala-meter has been characterized as sung poetry using the first person singular and centering on collective and subjective emotions (Timonen 2004: 13). As the early recorders of Kalevala-meter poetry did not systematically make notes on performance style, many of the archived texts can be classified as both lyric and aphoristic. Aphorisms and lyric poems share a great deal of typical lines and stock formulae – some of these couplets are proverbs proper or proverbial phrases. However, the proverbial or aphoristic frame of interpretation and the tone differs sharply from that of lyric poetry. Aphorisms present didactic statements or commonsensical deliberations. They generalize and take distance by using the

third person singular or the passive, sometimes also the imperative. The typicalities in a culture are presented as factual or normative statements, not as described and evaluated experiences like in lyric poetry.

Tom DuBois (1996: 243–246) sees the proverbial stance, or “proverbialization” as a general tendency in Kalevala-meter lyric poetry: even the lyric offers “a collective understanding of a generalized moment rather than a depiction of any one woman’s experiences in particular.” This expressive strategy takes a distance from emotional reactions and expresses them in an approved manner. I would like to tackle proverbiality and the hybridity of the aphorism from a different angle, by stressing the dialogic potential in the use of proverbs proper and aphorisms. Combined and juxtaposed with lyric texts, they do not mute the lyric mode and experience, but converse with it and contextualize it in the values, norms and presuppositions of the culture (see Tarkka 2013a: 245–254).

In contrast to lyric poetry, proverbs and aphorisms share the frame of interpretation and mode of performance. Their distinction is one between a minor folklore genre and poetry. Stressing the intertextual quality of the system of Kalevala-meter genres nevertheless lays bare the arbitrariness of this distinction. Length – the number of poetic lines – alone does not serve to draw the line between a proverb and an aphorism. Rather, one should look at the status of the text or utterance in the flow of speech. As mentioned earlier, a proverb does not interrupt the flow of speech but accentuates it and stands out of it as a foregrounded entity separate from its discursive surroundings (Lauhakangas 2004: 18). However, as the number of lines used to express an idea increases, it becomes difficult to keep the flow of conversation intact; the entextualized nature of the utterance becomes all the more obvious. At some point, the excursion into poetic diction becomes a poem that can easily retain its meaning even outside of the context of communication. Conversation turns into a performance proper, activating all the components in the performance arena specific to the emergent genre: the breakthrough into performance turns the proverb into an aphorism. The fundamental shift into the performative alters the mode of performance: the performer takes charge of the situation, and the roles of listener and performer are, at least for a moment, culturally defined. Intonation, gestures, pauses and significant glances would ensure that the breakthrough into performance would not go unnoticed, even if we have no archival data to verify this.

On the other hand, the entextualizing quality of the performance does not unequivocally differentiate between proverb and aphoristic poem. Both had to convey an independent idea

and comply with conventions of form and style that were culturally understandable and approved of – or locally conceived of as both beautiful and precise (Perttu 1978: 187). Even a concise proverb was, by definition, a finalized and entextualized chunk of communication, albeit one that relied upon the context in order to be meaningful. In an aphorism, the elements of the poem, the proverbs and/or proverbial couplets used in its composition contextualize each other so that the meaning will be full even outside the immediate context of performance.

The difficulty of classifying poetic utterances according to distinct genres (such as poems and proverbs) originates in the practice of folklore collecting. As Iivo Marttinen, a native collector from Vuokkiniemi noted, proverbs were hard to collect because “they appeared almost naturally in conversation,” not when asked for. By recording or collecting solitary textual units instead of larger sequences of communication, the rune collector reified the poetic quality of spoken language – proverbial or not – and created a gap between art and communicative praxis. This gave birth to texts and contexts, disconnected in the records. It also cut the performance into chunks of communication that were supposed to fit into the collectors’ notions and ideals. These artificial entities are representations that incorporate the tension between oral and literary sensibilities concerning textuality and genre.

If the vernacular terminology of genres does not differentiate between aphorism, proverb proper, proverbial speech, proverbial phrase, and proverbial expression, why insist upon dissecting the vernacular category of the *poverkka* (or *sananpolvi*)? Frustrated by his own efforts, even Lönnrot (1991 [1842]: 389) dismissed the project of “separating the mass of proverbs into proverbial phrases [*sananparsit*], bends of words [*sananpolvi*], twists of words [*sananmutka*], comparisons [*vertaus*] etc.” as a “suitable job for one who has nothing else to do.” I will, however, challenge Lönnrot and argue that consideration of these vague and transient distinctions helps us acknowledge some crucial aspects of oral poetics and the nature of genres. The lack of differentiating emic terms does not automatically mean that the genres were not distinguished in performative praxis and interpretation.

### **Composition in Proverb Performance**

During the first two decades of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the Finnish ethnographer Samuli Paulaharju collected a massive folklore collection from the above-mentioned Anni Lehtonen, a woman born in Vuokkiniemi in 1866. The collection presents a remarkable case for illustrating the use of proverbs as well as the emergence of poems from serial proverb performances. In the folklore archives, most of Anni’s proverbs were classified as inauthentic, “unreliable” and

“literature-derived seconds” (Kuusi 1970: 293; Leino 1970: 249). Paulaharju had used a printed collection of proverbs (Koskimies 1906) to spur on the informant and to build a systematic overview of proverbial competence. Apart from proverbs proper, the collection contains illustrations of the ways in which poetic and proverbial phrases were used in conversation and explanations of how the performer understood them. Anni performed several variations of almost every proverb that she presented, altering their style, deviating from the poetic meter and elaborating their contents.<sup>6</sup>

In the following, I will delve into Anni’s use of formulae, couplets and proverbs in the composition of longer poetic utterances, assessing whether these serial performances are expositions of proverb wisdom, or whether they constitute poems in their own right.

In 1911, Anni performed the following string of proverbs one after the next:

Ota oppi otsahas,  
neuvo nenävarthehes.

Elä neuvo neuvottua,  
elä seppeä opeta.

Eihän ennen oppi ojahan lykkänt,  
eikä mahti moalta ajant.  
(SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)2499–2501. 1911–1912)

**<PARALLEL TEXT>**

Take the learning onto your forehead,  
the advice onto the bridge of your nose.

Don’t advise the one advised,  
don’t teach the smith.

Learning didn’t use to push one into a ditch,  
might [did] not drive one off one’s land.

---

<sup>6</sup> Matti Kuusi defended the paremiologists’ sceptical attitude towards the Lehtonen-Paulaharju collection, but noted that it is a rare document on “kalevalaic competence, a willingness for tradition-based improvisation developed into its extreme.” A 1 per cent sample of Anni’s 10 000 “proverbs” suggests that 24% of them are “certain Viena Karelian proverbs”, 32% “feel like genuine proverbs but are unknown in Viena”, and 13% are “proverb comments”. The rest include wellerisms, comparisons, situational phrases and witticisms, lyrical poems, incantations, omens, and “tradition-based improvisation”. (Kuusi 1970: 298–299). All of these text types are valid for the purposes of this analysis.



### </PARALLEL TEXT>

In terms of form – of how the couplets are stitched together and organized – the string is like any of Anni’s poems. She built poems additively out of symmetrical couplets that were used widely in the context of Kalevala-meter poetry and in Anni’s repertoire (e.g. Tarkka 2013a: 246–253). The whole is characterized by thematic cohesion that builds from couplet to couplet: it discusses the primary metapoetic theme in Karelian oral poetry, namely knowledge, also paraphrased as ‘might’ (Tarkka 2013a: 104–109, 183–194). The first couplet underlines the obligation to learn. The second tells one not to advise those who are more learned. The third claims that knowledge is both useful and traditional. The thematic movement from taking advice to giving it and lastly to evaluating it is smooth. Together, the couplets tell us more than each tells alone: they relate knowledge and knowhow to power relations and values. The argument in the dialogue between the couplets builds a hierarchical thematic structure where there seemed to be none.

Two years later, Anni elaborated the theme of knowledge further:

Ei mahti moalta kiellä,  
eikä mahti moalta aja,  
eikä oppi ojah lykkeä.

Ei mahitta moata käyvä,  
tietä käyvä tietoloitta.

Kysy mahtie moan käyneheltä,  
tietä tien kulkenehelta.

Ken moata kulkoo,  
se mahtiakin löytää.

Ei oppi ojah lykkää,  
eikä moalta aja.

Ota oppi otsahas,  
neuvo nenävarthehes.

Se on oppi ensimmäini,  
kuin vain siivosti olet,  
niin joka paikkah kelpoat.  
(SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)6380–6386. 1913)

<PARALLEL TEXT>

Might doesn't deny one's land,  
and might [does] not drive one off one's land,  
and learning doesn't push one into a ditch.

One doesn't travel the land without might,  
walk the road without knowledge.

Ask for might from those who've travelled the land  
the road from those who've roamed the road.

Who roams the land,  
will find might, too.

Learning doesn't push one into a ditch,  
nor drive one off one's land.

Take the learning onto your forehead,  
the advice onto the bridge of your nose.

This is the first lesson,  
if you just are decent,  
then you will fit anywhere.

</PARALLEL TEXT>

The series now starts with the theme of the necessity of knowledge. The alliterative association of knowledge (*tieto*) and the road (*tie*) takes the series two couplets ahead: one must ask for advice from those who have been around. The didactic exhortation that last year opened Anni's serial performance now prepares for the final move. After sketching out the meaning and essence of knowledge and the road to it, the speaker steps into the role of teacher, and performs the first lesson. Thematically, both series complement Anni's experiences as an initiate into the knowledge of a ritual specialist, the *tietäjä*.<sup>7</sup> She cited Hitora Koteroinen, an old sage who was willing to pass on his knowledge and 'might' to the keen apprentice:

Kun sie olet niin kielas lapsi, ni pane peähäs, pane muistih... Sie niitä tarvitset elöässäh, kaikki ne tuloo tarvituks [...]. *Ei oppi ojah lykköä, eikä mahti moalta aja.* Ei oppie huhuo pie, vain tietonas. Missä tuloo tarvispaikka, niin siinä on hyvä, ku itse tiijät. Kaikkie elöäs

---

<sup>7</sup> On the *tietäjä* and the *tietäjä*'s secret knowledge, see Siikala 2002: 71–120, 242–319, 335–349; Tarkka 2013: 104–118, 183–194.

tarvitsoo. Ikä on pitkä ilmanranta imehnisellä, siellä kaikkie tarvitsoo, elöjällä. (SKS KRA. Paulaharju b)22427 1922; emphasis added.)

Since you are a quick-witted child, put them into your head, into your memory... You will need them throughout your life, all of them [...]. *Learning doesn't push one into a ditch, nor does might drive one off one's land.* Learning should not be shouted about, just keep it to yourself. Whenever you're in trouble, this knowledge will help you. You will need all of it in your life. A man's lifetime is long like the edge of the sky; living will need all of it.

Unlike most proverb performances, Anni's reminiscence identifies and names the authority behind the proverb. As reported speech, the performance draws upon multiple quotations: Paulaharju quotes Anni quoting Hitora quoting proverbial wisdom and implicitly, the generations behind it. The message is clear and consonant with Anni's two series of proverbs: knowledge is a vital equipment for living, and handing it over to the next generation is a binding legacy. This metapoetic statement that legitimizes the whole poetic tradition was treated with an emphasis on the imagery of traveling, moving, and foreign lands: the itinerant way of life had its imprint on vernacular imagination.

In Anni's last cited series of proverbs, the final set of three lines functions as a coda: it intensifies the continuum of the previous lines, sums them up, and carries their idea into effect. Proverb chains such as these give alternative points of view to the ideational whole. The new cotext recontextualizes the elements, and all the couplets as well as the whole change in the process. Again, thematic associations and argumentative development of the theme in the sequence of proverbs displays textual organization, a hierarchical structure. The Bakhtinian finalization on the level of theme creates structure, or, in the words of Peter Seitel, "*compositional finalization articulates principal themes in logically expected places to maximize the effect and efficiency of performance*" (Seitel 2003: 284–286, emphasis original).

The poetic meter in both proverb sequences is lacking: only six out of 22 lines are faultless Kalevala-meter. The last element in the second series is an extreme example: it opens with a faultless line that frames the following two clauses whose classification as poetry is based solely on Paulaharju's typography, i.e, how he chose to divide the expression into 'lines of poetry' on the paper. Metrical instability does not, however, disqualify the two serial performances as poems. The inclusion of metrically faulty lines or lines lacking any meter is not uncommon in genres of Kalevala-meter poetry – this is especially true of magical charms, in which passages with different rhetorical functions use the poetic language differently. Anni Lehtonen also performed long, highly cohesive and aesthetically clear poems in which there is

no striving towards the Kalevala-meter: the formal structure of these poems is based on rigid repetition and alliteration, omitting the dictates of word stress and syllable length fundamental to the meter (see Tarkka 2013a: 254). Even in these poems the lines could easily be changed into Kalevala-meter verses: they are variations of established formulaic lines of poetry. This is the case here, too. There is a feel of conscious variation of the form, even at the expense of genre-specific ideals of finalization concerning all genres cast in the Kalevala-meter. Lastly it is worth noting the effect of the mode of enunciation on the meter (cf. Frog 2012: 54; Frog 2014). Jukka Saarinen (2013: 40) has drawn attention to the fact that, as opposed to sung poems, dictated poems “show morphological features closer to the spoken language”. This is probably the case in Kalevala-meter proverbs and aphorisms: albeit entextualized and foregrounded in conversation, they were recited in a manner reminiscent of spoken language and thus more relaxed in terms of meter.

Lastly, the line between a serial performance of proverbs and a coherent textual whole (an aphorism) can be assessed through the metapoetic commentaries collected from Anni herself. According to Anni, there were two kinds of singing and composing poems, namely ‘lining up’ (*latelominen*) and ‘ladling out’ (*lappaminen*). If a singer wants to ‘line up’ a song, she has “to know what kind of song she is singing, what about, and what is the cause that makes her sing, and with what tune.” ‘Ladling out’ was different: it was “what is done when a ball of yarn is rolled up, when it is messed up.” The hierarchy of these modes of singing and composing is clear:

Anybody can ladle out a song and make a mess. You should’t mess about with a song. The song has to be clear when you begin to sing. Don’t start singing, if you can’t do it properly. [...] A song has to have much more material than when you’re just ladling out. (SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)9605. 1915.)

As a premeditated form of composition and performance, a careful elaboration of form and content, lining up was equal to making proper poems. Lining up a song or poem was “putting a word upon a word,” and thereafter joining verbal and musical expression to form a unity. “Putting a word upon a word” refers to both composition in performance and thematic cohesion. The singer had to be familiar with the theme and a fitting tune. The whole of the song had to be figured out before starting to sing and there had to be enough substance. (Tarkka 2013a: 151–154.) In sum, lining up refers to the form of composition required to produce a finalized composition at the levels of form, content, and performance.

In the Anni Lehtonen corpus, there are undeniably serial proverb performances that fulfil the criteria of lining up. In fact, Paulaharju designated Anni's proverbs as something 'lined up' by the singer, hinting at the use of this generic term by the performer herself (SKS KRA. Paulaharju c)2458–2877. 1911). These dialogically structured poems are bound together by thematic cohesion. Argumentative combination of proverbs not only enriches their meaning by creating new thematic emphasis and contrastive points of view but also creates a hierarchical structure. (Cf. Sykäre 2011: 135, 153.) Anni's idea of 'lining up' as "putting a word upon a word" thus meant more than putting words, lines, and couplets in a sequence: elaboration on the level of content implied an emergent form.

### **The Poetics of Quotation**

Regardless of the context of performance, quoting the speech of others and talking on behalf of the common opinion is a reflexive use of language (Finnegan 2011: 159). If we wish to draw a line between the words of others and those of our own in literate culture, we are socialized into indicating this by drawing quotation marks on paper or in the air with our hands. In oral cultures, the quotation marks were drawn with different but equally apparent measures, some of which have been analysed above. If the proverb itself is considered a quotation, the proverbs embedded in epic (and other) poems are doubly quoted. They activate two frames of interpretation: the frame governing the production and reception of proverbs and the meta-poetic one enabling the projection of this frame onto the fictive or mythic universe of the epic. The proverb is set in the speech of mythic-historical personages or in dialogically structured serial proverbs to build up a theme and to challenge its culturally taken-for-granted evaluations. Proverb performances (the real life performance, the performance of the protagonist in the epic universe and its representation in the performance of the epic) are, despite their traditional authority and collective point of reference, characterized by Bakhtinian dialogism (see Mukařovský 1983 [1971]: 102; Vološinov 1990 [1929]: 138–139).

The poetics of quotation encompasses not only the dynamics of authorizing folklore by referring to the pre-existent quality of traditions and texts. It governs the processes of oral composition and memorization. The collective and shared voice of proverbs does not alienate the expressions from the performers' experiences and intentions; rather it makes them communicable and emphatic, socially resonant and authoritative. One can deny the dominant and typical interpretations of the words and thoughts one has borrowed from others, and create altogether new ones – clashing and joining them with other borrowings. In this creativity

quoting is an art of contextual improvisation (see also Lauhakangas 2004: 76–77, Hasan-Rokem 1982: 18–19, Sykäri 2011, 199).

Proverbs and serial proverbs have an effect on the whole set of communicative resources, both specialized registers and folklore genres. They enhance the coherence and cohesion among various registers by creating a channel from colloquial speech to proverbial speech and further to heightened performances of poetry, sung or spoken. At the same time, by creating semantic networks of ideas, images and motifs, they intensify the meanings conveyed in all registers and genres involved. In generic interaction, the genre-specific meanings and the base meanings of individual proverbs break and engage in a dialogue. The contextual elasticity of proverbial speech and the variability of proverbs proper as well as the tendency to build chains through parallelism enrich the dialogue of genres. On the interface of conversation and performance, proverbs grow or change into texts of another genre; with the emergence of a new genre, the performance styles change and a hierarchical structure emerges.

## REFERENCES

### Sources

- SKS KRA = Finnish Literature Society, Folklore Archive: collections by J.Fr. Cajan, Iivo Marttinen, and Samuli Paulaharju  
SKSÄ = Finnish Literature Society, Folklore Archive, sound recordings: collection by Akseli Gallen-Kallela  
SKVR I<sub>1</sub>–I<sub>4</sub> = *Suomen Kansan Vanhat Runot I<sub>1</sub>–I<sub>4</sub>. Vienan läänin runot 1908–1921*. Ed. by A. R. Niemi. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.

### Literature

- Anttonen, Pertti J. 1994. Ethnopoetic Analysis and Finnish Oral Verse. In Anna-Leena Siikala & Sinikka Vakimo (eds.) *Songs beyond the Kalevala. Transformations of Oral Poetry*. Studia Fennica Folkloristica 2. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 113–137.  
Anttonen, Pertti 2004. Kalevala etnopoettisesta näkökulmasta. In Anna-Leena Siikala, Lauri Harvilahti & Senni Timonen (eds.) *Kalevala ja laulettu runo*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 375–394.  
Apo, Satu 2010. Ontrei Malinen ja Elias Lönnrot sammon ryöstön kertojina. In Seppo Knuuttila, Ulla Piela & Lotte Tarkka (eds.) *Kalevalamittaisen runon tulkintoja*. Kalevalaseuran vuosikirja 89. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 54–66.  
Arant, Patricia 1981. The Intricate Web. Thematic Cohesion in Russian Oral Traditional Verse Narrative. In John Miles Foley (ed.) *Oral Traditional Literature. A Festschrift for Albert Bates Lord*. Columbus: Slavica Publishers. Pp. 123–141.  
Bakhtin, Mikhail 1986. The Problem of Speech Genres. In Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist (eds.) *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Translated by Vern W. McGee. Austin: University of Texas Press. Pp. 60–102.  
Barber, Karin 2007. *The Anthropology of Texts, Persons and Publics. Oral and written culture in Africa and beyond*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

- Barthes, Roland 1982 [1971]. From Work to Text. In Stephen Heath (ed.) *Image – Music – Text*. Translated by Stephen Heath. London: Fontana. Pp. 155–164.
- Bauman, Richard 2004. *A World of Others' Words. Cross-Cultural Perspectives on Intertextuality*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing.
- Bauman, Richard & Briggs, Charles L. 1990. Poetics and Performance as Critical Perspectives on Language and Social Life. *Annual Review of Anthropology* 19: 59–88.
- Briggs, Charles L. 1988. *Competence in Performance. The Creativity of Tradition in Mexican Verbal Art*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Briggs, Charles L. & Bauman, Richard 1992. Genre, Intertextuality, and Social Power. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 2: 131–172.
- Carnes, Pack 1988. Introduction. In Pack Carnes (ed.) *Proverbia in Fabula. Essays on the Relationship of the Proverb and the Fable*. Bern: Peter Lang. Pp. 11–36.
- Dolby-Stahl, Sandra 1988. Sour Grapes: Fable, Proverb, unripe Fruit. In Pack Carnes (ed.) *Proverbia in Fabula. Essays on the Relationship of the Proverb and the Fable*. Bern: Peter Lang. Pp. 295–309.
- Domínguez Barajas, Elías 2010. *The Function of Proverbs in Discourse: The Case of a Mexican Transnational Social Network*. Contributions to the Sociology of Language 98. Berlin & New York: De Gruyter Mouton.
- DuBois, Thomas 1996. Native Hermeneutics. Traditional Means of Interpreting Lyric Songs in Northern Europe. *Journal of American Folklore* 109 (433): 235–266.
- Dundes, Alan 1981 [1975]. On the Structure of the Proverb. In Wolfgang Mieder & Alan Dundes (eds.) *The Wisdom of Many. Essays on the Proverb*. New York & London: Garland Publishing Inc. Pp. 43–64.
- Finnegan, Ruth 2011. *Why Do We Quote? The Culture and History of Quotation*. Cambridge: Open Book Publishers.
- Foley, John Miles 1991. *Immanent Art. From Structure to Meaning in Traditional Oral Epic*. Bloomington & Indianapolis: Indiana University Press.
- Frog 2012. On the Case of *Vambarljóð* II: Register and Mode from Skaldic Verse to *sagnakvæði*. *RMN Newsletter* 5: 49–61.
- Frog 2014 (forthcoming). Register Theory and Oral Poetry. In Asif Agha & Frog (eds.) *Registers of Communication*. Studia Fennica Linguistica. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society.
- Hanks, William F. 1987. Discourse Genres in a Theory of Practice. *American Ethnologist* 14: 668–692.
- Harvilahti, Lauri 1992. The Production of Finnish Epic Poetry. Fixed Wholes or Creative Compositions? *Oral Tradition* 7 (1): 87–101.
- Harvilahti, Lauri 2004. Vakiojaksot ja muuntelu kalevalaisessa epiikassa. In Anna-Leena Siikala, Lauri Harvilahti & Senni Timonen (eds.) *Kalevala ja laulettu runo*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 194–214.
- Hasan-Rokem, Galit 1982. *Proverbs in Israeli Folk Narratives: A Structural Semantic Analysis*. FF Communications 232. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Koskimies, A. V. 1906. *Kokoelma Suomen kansan sananlaskuja*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Krikmann, Arvo 1974. *On Denotative Indefiniteness of Proverbs. Remarks on Proverb Semantics I*. Tallinn: Academy of sciences of the Estonian SSR.
- Kuusi, Matti 1954. *Sananlaskut ja puheenparret*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Kuusi, Matti 1963. Keskiajan kalevalainen runous. Matti Kuusi (ed.) *Kirjoittamaton kirjallisuus. Suomen kirjallisuus I*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura & Otava. Pp. 273–397.

- Kuusi, Matti 1970. Anni Lehtosen runousoppi. With an abstract in German. *Virittäjä* 74: 293–303.
- Kuusi, Matti 1978. *Suomalaista, karjalaista vai savokarjalaista? Vienan ja Pohjois-Aunuksen sananlaskut ja Kalevalan runojen alkuperäkiista*. Suomi 122: 2. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Kuusi, Matti, Bosley, Keith & Branch, Michael 1977. Introduction. In Matti Kuusi, Keith Bosley & Michael Branch (eds.) *Finnish Folk Poetry. Epic. An Anthology in Finnish and English*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 21–77.
- Kuusi, Matti & Timonen, Senni 1997. Alkusanat. In Matti Kuusi & Senni Timonen (eds.) *Suomen Kansan Vanhat Runot XV*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. xxv–xl.
- Lauhakangas, Outi 2004. *Puheesta ihminen tunnetaan. Sananlaskujen funktiot sosiaalisessa vuorovaikutuksessa*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Lauhakangas, Outi 2009. From Old Folk Poetry to Discussion in Internet. In Rui Soares & Outi Lauhakangas (eds.) *2° Colóquio Interdisciplinar sobre Provérbios. Actas ICP08 Proceedings*. Tavira: Tipografia Tavirense.
- Leino, Pentti 1970. Wellerismin leviäminen Karjalaan. In *Kalevalaseuran vuosikirja* 50: 245–263.
- Leino, Pentti 1994. The Kalevala Metre and its Development. In Anna-Leena Siikala & Sinikka Vakimo (eds.) *Songs beyond the Kalevala. Transformations of Oral Poetry*. Studia Fennica Folkloristica 2. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp.56–74.
- Lord, Albert B. 1960. *The Singer of Tales*. Harvard Studies in Comparative Literature 24. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press.
- Lord, Albert 1987. The *Kalevala*, the South Slavic Epics and Homer. In Bo Almqvist, Séamas Ó Catháin & Pádraig Ó Héalaí (eds.) *The Heroic Process. Form, Function and Fantasy in Folk Epic*. Dublin: The Glendale Press. Pp. 293–324.
- Lönnrot, Elias 1902. *Elias Lönnrotin matkat I osa*. Edited by A. R. Niemi. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Lönnrot, Elias 1985 [1840]. *Kanteletar elikkä Suomen kansan vanhoja lauluja ja virsiä*. 15th edition. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Lönnrot, Elias 1991 [1842]. Suomen Kansan Sananlaskuja. In Raija Majamaa (ed.) *Elias Lönnrotin valitut teokset 3. Kirjoitelmia ja lausumia*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 389–390.
- Mieder, Wolfgang 2004. *Proverbs. A Handbook*. Westport & London: Greenwood Press.
- Mukařovský, Jan 1983 [1971]. Selected Passages from Mukařovský. In Joyce Penfield, *Communicating with Quotes. The Igbo Case*. Westport, Connecticut & London: Greenwood Press.
- Penfield, Joyce 1983. *Communicating with Quotes. The Igbo Case*. Westport, Connecticut & London: Greenwood Press.
- Perttu, Pekka 1978. *Väinämöisen venehen jälki*. Petroskoi: Karjala-kustantamo.
- Porthan, Henric Gabriel 1983 [1766–1788]. *Suomalaisesta runoudesta*. Translated by Iiro Kajanto. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Saarinen, Jukka 1991. Miihkali Perttusen Päivölän virsi. In Pekka Laaksonen & Sirkka-Liisa Mettomäki (eds.) *Kolme on kovaa sanaa*. Kalevalaseuran Vuosikirja 71. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Saarinen, Jukka 2013. Behind the Text. Reconstructing the Voice of a Singer. In Karina Lukin & Sakari Katajamäki (eds.) *Limited Sources, Boundless Possibilities. Textual Scholarship and the Challenges of Oral and Written Texts*. RMN Newsletter 7: 34–43. [online]



- [http://www.helsinki.fi/folkloristiikka/English/RMN/RMN\\_7\\_Dec\\_2013\\_Limited\\_Sources\\_Boundless\\_Possibilities.pdf](http://www.helsinki.fi/folkloristiikka/English/RMN/RMN_7_Dec_2013_Limited_Sources_Boundless_Possibilities.pdf)
- Seitel, Peter 1999. *The Powers of Genre. Interpreting Haya Oral Literature*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Seitel, Peter 2003. Theorizing Genres. Interpreting Works. *New Literary History* 34 (2): 275–297.
- Shuman, Amy & Hasan-Rokem, Galit 2012. The Poetics of Folklore. In Regina Bendix & Galit Hasan-Rokem (eds.) *A Companion to Folklore*. Malden: Wiley-Blackwell. Pp. 55–74.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena 2002. *Mythic Images and Shamanism. A Perspective on Kalevala Poetry*. FF Communications 280. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Sykäri, Venla 2011. *Words as Events. Cretan Mantinades in Performance and Composition*. Studia Fennica Folkloristica 18. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Tarkka, Lotte 2005. Rajarahvaan laulu. Tutkimus Vuokkiniemen kalevalamittaisesta runokulttuurista 1821–1921. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Tarkka, Lotte 2010. Lajisiirtymiä kalevalamittaisessa runossa. Kuivajärven Moarien tapaus. In Seppo Knuuttila, Ulla Piela & Lotte Tarkka (eds.) *Kalevalamittaisen runon tulkintoja*. Kalevalaseuran vuosikirja 89. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 13–34.
- Tarkka, Lotte 2013a. *Songs of the Border People. Genre, Reflexivity, and Performance in Karelian Oral Poetry*. FF communication 305. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Tarkka, Lotte 2013b. Sanan polvia. Lainaamisen poetiikka kalevalamittaisessa runossa. In Tuomas Hovi et al. (eds.) *Viisas matkassa, vara laukussa. Näkökulmia kansanperinteen tutkimukseen*. Turun yliopisto, Folkloristiikan julkaisuja 3. Turku: Turun yliopisto. Pp. 97–129.
- Tarkka, Lotte (forthcoming). *The Field of Song and the Four-Legged Horse. On the Dialogue of Genres in Kalevala-Meter Poetry*. In David Elmer & Peter McMurray (eds.) *Singers and Tales in the 21st Century*. Publications of the Milman Parry Collection of Oral Literature 3. Cambridge, Mass.: Milman Parry Collection of Oral Literature & Harvard University Press.
- Taylor, Archer 1962. *The Proverb and an Index to The Proverb*. Hatboro, Penn.: Folklore Associates.
- Timonen, Senni 2004. *Minä, tila, tunne. Näkökulmia kalevalamittaiseen kansanlyriikkaan*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Vološinov, Valentin 1990 [1929]. *Kielen dialogisuus. Marxismi ja kielifilosofia*. Trans. Tapani Laine. Tampere: Vastapaino.

## **PART III:**

# **The Politics of Meaning-Making**

# Genre and Ideology<sup>1</sup>

## Ray Cashman

Since the early days of folklore studies, genre has been a core but slippery concept demanding revisions and refinements to serve folklorists's needs in research, in defining the discipline, and in dialogue with practitioners of allied fields of study (Bauman 2006; Ben-Amos 1976; Harris-Lopez 2003). Four decades ago, during the build up to the New Perspectives moment in American folklore studies (see Parédes and Bauman 1972), a significant and still resonant shift in thinking reanimated deliberations on the nature of genre. The story of this shift may be familiar, but it is worth rehearsing to pinpoint a line of inquiry that deserves further exploration in the ongoing discussion, namely the relationship between genre and ideology,<sup>2</sup> a relationship relevant to investigations of folklore and worldview.

Before the late 1960s folklorists conceived of genres as typological categories useful in the project of classifying a wide range of verbal folklore texts and repertoires. Following the rise of performance studies and productive exchange with sociolinguistics and linguistic anthropology, however, the concept of genre was redrafted to offer perspectives on language practices as they vary from one cultural group to the next. Performance-oriented scholars eventually reconceived genres, in Richard Bauman's words, as "conventionalized, orienting frameworks for the production and reception of discourse" (2004: 3; cf. Bauman 1992: 53). Bauman continues, "More specifically a genre is a speech style oriented to the production and reception of a particular kind of text" (2004: 3–4).

At first performance-oriented folklorists shifted attention from the typical thematic domains and defining elements of different genres to the typical form-function-meaning

---

<sup>1</sup> An earlier version of this chapter was published in *Midwestern Folklore* vol. 33, no. 1 (2007), pp. 13–27. I appreciate the helpful recommendations of my anonymous reviewers for this volume.

<sup>2</sup> Here I understand ideology to be a constellation of both conscious and unconscious ideas about how ones social world works or should work; ideology can be understood as a subset of worldview that is most often implicated in politics at the local to global and micro to macro levels. As I argue below, ideology can be shaped, perhaps even prefigured by everyday practices and expressive conventions. I am not taking a Marxian tack where ideology is understood as institutionalized dogma, a superstructure of society that advances ruling-class interests, as in Michel Vovelle's scheme (1990). What I refer to as ideology is something like what Vovelle refers to as "mentality," which he takes to be "attitudes, forms of behavior and unconscious collective representations" that arise from experience living in a given habitus (1990: 5). But I part company with him in identifying mentality only with subaltern classes, and I do not credit the "powerful inertia of mental structures" with the construction of non-elite mentalities out of old or dead ideologies (1990: 5). As I am using the term, everyone has ideology (or indeed multiple overlapping, even potentially contradictory ideologies), and through an investigation of genre the rest of this chapter considers how ideology might emerge or take shape.

interrelationships of different genres. Being especially attentive to the situational contexts of verbal performance, performance-oriented folklorists began to investigate the potential social uses of genres as communicative resources. Paralleling J. L. Austin's formulation that people "do things with words" (1997 [1962]), we have recognized that people do things with genres, accomplishing a range of different tasks through different genres. As Peter Seitel recently observed, any given speech genre is "a collective memory for how to do important, recurring things with language" (1999: 15). From this perspective, different genres provide rhetorical resources for accomplishing different forms of social work—such as, healing, conferring status, or entertaining. Genres, then, comprise a large part of the rhetorical resources Kenneth Burke refers to as "equipment for living" (1973 [1941]).

This shift in thinking about genre applies to both verbal and nonverbal texts, as we shall see. The terms 'text,' 'genre,' 'performance,' and 'discourse' are not bound to language but extend to any system of signification—food, dress, music, bodily movement, and so on. In this vein, Dell Hymes observed: "In short, any recurring activity of life may become an occasion of structured expectation of the sort which in its 'what' we can identify as 'genre' and in its 'how' as stylized, expressive performance" (1975: 351).

From these new perspectives on genre emerged one line of inquiry that has been announced but less often explored ethnographically: the claim that generic form and ideology are inextricably linked. The proposition is that genres not only accomplish different social tasks; they also accommodate and perhaps inculcate different ideological positions. Along these lines, Bauman has more recently elaborated on his earlier definitions to characterize genre as "a routinized vehicle for encoding and expressing particular orders of knowledge and experience" and "certain orientations to the world" (2004: 6). A given genre, then, may serve "the expressive enactment of subjectivity," and different genres "implicate different subject positions and formations" (2004: 6).

Here, I wish to develop and extend this proposition about the integration of genre and ideology. Along the way we should consider whether genre is not only a "form-shaping ideology" (Moreson and Emerson 1990: 282) but also an ideology-shaping form. In order to engage this question, I will demonstrate how different genres of verbal and non-verbal folklore popular in Northern Ireland implicate, encode, and express different orientations toward the conceptions of community, belonging, and identity.

In particular, I will investigate the local character anecdote as a verbal genre that may not only express but also instill explicitly non-sectarian ideology. Commonly told in mixed Catholic-Protestant company at wakes and ceilis (nighttime visits among neighbors), local character anecdotes reckon belonging in terms of local identity and affiliations shared by Catholic and Protestant members of the same social networks, despite their religious, ethnic, and political differences. Local character anecdotes, then, serve as a rhetorical resource for imagining and enacting local community.

This non-sectarian ideology stands in contrast to and potentially undermines the sectarian worldview replicated by other genres such as political ballads, street murals, and commemorative parades. Unlike local character anecdotes, these other genres are exploited in segregated social contexts, and they serve to cast Catholic vs. Protestant sectarian identities as mutually exclusive, natural, and inevitable.<sup>3</sup>

My overall argument here is that the formal features, conventions, and exigencies of these different genres drive at and encode opposing sectarian vs. non-sectarian ideological positions. These two orientations to the world may be characterized in Mikhail Bakhtin's terms as monologic vs. dialogic, and the prospect that these monologic sectarian vs. dialogic non-sectarian orientations are genre-driven suggests that folklore not only reflects but also has a hand in shaping social reality. While this does not deny Franz Boas's suggestion that folklore may serve as a mirror to culture (1970 [1916]), my argument here is more in line with Bronislaw Malinowski's early contentions that both custom and language are forms of social action and that, by extension, folklore enacts rather than merely reflects culture (1959 [1923]).

### **Form and Ideology: The Twelfth Parade**

Before investigating local character anecdotes, I want to establish proper context and contrast by investigating first a sectarian genre. The annual commemorative parade, a genre employed by both Catholic-only and Protestant-only voluntary organizations, offers rich material. For

---

<sup>3</sup> The examples of storytelling and parading discussed here are drawn from extensive participant-observation fieldwork in Counties Fermanagh, Donegal, and particularly Tyrone, from August 1998 to August 1999 and during shorter stays in 200, 2002, 2003, 2006, and 2007. A longer account of how I came to do fieldwork along the Northern Ireland's western border can be found in the Preface and first chapter of my *Storytelling on the Northern Irish Border: Characters and Community* (2008). The second chapter offers additional historical and socio-economic context for this part of Ireland.

the sake of specificity I will focus on one particular parade celebrated by Protestants: the Twelfth of July parade, also known simply as the Twelfth.<sup>4</sup>

Organized each year by the Loyal Orange Order, Twelfth parades are held annually in eighteen fixed and rotating locations in parts of the Republic of Ireland but mostly in Northern Ireland or Ulster, as Protestants refer to it. These parades commemorate the Battle of the Boyne where in 1690 James II was defeated by William of Orange, later crowned William III, also known affectionately by Ulster Protestants as King Billy. Ending an English civil war on Irish soil, this battle also guaranteed local Protestant dominance in a predominately Catholic Ireland that would remain under British control for centuries to come. Today Twelfth parades are yearly celebrations of Ulster Protestant unity and a collective reaffirmation of loyalty to Britain. In fact, the Twelfth serves as the single most important public display event in the ongoing process of expressing, maintaining, and negotiating Ulster Protestant collective identity and memory. I should briefly describe important formal features and characteristics of the parade as ritual before returning to the issue of genre.

---

<sup>4</sup> There is an extensive literature on Northern Irish Protestant and Catholic commemorative parades. For more detailed description and analysis of the Twelfth in particular, I highly recommend Bryan 2000a and 2000b, Jarman 1997, Santino 2001, and Walker 1996.



**Image 1. Orangemen at the Twelfth, Castleberg, County Tyrone.**

Any given Twelfth parade is made up of several local lodges of the Orange Order who march a circuit through a given town or city. One lodge after another marches, and each lodge musters its members in the same order. In front march the lodge officers, and behind them come the standard bearers carrying the lodge's painted silk banner. These banners tend to depict scenes from Ulster Protestant political history (such as William of Orange at the Boyne), scenes from wider Protestant religious history (such as Martin Luther posting his ninety-five theses in

Wittenberg), or depictions of Old Testament events that allegorically cast Catholics as Philistines and Canaanites, Protestants as God's chosen people, and Ulster as the promised land. After the standard bearers, come the rest of the lodge members in two parallel lines, and after them comes a band that the lodge has sponsored. The band, dressed in military-style uniforms, play martial music usually on fifes or bagpipes and drums. Directly after the band march the officers of the next Orange lodge. The parade, then, continues with one lodge and band after another until the circuit is complete.

If for Ulster Protestants the Twelfth reasserts collective identity, the Twelfth may also serve for our purposes as an example of a complex genre. While participants may understand the parade to be a single genre of ritual or festivity, it involves multiple expressive genres and multiple, simultaneous channels of communication. Constituent expressive elements include religious oratory and symbolic architecture (which I have not discussed here); militaristic music, costumes, and marching; and a plethora of allegorical, visual symbols depicting mytho-historical heroes and events. Generic layering and blending yields what Bakhtin has called a complex or secondary genre, a genre that "absorb[s] and digest[s] various primary (simple) genres" (1986: 62). This hybrid, complex genre becomes something greater than the sum of its parts.

I will not delineate here the effects of all the concurrent formal features of this complex genre, but a few observations about certain integrations of form and ideology should help. Active, habitual, bodily participation in the parade effectively encodes sectarian ideology in the individual. While participation integrates the individual into the larger social body, physically and imaginatively, exclusion of Catholics helps define the parameters of that body, dividing the world along binary, sectarian lines. In addition to inclusion and exclusion, repetition is key to the power of the parade as ritual. Lodge after lodge, band after band, the repetition of sound, symbol, and step, helps create, "a sense of collective identity where before there was only a collection of individuals" (Jarman 1997: 10). In addition to repetition in the internal structure of the parade, annual repetition of the parade enhances the impression that both the ritual and the community imagined through the ritual have remained the same since time immemorial. Repetition of form grants a sense of belonging, a sense of order, and a sense of continuity between the individual and the group, and between the group and its past. Having said that, the parade does more than imply some vague continuity with past events: it explicitly links if not collapses past, present, and future (cf. Jarman 1997: 9).



For example, as the banners pass the viewer, each scene depicts an episode that evokes a longer narrative. Yet scene after scene—evoked narrative after evoked narrative—come in no particular chronological or syntagmatic order. The parade, then, offers a paratactic narrative—a narrative in which episodes are relatively complete in themselves, and in which there is no strong sequential thrust between one episode and the next. One effect of this generic form is that, as the episodes accrete, they are appreciated as thematically unified, equivalent in connotation. One after the other, the Old Testament Battle for Jericho, King Billy's triumph at the Boyne, and the Great War's devastating Battle of the Somme, all connect in the march of struggle and sacrifice for King, Country, and Creed. Monarchs, martyrs, and ministers—people from very different eras, with very different agendas—all are appropriated as mouthpieces for the quintessential unionist doctrine: Not an Inch, No Surrender. While each banner may be limited in its potential metaphoric and metonymic meanings, the images dissolve into a larger whole with constant variations on the themes of resistance, sacrifice, victory, and faith, endlessly reiterated and conflated (cf. Jarman 1997: 17). So, by virtue of the genre of expression, Ulster Protestant identity and a sectarian orientation to the world come to seem natural, timeless, inevitable.



**Image 2. “No Surrender,” a drummer for a paramilitary-linked band, Castleberg.**

In terms of form, function, and meaning, the Twelfth Parade is a genre Bakhtin would characterize as markedly monologic. For Bakhtin, monologism is a reduction of manifold voices, orientations, and perspectives to a single vision of reality, and monologic genres include those that instill ideologies of binary opposition—Marxist or Hegelian dialectics, for example. More to the point, the binary sectarianism—maintained by the Twelfth and other genres that both establish and depend on a division between Catholic and Protestant—is inherently a monologic ideology.

### **Form and Ideology: Local Character Anecdotes**

With this perspective on the Twelfth as genre/ideology in mind, I want to turn now to the local character anecdote. This second genre is just as common in the north of Ireland, but it is associated more with informal social situations all year round, especially wakes and ceilis. Briefly put, local character anecdotes are short, usually humorous biographical sketches about

noteworthy and often eccentric members of a given community, referred to locally as ‘characters’.<sup>5</sup>

The following, for example, is a local character anecdote told by Billy McGrath from the parish of Aghyaran, Co. Tyrone:

This is a true story. We were working down in Killybegs, 1973, and the fellah working along with me was the name of Joe Byrne, great working man, wild hard worker.

And, eh, he met his wife about England. And he came home and they settled down in Ardara. . .with his sister-in-law. She was the owner of the farm apparently.

They used to come into Killybegs every Friday evening to do their shopping, and Joe would have been working till going home, you see. But Joe was a great man to go to the pub on a Saturday evening for a drink—that was the only evening that he went out.

We were in with him, anyway—whole load of us boys from Aghyaran.

And, eh, the sister-in-law, she came in, anyway, this evening, and she says—she had a wee bit of a roast—she says, “Joe Byrne, are you going home?”

“Aye,” he says, “I’ll be out in a minute. Go you on and sit down, I’ll be out in a minute.”

Minute passed.

Five minutes passed.

Half an hour passed.

She came in again.

“Joe Byrne,” she says, “We’re not waiting no longer on you.”

He says, “I’ll be out in one minute.”

---

<sup>5</sup> Folkloristic investigation of local character anecdotes was perhaps slow in coming but has grown considerably over the last three decades. Benjamin Botkin (1949) and Laurits Bødker (1965) provide brief encyclopedic references, demonstrating folklorists’ recognition of anecdotes in the mid twentieth century, but Archer Taylor correctly characterizes the state of folkloristic research into anecdotes up to 1970 in the title and argument of his “The Anecdote: A Neglected Genre.” A few years later, Richard Dorson defined the anecdote as a comic type of personal legend and compiled a bibliography of sources for American anecdotes of local characters (1972). Ronald Baker (1982: 11–23) and Jan Brunvand (1986: 173–76) adopted similar understandings of the anecdote as a form of personal legend focusing on locally known figures. Sandra Stahl (now Dolby) refined folklorists’ thinking on anecdotes by emphasizing their local orientation and their focus on the issue of character, hence her label “local character anecdote” rather than simply “anecdote” (1975). Later exemplary ethnographic investigations of the forms and functions of local character anecdotes include Mullen 1988, Peck 1992, and Tye 1988. Henry Glassie’s investigations of exploits and bids in County Fermanagh (1982, 2005) cover generic and cultural territory similar to that discussed here. Finally, Richard Bauman’s treatment of West Texas anecdotes is quite helpful in extending investigation beyond generic definition to the formal features and rhetorical devices common in anecdotes and their efficacy in storytelling contexts (1986: 54–77).

He had a wee drop of whiskey in the glass, and he put it up to his head. And the sister-in-law says to him, “You know this, Joe Byrne,” she says, “If I was married to you I would give you poison.”

And he put up the glass again, put it down, and he looked at her. “You know this, Susan, if I was married to you I would take it.”

This particular example illustrates well the feeling and rhythm of most anecdotes as they are told in Aghyaran. This example also reminds us that the exigencies of this genre preexist the actual individuals who are molded through narrative to fit already meaningful patterns and tropes. Note that the situation faced and the words uttered by Joe Byrne have also been attached in the wider world to Samuel Johnson, George Bernard Shaw, and Winston Churchill, among others (Barrick 1976).

Billy McGrath’s anecdote about Joe Byrne does not seem at first to have a direct bearing on Catholic vs. Protestant identity, but it does play a part in a much larger process of establishing and maintaining a sense of shared local identity in the parish of Aghyaran, countering folklore forms that promote binary, sectarian ideology. In the past, I have argued that local character anecdotes reflect a non-sectarian ideology by reckoning belonging and identity in local terms shared by Catholics and Protestants (Cashman 2006, 2008). I have supported this claim in two ways—first, by investigating the typical thematic contents of a large body of anecdotes and, second, by investigating how swapping anecdotes plays a role in the performance of hospitality and sociability between Catholics and Protestants interacting in mixed company. I should briefly summarize this argument before demonstrating how it may be expanded in light of the proposition that generic form helps shape ideology.

Looking only to anecdote contents and performance contexts, I have found that in the parish of Aghyaran a body of over one hundred often repeated local character anecdotes serves as a community study initiated by locals, long before any ethnographer arrived on the scene. It is important to note that these “stories people tell themselves about themselves”—as Clifford Geertz would characterize them (1973)—are most often told at sociable occasions that draw together neighborly networks of both Catholics and Protestants, rather than social networks based on sectarian affiliation alone.

Telling anecdotes in these contexts either begins or intensifies a transformation. Through anecdotes, over time, storytellers turn actual individuals into exemplars of certain, recurring character types, such as the old-fashioned, rough-living bachelor or the nouveau riche capitalist

drone. These recurring character types manifest certain dispositions and ideological stances that narrators and audiences find worthy of frequent contemplation. Moreover, these recurring character types delineate a range of potential personal identities considered by Catholics and Protestants alike as specific to, or at least distinctive of, their local community. These anecdotes and their recurring character types, then, serve as the building blocks for imagining local identity.

To be clear, though, anecdotes in Aghyaran do not appeal to a local identity based on some dubious uniformity amongst community members. Anecdotes in Aghyaran appeal to a local identity based on several potential, interdependent personal identities—the man of words, the silent brute, the trickster, the fool, the wily smuggler, the officious bureaucrat, the good mother, the gossip, and so on. Perhaps most importantly, this vision of local identity—comprising a wide range of personal identities—is simply and productively more complicated than sectarian identity, which allows for only Catholic or Protestant as meaningful categories.

Although I stand by this argument, it accounts for only part of the larger picture. As important as considerations of content and situational context are, attention to the formal features of the anecdote as a genre will expand my earlier claim that anecdotes reflect a non-sectarian ideology by suggesting that this genre may in fact inculcate this ideology. As a more dialogic genre than the parade, the local character anecdote encourages different, more open-ended definitions of identity, belonging, and community. In particular, the formal features of anecdotes encourage a contrarian orientation toward the world of monologic certitudes and existing hierarchies of value and power—from normative standards for respectable behavior to the authority of the centralized state to the divisive reiterations of sectarian bigotry.

In order to suggest how this genre encourages in a speech community the willingness to challenge a great deal of received wisdom, we should review typical formal features of the genre. Most anecdotes focus on the interaction of just two people, usually during a single episode. Dialogue often structures anecdotes, so reported and especially quoted speech is a common formal feature. In fact, most anecdotes conclude with a character's quotable remark, which serves as a punch line. If we were primarily interested in characterizing the anecdote as a dialogic rather than monologic genre we might concentrate on reported speech as a primary vehicle for heteroglossia and intertextuality (cf. Hanks 1987; Lucy 1993). Here, however, I want to emphasize the inherently subversive and reflexive formal feature of the punch line.

Consider another local character anecdote from Aghyaran as told by Danny Gallen. This anecdote depicts the confrontation between a middle-aged local farmer, Willie Dolan, and a younger, anonymous British soldier—an insider and an outsider—brought together at an army checkpoint. The initial conflict arises when the soldier notices that missing from the farmer’s windshield is the round sticker that verifies that proper taxes have been paid. Understand as basic context that being interrogated at a checkpoint can be rather intimidating. As one soldier or policeman handles the interrogation and determines whether or not to search your car and your person, other soldiers or policemen have their weapons trained on you. As such verbal sparring and general cheekiness are rare. With that in mind, here is Danny’s account of Willie Dolan’s checkpoint encounter.

Willie, he had a farm and he’d have been a sort of a cattle dealer, you know. He’d have been one of them blokes who started from scratch with very little, you know, and moved on up, with smuggling and one thing and another

And he was stopped, one day, coming through the village of Killen, by the army. And, uh—he was a bloke who had a short temper anyway, you know—and he was probably held too long. I think there would have been a bit of nagging going on and probably he didn’t want to be stopped for starters.

But anyway, they asked him something about the tax on the Land Rover, and Willie said, “Oh,” he says, “this vehicle’s taxed alright,” he says, “I wouldn’t be out on the road with a vehicle not taxed or insured.”

And the soldier asked him where was the disk.

“Oh,” he says, “there’s three or four cubs about our house and some of them pulled the disk down just.”

And the soldier says, he says, [in a high-pitched Northern Irish approximation of a Cockney accent] “Where I was reared, there was three or four of us lads, and my father wouldn’t have allowed us to pull a disk down, anyway, off the windscreen.”

And Willie just looked at him.

“Well,” he says, “your father didn’t think much about you when he let you over here with a gun in your hand.”



**Image 3. X marks the border for checkpoints and air surveillance.**



**Image 4. Danny Gallen.**

Parsing this anecdote, we see that the narrative is ordered in such a way that builds up to Willie's retort. Danny, our storyteller, introduces the dramatis personae, sets the scene, and lets the story unfold in dialogue that is crucial to the outcome and point of his story. The anecdote

climaxes in reported speech: the farmer's reply that allows him to save face when he feels the soldier has crossed a line by questioning his competence as a father.

Looking to the dialogue, we find that Willie, challenged about the missing tax sticker, gives the soldier a chance to trust him as a man with commitment to responsibility: "I wouldn't be out on the road with a vehicle not taxed or insured." To that he adds an explanation for the appearance his negligence: "there's three or four cubs [boys] about our house and some of them pulled the disk down just." The soldier has a choice but refuses to treat him with empathy, man to man. Dismissing the farmer's explanation as a typical lame excuse, the soldier makes a personal attack, tapping into stereotypes of the Irish as lax and undisciplined. But Willie—as Danny conjures him—will have none of it, and he turns the attack on its head.

When the soldier says that he also grew up as one of "three or four lads," he sets up the comparison between his own father and Willie, and implicitly between himself and Willie's children. In a flash of wit, Danny's Willie Dolan uses that parallelism as an entry into counterattack, by treating the soldier as an unruly child talking back to his elder. Willie seizes the role of father and disciplinarian to assert that he cares more for his children than the soldier's father does for his. "Your father didn't think much about you when he let you over here with a gun in your hand." In effect, Willie argues that the father who wastes his energy ensuring impeccable behavior but allows his children to endanger themselves by meddling where they do not belong, has misplaced priorities. Serving as the punch line and climax of the anecdote, Willie's retort subverts the soldier's criticism, laying it back at his feet. Willie's response both dismisses the soldier's bureaucratic concerns and trivializes his authority as contingent upon merely having a weapon in his hand. Rendered a child out of his depth, the soldier is an outsider to a community that resents his intrusion for the political tensions it exacerbates.

Pushing beyond close reading to focus on formal structure, we should note how the punch line of this or any anecdote serves as a reflexive comic corrective. As Bauman observes, punch lines "loop back to reconstitute or rekey (Goffman 1974: 79–81) what has come before. In this process, the antecedent portion of the narrative, which has built up a context for the punch line, is itself recontextualized" (1986: 59). Inherently reflexive and subversive, punchlines effect an ironic, relativistic shift in our understanding of the situation previously described; punch lines appropriate what has come before to put forth an alternate perspective. As such, by virtue of their formal conventions, anecdotes, jokes, and any punchline-driven narratives are dialogic,



heteroglossic, and perhaps contrarian by nature. More specifically, by virtue of revolving around punch lines, anecdotes are bound formally and structurally to challenge assumptions, to subvert received hierarchies of power and value.

What, then, if a given speech community puts the burden for imagining local identity squarely on local character anecdotes? What if the very process of imagining local identity attracts special ideological focus because it offers a challenge to the received wisdom that sectarian identities are the only relevant collective identities? This seems to be the case in Aghyaran. Although Aghyaran is a community within a society divided by the sectarian ideology, it nonetheless regularly comes together in mixed company at recurring events where the main activity for social interaction is the exchange of funny, subversive, contrarian stories about fellow funny, subversive, and contrarian community members. Habitual participation in such events, telling such stories, has a welcome, complicating effect. At wakes and ceilis the sectarian ideology and monologic certitudes of the Twelfth become untenable.

### **Genre, Ideology, and Pascal's Wager**

Counterposing two genres common in the vernacular expressive repertoire of Northern Ireland, we have learned that Twelfth parades are agonistic, oppositional statements of differential identity (Bauman 1971) exerting a centrifugal force throughout the north of Ireland. In contrast, local character anecdotes are socially solidary, transcending sectarian lines to exert a centripetal, unifying force within self-identified local communities. Paying close attention to form, we can appreciate how the relentlessly additive, syndetic construction of the parades marks them as authoritative, monologic, sectarian. By way of contrast, the rekeying punchlines and reported speech of the local character anecdote render them open-ended, dialogic, multi-voiced.

If one's primary interest is Ireland, this exercise of delineating different ideological orientations instilled by different genres might be enough. If nothing else, the exercise offers fair warning that one cannot appreciate culture in the north by attending only to public display events. The social work accomplished through other genres in less public, more intimate communal

contexts complicates the established journalistic image of a society hopelessly mired in sectarianism.<sup>6</sup>

Moving past the specifics of this case study, however, other big-picture questions remain. For example, we may have established that genre and ideology are interconnected on some sort of metaphorical two-way street, but what if the traffic is more one-way than the other? To be clear, I am not interested in addressing some chicken and egg question about whether genre precedes and shapes ideology, or ideology precedes and shapes genre. Searching for some point of origin and asserting ideology or genre as the root cause of the other will be futile, and by now we should be used to the move of saying ‘X mediates and is mediated by Y’ or ‘X constitutes and is constituted by Y.’ (So for example, ‘text mediates and is mediated by context’ or ‘ideology constitutes and is constituted by genre.’) Yet I have to admit that the prospect that genre precedes and shapes ideology is more intriguing to me than the reverse. There may well be something to Pascal’s Wager: “Kneel first, move your lips in prayer, and you will believe.”

This quote, often attributed to Blaise Pascal, is in fact Louis Althusser’s paraphrasing (1971: 158) of Pascal’s argument set forth in *Pensées* (1995 [1660]). Bringing philosophical pragmatism to Christian apologetics, Pascal contends that believing in God is a better “bet” than not believing because the anticipated benefits of belief (most important, salvation) outweigh the arguably minimal benefits of non-belief. Pascal further implies that engaging in external ritual is a step toward internal belief. In his paraphrase, Althusser extends Pascal’s logic to articulate the argument that belief is produced through acts of declaration, that ideology is formed through practices. Performances informed and guided by the exigencies of generic form—praying, marching, storytelling—certainly qualify as the sort of external practices Pascal via Althusser credits for shaping our internal beliefs. This inversion of a common sense view that belief leads to devotional acts may offer a productive parallel in our investigation of the relationship between genre and ideology.

To explain, folklorists have understood that people accomplish different social work through different genres. For example, jokes can be particularly good for commenting on delicate

---

<sup>6</sup> For comparison see Glassie (2005: 381–385) where he challenges the usual assumed public/private dichotomy, a misleading legacy of property law, by discussing the importance of the intervening communal realm. In this realm in Northern Ireland folklore forms, such as the local character anecdotes discussed here, serve to enact community and to balance the strident statements of political and religious identity made in public performances such as the Twelfth.

topics (Oring 1992 and 2003, Smith and Saltzman 1995), supernatural legends for contemplating the nature of reality (Dégh 2001; Glassie 1982 and 2005), personal experience narratives for presentations of the self in everyday life (Goffman 1974; Stahl 1983 and 1989).<sup>7</sup> We might assume, then, that a person's desire to assert a certain pre-existing ideological stance emerges in a given situation context, then that person employs a particular genre to express that stance. In other words, we might view different genres as specialized rhetorical tools, and speakers as pragmatically-minded social actors who search through their toolkit of genres for the one communicative framework that is most appropriate to their needs in a given situational context. Perhaps this tool kit model of genres is accurate in many cases. It seems a reasonable hypothesis. I doubt, however, that anyone in Northern Ireland, or elsewhere, wakes up one day and thinks, "Begod, I'm feeling rather sectarian today... I know, let's put on a parade!"

Looking beyond the toolkit model of genres we should be asking: 'To what extent are we determined by our habitual communicative practices? To what extent do conventions for expression that pre-exist us as individuals determine our subjectivity, our orientations to the world, our ideology, perhaps even our faith or our lack of it?'

Key to answering these questions is performance-oriented analysis that is mindful of the power of genre, receptive to the significations of form and pattern. Conditioned and committed to doing such work, I have found that along the Irish border certain events invite certain genres that trigger certain ways of thinking. Note, however, I do not claim that genres determine peoples' ideologies. Parades do not make people sectarian nor do anecdotes told at wakes force people to challenge sectarianism while reckoning identity and belonging in local terms. Nevertheless, participating in either one of those recurring genre-driven events does put an individual through the motions of acting and thinking in two very different ways. By touting the power of genre, I am not looking for the return of some superorganic notion of culture, nor am I attacking the idea of individual agency. I am proposing, however, that in addition to individual agency there are extra-personal determinants of ideology including, significantly, genre.

---

<sup>7</sup> This is not to say that a given genre is suited for only one form of social work. Jokes, for example, can entertain or offend, welcome or threaten, include or exclude, challenge or confirm conventional wisdom, etc. Much depends on how a given joke is intended and received by particular individuals in a given situational context. Nevertheless, in certain circumstances the joke is better suited to the range of social work I mention than are other verbal genres such as the riddle or myth.

## Literature

- Althusser, Louis 1971. Ideology and the Ideological State Apparatuses. Notes Towards an Investigation. In B. Brewster (trans.) *Lenin and Philosophy and Other Essays*. London: New Left Books. Pp. 121–173.
- Austin, J. L. 1997 [1962]. *How to Do Things with Words*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Baker, Ronald 1982. *Hoosier Folk Legends*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Bakhtin, Mikhail 1986. *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Ed. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Trans. Vern W. McGee. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Barrick, Mac E. 1976. The Migratory Anecdote and the Folk Concept of Fame. *Mid-South Folklore* 4 (2): 39–47.
- Bauman, Richard 1971. Differential Identity and the Social Base of Folklore. In Towards New Perspectives in Folklore, special issue of *Journal of American Folklore* 84: 31–41.
- Bauman, Richard 1986. *Story, Performance, and Event. Contextual Studies of Oral Narrative*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bauman, Richard 1992. Genre. In Richard Bauman (ed.) *Folklore, Cultural Performances, and Popular Entertainments. A Communications-Centered Handbook*. New York: Oxford University Press. Pp. 50-59.
- Bauman, Richard 2004. *A World of Others' Words. Cross-Cultural Perspectives on Intertextuality*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing.
- Bauman, Richard 2006. Speech Genres in Cultural Practice. In Keith Brown (ed.) *Encyclopedia of Language and Linguistics* 11. New York: Elsevier. Pp. 745–758.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1976. Introduction. In Dan Ben-Amos (ed.) *Folklore Genres*. Austin: University of Texas Press. Pp. ix–xlv.
- Bødker, Laurits 1965. Anecdote. In Laurits Bødker (ed.) *International Dictionary of Regional European Ethnology and Folklore* 2. Copenhagen: Rosenkilde and Bagger. Pp. 26–27.
- Botkin, Benjamin 1949. Anecdote. In Maria Leach (ed.) *Standard Dictionary of Folklore, Mythology, and Legend* 1. New York: Funk and Wagnalls. P. 56.
- Boas, Franz 1970 [1916]. *Tsimshian Mythology*. New York: Johnson Reprint Corp.
- Brunvand, Jan Harold 1986. *The Study of American Folklore*. New York: W. W. Norton & Company.
- Bryan, Dominic 2000a. Drumcree and the Right to March. Orangeism, Ritual and Politics in Northern Ireland. In T.G. Fraser (ed.) *We'll Follow the Drum. The Irish Parading Tradition*. Basingbroke: Macmillan. Pp. 191–207.
- Bryan, Dominic 2000b. *Orange Parades. The Politics of Ritual, Tradition and Control*. London: Pluto Press.
- Burke, Kenneth (1973 [1941]). Literature as Equipment for Living. In *The Philosophy of Literary Form. Studies in Symbolic Action*. Berkeley: University of California Press. Pp. 293–304.
- Cashman, Ray 2006. Dying the Good Death. Wake and Funeral Customs in County Tyrone. *New Hibernia Review* 10 (2): 1–17.
- Cashman, Ray 2008. *Storytelling on the Northern Irish Border. Characters and Community*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Dégh, Linda 2001. *Legend and Belief. Dialectics of a Folklore Genre*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Dorson, Richard M. 1972. Legends and Tall Tales. In *Folklore. Selected Essays*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press. Pp. 159–76.
- Geertz, Clifford 1973. Deep Play: Notes on a Balinese Cock Fight. In *The Interpretation of Cultures. Selected Essays*. New York: Basic Books. Pp. 412–453.

- Glassie, Henry 1982. *Passing the Time in Ballymenone. Culture and History in an Ulster Community*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Glassie, Henry 2005. *The Stars of Ballymenone*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Goffman, Erving 1974. *Frame Analysis. An Essay on the Organization of Experience*. Boston: Northeastern University Press.
- Hanks, William 1989. Text and Textuality. *Annual Review of Anthropology* 18: 95–127.
- Harris-Lopez, Trudier 2003. Genre. In Burt Feintuch (ed.) *Eight Words for the Study of Expressive Culture*. Urbana: University of Illinois Press. Pp. 99–120
- Hymes, Dell. 1975. Folklore's Nature and the Sun's Myth. *Journal of American Folklore* 88 (350): 345–369.
- Jarman, Neil 1997. *Material Conflicts. Parades and Visual Displays in Northern Ireland*. New York: Berg.
- Lucy, John (ed.) 1993. *Reflexive Language. Reported Speech and Metapragmatics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Malinowski, Bronislaw 1959 [1923]. The Problem of Meaning in Primitive Languages. In C. K. Ogden and I. A. Richards (eds.) *The Meaning of Meaning*. New York: Harcourt, Brace and World. Pp. 296–336.
- Moreson, Gary Saul and Caryl Emerson 1990. *Mikhail Bakhtin: Creation of a Prosaics*. Stanford: Stanford University Press.
- Mullen, Patrick B. 1988. *I Heard the Old Fishermen Say. Folklore of the Texas Gulf Coast*. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Oring, Elliott 1992. *Jokes and Their Relations*. Lexington: University Press of Kentucky.
- Oring, Elliott 2003. *Engaging Humor*. Urbana: University of Illinois Press.
- Pascal, Blaise 1995 [1660]. *Pensées*, trans A. J. Krailsheimer. New York: Penguin Classics.
- Peck, Catherine 1992. Local Character Anecdotes Down East. *North Carolina Folklore Journal* 39 (2): 63–71.
- Paredes, Américo and Richard Bauman (eds.) 1972. *Toward New Perspectives in Folklore*. Publications of the American Folklore Society Bibliographic and Special Series 23. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Santino, Jack 2001. *Signs of War and Peace. Social Conflict and the Use of Public Symbols in Northern Ireland*. New York: Palgrave.
- Seitel, Peter 1999. *The Powers of Genre. Interpreting Haya Oral Literature*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Stahl (Dolby), Sandra 1975. The Local Character Anecdote. *Genre* 8: 283–302.
- Stahl (Dolby), Sandra 1983. The Personal Experience Story. In Richard M. Dorson and Inta Gale Carpenter (eds.) *Handbook of American Folklore*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press. Pp. 268–276.
- Stahl (Dolby), Sandra 1989. *Literary Folkloristics and the Personal Narrative*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Smith, Moira and Rachelle H. Saltzman (eds.) 1995. Arbiters of Taste: Censuring/Censoring Discourse, special issue of *Journal of Folklore Research* 32 (2).
- Taylor, Archer 1970. The Anecdote: A Neglected Genre. In Jerome Mandel and Bruce Rosenberg (eds.) *Medieval Literature and Folklore Studies*. New Brunswick: Rutgers University Press. Pp. 223–228.
- Tye, Diane 1988. *Local Characters and the Community. A Case Study of Tradition and Individual Nonconformity in the Maritimes*. PhD dissertation: Memorial University of Newfoundland.
- Vovelle, Michel 1990. *Ideologies and Mentalities*. Trans. Eamon O'Flaherty. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Walker, Brian 1996. *Dancing to History's Tune*. Belfast: The Institute of Irish Studies, Queens University.

# Conceptual Dilemma?

## Oral History Texts in the Context of Collection Campaigns in Finland

**Pauliina Latvala**

Although the roots of the American approach to oral history goes back to the recording of ‘great men’, an oral history project was initiated in 1948 by historian Allan Nevins. Oral history materials in the classical sense refer to oral testimonies that articulate the experiences of marginal groups. In Britain, the Scandinavian archival recordings of folk culture which were first initiated in the 1920s served as an encouraging example to scholars who sought to capture the voices of working-class people in the 1970s. (Thompson 1998: 167; Abrams 2010: 4.) During the last few decades, oral history practice, materials and research have broadened enormously. In Finland, oral history materials often refer to written archived collections stored in the Folklore Archives or in the National Board of Antiquities.<sup>1</sup> Despite the widespread interest in these materials, there is no consensus among Finnish folklorists (nor does there necessarily have to be) on the most apt generic term for the responses generated by the act of remembering. During the last few years, I have chosen to use the term *oral history texts* for many reasons that are connected to my research perspectives, materials and approach, as well as to the importance of methodological discussions in international oral history scholarship (see Latvala 2013a; Latvala & Laurén 2013). In fact, as can be seen in the international field of oral history, the materials can appear in the form of oral recordings, written documents or visual representations; at the core, there is always an interplay between the past and the present. Today oral history emerges as a multi-vocal, multidisciplinary and theoretically oriented discipline in its own right that is investigating various dimensions of memory, culture and history.

In this article, my objective is to explore what kind of genre “writing to an archive” is in Finland by analysing some examples from the modern collections. I examine this from two analytic perspectives on genre. The first concerns how the classification and naming of oral history materials can be connected to periods in the history of Finnish folklore research. The

---

<sup>1</sup> While British archivists have primarily conducted oral history interviews within their own communities through mass-observation (see Sheridan et al. 2000), their counterparts in Finland, as well as those in Sweden, Norway and Estonia, have organised written collection campaigns (see among others Gullestad 1986; Bohman 1986; see also Hinrikus & Kõresaar 2004a for the corresponding term in Estonia, ‘oral popular history’ = ‘*pärimuslik ajalugu*’). In Finland, there is also great interest in oral history interviews. My present study deals with the ex-MPs’ oral history interviews stored in The Archives of the Veteran MPs’ Oral History at the Library of the Parliament.

second concerns how oral history texts sent to the Folklore Archives can be studied as an independent yet multi-generic form – that is to say, made up of subgenres. For this article, I have found it congenial to consider genre in relation to the special traits that oral history texts acquire as memoirs in the context of collection campaigns. In the process of narration, the writers participating in the campaign draw upon conventions of history-telling, autobiography and folklore, a reflection of popular thought (e.g. genres as elements of linguistic habitus Hanks 1987: 681). I understand genre as not only a tool to be used by the research community but also as “a speech style oriented to the production and reception of a particular kind of text” (Bauman 2000: 84) seen as an interpretive framework from the perspective of writing. When the researcher endeavours to analyse the materials that have accumulated on his/her desk, it pays off to take note of the creative use of culture-dependent genres (e.g. Ben-Amos 1992: 23, 26), for these ultimately open new vistas onto the ways in which a narrator structures the world around him/her (e.g. Portelli 1998).

Alessandro Portelli’s oft-cited essay “Oral History as a Genre” (1998) underscores the testimonial aspect of oral history. Nonetheless, he pinpoints an essential principle about oral history data: “It tells less about events than about their meanings” (Portelli 2006 [1998]: 36). In other words, even false statements contain psychological truth and value. Oral history celebrates subjectivity, memory’s inconsistencies and expressive narratives (Abrams 2010: 18–19, 31; Portelli 2001: 5; Grele 2007). When it comes to making generic classifications and analysis, oral history materials, which are replete with numerous levels of narrative features, present the researcher with a challenging task. Naming is one way for research communities to gain a command of the nature of the data, often by comparing it to other nearby genres.

In the following, I will first summarize and contextualize a history of the ideas concerning the classification of oral history materials in written form in the Folklore Archives. During the last 50 years, there has been a substantial change in the way oral history materials have been conceptualized and valued. Even before the international expansion in oral history research reached Finland, archivists and researchers had been coming across analogous types of materials in their work and had subsequently been placing them under classification in the Folklore Archives. I will next outline the main arguments in the post-war discussion and paradigms in Finnish folklore studies, with particular reference to questions of collecting policy in the Folklore Archives and its development, and then continue to reflect on the following decades up to present day.



## Early Classification of Collection Campaign Texts in Finland

As a part of the performance-centred research, collecting individual narrators' stories by conducting fieldwork gained popularity in the 1960s and 1970s among Finnish folklorists.<sup>2</sup> The Folklore Archives primarily concentrated on collecting so-called traditional folklore (which, in accordance with the spirit of the day, was easily classified by genre, as in the case of riddles and poetry) until the 1960s, when oral history materials began attracting more interest and attention. At that time, various groups were encouraged to write responses to campaigns. New and widespread collections on the Civil War (1965–1969) and lumberjacks (1969) were organized. (See Peltonen 1996: 65–71; Harvilahti 2012: 404).

From a historical vantage point, it is intriguing to observe how the folklore genre classification for reminiscences/oral history (M '*muistitieto*') in the Folklore Archives has changed since the 1970s as well as what lies behind the change in term. As a part of the post-war interpretation, among other themes, the memoirs of lumberjacks were called ethno-historical oral history ('*etnohistoriallinen muistitieto*'). In 1975 oral history was actually a subgenre of the main genre M, which stood for reminiscences. In the 1980s, Matti Kuusi, who was the professor of Folklore Studies, named such recollections a surplus category. According to him, these materials appeared to defy the genre classification used in the Folklore Archives. Taking archival taxonomy as his point of departure, Kuusi had sought to resolve the problem by making a distinction between recurrent generic features. He thus created the following system of types of chronicates:

M1 personal/autobiographical chronicates (= emphasis on one person)

M2 relationship chronicates (= emphasis on two more equal characters or participants)

M3 community chronicates (= individuals in the context of a wider community)

M4 eco-chronicates (= memories related to the natural and cultural environment)

M5 techno-chronicates (= memories on traditions of using technical skills) (See further Kuusi 1980: 39–46.)

The background for this classification came from Lauri Honko's idea to distinguish between memorates and chronicates, thus having the former relate to supernatural experiences and the latter to non-supernatural experiences. This ideal genre classification, without attempting to take structure into account, aimed to generalize memory data in order to apply to a wider body

---

<sup>2</sup> See Pentikäinen 1971; Siikala 1984; Kaivola-Bregenhøj 1988.

of rapidly evolving written data dealing with the recent past and day-to-day life. The genre classification was nevertheless not wholly without basis in reality, for especially the memories of one's own life and the life of the community were recollected in oral communication though the narrators did not recognise them as chronicles. In the traditional narrative field of genre concepts (folktale, myth, history and sacred history), chronicles, which fall into the section of history, like historical legends, reflect the experiential and profane world and are thus regarded as true. (Honko 1980: 23–24; 1988: 103–105.)

Although Kuusi dismissed their informational content as somewhat trivial, he did concede that future generations might be interested in authentic narratives recounting the processes of change in society. (Kuusi 1980: 40–46.) Although the abovementioned typological classification by Kuusi is no longer used in the Folklore Archives, we are still able to discern themes in the modern archival material that deal with relations between the narrator and his tangible or intangible environment, just as Kuusi proposed. This point of departure is relevant even today in the 2010s. In this chapter, I began with an overview of the discipline's history. Alongside the developments in the archives, oral history research found its place, although marginal, in Finnish academia in the 1980s.<sup>3</sup> Following the trends in the international oral history movement and research, researchers began to turn their attention to popular history and the past of the working class.

### **In the 1980s and 1990s: Still on the Margins of Folklore Studies**

In the early days, the two most prominent lines of discussion can be seen in two separate research projects: the first, a fieldwork project launched in Eastern Finland to study the village of Sivakka; and the second, an oral history project in Western Finland to collect the history of the Finnish Paper Workers' Union with a focus on presenting one's own history (see Kalela 1983). As a result, both historians and folklorists began to pay greater attention to popular history. (See Knuutila 1984).<sup>4</sup>

At the same time, the discussion about ideal and actual genres prompted by Lauri Honko's publications on folklore genres and theory had touched on *folklore put into writing*, materials that had already started to accumulate in the Folklore Archives thanks to collection campaigns

---

<sup>3</sup> Summaries are available in Finnish, e.g. see Peltonen 2006; Fingerroos 2010.

(Honko 1980: 1988). As a result, Satu Apo (1980) introduced the concept of “a writing narrator” (*kirjoittava kertoja*’; see also Apo 1995). And thus the connection between archived oral history and textual performance was launched. I will return to this theme in the analysis of the case study. All of this research reveals that writers who respond to oral history campaigns organised by archives do have a certain model for their stories, but they use the narrative means they find most suitable to their agenda. The collection campaign should be regarded as an impetus for a genre that provides content for interpretation and the flexible production of a particular discourse.

If we return for a moment to Finland in the 1980s, the growing interest in popular history also inspired researchers to see the value of collecting life stories. The rise in sociological research on the life stories of ordinary people (see Roos 1987) had an immediate effect on the classification of the surplus category; indeed, the autobiographical aspect continues to feature in archived oral history. For example, when Leea Virtanen became professor of Folklore Studies at University of Helsinki (1982), she noticed that folklorists had only recently begun to find autobiographical recollections interesting. The reason behind this turn can be found in the dramatic socio-economic transformations that had taken place in post-war Finland. These changes spurred memorizing efforts. Ordinary citizens wanted to reconstruct the past and write down their own life stories. Under the given circumstances, the questions of remembering and forgetting were considered important. (Virtanen 1982: 177.) As a result, in 1992 the Folklore Archives set biography and autobiography apart as independent subgenres from the main category of reminiscences.

Folklorist Ulla-Maija Peltonen (1985) took part in the early phase mentioned above by examining the collecting of working-class oral history. Later, her dissertation on the working-class narrative tradition concerning the Civil War (1996) and especially her study on the politics of memory, silence and voice (2003) started a new era in Finnish oral history research. Surprisingly, even in 1996, oral history continued to occupy a marginal place in folklore studies. At that time, Peltonen wrote (1996: 427): “Oral history as information concerning the past, as recollected narration and as interpretation of one’s own past, has received hardly any serious consideration from researchers.” Her dissertation had a notable impact on the paradigm change as the general use of concepts recollected narration (*muistelukerronta*’) and oral history (*muistitietohistoria*’) gained more currency than personal experience narratives or memory lore, although there are no fixed translations for them (see page 32). According to

Peltonen, recollected narration includes “categories of folklore and is assumed to lie *somewhere between oral history and folklore*.” The most important categories, she mentioned, were life histories, memorates and memoirs. (Peltonen 1996: 421, 428.) Later she included autobiographies, recollections and other kinds of data based on memory within the concepts of oral history (Peltonen 2000.) Her research concurred with that of Portelli (1991: 48–49), who made the following point: “Oral historical sources are narrative sources. Therefore the analysis of oral history materials must avail itself of some of the general categories developed by narrative theory in literature and folklore”.

Thereafter, in the 1990s, the collection campaigns of the Finnish Literature Society began to pay increased attention to personal experiences. In addition to the fact that the archive collections included specific life story campaigns (e.g. autobiographies focused on either men or women or a particular group/profession), the written answers consisted of phases situated in a life cycle. These collections reflecting personal experiences have been considered extremely interesting across disciplinary borders. I will next concentrate on the recent oral history collections and elucidate the basis for producing oral history texts. The act of writing to the archive serves as an established arena for the individual to focus on interpreting his or her own culture – and as such it does create a context for a specific kind of creative discourse, a textual performance.

### **Since the 2000s: A Literate Branch of Oral History**

Today, the visitor to the website of the Folklore Archives is encouraged to send in folk traditions and oral history materials in the form of manuscripts, photos and tape recordings.<sup>5</sup> As Director of the Folklore Archives Lauri Harvilahti (2012: 404) states, the collections of the Folklore Archives contain about one million pages of ‘oral history materials’. The modern collections are vast and internationally well-known, thanks also to the Finnish Oral History Network’s (FOHN) international symposiums held every other year in Helsinki.<sup>6</sup> Over the decades, the work of international oral history researchers has had a tremendous impact on the discussion concerning ‘the real oral history materials’. This has stimulated debate over whether researchers have shared conceptions of oral history (as a genre). The intersections between

---

<sup>5</sup> <http://www.finlit.fi/kra/keruuhjeet.htm>.

<sup>6</sup> In the past the campaigns were advertised in newspapers and other forms of print media, but nowadays the call for written submissions is also published on the Internet. See FOHN: <http://www.finlit.fi/english/research/fohn/index.htm>

performance theory and the art of the oral history interview are explored by Lynn Abrams in her book *Oral History Theory* (2010). She offers critical discussion and a systematic overview of oral history, which has moved from being a marginal practice to the mainstream. She reminds readers that the task of research is *to understand the significance of people's memories*. In the analysis of oral and written data, some questions will be shared: in addition to what is said, it is important to pay attention to how it is said, why it is said and what it means. Signification, interpretation and meaning are today at the core in both cases – in the interview and in the archived text.

It is understandable that written oral history materials also have their own particular attributes. Despite the absence of face-to-face interaction or fieldwork in the data-collecting process, there is a particular dialogical dimension in the act of writing to an archive. To be sure, the main form of contact is realized through the instructions for writers. The call for written submissions and the instructions for writers with the themes and questions compiled by the archive can be viewed as stimulus for participation. The writings housed in long-established memory institutions such as the Folklore Archives serve to promote the model for writing itself, which is at least on some level recognised by the members of the regular network of the archives. As I see it, the key characteristic of a response to a collection as a genre of *oral history text* is the narrator's freedom: he/she can choose the content and style as well as the length of the text. When constructing a narrative about a given theme, the writing narrator can provide memories of the most significant cultural or historic themes mentioned in the brochure and even follow its structure, but he/she can also choose to concentrate on entirely different themes, perspectives and orally transmitted narratives or even stories he/she finds relevant in local history books. The genre of oral history text characteristically tends to present opinions and understandings connected to the title of the collection, to describe events and to situate memories and their interpretation in different contexts specific to the agents, times and places. In fact, dozens of narrators who have taken part in collection campaigns take advantage of the collection response model already familiar to them.

Generally, that model is based on an autobiographical sequence of events or a comparison between past and present. Nonetheless, we need to keep in mind that as a genre, archived writings have a profoundly problematic relationship to autobiographies. A modern autobiography is generally understood as a referential genre, an independent text type referring to a reality that can be verified by the readers (at least in principle), although instead of

concentrating on its relationship to fact and fiction, it would be more accurate to point out the texts' autoreferentiality and subjectivity, the meanings given to narrator's experiences (Kosonen 2009: 287). Although memoirs sent to an archive partly actualize this kind of autoreferentiality, they offer insight into the narrators' meanings, thus allowing the writers to play more freely with history and 'truth' than they can in autobiographies (see also Abrams 2010: 27). Text production for archives thus entails an inter-textual relationship with both oral and written genres. It is apparent that many narrators, imagining the needs of the archives or aiming for a cash prize, draw on oral folklore genres in the creation of a representative answer. Nonetheless, it is individual creativity that spurs the writing process.

The majority of the narrators are elderly people living in different areas of Finland; they are united by their interest in writing, tradition and history. Besides the regular respondents, however, there are numerous other respondents sending one-time answers to collection campaigns concerning various phenomena of the society. It is therefore worth noting that the regular respondents' network does not form a discursive community, a collection of individuals *communicating amongst themselves*. Instead, they communicate with the archive staff. Although we cannot dismiss the impact of the archive brochure with its themes and questions, its influence is not as pervasive as one might think (cf. Olsson 2011: 42). For one thing, the instructions for respondents do not place special emphasis on the importance of precise memories and accurate narratives of the past. On the contrary, the instructions invite participants to share both individual and collective impressions and interpretations of the past. Romy Clark and Roz Ivanič (1997: 138) explain the act of writing as follows: "Writing includes both the physical, mental and interpersonal 'literary practices' that constitute and surround the act of writing. However, the respondents to the archive are not necessarily free from genre expectations (such as narratives, memoirs, life history, autobiography) as they look back on their lives or on collective beliefs in the frames of the past.

As memory organization, the Folklore Archives represents an opportunity to contest, complement and offer another interpretation of the official story of the past. As I have described earlier (Latvala 2005), the writing narrators adopt various respondent positions and may use several positions in one text: the rememberer, the speculator, the provider of basic knowledge,

the enlightener and the tale-teller (cf. Savolainen in this volume).<sup>7</sup> Each one underlines the different ways of presenting and debating chosen reflections for the archive. In the context of the Folklore Archives, the active respondents, those who belong to the network of regular respondents, tend to use the most diverse author positions within one response. In some cases, the writing narrator clearly states his/her intentions by announcing to the readers why the narrated experiences and times must be remembered, giving instructions or placing the memories in a particular context (e.g. women's history or changing models of masculinity).

Most of the new themes in the archive collection campaigns do not explicitly invite the respondent to formulate the answer as an autobiography. Nonetheless, almost all of them contain autobiographical potential: the person is recounting his/her version of the past by reflecting on his/her own life (e.g. Abrams 2010: 26). The most recent collection themes of the Folklore Archives include silence, parenthood, Parkinson's disease, food culture, disability, gypsies, old-fashioned tape recording formats (C-cassettes), computers, climate change and experiences of nature. Some of the instructions included in these collection campaigns underscore *memories, stories and experiences*, whereas others, such as those in collection campaigns on WW II, self-made-artists, politics or life at the border, even on several famous Finnish writers (the latest ones are organized by The Literary Archives of the Finnish Literature Society), accent *oral history*. As Portelli states, oral history can be about anything; open-endedness is one of its distinctive characteristics. However, the search for a connection between individual experience and transformations in society resides at the core of it. (Portelli 1998: 25.) Researchers now tend to read the materials as evaluations of the past made in the present or as reflections about the future against the mirror of the past instead of serving only as a mirror to the past.<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>7</sup> See e.g. Peltonen 2006 on reader images and argumentation; Pöysä 2011 on temporality; Latvala 2005 on semantic meta-functions, narrative patterns and shadow dialogue, Latvala & Laurén 2013 on close-reading the emotional level; Savolainen 2009 on reminiscence narratives; see also Savolainen this volume.

<sup>8</sup> As Taina Ukkonen (2006: 186–189) and Outi Fingerroos & Riina Haanpää (2006: 38–39) have stated, researchers today analyse oral history materials differently depending on their epistemological view. Roughly speaking, oral history researchers can be divided into two groups: those who seek to accurately clarify and represent events of the past and those who conduct interpretive oral history research, regarding recollection as a process and seeing images of the past as negotiable constructions and acknowledging people's varying views. In Finland, folklorists are interested in both perspectives and its' narrative strategies but the emphasis has usually been on interpretive research, with recognition of the relationship between the past and the present. (Cf. Ukkonen 2006: 189.)

It is crucial to note that texts sent to archive collection campaigns do not always have the same communicative goal, even if the respondents share the theme in question. The significance of narrating the past is therefore to pass on the experienced history. For this reason, oral history texts are often built on the interpretation of memories and knowledge of oral communication. As the case study analysis later in this article will reveal a striking genre-specific feature of written memoirs – namely, the writers’ use of various narrative means to create new vistas onto oral communication. Written texts are therefore teeming with indirect quotations and direct citations of day-to-day speech, not to mention a wealth of general information about how people expressed their thoughts and feelings (meanings) during the historical period in question.

### **War Narratives in Oral History Texts**

In my study on the oral history of everyday political culture (Latvala 2013b), the salient historical theme was the Civil War of 1918. The brochure for the collection, however, made no mention of any wars. The representations of history culture through oral history, fiction, local history and the Internet form an ongoing, controversial and boundless process about the year 1918 in Finland (see Heimo 2010; 2014). Because official history, especially war history, tends to foreground certain facts, dates of battles and victories, there is a need for counter-narratives and counter-knowledge, the stories concerned with human experiences and suffering. A counter-narrative can sometimes work as a shadow narrative – an optional history narrative based on *what if*. Such narratives delve into thoughts and emotions. Some of the narratives tell us how the people in past would have acted, if there were other futures. These versions of the past welcome emotional narratives and explanations. (Peltonen 2009: 17; Juhila 2004: 20; Hänninen et al (Eds.) 2005). An unspoken generic feature of memorizing is an openness to options, other narratives and other truths.

The archives give people the opportunity to construct their own sense of the past and of political culture. People have resorted either consciously or unconsciously to political narration in their communities in order to influence their listeners by verbalizing solutions connected to political conflicts. Molly Andrews (2007), an oral historian and psychologist, uses the concept of ‘political narrative’. She has observed how the oral history of an event is coloured by the personal experience of the narrator and how the narrator chooses the signifying elements of their identity from a field of political representations. In other words, how does narration provide a framework for individual political meanings?



In the context of the Folklore Archives, various genres are used to throw light on described time periods and to ascribe significance to experiences. Do these embedded genres reflect the meaning of genres in actual oral communication or are they more likely to represent traces of the stylistic and structural features from oral performances? Richard Bauman (1992) emphasizes that generic expectations may be mobilized in different ways to serve different communicative ends. The respondent writing to the archives actualizes what Lauri Honko (1980: 25) has pointed out: the individuals who use the tradition are not interested in the genre itself *but its messages*. Honko's notion highlights, as Lotte Tarkka argues, that folklore is a flexible communication system with certain genres suited to bearing certain messages. She demonstrates in her study on genres of oral poetry that various genres were used dialogically within one performance, although it is often difficult to determine whether or not the combinations of strategies were conscious or unconscious. However, they were perceived as meaningful parts of the whole. (Tarkka 2013: 93–102, *passim*.) It goes without saying that today's context differs significantly from the past poetic culture, but this common feature still deserves mention. The narrators may find the folklore in question as a part of their communicative reality – or they may use it in order to convey cultural knowledge. Instead of placing genres into strictly defined categories, researchers may find it more productive to talk about a genre-based understanding, in which the producers of tradition take responsibility for performing folklore – in other words they can be seen as active verbal/linguistic agents and users of various registers (Lehtipuro 2012: 494; Bauman 1977). The following case study is based on one of the 203 texts sent to the “Politics and Power Games” -collection campaign of the Folklore Archives. The text characteristically consists of numerous interlocked narratives and stories with varying truth-value. The attractiveness of the texts arises from the contents and use of narrative means.

I use oral history text as an umbrella concept for oral narratives within the text. Paying close attention to one case allows us to see how the narrator inherits the narratives of power and violence of his local milieu, the painful memories and how these narratives – as they are repeated and interpreted – come to form a part of the pool of cultural explanations for the consequences of the Civil War of 1918. Although there is only room for one case in this article, I hope that it will reflect the nature of archive writing as an inherently diverse expressive form.

### **Case Study: Interpreting the Aftermath of the Civil War of 1918**

A performance, as Richard Bauman (1992: 41) puts it, is an “aesthetically marked and heightened mode of communication, framed in a special way and put on display for an audience”. Drawing on Bauman, Lynn Abrams asserts that all oral history interviews and life-history narratives are performances. Abrams also underscores the need for the analysis to convey the emotions that the respondents invest in recalling their pasts. (See Abrams 2010: 132–152; cf. Latvala & Laurén 2013). Furthermore, it is not wrong to say either that the oral history texts have specific performance-related elements, especially linguistic means (such as the use of dialect, multiple languages, even slang), although they do not have a present audience (see Latvala 2005). Viewed from this perspective, it is obvious that its form is not fixed. The archive may receive answers in the form of a poem, a fictional narrative or a life story, or all these can be combined in the same text. Finnish folklorist Jyrki Pöysä (2006: 232) has called attention to this feature by calling them “narratives made up of narratives”. Each narrator has his/her own style and competence to verbalise experiences and ideas for the Folklore Archives. Quoting Lynn Abrams (2010: 31), the narrative is a form used “to translate knowing into telling”.

In his written answer of seven pages, the narrator tells his father’s story about the aftermath of the Civil War of 1918. The respondent positions come close to the tale-teller and enlightener. The response represents in fact three different narratives, all of which are connected. In the first narrative, where the events are presented as true, the protagonist is the narrator’s mother (and the respondent himself, yet unborn). The second narrative describes his father’s actual experiences. When he gets to the third narrative, however, there is no family present, and the style of the narration differs from the previous narratives. While today’s reader may respond to it as a piece of fiction, the story may well have been told to young children accustomed to hearing tales of terror and violence which were presented as true, thus acting to shape their sense of reality. In other words, the story functioned as a set of facts for understanding the world. The linking feature of all of these narratives is a local man called Aaro. Since I pay attention to narration in the context of an archive, I do not specifically aim at narrative analysis here. Instead, I am interested in examining how the past is represented through the use of narrative genres inside oral history text— and how the respondent assumes the roles of his parents as narrators. In the first narrative, the tale-teller manages to create the feeling of the actual narrative situation by using lines spoken by his mother and the man who assaulted her.

(1) *Äite kerto* että kun tämä Aaro kavereittensa kanssa katseli punaisia ja kun ei löytänyt niin laittaa äiten leuvan alle pistoolin ja sanoi että 'jos ny akka et ala tietään missä ne pirut piileksii niin lasken läpi'. *Äite kerto että hän sano että* kun ei tiedä ja ne ei ole mitään tehneetkään niin 'ammu vain kun tapat nuo pienet kakaratkin'. Ei se Aaro sitten ampunut ja Äite pelastu ja niin sitten minäkin synnyin tähän matoseen maailmaan.

*Mother told me* that when this Aaro with his buddies looked for the Reds and couldn't find them he put a pistol under mother's chin and said 'if the woman doesn't say where the devils are hiding then I'll pull the trigger. *Mother told me that she said* that she didn't know and that they hadn't even done anything so 'just go ahead and shoot but kill those little brats too'. Aaro didn't shoot then and Mother was spared and so I too was born into this wormy world.

In this first narrative, the narration situation is stressed and we can actually notice references to three different layers of communication: the actual oral narration in real time (the mother-the son), the narrated event in narrated time (where the dialogue takes place between Aaro and mother) and the memorizing time (the writing narrator and the archive). By conducting a close reading of his research materials, Jyrki Pöysä has interpreted the temporal levels of these kinds of written memoirs and asked what the actual present moment of the response is. Is it the time when the events actually occurred, the time described by the recollection or the researcher's moment of reading? (for more, see Pöysä 2011.) The narrator's attempt to bridge the temporal distance and construct the prevalent mood of the Civil War is aided by his use of oral narratives.

As the narrative reveals, the mother survives unharmed and the son is later born. Although this incident had taken place about twenty years before the narrator's birth, it had obviously been an important and oft-told family narrative. The narrator has considered the past events carefully and created a complete and structured narrative with lines of dialogue. The first narrative is quite short and can also be seen as a background story and sub-narrative of the father's fate. In its main theme, the narrative presents the fraught encounter between the mother and the armed men (especially Aaro) who are looking for narrator's father. At the same time, the story works as a first screening of the narrator's life story. Interestingly, the story gives voice to both agents, the mother strong and bold and the violent Aaro careless and cavalier. Aaro's words are full of hatred and reveal his readiness to kill. The narrative introduces who told what; the scene of events is set during the 1918 Civil War with an account of Whites searching homes for Reds in hiding. There is no mention of the Whites or of time, but as listener knows the context, it is obvious that Aaro belonged to the opposite group, the Whites, and that the year was 1918. The mother is presented as a person withholding information.

In the second, somewhat longer narrative, the protagonists are the father and the violent neighbor. Here we can find the respondent position of enlightener conveying knowledge about the life of political prisoners in Tampere:

(2) Isä kerto että kun valkoiset pidätti heidän, vaskivedellä ja sieltä he marssivat Tampereelle ja *sattu vielä niin että se joka johti sitä vartiota oli saman kylän isäntä.* Tunsivat toisensa hyvin ja olivat muutenkin tuttuja. *Nyt ei kuitenkaan tuttuus auttanut mitään kun tämä naapurin isäntä olkoon nyt nimeltään Aaro. Tämä Aaro alko ammuskeleen heitä jalkoihin ja koitti saada lähteen karkuun että olis voinut tappaa heidät. Isä kerto että oli se sellainen kahdeksankymmentä kilometriä elämässä että ei ole toista ollut. Jos ei pysynyt matkassa niin tämä Aaro kävi kavereittensa kanssa ampumassa päähän peloitukseksi toisille. Nämä vangit koottiin Aaltosen kenkätehtaaseen Tampereella. Ruokaa ei ollut. Joskus heittivät kuolleen koiran sinne että kyllä se oli elämää punaisilla vangeilla. Jos vilkuili lasista ulos tuli kuula kalloon ja sillä siisti. Toiset vangit heitti ruumiit lasista pihalle.*

Father told me that when the Whites arrested them, at Vaskivesi, and from there they marched to Tampere and *the leading guard happened to be a farmer from the same village.* Each was known to the other and they were well acquainted otherwise. *Anyways, now just knowing each other meant nothing when this neighbouring farmer, well let's call him Aaro. This Aaro started shooting at their feet and tried to make them run away so that he could kill them. The father said that the walk was eighty kilometres in his life unlike any another. If you didn't keep going, this Aaro and his buddies would shoot you in the head just to scare the others.* These prisoners were herded into Aaltonen's Shoe Factory in Tampere. There was no food. Sometimes a dead dog was thrown in for them *so it sure was quite a life for the Red prisoners. If you peeked out of the window you'd get a bullet in the skull and that was that. Other prisoners threw the bodies through the glass into the yard.*

The course of the narrative can be divided into the following themes: 1. The Whites arrest the father (and other suspected Reds) at Vaskivesi; 2. Escorted and guarded by the neighbor, Aaro, the prisoners march to Tampere; 3. Aaro's readiness to shoot the prisoners; 4. The experience of the father plus commentary; 5. The risk of being ruthlessly executed; 6. The shoe factory as a prison: the only available food is dead dog; 7. Prisoners' lives have no value. Of the seven points presented above, the transportation of the Red prisoners to Tampere is a historical and verifiable fact: the Whites captured Tampere in the spring of 1918, and there were over 10,000 Red prisoners. The shoe factory mentioned in the narrative is most probably Aaltonen's Shoe Factory, known historically as a place where Red prisoners were confined.

The most striking feature here is the piece of information added to the narrative's chain of dramatic events: the respondent's father and the neighbour, the executioner for the Whites,

lived in the same village for decades after the end of the war. Another dramatic feature of this narrative is the marriage of the respondent's brother to the executioner's daughter, a painful matter to the narrator's father. According to the narrator, the father found this marriage difficult to accept. Families divided by political hatred but united by marriage is a common narrative theme that can serve a dramatic function in the narrative tradition, thus capturing the attention of the listener. It can also be seen as a story with a moral message advising the older generation to reconcile with their enemies and allow the next generation to enjoy peaceful social relations.

Alessandro Portelli (1998: 26) argues that war narratives are the most common narratives describing the relationship between the individual and society, at least among male narrators. War, he explains, embodies history: firsthand experience of the war is the most tangible claim for having taken part in history. In the above text, the experiences of the father, who took part in the war, can be seen as a personal, partly instructive, story of warning. In this narrative, the plot functions to highlight individual and emotional experiences. In oral history narratives, the agents of the violent past are typically placed outside the narrator's own home region and community (See Heimo 2010: 246). Not only did the confrontation between the Reds and the Whites during the Civil War take place within the local environment but it also turned family and kin members against each other. This explains why the fear of violence and violence itself takes shape as a crucial theme in the narration. He seeks to reconstruct, along with the narrative, his father's prison experiences, presenting them as true, even though the message may simply be a matter of narrative truth.

The man tells the archive about his father's plight under the close watch of the neighbouring farmer. At the beginning, he refers to the time before the conflict between the Reds and Whites, when the head guard (patrol leader) and the father had been on good terms. Used repeatedly, the formula 'father told me that ...' increases the sense of the bond between the listener and the teller, not to mention the severity of the father's ordeal. Moreover, the story powerfully conveys the way in which historical circumstance turned the neighbourly relations between men into a dramatic conflict between assassin and victim – a story that had been passed on to later generations. Even though the narrator's father survived, the capriciousness of death in such a setting is underscored by its presentation as a routine event – a shot in the head for a trifle.

Tampere, a city ravaged by the Finnish Civil War, has a salient place in the narratives that circulated in the aftermath of the events of 1918. What happened in Tampere took root in the collective memory and thus emerges in cautionary and didactic tales as a part of political

socialization. The narrator's father used storytelling to pass on knowledge about the political conflicts to his son. The above story is not the only narrative set in 1918 told to the narrator by his father.

The writing narrator adopts in the third story the respondent positions of the rememberer, the speculator, the provider of basic knowledge, the enlightener and the tale-teller. He first refers to his own memory and childhood. The speculative part of the story comes forth in his thoughts concerning the emotions stirred by the events, especially hatred and its consequences. He also provides knowledge and enlightens the reader about the court's unethical action at those times. Most of all, however, the respondent weaves a tale around the theme of justice. The following narrative is presented as *historical narrative*, placing the same neighbour and Horror-Heikki at the centre of the violence. The historical narrative typically refers to a particular and conspicuous local event, person or era; something perceived as true but needing explanation (see Lehtipuro 1982: 45–46). Here the narrative describes the local executioner in the context of the aftermath of the Civil War:

(3) *Tämä tapahtuma on kanssa niitä sisällissodan jälkiselvittelyjä, joita pikkupoikana kuuntelin. Se samainen Aaro joka niitä vankeja kuljetti ja teloitti Virtain Puttosharjuun hiekkamonttuun. Ja vaikutti siihen että pikatuomioistuin tuomitsi syyttömiäkin eli sellaisia henkilöitä jotka koskaan ei ollut osallisena mihinkään poliittiseen toimintaan, eivät monet olleet silloin kahdeksantoista vuonna mettäkylillä tienneetkään mitä politiikka oli. Mutta kun kiihko oli kova, viha oli niin syvää että tappaa piti niin tapettiin jokainen mikä kiinni saatiin. Ja tämä Aaro oli niitä suurempia jahtaajia. Oli vielä suuri ja ruma mies, kaikki siinä miehessä sopi pirun kaveriksi ja jälki oli sitten kammottavaa, siellä oli kaverikin sellainen suurtaalollinen kuin itsekin oli. Sen kaveria sanottiin kauhu-Heikiksi. Sattu sellainen tapaus että tämä Aaro oli meidän tämä Aaro oli meidän kylän kahvilassa juopottelemassa ja kehuskeli, Eipä juurikaan ole vastusta löytynyt vaikka olen noita ihmisiä muiluttanut ja pistänyt mullan alla. Juovuksissaan leveili että 'kyllä lapuan politiikka jyllää se on sellaista politiikkaa että ei meidän kylässä kommarit eikä vasemmistolaiset juhli. Laitetaan niin ahtaalle että vie viissattaa vuotta enen kun uskaltavat henkittäkkään Kunnolla saati sanoo että me ollaan vasemmistolaisia ja halutaan sitä ja tätä'. Siinä samassa siitä kahvilan pöydästä nousi mies kuin salama ja tempas partaveitsen ja leikkas Aaron korvasta korvaan auki kurkun alta niin syvältä nahkan että ei kurkkutorvi katkennut ja samalla käänti sen nahan naamalle. Ja lähti käveleen ulos katosi syksyiseen pimeyteen kuin aave. Sen jälkeen ja sitä ennen ei kukaan ollut nähnyt miestä ja kukaan ei koskaan saanut tietää kuka tämä mies oli. Ja samana syksyisenä yönä Aaron kaveri se Kauhu-Heikki löyty riihen kiukaalta palaneena oli niin kuin pudonnut orsilta kun kuivatti rukiita. Vanha kansa puheli että se oli tuomion enkeli joka liikku jakoi vaan oikeutta. Aaro selvis siitä viiltelystä vuoden sairaana maattuaan ja lääkäri ompeli kiinni sen haavan joko oli todella suuri korvasta korvaan. Se oli näkyvissä Aaron*

kuolemaan asti ja jokainen näki sen kuoleman enkelin oikeuden haavan ja kun Aaro eli vanhaksi niin sitä neulomusta kerkis moni katseleen ja *monesti siitä sitten alko poliittista ja yhteiskunnallista keskustelua*. Sellainen arpi *herätti ihmiset ajattelemaan* että tuollaista touhua *ei voida hyväksyä* on muuta tehtävä kuin tappaa toisiaan ja vihata niin syvästi kuin *ne kapinassa olleet* toisiaan vihasi kuolemaansa asti eivät koskaan antaneet anteeksi toisilleen... vaikka meidän *isä kyllä puheli* että niin kuin meidän lasten on hyväksyttävä *toisenlainen politiikka joka on temokraattinen ja tasapuolinen*. *Kuuntelin niitä juttuja pienenä poikana ja ajattelin että miksi ihmiset on noin julmia* en oikein ymmärtänyt mistä oli kysymys nyt kyllä ymmärrän, mutta monesti olen ajatellut että mitenkä ne ihmiset jakso sen sorron kauden elää ja pitää uskoa että huomina koittaa parempana sillä muuten kuin uskomalla parempaan *ei jaksais sellaista mitä sen kapinan jälkeen tapahtui*. (SKS. KRA. POL 1575. 2007.)

*This is another thing that took place in the aftermath of the Civil War that I heard as a young boy*. That same fellow Aaro, who transported the prisoners to the sand pit and executed them. And it seemed that the kangaroo court condemned even the innocent, people who had never taken part in any kind of political activity, and in 1918 not many of those living in the forest villages even had any idea about politics. But when the mania was going strong, the hatred was so deep that they had to kill, and they killed everyone they could catch. And this fellow Aaro was one of the greatest pursuers. And he was a big ugly man, too. Everything about the man made him fit to be the devil's buddy, and what he did was dreadful, and he also had a friend who was like him a well-off farmer. This fellow was called Horror-Heikki. And so it happened that Aaro was boozing it up at our village café and bragging, There hasn't been much resistance even though I have forcibly removed those people and put them under the ground. In his drunken state he boasted that 'surely the politics of the town of Lapua would prevail, that it's the kind of politics that neither the commies nor the leftists will be celebrating. We're gonna turn up the heat so much that it'll take five thousand years before they dare even to take a proper breath, never mind say that we're leftists and we want this and we want that'. At that instant a man got up with lightning speed from one of the tables and pulled out his razor and slashed Aaro's throat from ear to ear deep into the flesh but without cutting the windpipe and at the same time pulled the skin to cover his face. And he sauntered out into the autumn night like a phantom. After that nobody ever saw him or found out who this man was. And on that same autumn night Aaro's friend, Horror-Heikki was found burnt to a crisp on the drying house stove as though he'd fallen from the rafters while drying rye. Aaro recovered from the gash after a year in a hospital bed and the doctor sewed up the cut that was really huge from ear to ear. It was visible until Aaro's dying day and everyone could see the wound of justice inflicted by the angel of doom and by the time Aaro had become an old man many had had the chance to see the cut and seeing *it often prompted discussions about politics and society*.

A scar like that *got people thinking* that that kind of *thing can't be accepted*, something else must be done instead of killing each other and hating so deeply that *those who had been in the uprising* hated each other until their dying day and never forgave each other,

even though *our father certainly said* that we children have to accept *other political views, which is democratic and equal*.

*I listened to those stories as a young boy and I wondered why people were so cruel* I didn't really understand what it was all about though I do now, but I have often wondered *Collective level*: how people had the strength to live through that oppression and keep believing that tomorrow would be better otherwise without believing in a better tomorrow *no one could have endured what took place after that revolt*.

At the beginning, the narrator introduces the cultural context of the historical narrative (the aftermath of the Civil War). After that, he refers to past deeds committed by the executor called Aaro. The narrator has already informed the reader that this man had been their neighbour and had taken the narrator's father to prison. Significantly, the description of the era, the events and the protagonists create categories that summon up impressions of good and evil, right and wrong, inclusion and exclusion. (See also Potter 1996: 111.) In this oral history text, it is possible to see Alessandro Portelli's (1997) breakdown of narrative levels into concurrent and overlapping ones (*institutional, collective and personal*). According to his history-telling model, the institutional level refers to ideologies and politics (the Reds and Whites in the example), whereas the collective level deals with the life of the community (the local people believed in tomorrow and had the strength to live through the oppression); correspondingly, the personal level encompasses the home and private/family life (his own memories and thoughts as a child).

Although war history and the tacit knowledge conveyed through political traditions become rooted in individual memory, as a narrated experience of the wider society, it strengthens the collective memory, explains political activity and power relations, and provides information on political groups and key historical events (See Andrews 2007: 8–9). The traditions related to politics can be seen to reflect not only thought at the individual level but also at the collective level (the popular thought related to politics), in which ideas, knowledge, beliefs, expectations, suspicions and strivings are expressed and in which guidance for action is given. The tragic consequences of this particular narrative take place at this level. The narrator obviously wants his audience to follow and understand his story: he provides the audience with a backdrop for the story and also shares his own experience of hearing it. The sentence introducing the protagonist points to the violent deeds described earlier by the narrator. There is a strong image of opposing powers at the institutional level: ideologies were harnessed for the purpose of war, thus making senseless deaths possible. The beginning of the Horror-Heikki narrative captures the point of view of people who were not politically active.



Thereafter, the narrative offers an explanation for the brutality, for the powerful and destructive emotions connected to the political division led to a frenzy of violence. At this point, the style of the text approaches a typical, more conventional genre: the description of the protagonist aligns him with the devil. The narrator's voice remains at the surface all the time. He prepares the readers for yet another twist in the plot by introducing the figure of *Horror-Heikki*. Here the narrative does not explicitly bring up the subject of politics, but it hints at the economic differences between the Civil War's opposing sides: the Reds, who were generally poor, and the Whites, who were usually rather affluent. The next episode takes place in a social setting at the collective (community) level. The reader is presented with a common Finnish stereotype, a fellow who has had too much to drink and subsequently starts to boast. Now the political theme is included in the narrative as Aaro's dialogue. By referring to the politics of the town of *Lapua*, he means the right-wing politics and political persecution in the early 1930s (the Lapua movement). His reference is an obvious part of political history in Finland. And thus the ensuing severe and brutal reaction of an unknown man makes sense to anyone who strongly identifies with left-wing politics. The narrative at this point virtually transforms into a ghost story. The death of Horror-Heikki invites speculation. Though presented as a possible accident, the timing (the same night) suggests that his demise was more than a coincidence. The voice of the narrator affirms this preconception: 'In the old days people said that it was the angel of doom that was going about and setting things right.' With this sentence, the narrator invokes 'the voice of tradition', a typical feature in oral performances (Lauhakangas 2004). From the respondent's perspective, the most meaningful part of the narrative is yet to come: how this event affected the local community and sparked political discussion. Soon after the collective impact, he shifts his focus to private memories of political socialization in the context of his family, thus giving us a glimpse of a young boy's perspective on his father's attempt to pass on his ideological views to his children.

At this stage the narrative has already begun to move toward the narrator's assessment: an explanation to the reader about the narrative's value. Drawing on Aaro's story, the memoirist offers a textual account of a social ideology intolerable to him. He then, using his father's voice, presents democracy and equality as a solution to the social and political problems of the past. The narrator and his father share common narrative goals, and these goals emerge clearly not only in the context of a single family but also in that of the nation as a whole. The narrative also beckons readers to listen to and interpret the experience of Aaro, the neighbour pulled into the cycle of violence. In light of today's knowledge of and perspectives on the past, today's

readers can at least appreciate Aaro's dilemma and his altered role in the local community. After all, his story is far from exceptional: numerous young men were drawn into the activities of either side, Whites or Reds. Because brutality tends to pervade most narratives of war, the breakdown of solidarity among neighbours and acts of violence against former acquaintances – or at least such potential betrayals – leaves few of us surprised.

The narrative presents yet a third and a fourth perspective on the war and its aftermath: *the uncomprehending young boy* who listens to the narratives and *the adult man* weighing and interpreting the events as he puts them to paper. The child's sense of alarm and horror at such human cruelty is distilled over time, allowing the adult to come to terms with the past. In fact, the adult assures his reader that he understands the background to the events. Resolutely refusing to remain captive to a negative image of history, he underlines the human capacity to survive in times of oppression. Moreover, the narrative indirectly carries its protagonists into the future and thus releases them from the past; ultimately, faith in the future appears as a fundamental strategy for survival.

As mentioned earlier, oral history – at least in its most classical form – has tended to focus on testimonial accounts of particular events, often dramatic, which took place at a particular moment in history. Yet, as in the previous example, oral history can also be seen as a written document revealing dramatic changes in society. It is not known whether the local people re-told and collectively interpreted the stories about Horror-Heikki. In my view, the crux of this story is situated in the mental world, in the process that gave form to the respondent's understanding of the political meanings at play during the Civil War in Finland in 1918. The most striking detail in the story is the fact that the narrator's father and Aaro, the man who had served as an executioner and appeared in both the first and the second story, had lived in the same village for decades after the war was over. Though the event in question had purportedly occurred some twenty years before his birth, the narrator's construction of the narrative through lines of dialogue suggests that it was told time and time again within the family. Another key piece of background information is the marriage between the narrator's brother and the executioner's daughter, a nearly intolerable match to the narrator's father, who, like many others, could not let go of their memories of vicious enmity between Reds and Whites.

### **Individual Approaches to the Political Past**

As the follow-up to the narrative suggests, the narrator had listened to his parents' recollections of political history throughout his childhood. Because the narrator was born in 1940, we can

assume that the events of the Civil War he relates had taken place some thirty years before he heard them. I reckon the boy had been about ten years old when he heard the family narratives – in other words, the tales were narrated at the end of the 1940s, or perhaps even later. The time that had elapsed since the actual events occurred may indeed have altered the way in which the parents narrativized their experiences. Each narrative has crystallized into an explanation, an element broken loose from a story of personal experience to become part of the tale of a polarized nation, a story also coloured by the Winter War and the Continuation War, which, incidentally, took place before the moment of narration. Interestingly, the respondent says nothing about these wars; he consciously chooses to zoom in on reflections by his childhood self, the person hearing about events experienced in 1918. Referring to the narratives presented in his text, he continues by putting all the levels together.

The text above offers new perspectives onto how oral history data can shed light on the relationships between people and politics and also on approaches to the political past through the individual. Narrative traditions are used to comment on political history and to understand the experience of interpersonal conflicts. According to historian Jorma Kalela (2011: 75), historical consciousness tends to be acquired through varying presentations of history rather than simply through the framework of official historical accounts. As he sees it, popular histories (stories, other forms of folklore) convey knowledge about the past and often play a key role in shaping an impression of history. The narratives of war constitute part of the history culture that is – among other forms – represented orally and textually in our culture.

The case study presented in this article reveals the differing views between the agent situated in the 1910s and the person recollecting stories and writing them down in the 2000s. Nonetheless, the creator of the text in the role of transmitter of oral tradition in writing has the potential to harness the feelings connected to politics at different temporal levels to be interpreted side by side. In addition to committing his father's experiences and stories to paper, the narrator condemns present-day European policies and elitism. In other words, as a genre, oral history texts do not concentrate *only* on memorizing the past, for writing also serves as a channel for airing opinions concerning the present day. In fact, the respondent's text begins with an account of his sense of disappointment, in which the dialogue of the recent past is built on the perspectives of two sides, the citizens collectively living under the pressure to Europeanize and the politicians together with the economic experts.

This case study reveals that the events and climate of 1918 are not merely part of the remote and hazy past. Indeed, the year 1918 constitutes a key theme in the responses to the politically themed collection even though there was no mention of the Civil War in the collection campaign brochure. This example illustrates how the political history of the local milieu combined with the course of an individual's life are in a meaningful dialogue in archived oral history texts from the point of view of the narrators and their descendants. The past infuses the present as long as the narratives continue to be told. The Red–White division of the local community or neighbourhood signified a striking transformation in the Finnish mental landscape – a change that required a shared history by the Reds in the same way as it required one by the Whites, and at the general level, explanations and interpretations (cf. Kalela 2011).

The individual who writes to the archive about his/her political memories simultaneously creates an image of popular thought and cultural explanations, just as the story above referred to the collective interpretation of the older and past generations. These representations can, in general, be called representations of popular histories (Kalela 2011: 68) as they do not purport to present history as such, but rather interpretations of it and instructions of what to remember and how to remember, what to leave aside and what to forget. This brings us to the fact that the picture is never finished and complete because each generation brings new insights to oral history, each individual in his/her generation locates himself/herself within power and societal processes, thus producing a unique narrative about the past and contemporary history that is not culturally or politically neutral (cf. Hamilton & Shopes 2008: 4; Andrews 2007: 8).

### **Closing Remarks**

In this article, I have discussed whether the modern practice of writing to the Folklore Archives constitutes a genre of oral history, and if so, on what grounds. There are many reasons for the fact that the requirements concerning the applied umbrella term (oral history) are fulfilled even when the Archives serve as a channel for narration. First, the impact of the collecting history and classification of the reminiscences at the Folklore Archives has created a foundation for the development of methodology beneficial to international oral history research. Second, the archive texts are narrative sources; they transmit past interpretations and personal testimonies of people in various narrative styles. As physical documents in the archives, they produce rich and complex source materials for oral historians or researchers (from various disciplines) using oral history theory. However, my view is that if we use oral history text as an umbrella term for written memoirs sent to the Folklore Archives collection campaigns, we ought to look at

such writings *as a combination of various genres*. After all, they often consist of narratives, proverbs, autobiographical description, documenting and giving meanings to oral communication, interpretations of the past based on vernacular history (see Kalela 2012) and history-telling (often reflecting sensory memory) as well as the expression of narrator's opinions and views on the present-day culture.<sup>9</sup> With the above-mentioned components at his/her disposal, the writing narrator tries to make sense of the past and its relationship to the present.

Within these large frames, writing narrators have the liberty to choose the style(s) and form(s) of the textual items they create. In principle, the final product is nonetheless just as genre-specifically predictable or unpredictable as a recording created in a face-to-face interview. Whether they share their memories in person or do so by writing to the archives, individuals invariably take advantage of the tradition, linguistic registers and narrative strategies in their oral /textual performances to process past events and their surrounding reality.

Besides its potential for giving voice to individual experience, the real significance of oral history resides in its inherent capacity for opening up a wider field of cultural meanings. The methodology developed in oral history research can be applied by cultural researchers working with archival data, but each researcher names the written texts of reminiscence in accordance with his/her own scholarly approach. While oral history researchers usually concentrate on the themes and topics dealt with in the data, at the same time they are also interested in the particular characteristics of oral history and how it is constructed. The narrative richness and depth realized in long written responses invite researchers to investigate narrative meanings and make interpretations of culture.

As we could see in the case study discussed in this article, the individual responding to the archive may embed stories that carry both personal meaning and societal significance to complement war history in his/her response. In this way oral history texts inform us about what kinds of oral narratives concerning past chapters in (political) history have been produced within the community as well as how the listeners of the narrative have experienced – or continue to experience – them as they actively remember the events at the moment of writing.

---

<sup>9</sup> For more on this, see Latvala & Laurén 2013; Pink 2010 [2009] 'sensory ethnography'.

To summarize, in Finland, the history of the collection campaigns and written reminiscences are not *directly* linked up to oral history movements and international oral history theory. Rather, the roots of collecting people's memories reach back to the shift in collecting policy at the Folklore Archives and the emergence of anthropologically oriented functionalist thinking in Finnish folkloristics in the 1960s. The writings sent to archives can be seen as a complex genre, although with its own particular distinctions. My suggestion is that we may seek a compromise today by simply regarding texts sent to archive campaigns with the umbrella term *oral history texts*, which encompasses a variety of reminiscences and folklore in different forms.

*Acknowledgements: I sincerely thank the reviewers of this article for their helpful comments. I would also like to thank the editors Frog and Kaarina Koski for their assistance as well as the translator Leila Virtanen for additional language editing. That was made possible by the Cultural Meanings and Vernacular Genres (CMVG) network, on which I would like to thank the leader, Docent Pertti Anttonen. In addition, I would also like to extend many thanks to Director Lauri Harvilahti from the Folklore Archives for his valuable criticism and comments. My research has been funded by the Eino Jutikkala Foundation, Academy of Sciences and Letters.*

## REFERENCES

### Sources

The Folklore Archives of the Finnish Literature Society, *Politics and Power Games* collection 2006–2007. Helsinki, Finland.

See further: <http://www.finlit.fi/kra/keruut/politiikka.htm> (in Finnish)

<http://www.helsinki.fi/sukupuolentutkimus/aanioikeus/en/articles/powergames.htm> (in English)

### Literature

Abrams, Lynn 2010. *Oral History Theory*. London and New York: Routledge.

Andrews, Molly 2007. *Shaping history. Narratives of Political Change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Apo, Satu 1980. Alina Vaitinen, kirjoittava kertoja. In Pekka Laaksonen (ed.) *Kertojat ja kuulijat*. Kalevalaseuran vuosikirja 60. Helsinki: The Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 185–189.

Apo, Satu 1995. Teemakirjoittaminen. Perinteentutkimuksen näkymätön aineistonkeruumenetelmä. In *Naisen väki. Tutkimuksia suomalaisten kansanomaisesta kulttuurista ja ajattelusta*. Helsinki: Hanki ja jää. Pp. 173–186.

Bauman, Richard 1977. *Verbal Art as Performance*. With supplementary essays by Barbara A. Babcock, Gary H. Gossen, Roger J. Abrahams & Joel F. Sherzer. Illinois, Prospect Heights III. Pp. 3–51.

Bauman, Richard 1992. Genre. In Richard Bauman (ed.) *Folklore, Cultural Performances and Popular Entertainment*. A Communication-centred Handbook. New York: Oxford U.P.

- Bauman, Richard 2000. Genre. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 9 (1–2), Pp. 84–87.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1992: *Do we need ideal types (in folklore)? An address to Lauri Honko*. NIF papers 2. Turku: Nordic Institute of Folklore.
- Bohman 1986. *The People's Story. On the Collection and analysis of autobiographical materials*. Method Questionnaire no 3. Stockholm: Nordiska Museet.
- Clark, Romy & Ivanič, Roz 1997. *The Politics of Writing*. London and New York: Routledge.
- Fingerroos, Outi & Riina Haanpää 2006. Muistitietotutkimuksen ydinkysymyksiä. In Outi Fingerroos, Riina Haanpää, Anne Heimo & Ulla-Maija Peltonen (eds.) *Muistitietotutkimus. Metodologisia kysymyksiä*. Tietolipas 214. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 25–48.
- Fingerroos, Outi 2010. Muisti, kertomus ja oral history -liike. In Pertti Grönholm ja Anna Sivula (eds.) *Medeistä pronssisoturiin. Kuka tekee menneestä historiaa?* Turku: Turun Historiallinen Yhdistys. Pp. 60–81.
- Grele, J. Ronald 2007. Reflections on the Practice of Oral History. Retrieving what we can from an earlier critique. *Suomen Antropologi* 32 (4): 11–23.
- Gullestad, Marianne 1986. The intimacy of anonymity. Reflections on a Norwegian Life Story Competitions. *Oral History* 23 (2): 51–64.
- Hamilton, Paula & Shopes, Linda (eds.) 2008. *Oral History and Public Memories*. Temple University Press.
- Hanks, William 1987. Discourse Genres in a Theory of Practice. *American Ethnologist* 14: 668–692.
- Harvilahti, Lauri 2012. Finland. In Regina F. Bendix & Galit Hasan-Rokem (eds.) *A Companion to Folklore*. Companions to Anthropology. UK: Blackwell Publishing Ltd. Pp. 391–408.
- Heimo, Anne 2010. *Kapina Sammatissa. Vuoden 1918 paikalliset tulkinnat osana historian yhteiskunnallisen rakentamisen prosessia*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Heimo, Anne 2014 (forthcoming). The 1918 Finnish Civil War Revisited: The Digital Aftermath. *Folklore: An Electric Journal of Folklore*.
- Hinrikus, Rutt & Kõresaar, Ene 2004. A Brief History of Life History Collection and Research in Estonia. In Tiina Kirss, Ene Kõresaar & Marju Lauristin (eds.) *She Who Remembers Survives. Interpreting Estonian Women's Post-Soviet Life Stories*. Pp.19–34.
- Honko, Lauri 1980. Kertomusperinteen tutkimustavat ja niiden tulevaisuus. In Pekka Laaksonen (ed.) *Kertojat ja kuulijat*. Kalevalaseuran vuosikirja 60. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp.18–38.
- Honko, Lauri 1988. Perinnejiteoria. In *Sananjalka*. Suomen kielen seuran vuosikirja 30. Turku.
- Hänninen et al (toim.) 2005. *Toinen tieto. Kirjoituksia huono-osaisuuden tunnistamisesta*. Helsinki: Sosiaali- ja terveysalan tutkimus- ja kehittämiskeskus.
- Juhila, Kirsi 2004. Leimattu identiteetti ja vastapuhe. In Arja Jokinen, Laura Huttunen & Anna Kulmala (eds.) *Puhua vastaan ja vaieta. Neuvottelu kulttuurisista marginaaleista*. Helsinki: Gaudeamus.
- Kaivola-Bregenhøj, Annikki 1988. *Kertomus ja kerronta*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Kalela, Jorma 1983. Ihmiset kirjoittavat oman historiansa. Paperiliiton historiahanke. *Tiede ja edistys* 3.
- Kalela, Jorma 2011. *Making History. The Historian and Uses of the past*. Palgrave, Macmillan.
- Knuuttila, Seppo 1984. Mitä sivakkalaiset itsestään kertovat. kansanomaisen historian tutkimuskoe. In Pertti Rannikko et al. (eds.) *Yhteiskunta kylässä*. Karjalan tutkimuslaitoksen julkaisuja 61. Joensuu: Joensuun yliopisto. Pp. 131–155.

- Kosonen, Päivi 2009. Moderni omaelämäkerta kertomuksena. In Samuli Hägg et al. (eds.) *Näkökulmia kertomuksen tutkimukseen*. Tietolipas 226. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 282–293.
- Kuusi, Matti 1980. Kronikaateista. In Pekka Laaksonen (ed.) *Kertoajat ja kuulijat*. Kalevalaseuran vuosikirja 60. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society. Pp. 39–46.
- Latvala, Pauliina 2005. *Katse menneisyyteen. Folkloristinen tutkimus suvun muistitiedosta*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Latvala, Pauliina 2013a: The Narrativization of Political Socialization in Finnish Oral History Texts. *Journal of Finnish Studies* 16 (2): 141–159.
- Latvala, Pauliina 2013b. *Kerrottu politiikka. Muistitietotutkimus arjen poliittisesta kulttuurista*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Latvala, Pauliina & Laurén, Kirsi 2013. The Sensitive Interpretation of Emotions. Methodological Perspectives on Studying Meanings in Oral History Texts. In Frog & P. Latvala with Helen F. Leslie (eds.) *Approaching Methodology*. *Annales Academiae Scientiarum Fennicae Humaniora* 368. Helsinki: Finnish Academy of Sciences and Letters.
- Lauhakangas, Outi 2004. *Puheesta ihminen tunnetaan. Sananlaskujen funktiot sosiaalisessa vuorovaikutuksessa*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Lehtipuro, Outi 1982. Historialliset tarinat. In Irma-Riitta Järvinen & Seppo Knuuttila (eds.) *Kertomusperinne. Kirjoituksia proosaperinteen lajeista ja tutkimuksesta*. Tietolipas 90. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 44–55.
- Lehtipuro, Outi 2012. Folkloristiikka. In *Genreanalyysi -tekstilajitutkimuksen käsikirja*. Gaudeamus, Helsinki. Pp. 492–504.
- Olsson, Pia 2011. *Women in Distress. Self-understanding among 20<sup>th</sup> -century Finnish rural women*. European Studies in Culture and Policy vol 11. Zürich: LIT Verlag.
- Peltonen, Ulla-Maija 1996. *Punakapinan muistot. Työväen muistelukerronnan muotoutumisesta vuoden 1918 jälkeen*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Peltonen, Ulla-Maija 2000. Kuolema sisällissodassa 1918 & muistamisen ja unohtamisen kysymyksiä. *Elore* 2/2000.
- Peltonen, Ulla-Maija 2003. *Muistin paikat. Vuoden 1918 sisällissodan muistamisesta ja unohtamisesta*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Peltonen, Ulla-Maija 2006. Muistitieto folkloristiikassa In Outi Fingerroos, Riina Haanpää, Anne Heimo & Ulla-Maija Peltonen (eds.) *Muistitietotutkimus. metodologisia kysymyksiä*. Tietolipas 214. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 93–119.
- Peltonen, Ulla-Maija 2009. Rajaton kokemus. Näkökulmia toiseen tietoon. In Kati Launis & Marko Tikka (eds.) *Työväki ja kokemus*. Väki voimakas 22. Helsinki: Työväen historian ja perinteen tutkimuksen seura. Pp. 11–26.
- Pentikäinen, Juha 1971. *Marina Takalon uskonto. Uskontoantropologinen tutkimus*. Forssa.
- Pink, Sarah 2010 [2009]. *Doing Sensory Ethnography*. Los Angeles & London: SAGE Publications Ltd.
- Portelli, Alessandro 1991. *The Death of Luigi Trastulli and Other Stories. Form and Meaning in Oral History*. New York: State University of New York Press.
- Portelli, Alessandro 1997. *The Battle of Valle Giulia. Oral history and the art of dialogue*. Madison: The University of Wisconsin Press.
- Portelli, Alessandro 1998. Oral history as a genre. In Chamberlain, Mary & Thompson, Paul (eds.) *Narrative and Genre*. London: Routledge. Pp. 23–45.
- Portelli, Alessandro 2006 [1998]: What makes oral history different? In Robert Perks & Alistair Thomson (eds.) *Oral History Review*. London and New York: Routledge. Second edition.



- Potter, Jonathan 1996. *Representing Reality. Discourse, Rhetoric and Social Construction*. London: SAGE.
- Pöysä, Jyrki 2006. Kilpakirjoitukset muistitietotutkimuksessa. In Outi Fingerroos, Riina Haanpää, Anne Heimo & Ulla-Maija Peltonen (eds.) *Muistitietotutkimus. Metodologiaa kysymyksiä*. Tietolipas 214. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 221–244.
- Pöysä, Jyrki 2011. Tekstin ajat. Tulkintoja muistelukirjoitusten temporaalisuudesta. In Sami Lakomäki, Pauliina Latvala & Kirsi Laurén (eds.). *Tekstien rajoilla. Monitieteisiä näkökulmia kirjoitettuihin aineistoihin*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 316–348.
- Roos, J.P. (1987). *Suomalainen elämä. Tutkimus tavallisten suomalaisten elämäkerroista*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Savolainen, Ulla 2009. Kasvun tiellä ja muutosten kynnyksellä. Evakkopojan muistelukertomuksen kronotoopit. *Kasvatus ja aika* 3.
- Sheridan, Dorothy, Street Brian & Bloome, David 2000. *Writing Ourselves. Mass-Observation and Literacy Practices*. Cresskill, New Jersey: Hampton Press Inc.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena 1984. *Tarina ja tulkinta. Tutkimus kansankertojista*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Tarkka, Lotte 2013. *Songs of the Border People. Genre, reflexivity, and performance in Karelian oral poetry*. FF Communications 305. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Thompson, Paul 1998. Sharing and Reshaping Life Stories. Problems and Potential in Archiving Research Narratives. In Mary Chamberlain & Paul Thompson (Eds.) *Narrative and Genre*. London and New York: Routledge.
- Ukkonen, Taina 2006. Yhteistyö, vuorovaikutus ja narratiivisuus muistitietotutkimuksessa. In Outi Fingerroos, Riina Haanpää, Anne Heimo & Ulla-Maija Peltonen (eds.) *Muistitietotutkimus. metodologiaa kysymyksiä*. Tietolipas 214. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 175–198.
- Virtanen, Leea 1982. Henkilökohtainen kerronta. In Irma-Riitta Järvinen & Seppo Knuuttila (eds.) *Kertomusperinne. Kirjoituksia proosaperinteen lajeista ja tutkimuksesta*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 171–205.

# The Reputation of a Genre

## Understanding the Changing Meaning of Rumor

**Greg Dalziel**

A common feature of writing about rumor finds the author beginning with two observations. The first, apologetic in its tone, almost a disclaimer to the reader, is that rumors are incredibly difficult to define. The concept, we're told, is entirely too slippery, eluding the grasp of even the most seasoned or erudite researcher. The second observation is then a brief note on some of the everyday 'common' usages of rumor; these commonsense meanings of rumor will vary, we are told, so that sometimes 'rumor' is a synonym for 'false' while other times it means 'untrustworthy', or perhaps is equivalent to 'gossip', for example. This variety adds to the complexity of studying rumor. It is implied that these things do not tell us anything *really* about rumor.

I suggest we linger and pause where other authors quickly shuffled on. We can treat 'rumor' as simply as these previous authors have described its everyday usage — a label attached to information in order to categorize it as distinct from other classes of information. In this sense, what is to be studied is not any independent, universal property of rumor, if one can be even said to exist. Nor is it necessarily the psychological needs that rumor serves. Rather I propose to examine why and by whom the concept of rumor has been used to categorize items of information. This is a vein that has been utilized in some areas of sociology but one that has not been applied to the study of rumor (DiMaggio 1997). This approach to the study of rumor examines the meaning of the concept of rumor for a particular group (and variations within and between groups), in what contexts it is deployed, by whom, and with what effect. In this paper, then, I take a slightly different route from the majority of sociologically or psychologically inclined rumor researchers. In paying attention to the difficulties often faced in the study of rumor we arrive at a much simpler understanding of rumor — but one that potentially yields more fruitful results.

In trying to explain what work rumor does, psychologists believe it expresses or alleviates internal emotional tensions while sociologists look at rumor as a collective form of sensemaking. Yet the manner in which rumor is conceived in previous approaches often fail to hold up to scrutiny. The conundrum facing both approaches is that they yield a mismatch between the concept of rumor held by the researcher and that of the group being studied. Here,

then, I want to introduce to this scholarly tradition the notion that the concept of rumor simply categorizes information. To label an item of information, some aspect of communication, as ‘rumor’ is to create a distinction between that and other categories of knowledge such as ‘news’ or ‘gossip’. This is not a particularly novel or groundbreaking claim – indeed, it is one noted in much of the literature I rely on. Yet, it needs to be brought together with the research tradition of rumor in sociology, where previous work in this field has failed to extend this idea or look at the implications of such an observation.

The paper is structured as follows. I begin with some of the ways rumor is distinguished from other genres of discourse such as gossip and contemporary legend. I then take a rather chronological approach to laying out previous research, beginning in the early twentieth century work on rumor, predominated by researchers inspired by psychopathology and behaviorism. The major figures in this field, Allport and Postman, are the focus of attention along with We take a brief detour to look at how rumor was conceived of in the United States during World War II; the context in which rumor was studied during this period had a profound effect on the direction research took. We then contrast this vein of research with that of the sociologist Tamotsu Shibutani, the next most influential thinker on rumor. After examining his writing on rumor as collective sensemaking we touch on the work of more recent scholars who see rumor as a tool to understand variations in plausibility and credibility within distinct communities. Throughout this examination we highlight some of the gaps and flaws in rumor research. We attempt to mitigate these gaps in the final section which looks at recent work in the sociology of cognition and culture to understand how our approach to rumor may work and look at some possible applications of such research.

### **Distinguishing Rumor**

Rumor researchers have long had a problem with preparing an adequate definition of rumor. It is most often defined by what it is not, commonly being contrasted with other “discourse genres” (van Dijk 1985) such as gossip, contemporary (urban) legend, or conspiracy theories. One finds the distinctions between these are often blurry. The same piece of data might be alternatively described as rumor, legend, and so on by different researchers. This is notwithstanding the problems faced by experimental research into rumor where respondents often give, to the frustration of the researcher, examples of ‘gossip’ instead of ‘rumor’ (DiFonzo & Bordia 2007). Some researchers have noted that distinctions between these different discourse genres are meaningless to the narrators, i.e. in the emic level. Especially in

the case of rumor and contemporary legend, there is practically no distinction at all. (Turner 1987; Kapferer 1990; Fine 1992; Turner 1993; Fine & Turner 2001; Fine & Ellis 2010.)

In research, rumors are often distinguished from contemporary legend or gossip by: (1) their content, rumors are about topics of general concern whereas gossip is about individuals of interest within the confines of the strong ties of a social network; (2) narrative structure, rumors are said to lack a narrative structure as opposed to contemporary legend<sup>1</sup> (DiFonzo & Bordia 2007); (3) function – rumor is a form of collective or individual sensemaking and can serve the purpose of alleviating internal anxiety due to ambiguity, whereas gossip functions as a form of social grooming (Gluckman 1963, 1968; Dunbar 1996), while contemporary legend serves the purpose of conveying morals or to speak to the underlying concerns of a community (this last function is common to rumor for some researchers) (Mullen 1972; Heath et al. 2001; Fine & Ellis 2010).

Rumor research is also often seen to differ from that of folklore and contemporary legend with its emphasis on examining either the psychological underpinnings for why rumor is believed and/or disseminated, or its relation to group processes and social structure. However, while rumor researchers might have seen folklore and legend researchers as more interested in collecting “infinitely varying narrative texts” (Fine & Ellis 2010: 4) in order to engage in various forms of structuralist or generic analyses that is not to say that rumor research has not done this of a type. One does come across a variety of attempts — implicit or explicit — that categorize various subgenres of rumor; these vary based on institutional context (financial rumors, corporate rumors, etc.) and on the topic or target of the rumor (race rumors or rumors of an out-group). One of the more well-known attempts at classifying various sub-categories of rumor was Robert H. Knapp, a World War II-era rumor and rumor control researcher at Harvard, who devised a scheme classifying rumors based on the theme expressed: pipe-dream rumors (hopeful rumors), bogie-rumors (negative rumors), and wedge-driving (rumors about another group) (Knapp 1944). I examine this attempt later in the paper.<sup>2</sup>

Research varies, in addition, between examining rumor as a *process* or as a *product* (Fine & Rosnow 1976). Often it attempts to do both. Rumor is seen as a product, that is a discrete item of information, or as a process (either individually or collectively) to deal with the environment.

---

<sup>1</sup> Footnote: Although I think this point is rather debatable. See Dalziel (2013).

<sup>2</sup> Knapp’s classification seems very much similar to that of Hart (1916) although this is not cited in the work.

Not surprisingly, answers and methods are dependent on which academic domain the researcher situates themselves in. To that end, psychologists of various hues found rumor to either express internal emotional states (Allport & Postman 1947; Prasad 1950; Jung 1964) or as a pathological expression of some deviant tendencies (Hart 1916). Those of a more sociological bent viewed rumor as being intimately tied with group processes, social structure, identity, and so on (Shibutani 1966; Fine 1992).

In both cases, however, one finds there is often a strong normative component to the research; we highlight some of these in the next section. The context in which researchers study rumor has a profound effect on the how rumor concepts are devised and studied, and what the goals of such research are. For example, World War II-era research in the U.S. was shaped by the perceived need by the government to control information and to minimize rumors, viewing rumor as detrimental to morale (Knapp 1944; Allport & Postman 1947; Rosnow 1991; Faye 2007). On the other hand, research during the 1960s — again, in the U.S. — often viewed rumors as having a causal effect of varying strength on racial unrest and riots (Klapp 1972; Knopf 1975; 2006). More recent rumor research, often in which the boundary with ‘contemporary legend’ is fuzzy, views rumor in the context of group responses to changes brought about by modernity or expressing group identity in relation to the wider social structure (Kapferer 1990; Fine 1992; Turner 1993; Maines 1999). One common theme, however, between all of these periods is the study of rumor within the context of post-disaster situations (Prasad 1935, 1950; Sinha 1952; Danzig 1958; Tsuganesawa 1996).

### **Early Rumor Research: Psychological Approach to the Study of Rumor**

Early work on rumor took as their starting point that rumor was, at worst, outright falsehood and, at best, distorted or exaggerated items of communication (Hart 1916, Prasad 1935). Such an understanding of rumor essentially directed these early studies to examine three interrelated questions: (1) how do these falsehoods or distortions arise; (2) why do people believe such things; and (3) why do they then communicate them to others.

This focus on distortion led to some attempts to conduct experiments on rumor using the method of serial reproduction studies originally used to test distortion in testimony and memory (Stern 1902, 1938; Bartlett 1932). This experiment is essentially a version of the game ‘whispers’ and entailed a message being communicated in a controlled setting from individual to individual and tracking changes in the message as it traveled. The most well known users of this method were Gordon Allport and Leo Postman who were the leading researchers on rumor

and rumor control in the U.S. during World War II; their book *The Psychology of Rumors* is the most cited in the field. Analyzing the results from their serial transmission studies, Allport and Postman surmised that because of cognitive limitations in memory rumors underwent three possible changes as they spread: leveling, sharpening, and assimilation (Allport & Postman 1947). The consequences of this are that as rumors spread some details are omitted, some are accentuated, and gaps in information are filled or added in.

What is striking about these studies, besides their artificiality, is the rather parsimonious view of human communication. While there is no evidence that Allport and Postman were aware of the research at the time, it echoes the highly influential model of communication put forward by Shannon and Weaver (1964), later modified by Berlo as the Sender-Message-Channel-Receiver (SMCR) model (1960). In this model of human communication, a sender sends a message along a channel to a receiver. Any kind of ‘noise’ or disruption on the channel will interfere with the ability of the receiver to understand the message sent, akin to the way a telephone system works (Corman et al 2008). Coming from information theory and their work on radar systems this model has some merits but translated into a model for human communication it ignores the active agency of the receiver in interpreting the message sent. This passivity is evident in Allport and Postman’s serial transmission studies which posit simply that a hearer receives a message in its entirety from a sender, and because of cognitive limitations on memory (and other things) the message gets distorted.

This view of human communication also assumes that people begin from a starting point of truth which is then distorted as it is communicated amongst the masses (and, importantly, outside of official/authoritative media channels) (Kapferer 1990). This belies that in many cases people work towards the truth, not away from it (this is not to say that people cannot err in their work towards a commonly accepted truth). Conceiving of and measuring rumor in this way also “implies the existence of some objective standard from which deviations can be measured” (Shibutani 1966: 7). While Allport and Postman (1947: 5) posit that rumors are part of peoples’ “effort after meaning” it appears that, in their view, it is a rather passive search.

Caplow (1947: 298) writes that another problem with Allport and Postman’s reliance on serial transmission studies is that while they may reveal “fantastic variation in content” they lead to a view of rumor as “a rather aberrant form of communication and to focus attention only on its sweeping unreliability.” This focusing attention on seemingly aberrant communication has

implications both for how we think about human communication, about the manner in which knowledge is acquired and constructed.

While one might criticize Allport and Postman on the methods they used — virtually unused in contemporary rumor study — the concept of rumor they devised remains extremely influential and became the basis for much of the subsequent rumor concepts (Rosnow & Fine 1976; Rosnow 1991; DiFonzo & Bordia 2007). Allport and Postman (1947: ix) defined rumor as “a specific (or topical) proposition for belief, passed along from person to person, usually with secure standards of evidence being present.”

Rumor, then, is not necessarily true or false. Rather, the information is lacking the normal standards of evidence that one would associate with the news or official information. In this sense, there is nothing implied in the concept that rumors are inherently false; such a detail is also prevalent in later rumor concepts (Fine & Rosnow 1976; Kapferer 1990). This differs from earlier publications which quite openly stated that rumors were falsehoods. The hope was (and presumably still is) that this epistemologically neutral view of rumor would free rumor research from simply being an exercise in fact-checking and would allow the researcher to explore the underlying dynamics of rumor.

In practice, however, what Allport and Postman studied were items of communication that were either wholly or partially false (that is, distorted or exaggerated). This is not a problem unique to Allport and Postman. Indeed, if one analyzes the data used in rumor research (i.e. the “rumors”) one finds that invariably the rumor is an example of a wholly or partially false story or communication circulating within a community.

Similarly, Shibutani objected to Allport and Postman’s definition of rumor as ‘unverified information’, noting that there is a whole range of information people use everyday to make decisions that “cannot meet high standards of verifications” (Shibutani 1966: 94) but that we do not call rumor. I return to this dilemma later in the paper.

While Allport and Postman detailed the way in which distortion can occur (especially in word of mouth communication) this still does not tell us why rumors are believed or spread. Again, this comes down to whether the research is taking a psychological, social psychological or sociological approach to the study of rumor.

Psychology researchers viewed rumor both as an “expression of individual states of mind” (Rosnow & Fine 1976: 51) and as “serving important emotional ends (Allport & Postman 1947: ix). In the case of the former, rumor content reflects internal states of mind (fear, hope, hatred) while for the latter rumor served as a way of reducing psychological pressure brought about by experiencing ambiguity (Allport & Postman) or cognitive dissonance (Festinger 1962). Belief in false information came about because under certain situations (crisis, disaster) people’s ability to use their critical faculties was lowered creating “an attitude which made them think that nothing was too strange and too extraordinary to happen” (Prasad 1935: 10). Yet while all of these factors explain why rumor may have the content it does, or why people may believe them, it still does not explain why people spread rumors.

Knapp (1944: 34) identified five psychological reasons for why people spread rumor: (1) exhibitionism, that is, someone spreading rumors to make themselves feel important; (2) helping others via sharing information; (3) giving “reassurance and emotional support” to people in our social circle; (4) expressing hostility towards members of an out-group; and (5) due to the “projection of subjective conflicts”, where rumor is a cathartic attempt to express suppressed emotions (this is close to Jung’s (1964) explanation for rumor).

In addition to these apparently objective bases for rumor belief and diffusion there were others who saw rumor as a far more deviant and malicious act. Just as serial transmission studies see rumor as an aberrant form of communication that deviates from some golden standard so did some of the early rumor concepts. Rumor, then, was due to pathological processes at work or deficiencies in moral character.

Hart (1916: 20), for example, writing at the end of World War I, posited that people who spread rumors had “the desire to figure as a person of distinction, to occupy the centre of the stage, and to have the eyes and ears of our neighbours directed admiringly at us.” Others saw it more as akin to a defect in character; rumors were spread by people who gained “perverted satisfactions... from exaggerating or spreading false reports” (Schmeidler & Allport 1944: 144). Another psychiatrist during World War II wrote that rumors are “spread by malicious or disgruntled citizens, or even by innocent dupes who like the childlike feelings of superiority derived from imparting supposed secrets.” (Masserman 1946: 231) Another World War II-era study by the U.S. National Research Council wrote, “the most persistent rumor-mongers... are those that feel emotionally insecure and are not well adjusted to life. These individuals are



emotionally upset more easily and also lack and need prestige.” (Quoted in Shibutani 1944: 22)

If rumors are false, then one is not only deceiving oneself in believing them but deceiving others in spreading them. This deception caused people to make bad decisions — the implication being if they had the ‘correct’ information they would not have made those choices. Such deceptions took advantage of the psychological weakness of particular individuals or inflamed the passions of the (illogical and dangerous) crowd mind (Trotter 1908; 1916). These underlying notions or biases toward rumor means that rumors were — and often still are — associated with riots and decreasing levels of trust between social groups (Chicago Commission on Relations 1968; Danzig 1958; Musambachime 1988; Mackey 2001; Bubandt 2000; 2008; Kirsch 2002; Knopf 2006).

### **World War II and the Study of Rumor**

This negative view of rumors and the problems they cause was especially prevalent in the U.S. during World War II, as some of the above quotes have illustrated. Rumors were thought to decrease trust with the government and reduce morale. The government needed the acquiescence of the public to make economic sacrifices and participate in large-scale government programs. Rumors were seen as an impediment to this. Knapp (1944: 22) wrote that “wartime rumors not only impair morale and confidence, but are in many instances the deliberate weapon of enemy propaganda.” Allport and Lepkin (1945: 3) in their analysis of certain rumors in circulation during World War II wrote that “they created... a genuine problem for the administration of the rationing program and for the solidarity of the country in its war effort.”

Here we see that the study of rumor was also the study of social control. There was the belief that the diffusion of rumor both represented a lack of social control and conformity, but also would cause people to not follow directions from the state. Indeed, there was a strong normative element to the meaning of rumor during World War II. Indeed, this concern with conformity and control led to the creation of a variety of organizations tasked with collecting rumor in order to facilitate rumor control. As rumors were seen as false information — mistaken beliefs — in circulation a common method of rumor control was via the “refutations of false assertions” (Allport & Lepkin 1945: 3).

Knapp's writing on rumor control is indicative of prevailing attitudes in some quarters towards rumor during World War II. His six sets of rules highlight the importance of the context of social control and conformity in understanding rumor research. Rumors are seen to be anything deemed explicitly false or anti-state. The state here is seen as the final arbiter on truth and reality. As such, Knapp (1944: 35–36) posits that rumors can be suppressed through: (1) “good faith in the regular media of communication”; (2) “maximal confidence in leaders” (rumors of authority figures were particularly troubling); (3) “Issue as much as news as possible, as quickly as possible”; (4) Make information as accessible as possible; (5) “Campaign deliberately against rumor mongering”; (6) “Prevent idleness, monotony, and personal disorganization.” Here we can discern some of the meaning of rumor: it arises out of a lack of trust in media and/or authority figures, out of a lack of information, and because people are “idle”.

In fact, a headline from the November 22, 1942 issue of the *Daily Boston Globe* highlights the normative meaning of rumor during World War II in the United States: “Rumor Study Shows Baseless, Vicious Stories Give Aid to Enemy by Confusing the Public.” The modern study of rumor, shaped heavily by the work of Allport and Postman along with Robert Knapp, was not merely a ‘scientific’ study to explain rumor, but instead of rumor control.

The U.S. government (amongst other) instituted a number of campaigns to create norms against the spreading of ‘rumors’ (however defined). It is not clear how successful they were, given the prevalence of rumors noted by researchers during the war. However, Allport and Lepkin (1945), discussing difficulties in collecting rumors in circulation, surmising that people might be hesitant to share rumors with researchers because of the government campaign against rumors.

What is interesting about the public campaign of rumor control — with public admonitions that ‘loose lips sink ships’ at the like — is the implicit meaning that rumors, in fact, can be *true*. First, that they may accurately reflect some event or planned events; secondly that they may accurately reflect collective understandings or emotions. Caplow (1947: 298), writing about rumors in the military, wrote that “Rumors do undoubtedly threaten military secrecy insofar as they may contain the gist of military secrets.” That is, communication labeled as rumor is a threat to an organization because they are often true.

I highlight the way in which rumor was conceived of within the context of World War II in order to show how the concerns of the state — controlling rumor — informed the work of those conducting rumor research. Indeed, the point of rumor research was in order to improve rumor control. The context in which rumor was conducted cannot be divorced from the research itself and the goals towards which the research was directed.

### **Sociological Approaches to Rumor**

After Allport and Postman the next most influential rumor researcher is Tamotsu Shibutani. He took rumor research in a much different direction from that of Allport & Postman, Knapp, and the psychological and behaviorist approaches to rumor. A second generation (*nisei*) Japanese-American, Shibutani grew up in Northern California. During World War II he was briefly interned before joining the US Army (Shay 2005). Shibutani actively collected rumors in the Japanese-American community after the attack on Pearl Harbor, data that he used in his graduate work on rumors at the University of Chicago.

Shibutani objected to the behaviorist approach to rumor viewing it as entirely too individualized and overly mechanistic. For Shibutani, while not discounting individual-level processes at work, the group was central to the study of rumor. If a rumor is not communicated can it still be called a rumor? Beyond the passivity in people suggested by the earlier approaches, for Shibutani (and to which we're inclined to agree) these psychological and behaviorist studies treated rumor as some sort of physical object with universal properties that exists “independently of human behavior — something that strikes the individual from some outside source, pass[es] through, [and] initiates response” (Shibutani 1948: 43). The problem for Shibutani is that in this sense rumor is too often treated as a “noun rather than a verb, it is seen as a thing having a separate existence” (Shibutani 1966: 8).

Shibutani, instead, saw rumor as a verb and not a noun. It was a process not a product. Rumor, for Shibutani, was when people experiencing ambiguity “attempt to construct a meaningful interpretation of it by pooling their intellectual resources. It might be called collective problem-solving” (Shibutani 1966: 17). Inspired by pragmatism and symbolic interactionism, this is a radically different view from Allport and Postman of human agency and human communication. It is one that does not involve falsehood, deception, and distortion but rather one that finds people adopting different roles and in interaction with others attempting to construct a meaningful interpretation of an ambiguous event.

Shibutani emphasized a more collective view of rumor, seeing it not as a static product of either internal emotional states or distortion through cognitive limitations, but rather as an active, collective process of people attempting to understand the world around them.

While I find Shibutani's account of rumor perhaps more agreeable than most, Shibutani still ends up reifying the concept of rumor. His description of rumor ends up meaning that essentially, all the communicative acts within the collective sensemaking process are 'rumor'. Yet this notion of rumor as action ignores the usage of rumor as a concept by the groups engaged in sensemaking, the vary objects of study for Shibutani. As such, not all of the communicative acts would be called 'rumor' — indeed, there are a host of other discourse genres and communicative responses people might use to categorize the variety of communication that goes on when people are trying to make sense of a situation. His approach still — implicitly — only finds that which is bizarre or, more often than not, deemed after the fact as false. Indeed, Shibutani's definition of rumor — as a collective enterprise where intellectual resources are pooled to come up with a definition of the situation — could also be applied to that which is normally contrasted with rumor, that is, with news itself.

The sociologist Karen Cerulo (2000) has written about a process she calls "story elaboration" arguing that people often just digest minimal elements of a news story, for example the headline, the lead or selected quotes. Yet even with these minimal elements people attempt to construct an understanding of the narrative; that is story elaboration is wherein people "clutch a mere outline of a phenomenon and actively author 'the rest of the story'" (Cerulo 2000: 22). This would appear very similar to Shibutani's formulation of rumor.

As I noted earlier, Shibutani's approach implicitly tends to highlight the seemingly bizarre products, the outliers, of collecting sensemaking. The sociologist Wayne Brekhus, following Durkheim's interest of the sacred and profane, writes about what he terms the sociology of the marked and unmarked. Brekhus (1998: 35) argues that the "very act of naming or labeling a category simultaneously constructs and foregrounds that category." In the United States at least, much of sociology has looked at these foregrounded 'marked' categories, such as riots, racism, and inequality. This occurs as things that are thought to be "socially extreme are marked while those that are regarded as socially neutral remain unmarked (or taken for granted)" (Brekhus 1998: 35) Sociologists, then, tend to focus on the highly visible, dramatic, and extreme (Brekhus 1998: 41).

In terms of rumor research the construction and foregrounding of the rumor category tends to highlight the seemingly bizarre, often outwardly false things, that people seem to believe. It gives “greater epistemological weight to the study of extraordinary interactions” (Brekhus 1998: 46). In Shibutani’s case, by attempting to construct a concept of rumor as the action of collective sensemaking it serves to mark this act as one that, by its very nature, produces outcomes that are labeled as ‘rumor’. Yet in doing this, Shibutani’s concept elides the fact that the bulk of communicative interactions of a collective sensemaking process is communication that the participants themselves would not label as ‘rumor’, nor in many cases would researchers. In focusing on this particular foregrounded marked category it serves only to exoticize this aspect of communication, ignoring the very mundane and prosaic elements of sensemaking.

In addition, the construction and foregrounding of this marked category, the crafting of distinct categories of rumor and news, has the effect of making the production of knowledge appear a lot more static and neat and tidy than it actually is (Adkins 1996). The distinction between rumor and news (and the lack of attention on any communication that is considered neither) often obliterates any similarities between the two categories.

The notion of ambiguity is shared, however, by both Shibutani along with Allport and Postman. Indeed, for Allport and Postman ambiguity was a key component of their “basic law of rumor” in which they posited that “the amount of rumor in circulation will vary with the importance of the subject to the individuals concerned *times* the ambiguity of the evidence pertaining to the topic at issue” (Allport & Postman 1946–1947: 502). However, for Allport and Postman ambiguity caused emotional stress and tension which must be alleviated through rumor. Shibutani did not discount these individual-level emotional stresses, but he viewed ambiguity as a situation where people actively worked together to reduce that ambiguity via creating a meaningful interpretation. In both Shibutani and Allport & Postman’s formulations, however, ambiguity is a rather undefined concept. Here we would interpret both their views on ambiguity as reflecting what the sociologist Sandra Ball-Rokeach (1973: 378) termed pervasive ambiguity in which “there is insufficient information to construct a definition of a situation.” This differs from “focused ambiguity” defined by a need to find a solution to a well-bounded problem.

### **Rumors, Plausibility, and Credibility**

While ambiguity is quite central to Shibutani and Allport & Postman’s view of rumor, others saw things slightly differently. For these rumor researchers the persistence and circulation of

some rumors cannot simply be explained either by (ambiguous) notions of ambiguity or due to individual psychological states. Seeing rumors as ‘truth claims’ about the world, the circulation of such claims implies a certain level of belief amongst the community in which these claims persist (Fine & Ellis 2010). In this sense the circulation of rumors tells us about levels of plausibility and credibility within a community. Credibility generally refers to the source of information, whereas plausibility is related to whether believe a claim may be true.

This approach can be quite fruitful and researchers using this approach attempt to map out the contours of a community of speakers. Zerubavel (1997: 12) would call these “thought communities” or “cognitive subcultures” although in the United States it is seen through the more salient lenses of race and identity. A number of works, indeed, find similar stories circulating in distinct communities albeit with the target of the story altered. For example, the same story may circulate within two separate racial groups of someone meeting a violent end, with the perpetrator a member of the different group (Fine & Turner 2001). Other analyses find particular claims circulating in distinct communities that are believed as implausible in other communities (generally by their lack of circulation) (Turner 1993). David Maines (1999) called these “racialized narrative structures.” Analyzing rumors in this sense, one focuses on the content of the story to gauge its plausibility. The benefits of this analysis are that it forces the researcher to think about the context of the narrative within the broader social structure, rather than as a product of individual processes. Similarly, it focuses Shibutani’s assertion of collective sensemaking to one in which the outcomes are dependent on social influences; while collective sensemaking may be common to all groups, the outcomes of such efforts are not. Fine (Fine 1992; Fine & Turner 2001) devised a model called the ‘folklore diamond’ in an attempt to understand the production of such content, and hence understand the boundaries plausibility and credibility in a community. The folklore diamond model consists of three inputs to explain rumor content: (1) social structure; (2) personal imperatives; and (3) performance dynamics. The combination of these factors, for Fine, influences the content of rumors and contemporary legend.

The issue with research of this type, however, is an unreflexive acceptance of what is ‘rumor’. In these cases, rumors are stories which either the researcher or the majority believe to be false and/or peculiar. It is not clear why some stories are chosen as rumor and others are not and it only serves to study seemingly abnormal or atypical stories, the very problem that Brekhus explores.

However, previous rumor research working within a behaviorist framework and/or focusing on the truth-value of the claims tended to focus on the communication itself divorced from those actually doing the communication. Sociological work that viewed rumor as a causal factor in riots, for example, tended to fall into the same trap. The problem when communication gets removed from those engaged in it, where the communication alone is thought to have a negative impact, is that policy is directed towards rumor control rather than examining why the communication was plausible to the community in which it circulated in the first place.

### **Context and Rumor**

So where are we at the moment? Early rumor research tended to view communication in a parsimonious and mechanistic fashion. Rumors were falsehoods that had the effect of deceiving those who believed them. These falsehoods had a negative effect on communal relations or between those of the state and people. Rumors were thus seen as being the product of pathological defects, poor moral character or, at best, the result of distortion resulting from cognitive limitations on memory and recall.

The negative view of rumors during World War II and concerns by the state about information and belief and morale drove much rumor research. As such Allport & Postman mixed experimental studies with collecting rumors as part of rumor control efforts. As part of their research they devised what they thought was a neutral, testable concept of rumor. The benefits, in some ways, was that this concept was supposed to be divorced from the varieties of meaning that rumor could have amongst different communities (something that made collecting rumors difficult). The drawback, as Shibutani emphasized, was too broad a concept; there are, in fact, many types of information we believe and make decisions based on that are technically 'unverified' yet are not called rumor.

As I noted in the introduction, and in the criticisms of Knapp's research, rumor can have different or multiple meanings depending on the community using that term or based on context. Fine & Turner write that "Like many concepts used by the general public, however, rumor has multiple meanings." (Fine & Turner 2001: 18) The contextual nature of rumor means that the same item of information may be categorized as 'rumor', 'gossip', or 'news' (or not even categorized at all). Rosnow writes that rumor is "defined by the context in which it circulates" (Rosnow 1998: 14). That is, "Whether or not a communication were called rumor would depend on who was saying what to whom." (Rosnow 1998: 14) Here Rosnow is saying whether an item of communication is called 'rumor' or not is dependent on the level of

knowledge that someone may have about the communication; that is, whether they take it to be true or not. But whether something is called ‘rumor’ or not is also dependent on the meaning of ‘rumor’ to the individuals involved in the communication. The importance of context was brought up Shibutani who criticized the thematic content analysis of researchers like Knapp. Shibutani (1944: 23) noted that,

A rumor with the same content may be the source of fear for one person and a source of hope for another. A classification such as that attempted by Knapp involves the assumption that a given rumor has an effect which is generic in the rumor itself...

These variations in context are due to variations in meaning of the concept of rumor. Luis White, in her study of rumors in Africa, writes along similar lines, saying, “Not everyone hears or appreciates or understands gossip the same way — some gossip and some rumour may be unreliable to some people while sounding perfectly reasonable to others” (White 1994: 75).

Yet these multiple meanings — and the implications of such variations in meaning — are often left untouched by rumor researchers. In fact, this very problem raises important questions about previous attempts at more ‘scientific’ studies into rumor. This failure to “take account of changes in the interpretations of the objects of study” (Flyvbjerg 2001: 32) in fact has major implications for the study of rumor.

Essentially, the stability of the rumor concept — and hence the positivist study of rumor exemplified by Allport and Postman — is dependent on the researcher’s concept being an adequate fit for the object of study. But this object of study — rumor — is entirely dependent on the interpretations of both the researcher and the communities in which ‘rumor’ spreads. The common fact that there is often a large variation between what the researcher defines as ‘rumor’ and what a given community defines as ‘rumor’ means that much of the rumor research will end up empty-handed. This is the conundrum of what Giddens (1982: 11–13) terms the “double hermeneutic” whereby the study of society and social actors in society “depends upon the social scientific observer accurately understanding the concepts whereby the actors’ conduct is oriented.”

A good example of the difficulties one has in studying a concept that is thoroughly dependent on both one’s own interpretation of it as well as those one is ostensibly studying are experiments conducted on labeling communication statements as rumor. Kirkpatrick (1932) and Smith (1947) gave students a number of statements labeled as either fact, rumor, or were not labeled at all. Smith’s results showed that while labeling something as ‘fact’ apparently increased



believability in a story, labeling something as ‘rumor’ did not reduce believability in the manner expected. Smith (1947: 87) writes “‘rumor’, itself, clearly does not have the automatic withdrawal value it might be supposed to have.” For Allport and Postman (1947: 189) this revealed that the public were “not yet rumor conscious” about what the label rumor really meant. Writing about the implications for rumor control they write, “It means that one cannot kill rumors merely by tagging them” (Allport & Postman 1947: 191). Yet this also reveals that the *meaning* of rumor in the minds of the researcher and in those of the actors being observed was different. For the researchers, the concept rumor was used to label statements that were false (and hence pernicious). For those participants in the study, rumor was a label used to categorize statements that might be true or might be false. It simply meant uncertainty.

The implications of this division between the researchers’ understanding of the concept and those of the participants were not explored at the time, but as Giddens observes it is a problem common to much social scientific research. In this case, “the study of society can only be as stable as the self-interpretations of the individuals studied” (Flyvbjerg 2001: 33). Yet much rumor research often fails to take account of this problem. The major failing is that rumor researchers often fail to seriously account for the variations in the meaning of rumor and the disjunct between the researcher’s conception of rumor and that of others. Indeed, one of the striking things about many academic concepts of rumor is that it would be difficult to use these concepts to find rumor. Common to virtually all Western accounts when we look at the data published is that ‘rumor’ is information or stories that the researcher takes to be false.

### **Forging a new approach to rumor**

How, then, do we resolve these two problems, the variations in the meaning of rumor and the issue of the marked category? I propose that instead of ignoring these issues, as much rumor research has done in the past, we confront them head on.

Taking a more ethnographic and hermeneutic-phenomenological approach (Flyvbjerg 2001), it may be more useful to look at how the rumor category is constructed and used by people in everyday life — including outside of periods of disaster and crisis — rather than treating it as an object existing separately in the world with universal properties that we can measure.

Rumor is often used as a way to mark or label some aspect of communication, a piece of information. Depending on the meaning of ‘rumor’ to the person using it (and the hearer) this could mean that the information framed as rumor is false, is untrustworthy, or they do not know

and are hedging their epistemological bets. Fine writes that, “for an audience to describe a text as rumor or legend is to assert that they do not accept it as ‘fact’” (Fine 1995: 125). White similarly takes a more agnostic stance writing, “the terms rumor [and] gossip... are deployments, not autonomous categories” (White 1994: 76).

Shibutani (1966: 3), in fact, begins his book *Improvised News* to highlight some of the variations in meaning that the concept has, and how it is deployed in everyday usage:

The central attribute of rumor, as it is commonly conceived, is error. Rumor is ordinarily regarded as a false report, or at least one which is unverified and probably false. When an unverified report turns out to be true, no one notices its obscure source. When subsequent events reveal a report to be have been unfounded, the item is dismissed as having been ‘only a rumor.’ It is also customary to label as ‘rumor’ those reports that one is inclined to question.

Shibutani here highlights that rumor is a concept deployed by people to categorize and create distinctions between items of communication. These are often items of information perceived as epistemologically suspicious.

If we follow these insights from previous rumor researchers, taking rumor to be a device for carving out separate “islands of meaning” (Zerubavel 1991) what does this entail? The use of categories and distinctions between them allows us to learn about the world us and make it more coherent. (Laszlo, 1990; Zerubavel 1991; Goldberg 2011) While categorization is a universal cognitive act how these categories are crafted and deployed can vary (Zerubavel 1991). Anthropologists, for example, have found in their studies of different communities how people do (or do not) distinguish news from rumor or gossip. (Firth 1956; Brison 1992; White 1994; 2000; Stewart & Strathern 2007) In many cases these distinctions either do not exist or the boundaries between categories are much less distinct than is considered in other countries.

Another way to think of studying rumor from this vantage point is to think of rumor as a ‘frame’. While this concept is most notably associated with Erving Goffman (1986) here I utilize Zerubavel’s (1991: 11) concept of a frame as being “characterized not by its contents but rather by the distinctive way in which it transforms the contents meaning.” In this sense, when we use the term rumor it frames the information to which it is applied in a particular way. Something framed or marked as rumor has its meaning changed; how this meaning changes depends itself on the particular meaning of rumor at that time and in that context by the group using it. This was noted by Shibutani (1966: 3) when he wrote that, “When an unverified report

turns out to be true, no one notices its obscure source. When subsequent events reveal a report to have been unfounded, the item is dismissed as having been ‘only a rumor.’” Similarly, in discussing the status of gossip, Adkins (1996: 326–327) writes, “When gossip attains the status of knowledge, we don’t refer to it as gossip anymore — it’s simply a fact.”

So, for example, during World War II, information that President Roosevelt was essentially paralyzed below the waist could be labeled as rumor: “No rumors about [President Roosevelt], however, have been so persistent as those concerning his health, although the White House physician and the press have constantly pointed to his amazing energy” (*Daily Boston Globe* November 22, 1942). The meaning of rumor here is that this information is false, should not be believed, and should be ignored. In other contexts such information may or may not be categorized as rumor and the meaning of rumor may or may not be different.

This in itself points to one of the strengths of studying rumor in this manner as it allows for the incorporation of power and authority into the study of rumor, something often neglected. Indeed, Fine (1995: 125) writes that one important approach to rumor would be to highlight “who has the authority to describe a particular set of truth claims as unsecured, unverified, and suspect?” When we marry the idea of rumor as a category with a study of its use situated within a particular context it enables an approach that can elucidate what Foucault (1980: 132) describes as “the ensemble of rules according to which the true and false are separated and specific effects of power attached to the true.” In many cases understanding the meaning of rumor within institutional settings would enable the researcher to highlight the manner in which distinctions are made between truth and falsity and the effects of such work.

Fine and Ellis write that “rumor involves the *power* of knowledge and the *authority* of the speaker, and thus we speak of the politics of plausibility and credibility.” (Fine & Ellis 2010: 25) Fine suggested that one look at “*when* and *how* are rumors believed as truth claims?” (Fine 1995: 126). Using our approach, however, one can take the opposite approach to see when and how truth claims are believed as rumors through the deployment of the category. As such, while we agree with Fine and Ellis in analyzing the politics of plausibility and credibility their approach may fail to account for power and authority.

None of this suggests that I discount previous concepts of rumor employed by rumor researchers as wrong in any sense. Rather, I would argue that researchers in the past were often measuring their own structures of plausibility and credibility rather than that of the community

in which the rumors were ostensibly circulating. This in itself is a useful exercise, opening the door for studying the meaning of rumor within academia, rather than treating rumor as something that ‘ordinary’ people do.

Another area of research that opens up taking this approach is to look at the connection between institutional setting and institutionalization and the meaning of rumor.

One area, for example, may be to study whether the institutionalization of mass media and the rise of the state had an effect on the meaning of rumor and distinctions between these categories. If one reads older accounts of ‘rumor’ it has a subtly different meaning than it does in modern rumor studies. A ‘rumor’ was simply news, often from afar. In the 17th century, for example, the insurance group Lloyds of London got its start in a coffee shop, “a center for the exchange of rumors” (Wright & Fayle 1928). However, the boundary between rumor and news appears to harden in the early part of the 20th century with the increasing institutionalization of the mass media, specifically newspapers.

Luis White (2000), discussing the growth of the newspaper industry in 1950s Uganda, argues that it was the growth and institutionalization of the newspaper there that began the creation of more distinct and separate categories of information such as news, gossip, and rumor. The newspaper was seen by authorities as a means of stamping out gossip and rumor by printing ‘the truth’ as “rumor and gossip were not thought to be substantiated like newspaper accounts” (White 2000: 56). The perceived authoritativeness of the printed word along with the professionalization and standardization of the rules of journalism created an increasing distinction between rumor and news and a situation where news was official, rational, and modern and rumor unofficial and irrational.

When we extend research into the meaning of rumor within institutional contexts we in fact find a variety of meanings and a variety of attitudes towards rumor. While controlling rumor was outwardly a policy of the U.S. military during World War II at the same time intelligence officers were tasked with collecting ‘rumors’ from the enlisted men as a means of the officers being aware of their concerns and morale (Caplow 1947). Shibutani wrote that Allport and Postman’s definition of rumor failed to account for the variety of ‘unverified’ information people make use of everyday and the practices of intelligence are a prime example of this. Indeed, within the intelligence community rumor is a commodity and useful for understanding both community sentiments as well as actual ‘news’. As such, one finds a strong disconnect

often between the concept of ‘rumors’ used by researchers as well as variations in the impact of these meaning differences. In some situations communication labeled rumor must be squashed whereas in others it is a useful sensemaking device.

## **Conclusion**

In this paper, I argued that the majority of previous research on rumor has reified a concept that is untenable given the variations in meaning that one finds both in the people being studied and in the researchers. Psychological research on rumor has tended to view rumor like a physical object with universal properties that can be measured and studied, largely ignoring the contextual nature of rumor that makes their meaning variable. Even when the context-dependent nature of rumor is acknowledged (Rosnow 1988) the implications of such context-dependence are not examined. Sociological research has tended to look at rumor as a collective activity aimed at sensemaking or expressing community concerns. However, these approaches still tend to exoticize rumor and fail to examine the many quotidian ways that people make sense of the normal and the unusual. I find the work of those approaches that emphasize plausibility within communities to be more fruitful approach to the study of rumor. However, they often fail to account for power and authority in the production of plausibility.

I then argued that in order to mitigate such shortcomings to begin from the starting point of many observations of rumor. That is, that rumor is (1) used to label items of information to distinguish them from other categories of information and (2) the meaning of rumor can vary.

Thinking of rumor in this way means taking a more ethnographic and phenomenological approach to the study of rumor. It means attempting to measure the meaning of rumor for a particular community at a particular point of time, how rumor was deployed, in what context, and to what effect. Doing this allows us then both to look at variations meaning between communities but also to look at issues of power and authority in communication by looking at what the effects of the rumor category are. Finally, this approach opens up avenues for a more contextual approach to rumor, looking at how the meaning of rumor differs in institutional contexts and what the effects of such meaning variances are.

## **Literature**

- Adkins, Karen C. 1996. *Knowledge Underground. Gossipy Epistemology*. PhD Dissertation: University of Massachusetts-Amherst.
- Allport, Floyd H. & Milton Lepkin 1945. Wartime Rumors of Waste and Special Privilege. Why Some People Believe Them. *The Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology* 40 (1): 3–36.

- Allport, Gordon W. and Leo Postman 1946–1947. An Analysis of Rumor. *The Public Opinion Quarterly* 10 (4): 501–517.
- Allport, Gordon W. and Leo Postman 1947. *The Psychology of Rumor*. New York: Henry Holt and Co.
- Ball-Rokeach, Sandra J. 1973. From Pervasive Ambiguity to a Definition of the Situation. *Sociometry* 36 (3): 378–389.
- Bartlett, Frederick 1932. *Remembering*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Berlo, David K. 1960. *The Process of Communication*. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Wilson.
- Brekhus, William H. 1998. A Sociology of the Unmarked: Redirecting Our Focus. *Sociological Theory* 16 (1): 34–51.
- Brison, K. J. 1992. *Just Talk: Gossip, Meetings, and Power in a Papua New Guinea Village*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.
- Bubandt, Nils 2000. Conspiracy Theories, Apocalyptic Narratives and the Discursive Construction of the Violence in Maluku. *Antropologi Indonesia* 63: 15–28.
- Bubandt, Nils 2008. Rumors, Pamphlets, and the Politics of Paranoia in Indonesia. *The Journal of Asian Studies* 67 (3): 789–817.
- Caplow, Theodore 1947. Rumors in War. *Social Forces* 25 (3): 298–302.
- Cerulo, Karen A. 2000. The Rest of the Story. Sociocultural Patterns of Story Elaboration. *Poetics* 28: 21–45.
- Chicago Commission on Race Relations 1968. *The Negro in Chicago. A Study of Race Relations and a Race Riot*. New York: Arno Press.
- Corman, Steven R. et al. (eds.) 2008. *Weapons of Mass Persuasion: Strategic Communication to Combat Violent Extremism*. New York: Peter Lang.
- Dalziel, G. R. (ed.) 2013. *Rumor and Communication in Asia in the Information Age*. London: Routledge.
- Danzig, Elliot R. et al. 1958. *The Effects of a Threatening Rumour on a Disaster-Stricken Community*. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences, National Research Council.
- DiFonzo Nicholas & Prashant Bordia 2007. *Rumor Psychology. Social and Organizational Approaches*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association.
- DiMaggio, P. 1997. Culture and Cognition. *Annual Review of Sociology* 23: 263–287.
- Dunbar, Robin 1996. *Grooming, Gossip and the Evolution of Language*. London: Faber & Faber.
- Faye, Cathy 2007. Governing the Grapevine. The Study of Rumor during World War II. *History of Psychology* 10 (1): 1–21.
- Festinger, Leon 1962. *A Theory of Cognitive Dissonance*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press.
- Fine, Gary Alan 1992. *Manufacturing Tales. Sex and Money in Contemporary Legends*. Knoxville, TN: The University of Tennessee Press.
- Fine, Gary Alan 1995. Accounting for Rumor: The Creation of Credibility in Folk Knowledge. In Regina Bendix and Rosemary Lévy Zumwalt (eds.) *Folklore Interpreted. Essays in Honor of Alan Dundes*. New York: Garland Publishing.
- Fine, Gary Alan and Bill Ellis 2010. *Global Grapevine. Why Rumors of Terrorism, Immigration, and Trade Matter*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Fine, Gary Alan and Patricia A. Turner 2001. *Whispers on the Color Line. Rumor and Race in America*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.
- Firth, Raymond 1956. Case Reports. Rumor in a Primitive Society. *The Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology* 53 (1): 122–132.
- Flyvbjerg, Bent 2001. *Making Social Science Matter: Why Social Inquiry Fails and How it Can Succeed Again*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

- Foucault, Michel 1980. *Power/Knowledge: Selected Interviews and Other Writings 1972–1977*. Hertfordshire: Harvester Press Ltd.
- Giddens, Anthony 1982. *Profiles and Critiques in Social Theory*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.
- Gluckman, Max 1963. Gossip and Scandal. *Current Anthropology* 4 (3): 307–316.
- Gluckman, Max 1968. Psychological, Sociological and Anthropological Explanations of Witchcraft and Gossip. A Clarification. *Man* 3 (1): 20–34.
- Goffman, Erving 1986. *Frame Analysis. An Essay on the Organization of Experience*. Boston: Northeastern University Press.
- Goldberg, A. 2011. Mapping Shared Understandings Using Relational Class Analysis. The Case of the Cultural Omnivore Reexamined. *American Journal of Sociology* 116 (5): 1397–1436.
- Hart, Bernard 1916. The Psychology of Rumor. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine (Section of Psychiatry)* 9 (1): 1–26.
- Heath, C. et al. 2001. Emotional Selection in Memes. The Case of Urban Legends. *Journal of Personality* 81 (6): 1028–1041.
- Jung, C. G. 1964. *Civilization in Transition*, New York: Bollingen Foundation.
- Kapferer, Jean-Noel 1990. *Rumors. Uses, Interpretations, and Images*. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers.
- Kirkpatrick, Clifford 1932. A Tentative Study in Experimental Social Psychology. *American Journal of Sociology* 38 (2): 194–206.
- Kirsch, Stuart 2002. Rumour and Other Narratives of Political Violence in West Papua. *Critique of Anthropology* 22 (1): 53–79.
- Klapp, Orrin E. 1972. *Currents of Unrest. An Introduction to Collective Behavior*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc.
- Knapp, R. H. 1944. A Psychology of Rumor. *Public Opinion Quarterly* 8 (1): 22–37.
- Knopf, Terry A. 1975. Rumor Controls. A Reappraisal. *Phylon* 36 (1): 23–31.
- Knopf, Terry A. 2006. *Rumor, Race and Riots*. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers.
- László, János 1990. Images of Social Categories vs Images of Literary and Non-Literary Objects. *Poetics* 19: 277–291.
- Mackey, Charles 2001. *Extraordinary Popular Delusions and the Madness of Crowds*. Amherst, NY: Prometheus Books.
- Maines, David R. 1999. Information Pools and Racialized Narrative Structures. *The Sociological Quarterly* 40 (2): 317–326.
- Masserman, Jules H. 1946. *Principles of Dynamic Psychiatry*. Philadelphia, PA: W.B. Saunders Co.
- Mohr, J. W. 1998. Measuring Meaning Structures. *Annual Review of Sociology* 24 (1): 345–370.
- Mohr, J. W. 2004. Using a Computer to “Find Meaning” in Historical Texts. *Newsletter of the Comparative & Historical Sociology Section of the American Sociological Association*. 10 (3) :1–10.
- Mullen, P. B. 1972. Modern Legend and Rumor Theory. *Journal of the Folklore Institute* 9 (2/3): 95–109.
- Musambachime, Mwelwa C. 1988. The Impact of Rumour. The Case of the Banyama (Vampire Men) Scare in Northern Rhodesia, 1930–1964. *The International Journal of African Historical Studies* 21 (2): 201–215.
- Prasad, J. 1935. The Psychology of Rumour. A Study Relating to the Great Indian Earthquake of 1934. *British Journal of Psychology* 26 (1): 1–15.
- Prasad, J. 1950. A Comparative Study of Rumours and Reports in Earthquakes. *British Journal of Psychology* 41 (3/4): 129–144.

- Rosnow, Ralph L. 1988. Rumor as Communication. A Contextualist Approach. *Journal of Communication* 38 (1): 12–28.
- Rosnow, Ralph L. 1991. Inside rumor. A personal journey. *American Psychologist* 46 (5): 484–496.
- Rosnow, Ralph L. and Gary Alan Fine 1976. *Rumor and Gossip. The Social Psychology of Hearsay*. New York: Elsevier.
- Schmeidler, G. R., & Allport, G. W. 1944. Social Psychology and the Civilian War Effort. May 1943-1944. *The Journal of Social Psychology* 20 (1): 145–180.
- Shannon, Claude E. and Warren Weaver 1949. *The Mathematical Theory of Communication*. Champaign, IL: University of Illinois Press.
- Shay, William L. 2005. Reflections on Tamotsu Shibutani. On a Biography and Sociology of America. *Symbolic Interaction*. 28(4): 521–523.
- Shibutani, Tamotsu 1944. *Rumors in a Crisis Situation*. MSc Dissertation: University of Chicago.
- Shibutani, Tamotsu 1948. *The Circulation of Rumors as a Form of Collective Behavior*. PhD Dissertation: University of Chicago.
- Shibutani, Tamotsu 1966. *Improvised News. A Sociological Study of Rumor*. Indianapolis, IN: The Bobbs Merrill Co.
- Sinha, Durganand 1952. Behaviour in a Catastrophic Situation. A Psychological Study of Reports and Rumours. *British Journal of Psychology* 43 (3): 200–209.
- Smith, George H. 1947. Beliefs in Statements Labeled Fact and Rumor. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology* 42 (1): 80–90.
- Stern, William 1902. Zur Psychologie der Aussage. Experimentelle Untersuchungen über Erinnerungstreue. *Zeitschrift für die gesamte Strafrechtswissenschaft* 22 (2/3): 315–370.
- Stern, William 1938. *General Psychology from the Personalistic Standpoint*. New York: Macmillan.
- Stewart, Pamela J. and Andrew Strathern 2007. *Witchcraft, Sorcery, Rumors, and Gossip*. Cambridge: University of Cambridge Press.
- Trotter, W. 1908. Herd Instinct and its Bearing on the Psychology of Civilised Man. *The Sociological Review* 1 (3): 227–248.
- Trotter, W. 1916. *Instincts of the Herd in Peace and War*. London: T.F. Unwin.
- Tsuganesawa, Toshihiro 1996. Media Reporting and Rumor Following the Great Hanshin Earthquake. *Studies of Broadcasting. An International Annual of Broadcasting Science* 32: 115–140.
- Turner, Patricia A. 1987. Church's Fried Chicken and The Klan. A Rhetorical Analysis of Rumor in the Black Community. *Western Folklore* 46 (4): 294–306.
- Turner, Patricia A. 1993. *I Heard it Through the Grapevine. Rumor in African-American Culture*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.
- van Dijk, Teun A. 1985. Dialogue as Discourse and Interaction. In Teun A. van Dijk (ed.) *Handbook of Discourse Analysis* 3. London: Academic Press.
- White, Luise 1994. Between Gluckman and Foucault. Historicizing Rumour and Gossip. *Social Dynamics* 20 (1): 75–92.
- White, Luise 2000. *Speaking with Vampires. Rumor and History in Colonial Africa*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.
- Wright Charles & C. Ernest Fayle 1928. *A History of Lloyds*. London: MacMillan & Co.
- Zerubavel, Eviatar 1991. *The Fine Line. Making Distinctions in Everyday Life*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Zerubavel, Eviatar 1997. *Social Mindscapes. An Invitation to Cognitive Sociology*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.





# Textual Politics of the Interpretative Act

## Generic Readings and the Metaphysical Detective Story

Vesa Kyllönen

Contrary to the first glance, reading a text is as an act itself stepping outside from private domain into the public, communal sphere. It is about political participation, a gesture by which one shows interest not only in the existence of meanings gathered together and shared among the community, but also in the influence of these meanings. Likewise, the reading act embodies one's interest to develop, transform and defend the meanings, which in spite of readers, are often seriously shape taking, changing and downright on their way to escape. By nature the meanings seem to flee and slip out of one's hand as one is reaching them. For same reason, revealing the ways how the interpretative act is political *ipso facto*, appears as challenging task, especially because the politics of meaning production reveals itself in arrangement process during reading, which is naturally handled by the reader. Difficult it is for one of the very reasons why the meanings actually seem to flee, is, of course, the reader's inextinguishable quest for coherence, configuration, and, yes, meaning of the work of art (see Rabinowitz 1998 [1987]: 42–46). The arrangement process the reader practices is, then, the very act by which he or she creates meanings on the one hand, and abolishes them on the other – to see the political justification of this, is like lifting oneself by the hair.

As at least some of the meanings are always genre-bound, altering them alters not only the genre but its political aspects as well. The aim of this article is to examine the generic characterization called the metaphysical detective story that is connected to late modernist narratives playing with the conventions of the detective story. It is a definement of certain group of liminal, transgressive texts which together constitute a “genre” that creates and erases at the same time; the detective genre with novel hybrids of styles, registers, formulas, and other genres. But what the metaphysical detective story especially does, as I will argue, is to mimic and deep-hole drill the reading act as such, thus being a constant reminder how even the most innocent act of interpretation may transform not only the form but the reader as well. The main argument is, then, that this metamorphosis is already dictated during reading; firstly according to those considerations on (right) meaning and enjoyment the reader is apt to have; and secondly according to textual and cognitive routes the form allows the reader. By casting a critical glance upon the reading metaphysical detective stories, the aim of the article is to dredge forth wider remarks that would serve generic studies in general.

Authors such as Umberto Eco, Thomas Pynchon, Paul Auster and Alain Robbe-Grillet have been usually mentioned in touch with the metaphysical detective story, and their influence is indeed indisputable. What gives a valid reason to drag these authors and their novels in same context, is the way all conjoin the phrasing of questions of interpretation and, at the same time, do this shifting rapidly from genre or register to another. All of them have some element of detective story present in their stories, be it then *the crime*, or a mystery, that sets the narrative and the investigation in motion; *the detective*, or a private eye, who leads the investigation; *the narrative* that proceed in accordance, or hand in hand with the investigation; or *the closure*, in which the detective has brought investigated case to its end and reveals not only *whodunit* but also why and how the criminal had done it (see Tani 1984: 41; Dove 1997: 10). These are also those basic conventions of the detective genre the metaphysical detective story in general has so willingly stretched and questioned.

If the reading act is considered as sorting, classifying and evaluating of information and at the same time, it is considered as an event, the political modus or its way of being can quickly be noticed but nebulous. The classifying process is already an act by which one connects individual texts to larger “text tribes” via connecting single strains to larger atlases (Hirsch 1967: 76–77; cf. Rabinowitz 1998 [1987]). The concept established to the field of literature theory and aesthetics, and known as hermeneutic circle demonstrates this very clearly: as readers we try to make the parts fit to the whole and in proportion, get support from the whole as we interpret the parts. Also, the interpretative current running through the history of literature and dominating especially on the later half of 20<sup>th</sup> century is still vivid: still we are bound to dispute the ways text *per se* exists and questions like who or what quarter defines it, how it exists and what kind of meanings can text express. And yet we are integral parts of history, historical beings who share meanings, play and compete with them, pick up from them the best and the most adequate ones. The question of interpretation is, therefore, still relevant. Evaluating the interpretations *is* politics; classifying the elements of text into genres, for instance, *is* political *praxis*. But what one does not consider enough and too often, is that all it eventually takes to get in the core of *praxis* is one single reading act. The textual arrangement, the generic limbs of the text, textual audiences, and the reader – there is, indeed, a good throb, or, a political debate, going on during even the most innocent act of entertaining oneself.

To attach this phrasing of question into some context, probably one of the most meaningful ways is to bring single texts together with larger text tribes (which seem to share same strains

within each tribe) but read them dialectically. In practice, this means that one reads – or tries to read – texts not only generically but also by holding other possible ways of reading near at hand. To read generically, does not, however, imply that one always acknowledges all generic features. The reader makes conjectures, assumes, uses private encyclopedic competence, for to read is in most cases to stand on the threshold of somewhat unfamiliar. In other words, whether an expert or not, the reader moves between the styles, forms, registers, or between genres, compares them, and tries to make them fit to the text he or she is reading at the current moment.

But before we can even hypothetically try to define the nature of the metaphysical detective story or ask how it works in practice – not to forget the question like what kind of value does it have in relation to the questions of interpretation and genre – our premise must be set in transitions and in metamorphoses. Instead of endless quest for origin, the emphasis is in genealogy in foucauldian sense, in examination of those conventions the particular entity uses to spawn and to multiply (cf. During 1992: 125–127). Likewise, in order to understand the metaphysical detective story as genre and to use it as aid for larger cultural, or generic understanding, it is first necessary to take a look to those separate conventional shifts which help the metaphysical detective story to appear in the course of the history of the detective story. After taking this quick look to conventional shifts, I will use Umberto Eco's concepts on interpretation as well as formal elements of *La Reprise* (2001), a novel by Alain Robbe-Grillet, to demonstrate how the genre and the politics are connected to each other during reading.

### **The Foundations of the Metaphysical Detective Story**

Already authorities such as G. K. Chesterton and Gertrude Stein conceived the detective story as an outstandingly modern form. This as a notion can be perceived to mean not only the attachment between the story and the contemporary context in which the story has been written, but also the interrelationship between the detective character and the story as a whole. (Lehman 2000 [1989]: 23.) First of the essential historical metamorphoses that participates in giving birth to the metaphysical detective story from the earlier forms of genre, haven taken its place several times and considers the detective. The wider interpretation of the sleuth is crystallized in the questions like what sort of method of interpretation, or process during which the guilty is being revealed, is needed in different phases of modernism – and how this is understood in relation to the world changing around. In other words it has been asked: what makes a good sleuth?

As metamorphosis, this is to be seen in relation to the concept of textuality that was essentially understood more diversified during the late 20<sup>th</sup> century (Jameson 2009 [1991]: 77). Therefore within the genre of the detective story, the process of detection turns gradually into something else. When starting to emphasize the *crime as text* and the quest as act of interpretation, authors can commence to manipulate the genre itself. Instead of chasing the criminal, we, as readers, can just decrypt one particular code-text at the level of narrative without feeling any real guilt whether our interpretation might be right, wrong or arbitrary – just like *Foucault's Pendulum* (1988), the second novel by Umberto Eco, illustrates. Eco's composition is being organized around various interpretations each more imaginative than other. Not until the end of the novel the reader may become convinced that the most reasonable interpretation of “key text”<sup>1</sup> introduced in the beginning of the novel might be the one that sees it just as a historical document, as an old delivery list of laundry. Until then, the reader has had time to take pleasure by bathing in the flux of poetic and imaginative readings based on innovative analogues. It is this irreconcilable contradiction – the conflict between the historical document and its wild, imaginative interpretation – that highlights Eco's novel and enables it to grow out of itself and further on, all the way under the skin of the reader as a feeling of paranoia. When the great narrative like Western historiography is challenged –like the postmodern, lyotardian mantra goes – and the phenomena are interpreted from the perspective of secret meaning hidden inside the each phenomenon, everyday reality altogether – media, culture, historical buildings, party politics, goods and so forth – begins to get more darker tones. With its affects Eco's novel tackles this question.

Just as crucial for the position of sleuth is the second process of metamorphosis commenced already on 1930's. The hard-boiled detective story launched in the United States between the First and the Second World War differs greatly from the earlier types of genre and especially from the classical, British detective story. The latter mainly culminated in the novels by Agatha Christie was essentially the story type of enclosed space which leaned heavily on puzzle-like problem-solving (so-called “clue-puzzle”) and limited scope of clues and suspects. Thus, the World Wars introduced a new type of detective story in which *the spaces* described by the genre became quickly larger and larger. At the same time, the sleuth's quest inevitably mutated:

---

<sup>1</sup> As key text should be seen in a position of hint or clue, Joel Black describes it as follows: “The detective uses the information supplied by the key text to achieve his final goal, which is to discover or recover a prized object that may well be *another* text. The detective's success in finding the prize will depend on his prior ability to find and read the key text that specifies its whereabouts, and even its identity.” (1999: 79.)

"the detective process is no longer only the solution of a riddle, but a quest for truth in a reality far more complex and ambiguous than in the stereotyped 'fairy tales' of the British tradition" (Tani 1984: 23). This forced the detective to turn from the virtuous and intelligent character to the cynical and hung-over private eye. With good reason, Stefano Tani has called this new detective as *doomed*: in urban milieu the feeling of inability to problem-solving grows simultaneously with a sense of alienation.<sup>2</sup> Regardless of attempts, the private eye does not understand why the problem still remains – as if the whole world has turned against him. And in a way, it has: what the classical detective story used to cherish does not seem to be accurate any longer. Changes in social infrastructures affect hard on the genre of the detective story, and do, thus, sow seeds for future forms.

The third transition takes place when these interpretative, or quest-related difficulties unite with the first wave of postmodernization. There are at least two sides for this transition. Firstly, at that time the detective story is implemented as a model of the narrative for different types of stories cherished by both the so-called high modernism and mass culture – which, of course, according to Fredric Jameson, becomes mixed with each other (2009 [1991]: 64). One of the most obvious examples is *The Name of the Rose* (1980), Eco's earlier best seller, in which the form of detective story was blended with the historical novel. This generic transposition, or the playful *bricolage* of “high” and “low” modernist literature, was taken seriously in postmodernist art very early (Jameson 2009 [1991]: 2–3) and it was just a matter of time, when the popular form of the detective story has been started to be utilized in other contexts. Reaching out towards the psychological description alone has been a real concession, for originally the deepening of the characters did not come into question at all because the form itself and the refinement of it were the dominant motives for the detective narrative (cf. Lovitt 1990: 68; Cawelti 1976: 36). Same transition may actually explain why the metaphysical detective story has been able to spread from the literature to the movies: in American film industry the popularity of the genre has grown rapidly and not in vain – Hollywood has always

---

<sup>2</sup> Alternatively the alienation *per se* is not the feature rooted in the detective story during the World Wars: already in the aesthetics of Dupin-stories (short stories written by Edgar Allan Poe) are labeled by alienation: the individual in the hustle and bustle of the city is like the orphan eye in the crowd (as Walter Benjamin named his analysis after Charles Baudelaire). Indeed, Romantic era is a fruitful breeding ground for the detective story. The city in "The Man of the Crowd", for instance, is actual purgatory for ghosts, shadows and rootless criminals, in which survival is possible only if the detective has trained himself to be the first class observer (Lehman 2000 [1989]: 118–119).

sought new ways to thrill and entertain and the metaphysical detective story seems to be a good, new source of inspiration.<sup>3</sup>

Secondly, many authors who started to use the form of the detective story came outside the genre and therefore could better assist the genre to become aware of itself. In Robbe-Grillet's *Les Gommages* (1953) the quest was turned against the solver and in the end, it was the detective himself who came to be the end of his own criminal investigation, the murderer.<sup>4</sup> In proportion *The Crying of Lot 49* (1966), Pynchon's novel written in the spirit of mystery story, sets a tension between Oedipa Maas and a heritage given to her, but when the solution – what the heritage might include in practice – is nearly to be exposed in the public auction and the crying of lot 49 is about to start, the novel ends. With compositions like this, the authors forced their readers to look straight into the conventions of the genre and especially at their own expectations towards the possibilities for these conventions to be fulfilled.

Along with Robbe-Grillet at the latest, there has been conversation about certain type of “bastard-genre” within the genre of detective story, that is, a postmodernist method to handle earlier forms of same genre (cf. Black 1999; Hutcheon 2005 [1992]; McHale 1992; Merivale 2010; Merivale & Sweeney 1999). I have referred to this as metaphysical detective story, which as a concept is here based on the definitions made by Michael Holquist (1983 [1972]) and Patricia Merivale and Susan Sweeney (1999), although other names for it has been given also (cf. anti-detective fiction by Tani 1984; and anti- or even post-hermeneutic detective by Black 1999: 78–80). The name chosen represents best, I think, the direction the genre has taken in relation to the classical detective story: it has began to investigate its own foundations.<sup>5</sup> This

---

<sup>3</sup> The Hollywood movies that typify the metaphysical detective story very clearly are, for instance, Christopher Nolan's *Memento* (2000) and *Insomnia* (2002), David Cronenberg's *Spider* (2002) and *The Machinist* (2003), directed by Brad Anderson. Also, in past decades two popular television series *Twin Peaks* (1990–1991), created by David Lynch, and *The Singing Detective* (1986) by Dennis Potter, borrowed some elements from the metaphysical detective story. Anterior than *Twin Peaks*, more or less failed *Der Name der Rose* (1986), based on the first novel by Eco and directed by Jean-Jacques Annaud, is also essential, likewise Alfred Hitchcock's *Vertigo* (1958).

<sup>4</sup> Robbe-Grillet's debt to Jorge Luis Borges should not be forgotten: with his short story “La muerte y brújula” (1942) Borges opened the way to the later authors to operate with the genre. It seems that if these authors took seriously the idea of genre on its way to self-realization and tried to make the genre meet the requirements of the actual world and current worldview, it is Borges who should be accredited with this. In Borges' short story the detective named Elias Lönnrot sets up the quest by starting to follow the theological hint found on the first crime scene. Nevertheless, the media informs the real murderer on this invented quest and therefore encourages accidentally the real murderer to decoy Lönnrot via other two symmetrical murder not only to the fourth crime scene but also to be the fourth victim. (Irwin 1996 [1994]: 421.)

<sup>5</sup> Likewise, it is a gradation, but the term “the detective” refers not only to conceptual looseness typical to the detective story that is held as an unintellectual and therefore entertaining “closed text”, but also to the British,

does not, however, imply that the genre at issue would be hermetically sealed. Quite contrary, as Alasdair Fowler writes about antigenres (which the metaphysical detective story in a way also is, see Tani 1984, Black 1999), applies to genre as well: “it has a life of its own that continues collaterally with the contrasting genre” (Fowler 2000 [1982]): 238). On background there is, of course, a larger theoretical turn, which is as Brian McHale (1999 [1987]) has appositely called it, the transition from the epistemological dominant to the ontological dominant in postmodernist literature, or, as one would say, the metaphysical shift. Therefore, the metaphysical detective story is not merely an experiment in form but it has both other objects of parodying and other intentions alike.

Merivale and Sweeney's attempt to aggregate the features typical to the metaphysical detective story is illustrative. At the center of the narrative there usually is (1) a detective, be he then an amateur operating on his armchair or the private eye in duty. (2) The milieu, in which the detective operates, is a labyrinthine town, city or the text detective tries to decypher. Also, the object of detective's attention is usually (3) a lost text, a missing letter or a limitation related to textuality, for example the imperfectness of a notation that is used or its opacity in general. Like his predecessors, the detective collects the clues and the hints that he supposes to be linked with the crime but as the quest proceeds he notices how nonsensical, ambivalent or idle there clues are. (4) The clues are not any longer in such significant position as they were and likely their existence in itself does not guarantee their validity. In addition to search for the missing person or the text, the detective can (5) lose his identity: as the quest tries to reach its conclusion the identity of the detective can either be challenged or split in half or just turned to more and more vacillating. (6) Neither does the quest narrated in the metaphysical detective story become enclosed: it can always show as false, useless or even impossible. (1999: 8.)

In other words, the metaphysical detective story puts its own foundations into operation, recycles and modifies them constantly to make itself fit better into current social and cognitive circumstances. The result is that the actual reader and the character straddled in the text (in this case the sleuth) nearer each other but with critical overtone in their approaches.<sup>6</sup> We, therefore,

---

”Poesque” tradition earlier than hard boiled detective story. To boil it down: the roots of the metaphysical detective story are more in ”British intellectuality” than in American adventurousness. Also, it would be possible to call it as the metaphysical mystery story but in that case the end or the enclosure of the quest would be emphasized too much. And when reaching this end is uncertain on the whole, this would lead the reader astray.

<sup>6</sup> The Romantic bipolarity between rationality and irrationality is clearly noticed in Poe's detective stories and it is this venue upon which the genre is from the beginning settled itself. The bipolarity brought order in the middle of chaos by setting in action the purely intelligent player who by using not only his power of reasoning but also



become more and more aware of our own situation as readers. We can no longer naively and with great adoration just follow the incomparability of the detective – the postmodernist texts do not let the reader behave like that very often. Instead, we are forced to participate the quest, and calmly try to tolerate its uncertainties facing at the same the possibility that we all might also fail in our reading task. The co-operation between the actual reader and the fictional detective is being challenged and like the detective in his complex text-world, the reader has to learn to read and interpret on his or her own as well. “Doomed” are them both.

### **The Quest for Genres**

The play between the reader and the text calls, nevertheless, for learning, or summon up, the basic rules at least. Usually we already have this expertise and it is based mainly on earlier reading experiences and especially on that cognitive basis that is formed and renewed via casual processes of socialization. It is like we instinctively had an intuition-based ability to abductive reasoning in relation to connections between things and phenomena, reasons and consequences. As Thomas Sebeok and Jean Umiker-Sebeok describe the concept formulated by Charles Peirce, the abduction is pre-rational preparedness to act or re-act that has evolved in us in the course of evolution (1983: 18).

In case of interpretative choices, this points to the adaptation process done during the reading. Chosen strains are connected to chosen, identified, or otherwise recognized genre. Nevertheless, the very same generic adaptation emphasizes inevitably the political nature of the interpretative act. When the metaphysical detective story as a freely moving, form-stretching vagrant in the liquid space of postmodernism is considered as generic base for adaption, the question of politics returns back to art and this time with more accented, albeit it may be harder to see it taking its shape. Surprisingly, postmodernism usually accused on immoderate irony and low in taking sides, appears to show now its true colours. The form it emphasizes especially in the case of the metaphysical detective story, has not emptied out its

---

his imagination was able to solve the mysteries and foil the irrational variables, expose the real criminal and bring this criminal to justice and indeed, make the genre conventions and expectations of actual reader to come across (Tani 1984: 4; Knight 1980: 39). In vain does not John Irwin call Poe's genre as *analytical* detective story: later the stories in which the main character does have same qualities, will be granted also as detective stories (cf. Irwin 1996 [1994]: 1). The analytical detective story is therefore a certain kind of representation of Enlightenment. Thus, it is not very unexpected that the detective story has constantly reflected social tendencies. Also, this is the reason why the metaphysical detective story returns to use specifically the analytical detective story: the return as such can be seen not only as nostalgia but also as an ironic resource to proportion postmodernist views to aspects of Enlightenment with hindsight (cf. Eco 1985 [1983]: 67)

contents but quite contrary: it returns the political customs by underlining frictions, conflicts and contradictions present in the play between the reader and the detective form.

In generically speaking, this implies the fact that as independent, creative, and *open* the metaphysical detective story announces to be, it could not live without its strictly formal, closed, and hermetic counterpart, or family member, that is, the established model of classical detective story. Within the frames of literary history, the metaphysical detective story is definitely not the only hybrid or genre mutant – the novel *per se* is famous for its omnivorousness – but as definitely it *is* one of those late modernist definements which go deep in the core of all reading, and mainly due to its self-consciousness. This is next natural step for the detective story as genre altogether: once it wanted to create as much variations within strict formula as possible, then it made some of authors feeling all this suffocating, which, then, led them to ask what is this eager need for formula in the first place – “why?” instead of “what?”. Same moment of self-remembering, or transgression, then, was apt to create the postmodernist pair for strict formula-based classical detective story. But as genre, this “evil little brother” does not necessarily transgress for the sake of transgression (or at least, this is not the only norm of the metaphysical detective story) as it is more willing to just ask for the foundations of detective form and of all reading, that is, detection. And by doing so, it asks for going further into metaphysics where it finds – and encourages readers to find – the reader searching for formulas, narrative topologies, meanings, and genres.

The generic reading should be, in this sense, taken more as an attitude that brings us closer to different, partly generic, partly political roles of the reader. It escorts us to understand better these roles and how they are committed to different types of assumptions about the Model Author, probably one of the best possible ways to reach happy, meaningful ending, generic recognition, or enjoyment at least. In addition, especially when connected with dialectics, the generic reading helps us to see more clearly the political conflicts between interpretative roles, the way expectations on genre as well as desire to enjoy, for instance, can push even transgressive detective stories back into recognized genres by trying to turn them something else they as forms are meant to be. It is this very position the actual reader may be willing to take during reading, the agitations of the textual audiences he or she may be willing to follow, and textual pathways to take, that is crucial.

This said, it may be in order to pinpoint this fundamentally dialectical position in relation to the few treatments on genre made in literary studies. I share here Fredric Jameson's marxist

idea of genres as “essentially literary *institutions*, or social contracts between a writer and a specific public, whose function is to specify the proper use of a particular cultural artifact” (2002 [1981], 92). This explains partly what is at the stake when the generic reading touches upon the literary satisfaction. The generic recognition and the enjoyment it brings, is an affirmation for preserving these institutions, and this is why both the transgressive texts and the dialectical readings are needed, as a counterbalance. As Jonathan Culler, clearly puts it, “overinterpretation may in fact be a practice of asking precisely those questions that are *not* necessary for normal communication but that enable us to reflect on its functioning” (2007, 172). In a same way, overinterpretation, even the conscious neglect of generic readings, do two things at the same time: they gnaw the groundings of the genre, but by doing so, they also feed its evolving. In literary studies this view of constant change of genre via overinterpretation and transgression is cherished especially within the reception aesthetics (cf. Jausss 2007 [1972], 76–109) and early Russian formalism. During last ten years, same tendency has only strengthen (cf. Lyytikäinen 2006). However, Jameson's point of view on social contracts imply, as I see it, that where the mutual agreement between the writer and “a specific public” takes place is the actual reading act, or, the prevailing encounter with the form. Therefore the binding social ties do not just emphasize the context of the text, as the sociology of literature may suggest, but put the form as such and the reading act to the fore as well. For better understanding then, in this article I argue for combining creatively the more or less holistic view of the reception aesthetics (as it has traditionally drawn from the works of Hans-Georg Gadamer and emphasized the reading as a phenomenon in which the genres are seen in positive sense mainly as a part of reader's own prejudices), Jameson's marxist approach on social institutions and Eco's text- and form-oriented aesthetics. This fusion is, of course, to be seen both horizontally and vertically: the genre is necessarily shaped by the current historical conditions (cf. *ibid.*, 100) and it draws from the family resemblances but at the intersection of these two is the form in its primacy. The causalities flowing “in and out” of the form are sometimes hard to see especially if and as the reader is in the front of them.

Before sinking teeth to that side of the reading act, however, it is necessary to add that family members (metaphysical and classical detective stories) do have some shared resemblances. The categorizing of the features outlined by Merivale and Sweeney is, then, apposite but tells not so much about the canonization or the end of the genre as the motion the detective story as such is in and especially how this motion is originally issued into generic circulation. The metaphysical detective story began with manipulating the conventions of the earlier forms of

the detective story thus forcing genre to become more self-conscious as form, but at the same time it opened up the possibility to connect with other genres. This meant that the genre had already begun to grow out and outside of itself – as genres in general are apt to do (cf. Bakhtin 1981: 6–7). Although it is unclear whether one should consider the metaphysical detective story as genre at all – especially if the genre is understood in old fashion, “pre-modern” way, as a relatively established group of stylistic and formal features (cf. Fowler 2000 [1982]). What it does bring up on its own part, is definitely other definitions for genre – wider, more liquid – and especially the elemental need to keep all these in play at the same time, see in motion the genres and the reading act. Same constant openness has been, of course, widely recognized already in literary theory (cf. Bakhtin 1981: 3–40; Fowler 2000 [1982]), and not least in Eco's theoretical writings.

To put it more clearly, in relation to its family members, the metaphysical detective story is constantly taking new shape, quickly changing to something completely different in its new amalgamations. Sticking with formulas is shock and horror for it. Fleeing it does, however, backwards moving forwards, at every turn altering itself but firmly keeping mind the family bonds, or, the ways detection process was carried through in former *whodunit* texts that were, naturally, more loyal to the enclosures of the quest.

It is always easier to see “dying”, or at least established forms than those still forming or otherwise liquid. Genre as a something closed group of locked features is a glance one sees generally in retrospect. The metaphysical detective story, taken it to be then the genre on its own or some late modernist parasite of detective form, is here considered as a group of texts that together have already enjoyed their heyday. In a same way as the strictly entertaining, closed detective form has evolved in its own directions despite postmodernism, same holds good with metaphysical detective story as well. The works of Pynchon and Robbe-Grillet have been canonical works for a long time, and for this very reason, forthcoming metaphysical detective stories can not much longer draw content from same sources without running out of steam. As narrative topology it has to turn towards other genres, other forms, and the surroundings of current century. The urgent need for informational excess, for instance, the

maximalist aim to combine all more eagerly certain styles and genres into larger encyclopedias, however impossible ones, appears to be one direction it probably finds fertile.<sup>7</sup>

Same notion – the metaphysical detective story becomes an established form before long and this moment of decay it flees as long it can – gives a needed push for generic considerations as well. What then, is the most basic question of reading if not the simplest one: “What does this all mean?”, that is, to put it otherwise, the formulation of the sense of which group of texts the particular one may belong to, i. e., what is the genre of text at hand (cf. Fowler 2000 [1982]: 38). It is not necessary to dwell too long upon the obvious political aspects of the same phrasing of question – who decides in which genre it really belongs – but to concentrate more on the formal features of texts that do have several policy-makers of their own. If it is still appropriate to speak about “interpretative communities” at the liquid times of private readings – the reader as consumer where consumer is, as the saying goes, “always right” – those same communities are not to be reduced to some concrete groups of people or general reading expectations but, unlike Stanley Fish wished, to the textual features, or its stylistic limbs (see Fish 2003 [1980]: 322–337). Authorial audiences, narrative audiences, Model Reader... these firmly textual concepts used by Rabinowitz and Eco, among many, drop same hint: the particular readers on their own nooks do nearly always certain attempts to understand their readings in enjoyable or meaningful way, and it is not as much the matter of private or generalized taste as it is of form. And same textual aim asks for suspicion and guessing, both well-recognized features of the detective, and it is this aim I will concentrate next.

### **Reading as Guessing**

The complex and open world – the worldview of the metaphysical detective story – sets requirements for the aesthetic representation. Complex and open works are needed if we want the literature to have any base for grab with the reader and the historical existence he or she experiences and interprets. Eco has observed in many of his theoretical writings those central features that the detective story has absorbed in itself during the time. Afterwards, these concepts have been taken as an integral part of theorizing the metaphysical detective story. Next, I will highlight some.

---

<sup>7</sup> In september 2013, University of Liège, Interdisciplinaire de Poétique Appliquée (CIPA) hosted a conference on past and current themes surrounding the metaphysical detective story, there named as “The Metaphysical Thriller”. Besides maximalist metaphysical detective stories, one of most interesting present forms or sub-genres discussed in the conference was Neuro-Noir, by Susan Elizabeth Sweeney.

Already in 1960's Eco introduced the concept of *open work* (*opera aperta*), which he held to reflect better the diversity of meanings in constantly altering post-war culture. The term originally charged with social tensions – as it referred at least indirectly to vulgar marxist concept of class relationship between society and literature – was conceived wrongly from the beginning. Unlike Eco intended it to mean, the concept was taken as a striking weapon against the text and for the rights of the reader. In other words, the interpretation of Eco's concept took an alien direction: within “reader-oriented radicalism” the open work began to signify the openness that enables complete plurality of meanings, when originally Eco used it as a term whose concrete referents were texts that allowed many different ways to read it but not anything (1987 [1979]: 9; 1982 [1966]: 67). As example Eco used the one probably most extreme, *Finnegans Wake* (1939) by James Joyce, where the openness was most of all lingual. In the shadow of Joyce's sovereign magnum opus it might be difficult to understand the baseline of Eco's description: works, or texts can be open in many different ways. The narrative does not need to have an end, and it can also be open on the cognitive level. The open work enables interpretations that lead the narrative towards disintegration or incoherence; towards complexity that is closer to reality of the late modern reader. This description loyal to informative entropy is present in Pynchon's corpus, for instance, and it is obvious that it is an essential part of literary postmodernism as well (McHale 1999 [1987]: 10–11).

Another concept Eco begins to use later by linking it with the detective story, is *rhizome*, adopted from Gilles Deleuze and Félix Guattari but recycled and used with more or less different overtones. If the reading act is about reaching and handling of cognitive competence, about detection, as readers we often turn to different models which we believe to match with the cognitive structure of text composition. To illustrate this, it is a question of different sorts of encyclopedias or of labyrinths which describe the interpretative moves the reader or the character makes during reading (Eco 1986 [1984]: 80–84). We shift from one concept or hint to another via analogy, association, deductive or abductive shortcut. In the detective story every clue one decides to follow and consider as a part of criminal investigation is equivalent with the interpretative situation of choice in which we as readers tend to end up while trying to separate the essential meanings from inessential ones. As Eco conceives it, rhizome describes with great veracity the nature of open work because in the open work there are, theoretically speaking, countless possible interpretative shifts we can choose. Therefore, for Eco, rhizome is a model for net of references, route map in which every single route is connected to each other and in which there are no centre for labyrinth, no exits, no enclosures (ibid.: 81–82; Eco

1985 [1983]: 57–58; Caesar 1999: 115). “Tout se tient” is also a phrase repeated over and over again in *Foucault's Pendulum*: we just have to find the links, because in the end, everything is connected to everything else. This is, sometimes, the very method we apply to when fitting together our encyclopedic competences and the elements of the particular text we consider in great value.

Unlike the closed and classical labyrinths, rhizome as model gives the reader an opportunity to either get lost or drift completely elsewhere, maybe even further from the process of criminal investigation. For same reason the crime that launches the quest in many metaphysical detective stories may even be entirely forgotten and cease to be meaningful at all. The other elements of the text – the identity of the main character, other characters, completely another milieu – begin to stand out. The text ceases to be entity unrelated with the actual world we are living in. On the contrary, it is tied even more tightly to those casual and everyday acts of interpretation that we aim to the surroundings near at hand to understand better ourselves, each other and the reality.

Rhizome also deconstructs the idea of language as something closed or autonomous system. Due to this project, the language and the stories grow indeed out from themselves and they are ramified over the primary text and text-worlds towards our casual reality outlined by historiography and science. Thus, not just Pynchon and Eco but also authors such as Don DeLillo use paranoid affects to emphasize the significance of the form. As the metaphysical detective story seduces the reader to experience the narrated world as a connected with the actual reality, by just underlining the striking similarities between them, the reader begins to wonder the mysterious motives, speculate with them and finally invent them (Eco 2002b [1992]: 48). Indeed, paranoia is a mechanism that is used to rearrange inner and outer reality by linking different chances to each other and seeing them as series. And most of all, paranoia is a narrative process. (O'Donnell 2000: 11–12.) Rhizome works here as a productive model to picture the overlapping of different, textual and actual worlds.

All in all, rhizome can be said to be a theoretical tool for demonstrating the acts of interpretation that are characteristic to the postmodernist texts. As for the open works, they require more than just enjoyment: more and more they challenge us to the play determined by the form via forcing us to realize ourselves not only as readers but also as players. Together rhizome and open work come to emphasize same fact Paul Ricœur announces elsewhere: reading is guessing (1976: 75–76) – and it is this process the metaphysical detective story has strived to make the most of

it. By turning the attention of the reader towards the text as form, the genre conceives very concretely the primal nature of guessing. Guessing equals the process of criminal investigation, the repetition of conventions related to this investigation and most of all, abductive thinking, or thinking backwards – the abduction as it was firstly theorized by Peirce. Parallel to induction and deduction as a scientific method, in abduction the logical weight of every premise is counted separately. Reasoning proceeds from the consequences to the reasons by searching for the connections. As for these links are conceived via more or less lucky conjectures and intuitive understanding on the relations between the things. (cf. Sebeok & Umiker-Sebeok 1983: 19–22; Eco 1986 [1984]: 40.) In the metaphysical detective story, then, this idea has been taken as leitmotif: the detective can fail on his mission or just guess right by accident. The significance of the guessing is the main component when trying to reach the decision what kind of narrative the form will allow the story to be – or, what genre the story belongs to. In order to understand better these *stylistic* solutions on the narrative level – the form is in many ways equal with the style – we have to return back to a more general level on which the question of interpretative act as such draws our attention.

In concrete reading act the reader begins to read text linearly, sentence by sentence, paragraph by paragraph, but at the same time operates on the cognitive level of text non-chronologically and non-linearly. This means that when reading the text forward, from left to right, the reader is constantly remembering, predicting and carrying the elements of the texts he or she sees important. Likewise, prejudices (*vorurteil*) are important in the reading act as Hans-Georg Gadamer meant them to be: prejudices are tools for interpretation just as much as the reading is all about translating from “foreign language” to language the reader knows (cf. 2006 [1989]: 398). Combining, manoeuvring, and guessing belong all to tactical repertoire of the reader despite the level of competence.

Guessing is not only limited on the supposition what is going to happen next but also who is narrating, why, and in which register is the narrator narrating. As readers we do assumptions about the writer but importantly these conjectures, as I have called them, do not have much to do with the actual author but with textual constructions which in literature theory have been named as the implied author, the Model Author and so forth. The reading act is *spiel*, a game or a play in which we as readers set ourselves to the certain position by trying to gather the strains from the text to support our understanding (Gadamer 2006 [1989]: 102–110; Dove 1997: 15). A salient point in this is that we have even unconsciously certain pretensions to



identify with the Model Reader, or the reader who perfectly could understand the message that the Model Author, author-like construction inside the text, has supposed the perfect reader to understand (Eco 1987 [1979]: 15). On the first sight this array might seem as classical one-way model of communication but because of *spiel* this can be avoided: reading as play, as game of understanding – of political understanding, one would add – means that the rights of the reader are not going to be taken away. Quite contrary, as we could retell Eco, *spiel* just sets the rules and the generic playing positions for the readers. Even private-like game is, then, all about politics, about sharing, opposing and supporting, and the same game can be played only by following certain rules; if the rules are being broken, this leads to the end of the game sooner or later. Or using another Eco's metaphor (shared partly by Derrida), text is a lazy machine which allows certain ways to use it but not anything (Eco 1994: 3; Derrida 1990 [1988]: 8; Culler 1998 [1983]: 139).<sup>8</sup> It does allow neither any possible audience nor any possible generic position – textual limbs it has only fixed number.

On this score, in the metaphysical detective story there is a built-in pedagogical model. By blending “high” and “low”, closed and open, popular elements and artistic ambitiousness the genre emphasizes the simultaneous existence of two different Model Readers at least. The stool for the imaginary reader is shared, the reader shifts on the scale between the naïve (or semantic) Model Reader and critical (or semiotic) Model Reader (Eco 1990: 54–55, 92). When the naïve Model Reader is at the mercy of the text narrated by the narrator, the critical Model Reader is capable to see narrated from further off. He or she understands and has learned to appreciate the ways the narrator tethers the reader. In other words, the critical Model Reader understands the aesthetics of the text and not only identify with the intentions of it. To put it roughly, then, the classical detective story relied heavily on the naïve reception of the narrative, as the enjoyment on the formula was its primal purpose, while the metaphysical detective story asks us both the naïve and the critical readership. The play bound to the form, or the playing with the generic expectations of the reader and even the stitching them up, does actually help him or her to understand better those political processes of interpretation that condition the intentions and desires of the reader. Nevertheless, this occasionally requires the reader to accede without reserve as a prey for the Model Author: the reader has been seduced into the

---

<sup>8</sup> Or like Derrida puts it elsewhere: "Each text [...] is a machine with multiple reading heads for other texts" (Culler 1998 [1983]: 139).

rhizome-like labyrinth, in a game where the rules are learned only in the course of game (cf. Eco 1985 [1983]: 53).

### **The Quest and the Repetition**

Similar may be learned in the course of reading Alain Robbe-Grillet's later novel *La Reprise*. Set in the post-war bombed Berlin Robbe-Grillet's rhizome of traumas and agent story splits the meanings as the reader forms them. A thing happened or a person met changes in an instance to non-happened or non-met. Despite the obviously hallucinatory text-world, we as readers can not even made ensure that it is really hallucinatory; we can not stop the motion of the meaning to the interpretation like this. The reader's position is to tolerate the uncertainties, the narrated fading away, the change of observation into non-observation – as if in the end nothing has happened.

Besides the prologue and the epilogue, *La Reprise* consists of account for five days in destroyed Berlin. By following carefully scattered hints the reader can conceive the narrative to be the report written by a man with many identities and names but called in the beginning as Henri Robin. As the reader might also conceive, Robin works for French secret service. Nevertheless, his report is interrupted by a different narrator with commentaries whose explicit intention seems to be to show the incorrectness of Robin's account. Already the first comment makes it explicit: "Le narrateur, lui-même sujet à caution, qui se présente sous le nom fictif d'Henri Robin commet ici une légère erreur" (Robbe-Grillet 2001: 29).<sup>9</sup>

Notes refer particularly to those moments or the details in the narrative that the reader of the report – a man who, as the reader can connect the dots, has received (or stole) Robin's account— regards as false, even intentional distortion of the facts. Besides correcting the details, he addresses the report with these notes further on to us, his own readers. As for us, we do not know for whom Henri Robin has compiled his account. The basic premise we can set for the interpretation of the novel is the possibility that there are two different Model Readers for Robin's report: we and the receiver of the account, probably someone in French secret service, Robin's manager perhaps. The probably answer to the question, who may be the commentator on the one hand, and the reader of the report on the other, is, nevertheless, hinted shortly: "Ils ne travaillent pas pour nous, mais pour les services secrets américains, peut-être aussi pour la

---

<sup>9</sup> "The narrator, himself unreliable, who calls himself by the fictive name of Henri Robin, here commits a slight error" (Robbe-Grillet 2003, 17).

police soviétique” (Ibid.: 66).<sup>10</sup> “Ils” here points to the fact that the commentator and the reader share same employment, nationality, or side – but if then the commentator aims his comments to the fellows in secret service, this he does with double audience: his comments are highly literal, and tied to loose all meanings Robin finds worthwhile and which he is trying to lock and bring out. His comments are, in other words, directed to the authorial audience also, that is, the first Model Reader out of two.

The regular disruptions that commentator does, keep the reader constantly on toes and thus prevent the possibilities to let be enchanted with the narration. The actual reader is not let to trust the narrator of the account at any point. Instead, he or she is encouraged to lean on the commentator. But this just leads the reader out the frying pan into the fire: the disparity of truth and false, and the commentator who keeps himself as more truthful than the narrator, are two reasons why the actual reader is compelled to suspect not only the commentator but also the validity of the “more truthful” narrative he has narrated.

Thus, on its first level, the political dialectics of interpretation is set between these narrators. The actual reader has to challenge other Model Reader out of the two, who in this case is of course the commentator, the second narrator who has decided to pass his commented version of the story on us, the second of the Model Readers of the original account. Same kind of array was present in *Foucault's Pendulum* as well: the narrator is the reader of another narrative and he is re-telling, on his own words, and neither in the case of Eco's nor Robbe-Grillet's we cannot get at the original text, just an interpretation of it. In proportion, the commentator in the *La Reprise* is not just the character taking part to the events of the novel but also a reading position that is set by the report but with certain restrictions: no actual readers allowed. Nevertheless, this kind of position requires that the reader is capable of understand that the intention to write the account is not only “what is said” but also “how it is said”. As Eco would describe it, we have to have a possibility to interpret text semiotically in order to make critical model readership possible. And most of all, in this case the reader has to have that sort of knowledge enough to reach this position – the actual reader does not have and can not have this because there is a cognitive hierarchy between the actual reader, the second narrator (the commentator) and the things narrated. This creates categorically disparity between the actual reader and the

---

<sup>10</sup> “They do not work for us, but for American Secret Service, and perhaps for the Soviet police as well” (Robbe-Grillet 2003: 45).

commentator. As readers we just might to guess and suspect, what this reconstructive narrator really knows.

The play between the form and the reader evolves rarely twisting: as if there were different rules for different players. As for reader, it gives an impression that the novel is based on repeated re-definitions, challenges, translations and conflicts. The active readership possible to us – the position of the critical reader of the *La Reprise* from which we guess the motives of the commentator on the one hand, and suspect all said and narrated on the other – lives therefore in the state of constant threat. There are just different, incompatible critical readerships and not a single moment of peace during which we could enjoy either the validity in interpretation or the prey position for the author or the commentator to hunt. *La Reprise* does not play that sort of games: loyal to the metaphysical detective stories, it does not allow coherences or enclosures of the narrative, not even the model readership that could expect these. Neither it lets the reader to pull up and lean on any truth or moment of clarity. By repetition, the described becomes the indescribable.

In other words, the concept of rhizome is taken again in use: there is just interpretative motion tied to linear reading of the text and by reading the read disappears and there are no crossroads ahead, no situations of choice, no enclosures, nothing. It is not just the concatenation of meanings but also the motion of them as they move ahead before us – which, of course, represents the derridean absence. This absence made possible by *différance* is the distinctive feature of the vital writing. (Derrida 1990 [1988]: 7). Or as Foucault (1984 [1970]) sees it, the writing is vital as long as it is not reached or stopped. Taking the generic level of reading into account, the vitality is a motion escaping the definitions that we use to recognize and group texts into genres. It is the act of escape that describes aptly the modus of reading the metaphysical detective story.

On another level, the political dialectics is evolving in Robbe-Grillet's novel between the reader and the concept of repetition. Lending the term from Søren Kierkegaard and his novel *Gjentagelsen* (1843), *La Reprise* uses repetition as supportive concept to the quest peculiar to detective stories. When the quest and the abductive reasoning as its practice happen backwards in time being at the same time a reconstruction tinged with guessing, repetition is instead remembered forwards (cf. Robbe-Grillet 2001: 7). It is inevitably the order of events that does not care if the rememberer is part of the events to come or not, for he is involved only with the process of remembering *per se*: it does not matter how this retrospection is actually going to

become realized or who is going to make it happen. Therefore, the remembering act itself is to make a possible to happen. The repetition Robbe-Grillet uses in *La Reprise* comes clearly noticed when it is revealed that Henri Robin has been in Berlin as a child with his mother. Robin and his mother have searched Robin's father but unsuccessfully. Therefore, the journey to bombed Berlin in 1949 is his second journey to the city, the repetition in Kierkegaard's sense. For this reason the remembered becomes realized towards (chronologically) and into Robin's current reality: earlier experiences begin to throw their shadows on Robin's way and on the events of the novel. Trauma he carries still within alters into actual events.

Repetition is not just demarcation in the meaning of crossing boundaries but it is also transtemporal. The characters and speakers of *La Reprise* are all subordinate to the concept of repetition, its passive followers more or less. Rhizome-like structure makes it possible that what will happen is already set – remembered – in the events of the novel: repetition is repetition only via repetition. According the concept of the novel this means that the repetition continues its circulating after the events of the narrative also. It stands as a supportive concept of the quest because the remembering forwards as such takes parts of the already happened things and connects them on the basis of memory. This associates it directly to concrete act of reading. In other words, things the reader has read from the text – or remembered from the genre to the text – forms the shadow that throws itself onto the narrative. On the level of events, this is equivalent with the re-construction, that is, the trauma remembered by Robin. For the reader the shadow of the narrative creates repetitive occasions of choices that he or she meets in different types of compositions structured on the base of the cognitive labyrinths. The cooperation between a concrete interpretation and prejudices of the reader is thus an action of re-construction and re-contextualization. Nevertheless, the product of the work goes constantly to waste as it moves unit by unit ahead of us. Robbe-Grillet shows this problematic from the beginning: the shadow thrown onto the text can be understood to limit the reading, trying to stop the motion of the meaning and understanding it as a presence. The process of guessing that reader goes through, is therefore on the route of understanding text: with each other these two exclude each other.

The happened and not-yet-happened are all the same from the point of view of repetition. Robbe-Grillet's novel forces one to admit what was represented so clearly later in Eco's *Foucault's Pendulum*: truth and non-truth can exist simultaneously. The opposite interpretations (A and non-A) can be valid in tandem, community (A=A) is not necessary and

what is most important, there is always a possibility to take the third option, the mystery hidden in A. In the case of late modernist texts this so-called hermetic logic seems functional. (cf. Eco 2002a [1992]: 27–29.) Thus, the essential thing is in simultaneity: there are no situations of either-or but the request for the reader is set differently; he has to accept simultaneously the possibility and the presence of many different theories of interpretation, identities and truths. In a situation like this, cherished by postmodernism, Richard Rorty's theory of pragmatical functionality (2002 [1992]) has been regularly offered to solve the case: we just need to pick the most adequate meaning without caring if it is right, for example, in the light of *intentio auctoris* (the intention of the author). Nevertheless, if we cannot say that truth really does exist and we should not pursue it – that there are no solid points in the universe, as the central metaphor of *Foucault's Pendulum* demonstrates – we can at least presuppose that there are images or representations of truth that help us understand certain phenomena better. Only this hermeneutical walk – trying, guessing, mistake, success – ensures us that the truth, the generic understanding, or the validity tied to the interpretation of the text, might show itself in turnovers, transitions and variants.

### **To Speak of the Reading...**

Eco uses Rorty's pragmatism as well to improve his own theory of interpretation. Text can be *used* and it can be *interpreted* but these two methods differ from each other as they have different aims and intentions (1990: 57–58). The use of the text is to recontextualize it like the reader wants it to be recontextualized: when the connection or the analogy is invented, the reading is justified and successful. On the contrary, the interpretation of the text is that we are trying to read text as it wants us to be read, with a great care, holding back the creative role of the reader if needed. In both cases, re-context is, however, important. According to Eco, even the most formal texts, or closed texts that can be interpreted only one way (like *Superman* comics and train timetables) do not leave the reader so much interpretative clearance that one could use text like one wanted. In proportion, open works has to be seen as lazier interpretative machines than the closed ones, and their operation principle is in giving the user more possibilities including the possibility to interpret text completely wrong. (Eco 1994: 3.) Actually it might be more truthful to speak about different types of games than the interpretative machines. Nevertheless, *spiel* should be taken as Gadamer intended it: *spiel* is aimless playing and in it the meaning may not be reachable at all as it moves forwards ahead of us. The play is play because it is played for the joy of playing. It is not work and it is not serious but certain rules are, nevertheless, included – rules that prevent playing it in an arbitrary

way. (2006 [1989]: 102–110.) This does not block the experimental validity we can reach during the reading act. But the main thing is nevertheless the reading as play, or a political act of numerous textual participants, as I have implied it to be.

What then are the meanings given by the genre in this light? If texts, be them then novels, newspaper articles, or programs, are wanted to be understood in relation to certain text groups – which is to say, via recontextualization – this process calls for us to translate the meanings to correlate with the features of the chosen and recognized text group. As Gadamer frames it: understanding is to understand *in a different way* (2006 [1989]: 296). Because we can not draw an artificial border into the text without fail at the some point at least, or realize texts as autonomic entities but as intertextual units and as groups of series in which the meaning becomes realized as they cite, parody or just manipulate earlier parts of the same series, that is, the same genre, we are faced with many challenges, especially the question how can the interpretation be valid at all (cf. Culler 2001 [1981]: 42–43)? How to relate with the text? How to begin to read the text in a way that the text as a part of larger text tribe can be understood? How to permit all the out-growing filaments of the rhizome that convey and transform the genre constantly? And most of all, how to permit this kind of motion without letting it to become an obstacle for the understanding?

More problematic is, nevertheless, the question, how can we talk and negotiate for our interpretations and share them with each other *without translating* the interpretation of the text into the use of the text. Unobserved as it can go, the formal aim of the text is not only to change generic precursors but also the reader as such. Starting to read is to penetrate into those regularities and the interpretative communities that texts set for themselves (cf. Faivre 1994: 5–6). Always this is not an easy task. In case of television, for instance, the presence of actual interpretative communities is much stronger than while reading: like David Morley points out, viewing “is almost always accompanied by argument, comment, debate and discussion” (1986: 9). Working with literature, instead, is usually a lonely act, in which discussion and debate come afterwards, while sharing experiences. Therefore, although the isolating other readers outside is not always complete, it is usually the reader who sets the genre but only in co-play with the form. Paratexts too may influence in reading with rising in expectations but sometimes the process of “making sense” requires the reader to shut out other influences as much as possible.

The interpretative communities produced by the text are not necessarily in relation with the dominant way of reading used in our circle of friends or among the scholar communities. Especially with literary texts, this description on so-called *initiatory hermeneutics* is apposite:

An initiate is not the same as a mystic. Being an initiate – having an intuitive comprehension of what reason cannot explain – is a very deep process; it is a slow transformation of the spirit and the body, and it can lead to the exercise of superior abilities, even to immortality. But it is secret, intimate; it does not show itself externally; it is modest, lucid, detached. (Eco 2001 [1989]: 215.)<sup>11</sup>

The most paradoxical element of initiation is nevertheless its apparent subjectivity. According to Antoine Faivre, "higher knowledge" can only be experienced individually and it can only be shared in the context of "discourse of subjectivity" by describing not only the knowledge itself but also the resources and methods to reach it (1994: 5). In his study Faivre deals with Western esotericism, but this matches also up not only the reading of the metaphysical detective story done in this article but also all reading in general. *Foucault's Pendulum* particularly recycles the history of Western occultism and treats it as any text available, poetically, arbitrarily, as it likes and with hermetic logic. And as I have already pointed out, postmodernist literature is not embarrassed in front of any text type or genre, and does not hesitate to use text types in accordance with its own ethos. The metaphysical detective story does not make an exception.<sup>12</sup>

In Eco's corpus the notion on initiation as metamorphosis that includes the reading of the text, is brought forth already in postscript to *The Name of the Rose*: "Text is meant to be an experience of transformation for its reader" (1985 [1983]: 53). This metamorphosis can be understood at least in two different ways: on the one hand, it can be seen as an alteration born in consequence of intuitive understanding. On the other, it can be understood as a moment when the text gains an understandable form, i. e. the genre for it is found. Naturally the first mentioned change inside the reader means that subjective impressions have been finally gathered together. The whole different story is, however, whether there are any possibility for

---

<sup>11</sup> "Non è la stessa cosa essere un iniziato ed essere un mistico. L'iniziazione, la comprensione intuitiva dei misteri che la ragione non può spiegare, è un processo abissale, una lenta trasformazione dello spirito e del corpo, che può portare all'esercizio di qualità superiori e persino alla conquista dell'immortalità, ma è qualcosa di intimo, di segreto. Non si manifesta all'esterno, è pudica, e soprattutto è fatta di luità e di distacco." (Eco 2001 [1988]: 228–229.)

<sup>12</sup> The postmodernist historical novel that is synthesized with the metaphysical detective story in Eco's first two novels clearly demonstrates the history of oppressed voices as apocryphal history whose central form is "secret history" (McHale 1999 [1987]: 90–96). The alternatives and the shadows are axiomatically crucial part of postmodernist literature as they offer a fresh point of view that differs from the hegemonic discourse. By doing so, apocryphal history shows the ideological position of narrative conventions that are taken as a truism.



the reader to share these impressions with others. Same subjective impressions concern the genre that is supposed to be the right one. Therefore the reading act and the talking about the readings are political situations though different arrays. When the experienced with the text alone is being brought to the public conversation, the politically charged translating process has already been underway a good deal of time. Now, the rhizome of understanding shows up in a different light where the reader is yet again forced to change. The new *spiel* begins: we plays with our interpretation and the point of the view of the third party changes us as players. As we have conversations with the others about different interpretations, we experience new insights but also new disappointments. Yet what is most important, we are forced to negotiate about the right or valid meanings, maybe even to let some of subjective impressions go. Rhizome that connected the reader with the form of the text, is fulfilled a bit by repetition: “one will often be forced to take dead ends, to work with signifying powers and subjective affections, to find a foothold in formations that are Oedipal or paranoid or even worse, rigidified territorialities that open the way for other transformational operations" (Deleuze & Guattari 2004 [1980]: 16).

In the course of this article I have used the metaphysical detective story to suggest that all reading is not only paraphrasing and recontextualizing but also guessing. Using these as methods in reading one comes to turn the interpretation into political practice for aims for reading always differ: one intends to enjoy, other guesses author's intentions to reach validity, but the form resists and draws other semio-cognitive routes, unknown sometimes for even the most competent reader. Genre such as metaphysical detective story makes, then, readers to face their own intentions, desires and prejudices, not to forget their encyclopedic competence and sense on genre conventions. *Spiel* as it is, reading in general transforms both the reader and the form, but in which direction, the play only knows. The sense of generic reading, then, shows itself till it goes into the core of twofold interpretation process: to understand the genre is first, to negotiate about the subjective impressions and secondly, turning – translating – them into something else. Here, the politics is present on every step of this process, for it is the rhizome as a model for reading which calls for it. Escape and connect, detect and banish – these, then the generic tactics.

## **REFERENCES**

### **Sources**

Eco, Umberto 2001 [1988]. *Il Pendolo di Foucault*. Milano: Bombiani.

- Eco, Umberto 2001 [1989]. *Foucault's Pendulum*. Trans. By William Weaver. London: Vintage.
- Robbe-Grillet, Alain 2001. *La Reprise*. Paris: Les Éditions de Minuit.
- Robbe-Grillet, Alain 2003. *Repetition*. Trans. By Richard Howard. New York: Grove Press.

## Literature

- Bakhtin, Mikhail 1981. *The Dialogic Imagination. Four Essays by M. M. Bakhtin*. Ed. Michael Ed. Michael Holquist. Trans. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Black, Joel 1999. (De)feats of Detection. The Spurious Key Text from Poe to Eco. In Patricia Merivale & Susan Elizabeth Sweeney (eds.) *Detecting Texts. The Metaphysical Detective Story from Poe to Postmodernism*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press. Pp. 75–98.
- Bondanella, Peter 1997. *Umberto Eco and the Open Text. Semiotics, Fiction, Popular Culture*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Caesar, Michael 1999. *Umberto Eco. Philosophy, Semiotics and the Work of Fiction*. Cambridge: Polity Press.
- Cawelti, John G. 1976. *Adventure, Mystery, and Romance. Formula Stories as Art and Popular Culture*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
- Culler, Jonathan 2001 [1981]. *The Pursuit of Signs. Semiotics, Literature, Deconstruction*. London: Routledge.
- Culler, Jonathan 1998 [1983]. *On Deconstruction. Theory and Criticism after Structuralism*. London: Routledge.
- Culler, Jonathan 2007. *The Literature in Theory*. Stanford: Stanford University Press.
- Deleuze, Gilles & Guattari Felix 1980 [2004]. *A Thousand Plateaus. Capitalism and Schizophrenia*. Trans. Brian Massumi. London: Continuum.
- Derrida, Jacques 1990 [1988]. *Limited Inc*. Evanston: Illinois.
- Dove, George 1997. *The Reader and the Detective Story*. Bowling Green: Bowling Green State University Popular Press.
- During, Simon 1992. *Foucault and Literature. Towards a Genealogy of Writing*. London: Routledge.
- Eco, Umberto 1982 [1966]. *The Aesthetics of Chaosmos. The Middle Ages of James Joyce*. Tulsa: University of Tulsa.
- Eco, Umberto 1987 [1979]. *The Role of the Reader. Explorations in the Semiotics of Texts*. London: Hutchinson.
- Eco, Umberto 1985 [1983]. *Reflections on The Name of the Rose*. London: Secker & Warburg.
- Eco, Umberto 1986 [1984]. *Semiotics and the Philosophy of Language*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Eco, Umberto 1990. *The Limits of Interpretation*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Eco, Umberto 2002a [1992]. Interpretation and History. In Stefan Collin (ed.) *Interpretation and Overinterpretation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 23–43.
- Eco, Umberto 2002b [1992]. Overinterpreting Texts. In Stefan Collin (ed.) *Interpretation and Overinterpretation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 45–66.
- Eco, Umberto 1994. *Six Walks in the Fictional Woods*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Faivre, Antoine 1994. *Access to Western Esotericism*. Albany: State University of New York Press.
- Fish, Stanley 2003 [1980]. *Is There a Text in this Class? The Authority of Interpretive Communities*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Foucault, Michel 1984 [1970]. What is an author? In Paul Rabinow (ed.) *The Foucault Reader*. New York: Pantheon. Pp. 101–118.

- Fowler, Alasdair 2000 [1982]. *Transformations of Genre*. In David Duff (ed.) *Modern Genre Theory*. Harlow: Longman. Pp. 232–249.
- Gadamer, Hans-Georg 2006 [1989]. *Truth and Method*. Second, Revised Edition. London: Continuum.
- Hirsch, E. D. Jr. 1967. *Validity in Interpretation*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Holquist, Michael 1983 [1972]. Whodunit and Other Questions. *Metaphysical Detective Stories in Postwar Fiction*. In Glenn W. Most and William W. Stowe (eds.) *The Poetics of Murder. Detective Fiction and Literary Theory*. San Diego: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich. Pp. 149–174.
- Hutcheon, Linda 2005 [1992]. Eco's Echoes. Ironizing the (Post)modern. In Mike Gane & Nicholas Gane (eds.) *Umberto Eco*. Vol. 3. London: Sage publications. Pp. 25–41.
- Irwin, John T. 1996 [1994]. *The Mystery to a Solution. Poe, Borges, and the Analytic Detective Story*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Jameson, Fredric 2002 [1981]. *The Political Unconscious. Narrative as a socially symbolic act*. London: Routledge.
- Jameson, Fredric 2009 [1991]. *Postmodernism, or, The Cultural Logic of Late Capitalism*. London: Verso.
- Jauss, Hans Robert 2009 [1972]. *Theory of Genres and Medieval Literature*. In Hans Robert Jauss *Toward an Aesthetic of Reception*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press. Pp. 76–109.
- Knight, Stephen 1980. *Form and Ideology in Crime Fiction*. London: MacMillan.
- Lehman, David 2000 [1989]. *The Perfect Murder. A Study in Detection*. Ann Arbor: The University of Michigan Press.
- Lovitt, Carl R. 1990. Controlling Discourse in Detective Fiction, or Caring Very Much Who Killed Roger Ackroyd. In Ronald G. Walker & June M. Frazer (eds.) *The Cunning Craft. Original Essays on Detective Fiction and Contemporary Literary Theory*. Illinois: Western Illinois University. Pp. 68–85.
- Lyytikäinen, Pirjo 2006. Rajat ja rajojen ylitykset. Laji kirjallisuudessa ja kirjallisuudentutkimuksessa. In Anne Mäntynen, Susanna Shore & Anna Solin (eds.) *Genre – tekstilaji*. Helsinki: SKS. Pp. 165–183.
- McHale, Brian 1999 [1987]. *Postmodernist Fiction*. London: Routledge.
- McHale, Brian 1992. *Constructing Postmodernism*. London: Routledge.
- Merivale, Patricia 2010. Postmodern and Metaphysical Detection. In Charles J. Rzepka & Lee Horsley (eds.) *A Companion to Crime Fiction*. West Sussex: Wiley-Blackwell. Pp. 308–320.
- Merivale, Patricia & Sweeney, Susan Elizabeth 1999. The Game's Afoot. On the Trail of the Metaphysical Detective Story. In Patricia Merivale & Susan Elizabeth Sweeney (eds.) *Detecting Texts. The Metaphysical Detective Story from Poe to Postmodernism*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press. Pp. 1–24.
- Morley, David 1986. *Family Television. Cultural Power and Domestic Leisure*. London: Routledge.
- O'Donnell, Patrick 2000. *Latent destinies. Cultural Paranoia and Contemporary U.S. Narrative*. Durham: Duke University Press.
- Rabinowitz, Peter J. 1998 [1987]. *Before reading. Narrative Conventions and the Politics of Interpretation*. Columbus: Ohio State University Press.
- Ricœur, Paul 1976. *Interpretation Theory. Discourse and the Surplus of Meaning*. Fort Worth: Texas University Press.
- Rorty, Richard 2002 [1992]. The Pragmatist's progress. In Stefan Collini (ed.) *Interpretation and Overinterpretation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 89–108.

- Sebeok, Thomas A. & Umiker-Sebeok, Jean 1983. "You Know My Method". A Juxtaposition of Charles S. Peirce and Sherlock Holmes. In Umberto Eco & Thomas A. Sebeok (eds.) *The Sign of Three. Dupin, Holmes, Peirce*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press. Pp. 11–54.
- Tani, Stefano 1984. *The Doomed Detective. The Contribution of the Detective Novel to Postmodern Italian and American Fiction*. Carbondale: Southern Illinois University Press.

## **PART IV:**

# **Emic and Etic Definitions**

## Proverbs – A Universal Genre?

### **Pekka Hakamies**

Genre was viewed within folklore well into the twentieth century as something *real*; in other words genres of tradition were thought of as existing naturally, and researchers had merely to recognise and name them. This approach is exemplified most clearly in the case of von Sydow (Honko 1989: 13–16). A realist, and characteristically etic, concept of genre is evident in the field of paremiology: thus Edward Westermarck in his investigation of Arabic proverb tradition, *Wit and Wisdom in Morocco*, gave a brief account, based on European tradition, of the characteristic features of the proverb, and then set about unproblematically using the term “proverb” in his discussion of Moroccan materials and of their typical features and contexts (Westermarck 1930: 1–3). He did not in any way attempt to investigate whether the Moroccan oral tradition corresponded to the European category of the proverb, or what the native Moroccans’ own genre classification and terminology might be.

Gradually, scholars such as Lauri Honko highlighted the possibility that genre classification might be a nominalist categorisation, and that folklore was not in fact ready-divided into genres. The dichotomy took shape between ethnic genres internal to a culture and genres in the sense of analytical types shared between cultures, as defined by researchers. Honko argued that it should not be thought that only one of these categorisations was relevant; he criticised Dan Ben-Amos for thinking that only ethnic types were important, and opposing analytical categories created by researchers. Honko regarded the etic-type categorisations created by scholars as essential for research, but such nominalistic categorisations needed to be continually accommodated to empirical materials and emic categorisations, to keep the nominalist categorisations of scholars as close as possible to a realist genre system. (Honko 1989: 18–19)

Ruth Finnegan has also emphasised these two alternative approaches to genre. Although she has favoured the genre categories and approaches of the bearers of folklore as a starting point, she has adopted the attitude that it is inevitable, given the needs and comparative nature of research, for researchers to use a common, etic-based conceptualisation of genre. Native emic genres are generally non-standard and insufficient, and do not cover the field of folklore systematically. (Finnegan 1992: 137–139) Thus Finnegan supports Honko’s views on the need and usefulness of analytical etic categories.

Dan Ben-Amos questions Honko's notions of tradition genres, and especially the concept of the ideal type, accusing Honko of striving for a nomothetic science which explains general rule observances, since behind the ideal type lurk universal tradition genres. Hence Honko is supposedly changing folkloristics into a natural science, into a formulation of universal laws. (Ben-Amos 1992: 14–21) For Ben-Amos, the genres of folklore and literature are social cognitive categories. The genres of folklore can only be culturally bound, and universal genre is a conceptual incompatibility. All universal laws can only be hypothetical, since it always remains possible to find an ethnos whose folklore does not fit the categorisation. Ben-Amos concludes by suggesting that the terminology and categories used by tradition-bearers themselves are the only possible foundation for research. All attempts to create an analytical uniformity have been seen to fail. (Ben-Amos 1992: 20–26.) Ben-Amos's view is quite emphatic, and it means that it would be pointless to even try to define universal genres of proverbs, since the very attempt is based in erroneous principles, and in addition it would always be possible to suppose the existence of oral cultures for which the analytical category of the proverb is not suitable.

At the same time as the dispute between Honko and Ben-Amos in the late 1980s, Charles Briggs presented a critique of the research-based category of the proverb genre. He argued that the proverb is one of the most established analytical genre types. One fault in the definition of the proverb genre was that most researchers formulated definitions on the basis of either textual or logical characteristics, and only a few united these two approaches. A second problem was the confluence of analytical genre types and culture-specific types in definitions, which led researchers to claim that one culture's proverb genre automatically has correspondences in other cultures. A third problem is what Briggs sees as a circular argument in the definition of genre: a researcher selects a familiar empirical collection of material on the basis of his own cultural intuition and on the basis of the common features he observes he formulates a definition of the proverb, which in fact just repeats the original intuitive concept. (Briggs 1988: 101–102.)

Briggs's approach may be understood as indicating that the great majority of European proverb researchers have defined genre on the basis of their own culture and then attempted to generalise this conceptualisation of genre into what they consider an analytical type applicable to the whole world, when it is in fact something culture-bound (Briggs 1988: 101–102). Researchers have, according to Briggs, actually done what Honko too urged them to: to create

an intercultural conceptualisation of genre suitable for scholarly use, based on the best possible empirical foundation. Thereafter researchers have merely thrown into the mix a critical re-evaluation and redefinition of analytical genre and intracultural genre categorisation.

In some ways Briggs follows Ben-Amos in seeing analytical types or genre classes formulated etic-type by scholars as a threat to empirical research. For Briggs, the challenge for researchers is how to avoid the trap of the analytical type formulated by scholars as they begin to deal with culture-specific material, so as not to automatically seek out those characteristics in this material which belong to the analytical type (Briggs 1988: 100).

There are examples of this, which for example Wolfgang Mieder mentions in the introduction to his *American Proverbs*. It is, he argues, quite probable that researchers reliant on European culture have been incapable of recognising a category corresponding to proverbs in the oral culture of America's native population, since they are too bound up in the proverb genre of their own culture. (Mieder 1989: 99–103.)

On the other hand, a researcher must have some sort of conceptual starting point, and some definition of the genre in his mind, when he begins to research inductively one or many foreign cultures, in order to uncover some genre corresponding to proverbs in their folklore utterances, or to assert a lack of such a genre. Comparative research cannot be carried out if such conceptual tools as make comparison possible are not used. The problem is to an extent comparable with so-called material-based research or grounded-theory research, where the material is investigated openly, without any preconceived theories. The shock surge of 'theorylessness' demanded in this research approach has been criticised among others by Pertti Töttö (2000: 38–45).

This piece has two objectives. On the one hand there is the task of checking what researchers have observed of various ethnoi's own ways of expressing proverbs and what significance etic-type, nominalist genre definition and categorisation of proverbs – the *analytical type* – has had, which researchers have employed, most likely formed on the basis of European tradition; and then to research how different, clearly non-European oral-cultural categorisations which resemble proverbs are either coherent with or differ from the European proverb. My aim is both to bring to attention the sort of conclusions the scholars in question have come to and to assess what sort of relationship exists between the oral culture under consideration and the analytical type. Finally I intend to conclude the empirical overview with some kind of synthesis of the



question of whether the proverb can be spoken of as a universal tradition genre. What could an analytical category of the proverb, universally applicable, be like?

Another task is to investigate, on the basis of the criticism directed at the analytical category of the proverb, how scholars have fared with the demand to establish research into the proverb as an emic genre and comparison with the analytical type, which leads to some kind of synthesis: the emic genre in proportion to the intercultural analytical type.

A number of researchers who have investigated proverbs from a cognitive perspective have explicitly or implicitly claimed that it is a matter of a universal tradition genre: it is a question of implicitness when the writer fails to heed cultural or linguistic matters. George Lakoff and Mark Turner used the term 'proverb' without any cultural limitations in their cognitive investigation of the significance and use of metaphors (1989). Hence we may assert that they implicitly regarded proverbs as a universal phenomenon of linguistic usage.

In Outi Lauhakangas's work within the field of social psychology proverbs are seen as an explicitly universal traditional genre, though adapted and open to interpretation within each culture (Lauhakangas 2004: 13). Apart from this brief mention the character of the work and the empirically gathered material from throughout the world show that the writer has indeed understood the genre category of the proverb as universal.

Genre is, according to Honko's synthetic approach, a way of speaking and expressing familiar things which are characteristic of the genre. In his later approach Honko continued to focus on the ideal-type nature of genre as a productive methodological concept. He also presented a critique of Ben-Amos's one-sided view on the exclusive use of emic genre. Ben-Amos rejected researchers' analytical categories on the basis that they are inadequate for the description of emic genres in real life. Honko argued there is reason to distinguish the different levels of the concept of genre. These include microgenres at small-group level, regional macrogenres and global megagenres. (Honko 1998: 24–26.)

An exponent of tradition may have his own set of genre concepts, which may differ from those of another exponent. These need checking within a regional context, as with Gopala Naika's epic within the oral genre system of Tulu. Within a global concept of genre one encounters researchers' Eurocentricity. The solution to this problem suggested by Honko is a phenomenological comparison, with the task of showing whether a truly global phenomenon exists in any case or whether it is a historically determined cultural structure. The impression

arises from Honko's categorisation that microgenres are emic categories, and the broader the scope of the category the more it relies on the analytical types of scholars, since emic categories are simply non-existent on a global scale.

### **Features Typical of the Proverb Genre**

The general genre characteristic of proverbs of the greatest consequence is traditionality: authority or social wisdom derived from history is what makes proverbs work. According to Briggs, proverb performances invite the elders of bygone days into the room (Briggs 1988: 100). Shirley Arora looks into the characteristics and recognisability of the proverb, and referring to the work of Dundes and Arewa problematises how a child recognises a sentence used by its parents as a proverb and is conscious that it is not created by the parents. Thus at some stage the concept of proverbs as a distinct form of speech must form in a child. Arora argues that a central point is that in using a proverb an individual moves responsibility off his or her own shoulders to anonymous 'people' of a bygone age. Understanding a proverb is a twofold process in the mind of the listener: first he understands what is said as belonging to the cultural or ethnic genre of proverbs, and then he understands the applicability of the proverb used to the particular circumstances. (Arora 1984: 1–5.)

Arora, like Briggs, bases her own approach on research into the use of proverbs among a Mexican population. The decisive point, for her, from the perspective of proverb use is the fact that the listener understands the collective nature of the saying, and that it is not created by the speaker – “they say” instead of “I say” (Arora 1984: 7). Repetition is the basis of this collectivity, and on this Archer Taylor too based his classical definition: a proverb is a saying current among people. ‘Faulty recognition’ may arise when a new saying observes a conventional pattern – interpreted by the listener as the pattern of a proverb – sufficiently closely. In addition, proverb texts may contain stylistic features (markers) that communicate to the listener, even on first hearing, that what they have heard is a proverb. (Arora 1984: 9–10.) Arora refers to Beatrice Silverman-Weinreich's observations on Yiddish proverbs, where there are various structural and semantic features which distinguish them from everyday speech.

Support for Arora's view of the recognition of the proverb as a special type of utterance may be found in a performance-based approach. The central starting point here is, following Richard Bauman's definition, the endowing of what is uttered with a special significance differing from normal referential speech: interpret what I am saying in a special way, don't take my words in their normal senses. The performance forms the framework of interpretation in which the

message must be understood, and which in some way diverges from a normal, literal meaning. (Bauman 1978: 9.)

In part, the framework of performance is formed by various stylistic and structural characteristics, specific markers, which communicate to the listener that it is a matter of performance, not ordinary speech. Bauman uses the term ‘keying’ for the various textual methods, such as special codes, figurative language, parallelism, formulae, appeal to tradition, which also serve well to illustrate what makes proverb utterance into a special form of communication recognised by the listener. The fundamental intention of an ethnographic description of performance is to define the culture-specific constellations of communicative methods that serve to ‘key’ performance in the community. (Bauman 1978: 15–22.)

Interestingly, Bengt Holbek (1970: 56) argues, on the basis of an examination of Danish proverbs, that metaphor and structural and stylistic characteristics may be complementary: if a proverb uses straight language, then it most likely has stylistic characteristics which differ from prose speech. It is the job of these characteristics, whether metaphor or style, to communicate to the listener that what is spoken belongs to the genre of proverbs and must be understood accordingly.

In contrast, Arora argues that the more markers there are in a saying, the more likely it is to be recognised as a proverb; if they are lacking, even a fully traditional saying may remain unrecognised when first heard, since the listener does not have the wherewithal to discern it as a proverb. In the same way, Arvo Krikmann, explaining the essence of the proverb, held one of the fundamental characteristics to be that the saying does not fit into a normal, plain textual context, which leads the listener or reader to understand it as a proverb, and to seek out a different sort of meaning in it. The main point about contextual inappropriateness is metaphor, but the text’s structural and stylistic characteristics may also communicate the same message. (Krikmann 1974: 16–17.) An oral or written text must be recognised as a proverb for its message to be correctly understood. This in turn implies the existence of the proverb type as a recognised category of utterance. The one who recognises must have a cognitive category in his mind as a referent to compare what he hears or reads and to decide whether it belongs or not.

The quest for a universal proverb genre can only be based on a researcher adopting some sort of familiar corpus as a starting point, along with an analytical type of the proverb based on

research, and beginning to investigate the oral cultures of different quarters of the world from the perspective of ethnic genres to establish whether a given culture has an oral tradition which corresponds to the European-derived international category of the proverb. Research literature offers rich corpora for the formation of a source-based analytical type. Briggs counted 245 pieces of writing in the paremiological bibliography of Wolfgang Mieder up to 1982, in which the definition of proverb is considered (Briggs 1988: 102). From the point of view of the universality of the proverb, it is worth paying special attention to peoples and cultural regions where proverbs have been claimed to be absent.

In 1989 Mieder discussed the problem of the definition of the proverb extensively, and presented definitions offered by earlier researchers. On the basis of a frequency analysis of features appearing in the definitions, he presents the following summary: ‘A proverb is a short, generally known sentence of the folk which contains wisdom, truth, morals and traditional views in a metaphorical, fixed and memorable form and which is handed down from generation to generation’. He also briefly presents emic possibilities, folk definitions, which are based on proverbs which characterise the proverb among various peoples. (Mieder 1989: 15.) He concludes with a sort of intuitive solution, and partly shares Archer Taylor’s well-known pessimism: an “incommunicable quality” is the reason proverbs can be distinguished from non-proverbs. (Mieder 1989: 13–24.)

An alternative method is to start from a strong fieldwork-based familiarity with one culture, and see if criteria derived from it can be extended to the inter-culturally recognised category of utterance which may be termed ‘proverb’. The following discussion presents examples of how a proverb-like category of utterance is recognised among different cultures in different parts of the world.

### **The Chinese**

There is, regrettably, only sporadic research on Chinese proverbs available in European languages, though proverbs as a category of utterance appear to be a central part of Chinese language use and thought. I am forced to base this overview of mine on two short and chronologically disparate presentations of the categories and most important characteristics of Chinese proverb-like sayings.

In 1875 William Scarborough published a collection of Chinese proverbs, and provided explanations in an introductory article of the proverbs’ general characteristics. One example he

presents of an emic category is *su-'hua*, 'general saying', which he says does not correspond to a European definition of a proverb. The form of sayings belonging to this category is very varied, appearing ostensibly ruleless. A *tui-tzu*, an antithetical pair of verses with parallelism, is based on precise textual guidelines. For example, "All the stars in heaven greet the north; every river flows to the east" means that a ruler is the focus of attention. The third category distinguished by Scarborough is the *lien-chü*, 'combined phrases', such as "A poor man should not quarrel with a rich; nor a rich man with officials" (Scarborough 1875: iv–xii).

A similarity with European proverbs appears to be a recognised figurativeness and genericness. According to Scarborough, proverbs have a distinctive high moral, and conversely they contain much cynicism and caution, but also humour. He presents many parallels between European and Chinese proverbs, such as "Easier said than done", "It's never too late to learn", a pig in a poke for the Chinese is "a cat in a bag". Proverbs are used especially on paper decorations at the new-year festival. The normal circumstances for using them was in everyday speech. Proverbs adorn speech, and lack of familiarity with them is held as a sign of stupidity. They also discharge social tensions and replace a long argument. (Scarborough 1875: xii–xvi.)

John S. Rohsenow (2001: 149–159) in an overview article presents another sort of emic classification and view of the general features of Chinese proverbs. He argues the Chinese are famed for their proverbs, which characterise them perhaps more than any other people. The ordinary people in particular used proverbs prodigiously in speech, and they are essentially an oral form of utterance. They encapsulate the experiences, observations and wisdom of ordinary people in short, pithy, colloquial statements and judgements phrased in easily memorised forms. The Chinese term used by Rohsenow is *yen*. Later he distinguishes between the terms *yen-yü* (proverbs) and *su-yü* (proverbial expressions), which apparently means a turn of phrase. Also distinguished are *ko-yen* (maxims), which are a literary type.

### **The Oral Culture of the Arabs**

Robert A. Barakat's contextual research into Arab proverbs (Barakat 1980) is explicitly based on extensive field collecting (1980: 7) both in the Middle East and America. Barakat was especially interested in the directional nature of proverbs, in other words who could use proverbs in which social milieux and which hierarchical situations. Barakat to a degree adopted an emic view of genre in his research, since he was interested in his informants' ways of classifying different sayings.

In Arabic, ‘proverb’ is usually translated *mathal* (plural *amthal*). Translated the other way, *mathal* may be either ‘proverb’ or ‘simile’; in other words, the Arab emic genre classification is not as precise as the European scientific classification. Proverbs are highly regarded in the Arabs’ oral culture, a regard deriving from the respect the Arabs feel towards both their written and oral traditions, and more widely to their past. Respect for the past focuses above all on the Koran and the whole Islamic religious tradition. (Barakat 1980: 5–8.)

Barakat observes that various other concepts are linked to proverbs in Arab spiritual culture. The *Hadith* is the narrative of what Muhammad said or did, but not the direct word of God like the Koran. The books of the *Hadith* were gathered in the early centuries of Islam. *Silsila* means the chain of intermediaries from the first times up to his last utterance, which confirms the genuineness of the *Hadith*. If the chain cannot be recited or is uncertain, a given sentence is not a genuine *hadith nabawi*. *Hadith* can be translated ‘narrative’. The presence of the definite article *al* indicates ‘the Prophet’s tradition’, as does *hadith nabawi*. According to Barakat, *hadiths* are, like old saws, the respected wisdom of the forefathers, as their foundations are rooted in the past. For their authority they rely on themselves, and hence they shift the responsibility away from the speaker. (Barakat 1980: 11–12.)

*Hikma* means pieces of wisdom, profane and sacred, and hence relates to proverbs. Most of Barakat’s informants were of the opinion that proverbs contain *hikma*, but the degree of it depended in practice on context. The same saying, such as “Seek knowledge from birth to death”, could be counted a proverb, a maxim or just *hikma*. At times *hikma* by itself refers to wise sayings, at other times to the wisdom contained in them. Thus proverbs are wisdom because they contain wisdom – or proverbs contain wisdom because they *are* wisdom. The saying “You are governed by your peers” was considered by the majority of informants as *hikma*, because it is part of the Prophet’s *hadith*. (Barakat 1980: 13–15.)

As an example of the influence of context on the genre classification of a saying, Barakat adduces the text “The misfortunes of some are a blessing for others”. Three people classified this as a maxim and three as a proverb. The basic difference between proverbs and maxims is based on the wisdom (*hikma*) contained in them and in the situation in which the saying is uttered. According to Barakat, the Arabic term *mathal* can be translated ‘proverb’, and the term *qa’ida* ‘maxim’ (1980: 5, 13). Unfortunately, the author does not explicate the concepts by presenting the emic definitions or characteristics of proverb and maxim. To the mind of those who classified the saying above as a proverb it was situation-oriented and connected to

relationships between people. Proverbs always have a characteristic and tight bond with context, with the situation in which they are used. A maxim, on the contrary, can be uttered outside any specific utilitarian situation, in which case it is understood as a general utterance of opinion. (Barakat 1980: 15–16.)

On the basis of information garnered from Barakat's informants a proverb must: 1. be situation-oriented on a personal level; 2. contain *hikma* wisdom; 3. be adaptable for use in contexts which are important in human interaction, and proclaim the traditional norms of Arab society; and 4. exhibit some general or universal truth regarded as significant by the community and its members (Barakat 1980: 16–17). As has been made clear, the boundary between proverbs and maxims is unfixed. Hence the same sentence may be a proverb (*mathal*) in some contexts, and a maxim (*qa'ida*) in others.

Within the Arabs' own emic categorisation, the genre of proverbs may be further divided: *amthal fasiha* are classical proverbs, in Classical Arabic, of an elevated nature; *amthal al'ammiyya* are proverbs in the everyday language. *Amthal fasiha* are literary, *amthal al'ammiyya* oral. Classical proverbs are considered more elegant than colloquial ones. Using them can bring out one's cultural level, but also respect towards the addressee. Thus elders tend to be spoken to using classical proverbs. (Barakat 1980: 41–41.)

Many contextual rules apply to the use of proverbs, which are linked to social position. 'Dog' is an ugly word, which can only be used of those on the lower social rungs, such as by a father of his son. In terms of social coordinates, proverbs are unidirectional, omnidirectional, horizontally directional or indirectional, depending on whether they are directed at social superiors, inferiors or peers. A proverb is unidirectional when it is appropriate to use it only in social situations where the speaker is higher in the hierarchy, and omnidirectional when anyone, be it the speaker or the listener, may be socially higher. A horizontally directional proverb may be used in conversation between people of similar social standing, and with indirectional proverbs the social relationship of the parties concerned is irrelevant; they are generally directed away from the addressee. (Barakat 1980: 42–47.)

### **The Maoris**

Raymond Firth set out in his own research with an introductory definition of the proverb, which may be based on his previous familiarity with European tradition and early-twentieth-century research literature (Firth 1926: 135). Thus, his object of research was proverbs which are strict

in form and weighty in their meaning, often witty or figurative, containing wisdom and found in general use (Firth 1926: 136).

Firth asserts right at the start that apart from all the rest of their folklore the Maoris have a category called *whakatauki*, which are proverb-like sayings and maxims, whose themes are derived from surrounding nature and people's customs and deeds; economic industriousness in particular is emphasised. *Whakatauki* play an important part in Maori social and economic life, and they are often resorted to in order to express an opinion (Firth 1926: 136–137).<sup>1</sup>

*Whakatauki* usually seem to be indicative, without generalising expressions like *always*, *every*, *each*, which are used for example by Europeans in proverbs, but which nonetheless are not a *sine qua non* criterion. The generic meaning becomes clear in use, which is metaphorical, and from the repeated presentation in suitable circumstances of a phrase which as a form of verbal utterance is relatively stable. Greed for food, for example, is pointed out by saying “Pah! See the neck turning from side to side. And the sinews of the neck strained to the uttermost”, where someone who is not satisfied with his own serving, who glances around at other people's portions, is compared to a bird sitting on a bough, turning its head to see all around (Firth 1926: 144).

According to Firth, the authority of Maori proverbs lies in the respect which is afforded tradition. The chieftains and heroes of times past are revered and their names are passed from one generation to the next. Thus the proverb “Hold fast to the words of thy father” are learned at an early age. Respect for past generations is also evident in the frequent use of the phrase *He whakatauki na nga tupuna* (‘a saying of the ancestors’) for proverbs. (Firth 1926: 257–258.)

The origin of some Maori *whakatauki* is clear: the original utterer of the saying is known. Many, however, are anonymous expressions of the wisdom and experience of the ages. They have gradually become honed into a state easy for a large community of users to remember. Firth, however, had doubts about the possibility of a collective process of creation, and considered that at some stage some individual came to utter a saying which others understood as a good image of the community's ideas. He concluded by presenting a hypothetical scenario

---

<sup>1</sup> The term *whakatauki* appears to have been in fairly widespread use in the Pacific outside the Maori area proper. In Tonga, a similar concept is found of *fakatata* or *paloveape* as subcategories of the *heliaki*, used in the sense of proverbs. Okusitino Mahina refers to the use of the *heliaki* as a translation of ‘proverb’. *Fakatata* – close to the Maori *whakatauki* – can be translated literally as ‘picture’ or ‘the act of explaining one thing by means of another’. (Mahina 2004: 19.)



of how Maori proverbs arose. First some individual presents a concrete assertion about prevalent conditions. Then others notice that the saying has a wider applicability, and that its form is suited to the expression of their ideas and feelings. Over time the phrasing or meaning of the saying is adapted in the process of transmission without anyone knowingly doing so, to become a proverb expressing a general opinion. (Firth 1926: 262–263.)

Firth also makes some comments about the form of *whakatauki*. Some sort of difference from everyday speech is essential to ensure they are remembered by the broader group. Maori proverbs are characterised by a balanced antithetical structure, such as “The battlefield with man, childbirth with woman”, in which the natural sphere of existence of each sex is depicted. The two phrases are similar in form, balanced in their rhythm and antithetical in their meaning. (Firth 1926: 263–264.)

Firth also opines on the function of *whakatauki* and their significance to users. It is to start with easy to sum up the day’s happenings with their help. Because of their polished form of presentation they are more effective than a normal individual utterance. They also represent the experience and wisdom of past generations, offered up in an easily memorable form. In the non-literary culture of the Maoris proverbs have been crucial for the transfer of knowledge and cultural tradition. The third function is to show directly or by negative injunction the ideal of social action and to correct behaviour which departs from the norm. (Firth 1926: 265.) Finally, Firth presents a definition of the proverb based on his empirical research: “a proverb is a concise and expressive, often figurative, saying in common use, which acts as a conveniently formulated means of expression, charged with emotional significance, to indicate and transmit the facts of experience, or to point out by injunction or prohibition an ideal of social conduct and behaviour” (Firth 1926: 265–266).

In fact Firth had no need to substantially alter his initial definition, which he presented as the starting point of his investigation. It may be pondered critically how far the doubts of opponents of analytical genre categories concerning circular arguments are realised here: on the basis of the initial hypothesis a familiar corpus of material is recognised as consisting of proverbs, and on the basis of their common features a definition reminiscent of the initial hypothesis is arrived at. However, Firth carried out empirical work and shows that he took note of the Maori emic category of the *whakatauki* in his assessment of the initial starting point.

## The Chamula Indians

Gary Gossen, in his broad-ranging article on the taxonomy of Chamula Indian speech (Gossen 1995, initially 1973), has succeeded in following the demands of Charles Briggs and others to set to work from an emic perspective, by seeking out equivalents in the genre categories of research subjects to the etic-type category of the proverb, and by correcting the initial genre classification on the basis of the results of empirical investigation. Gossen's research has attracted a good deal of attention, for example from Richard Bauman in a work that amounts to a manifesto of the performance approach (Bauman 1977).

The Chamula are native inhabitants of the Chiapas in southern Mexico. Gossen carried out lengthy fieldwork among them in the 1960s. The articles he wrote appeared originally in the 1970s, but they have been republished since. His fieldwork observations on the emic taxonomy of Chamula oral utterance types are based on information given by seven male informants. On this basis, he formulated a taxonomy of utterance, characterised by an increasing formality, redundancy and invariance as it moves from commonplace everyday speech into utterance types regulated most tightly by tradition. More regulated than ordinary speech are the subcategories of the second main category, *speech for people whose hearts are heated*, including for example children's improvised games and songs, and talk on the way to justice courts and political oratory. The third main category is *pure speech* or *true speech*, divided into *recent words* and *old words*. A subcategory of 'recent words' is *?iřtol k'op*, defined by Gossen in English as 'frivolous language', which consists of jokes, false tales, witticisms, flytings, proverbs and riddles. A subtype of *?iřtol k'op* is *k'ehel k'op*, 'indirect language', corresponding roughly to old saws. Gossen says they are essentially normative statements, but suggestive rather than explicit.

The categorisation constructed by Gossen is the result of a long and troubled undertaking. He relates how he ended up taking a whole to explain to his informants his intention of finding proverbs without them understanding what this meant. No attempts to translate into their language examples of European proverbs brought any results. Only resorting to help from the more Europeanised inhabitants of a neighbouring region brought the response that something similar was found in the Tzotzil language spoken by the Chamula, but that picking out such phrases from the language would be impossible. (Gossen 1994: 360.)

The difficulty of distinguishing sayings belonging to the *k'ehel k'op* category is nothing particularly exceptional. In many oral cultures, Finnish among them, people do not necessarily

recognise their use of proverbs. They are activated in the course of speech, presented in given circumstances as a fitting comment or directive, and the categorisation of proverbs at a collector's request outside a natural spoken context rarely brings about the desired result.

The *k'ehel k'op* subcategory, to Gossen's mind, has a special characteristic and a more complex role in the culture than proverbs do in Western societies. They are often norm-resistant in their apparent content, and they relate to involved social situations. The sayings highlight exceptional behaviour evasively, metaphorically, but in such a way that everyone understands whose actions they refer to. The category of *k'ehel k'op* is itself unclear, nor did all Gossen's informants recognise it.

Gossen acquired all his examples of the use of metaphors from one sole informant, a 17-year-old boy, who was fairly bilingual. All his conversations with Gossen took place in the Tzotzil language. One of the examples he gave was "The road is still open, but it will close". This *k'ehel k'op* was directed towards those who defecate on a general highway. Etiquette demanded that one should remove oneself some distance from the road. In this proverb text a multiplicity of meaning arises from the sound associations: the road also refers to the anus, and the whole text can be understood to mean at once that the road is open, but the defecator's ordure prevents anyone else using it; or that the defecator's anus is still open but it will soon close. In any event, the proverb indicates that the defecator, breaking etiquette, is like an animal or child. The proverb can also be viewed as a verbal wish for a supranormal sanction, by which the infringer will be caused physiological problems. (Gossen 1994: 361–362.)

Gossen considers brevity, multiplicity of meaning and adaptability in steering difficult social situations as general characteristics of the *k'ehel k'op* genre. He even considers that the presentation of a definition which strives to be all-embracing would be contrary to the emic view the Chamula themselves espouse: the *k'ehel k'op* category is characterised by lack of definition and avoidance of limitations. (Gossen 1994: 379–380.) It is true, indeed, that the whole taxonomic system is based on information afforded by a mere six individuals, and even they were divided in their opinions about many categories, including the *k'ehel k'op* genre. Hence the claim that an emic genre by this name existed or was clearly recognised among the Chamula rests on an uncertain foundation.

If the perspective is shifted towards an etic approach, as Gossen does intermittently, common features are noticeable which suit the category called proverbs as researchers have defined it.

For Gossen, the traditional functional defining points of the proverb – the summarising of a situation, the presentation of a judgement, the recommendation of a course of action – do not in themselves suffice to paint a picture of the Chamula *k'ehel k'op* category, as this may involve a good deal more: joking, insult, play, images and transgressing social boundaries. For Gossen, the important social task of the category is to help to steer difficult and fraught social situations. (Gossen 1994: 380–381.) This is not a function confined to the proverbs of the Chamula, as a corresponding usage and an important role in social life may be found among many other peoples and cultures (Lauhakangas 2004: 55–65). The generic nature of his examples does not emerge clearly from Gossen's investigation, but because the texts were spoken to him outside a performative context, it may be assumed that they were repeated in essentially the same form in circumstances in which their use was more *à propos*.

As a conclusion on the *k'ehel k'op* category, Gossen outlines that within them is presented social order and its infringement, and the phenomenon of the physical world or nature, and these are in semantic alternation, highlighting, by metaphorical means, crime and possible sanction. Finally Gossen concludes by asserting that native taxonomies do not necessarily suffice to conceptualise categories of utterance for researchers. The key to understanding lies in the interplay of different semantic levels and in the role of proverbs in social exchange. (Gossen 1994: 383–388.)

It appears, on the basis of the examples, that manifest genericness – exemplified by the use of words like *always, every, each* – is missing from the Chamula *k'ehel k'op* sayings, just as it is from the Maori *whakatauki*. The sentences are normal indicative utterances in their surface structure, and only on the basis of repeated use and their metaphoric semantics can it be noted that they possess a genericness characteristic of proverbs – they are used in essentially the same form repeatedly in situations which are similar to each other and correspond to those which form the arena for the use of proverbs.

### **Africa: Akan Rhetoric**

In the manner of Ben-Amos, Kwesi Yankah, who has researched the rhetoric of the Akan people of Nigeria, sees a difference in viewpoint between analytical types and ethnic genre, although he argues that research needs to unite the two perspectives. His own term for proverb is *ebe*, which, however, is wider in its field of use than the type term created by researchers, and Yankah refers to corresponding situations among other African peoples: according to Finnegan, in the linguistic usage of the Jabo and Zandi the concept corresponding to the proverb

refers also to the parable, short animal tales and expressions with cryptic meanings. Attribution to one and the same concept derives primarily from contextual use. (Yankah 1989: 88–89.)

Yankah divided the *ebe* category into subcategories, according to the channel used for communicating the proverb. An auditory proverb could be heard orally or by drum, while a visual proverb could be realised as a design symbol or artefact or gesture. This categorisation reveals that the Akan *ebe* category cannot be equated with the analytical type of the proverb. Proverbs can be presented visually by means of clothes, gold jewellery, a speaker's staff and the point of a parasol. For example, gold jewellery and a man smoking a pipe with a pot in his hand refers to the proverb "We can smoke a pipe even while carrying gunpowder", which means there is no need to give up enjoyment even at times of crisis. (Yankah 1989: 98–99.)

The difficulty with the *ebe* category grows given that short stories can be used metaphorically or allusively in the manner of a proverb, in which case they too belong to the *ebe* category. Yankah divides the whole proverb tradition: to the attributive type belong short, apposite and usually quoted, typically impersonal and authoritative, sayings; to the non-attributive type belong more extensive animal tales, parables and stories, which generally do not have an authoritative beginning. (Yankah 1989: 88–95.)

On the basis of Yankah's research it appears that the emic *ebe* concept cannot be equated with the European proverb. Within *ebe*, however, are found sayings, Yankah's attributive type, which appear to correspond well to the proverb as an analytical category.

## **Hawaii**

According to Kuusi, Hawaii and Samoa have clearly had more archaic proverbial language than the high cultures of Eurasia and its margins. According to information presented to Kuusi by Prof. Katherine Luomala of Hawaii University, fixed sayings are found on the Pacific islands which can be used in the manner of proverbs to comment on familiar sorts of situations. On Samoa phrases are cultivated which require cultural competence to associate with a situation: "Vailalo presented a speech, the meeting was already over" may be said to a late-comer who has lost his opportunity (Kuusi 1993: 11–12). Thus Kuusi argues that Hawaii and Samoa clearly belong – as he puts it – among the users of a more pristine language of sayings than the high cultures of Eurasia and its margins.

In conflict with this view are those examples which Wolfgang Mieder presented of Hawaiian proverbs. The seventeen texts he presents in the original language along with English

translations are mainly reminiscent of proverbs from the rest of the world: “The little fish cannot swallow the big fish”; “The sand crab is small, but digs a deep hole” (Mieder 1989: 81–82).

Henry P. Judd, used by Mieder as his source, gives a picture of Hawaiian proverb tradition in the introduction to his collection, which first appeared in 1930, both from the perspective of the European concept of the proverb and by presenting an ethnic type classification. The main concept, he argues, is the *olelo*, which he translates as ‘sayings’. This category is divided into the subgroups *olelo noeau*, ‘proverbial sayings’, *olelo naauao*, ‘learned expressions or wise sayings’, and *olelo nane*, ‘riddles’. The *olelo noeau* is probably closest to proverbs, but on the basis of the material Judd presents it appears that something wider than proverbs proper are involved, namely ‘proverbial sayings’, as Judd translates the Hawaiian term. He presents many examples of Hawaiian sayings which are parallel to English proverbs. In conclusion he observes that Hawaiian proverbial sayings have a characteristic power of observation, humour, a satirising of social life, an estimation of achievements, an observation of the relationships between different social groups and a declaration of religious and moral values in concise form. (Judd 1971: 3–5.)<sup>2</sup>

### **The Universal Analytical Type**

It is exceptional for the editor or compiler of an international collection or a paremiological theoretical study to have clearly stated that proverbs are not a universal genre of oral tradition and mode of thinking. Interestingly, many indigenous peoples of Eurasia and America whose economy was based on gathering and hunting are assumed to not have had any own proverb tradition. In the introduction to his work *Proverbia Septentrionalia* (1985) Kuusi referred to the viewpoint of Soviet linguists, who argued that the Skolt Sámi lacked a proverb tradition. Similarly, Kuusi argued that western Sámi groups had meagre numbers of proverbs, usually of Scandinavian origin (Kuusi 1985: 23). Ingrid Schellbach-Kopra has since queried, to a degree, the claim of the absence of proverbs from Sámi native tradition (Schellbach-Kopra 2008). Kuusi later stated in the introductory article to a presentation of world proverbial wisdom that

---

<sup>2</sup> A critical reader might accuse Judd in a circular argument based on English proverb tradition. However, Judd has clearly attempted to catch the emic characteristics of Hawaiian proverbs by analysing the emic category and subcategories.

many primitive cultures in subarctic Eurasia, in America and Oceania did not have a proverb tradition comparable to that of peoples in general in Eurasia (Kuusi 1993: 11–12).

In a similar way many Indian tribes of America were supposed to have lacked their own, indigenous proverbs (Mieder 1989: 99–101). But, as Mieder has commented, referring to Gary Gossen and Franz Boas, the reason for the visible lack of proverbs was probably the inability of foreign researchers to identify proverbial utterances among those peoples.

Peoples who are supposed to have lived without an elaborated proverb tradition seem to have belonged to a cultural category which in the past was called “primitive” – without literary culture and existing on simple hunting and gathering, and living in relatively small groups without a developed hierarchy and social division. Anyway, if cultures (of the primitive, hunter-gatherer type) and societal structures of a certain type do not have a proverb tradition, there must be some inherent, structural feature in the more complicated societies that calls for the formation of proverbs as a form of social communication.<sup>3</sup>

Here we come again to the problem of the definition of the genre – what kind of oral tradition are we seeking when we speak about the existence of proverbs? We need some kind of cross-cultural analytic type of the proverb if we are to relate various *whakatauki*, *yen-yü*, *dicho*, *k'ehel k'op* and *mathal*, *ebe* and *olelo* to each other on a more systematic level than mere comparative description. A systematic, comparative description, and the generalisations and crystallising of concepts made the basis of it, are, however, the best way to formulate an analytical type suitable for use within research.

Although some researchers have blamed the etic-type proverb category for causing misconceptions, in investigating empirical materials and especially in communicating observations, even to an enlightened readership, writers have needed the aid of the term ‘proverb’ to indicate what they are discussing. Gossen has presented the same sort of critique as Ben-Amos and Briggs, but nonetheless he uses the term ‘proverb’ continually in his writings, even if he emphasises in the concluding summary that ‘proverb’ is only an approximation of what the Chamula category of *k'ehel k'op* is. Gossen’s point is in accord with Honko’s concept

---

<sup>3</sup> It is another issue, that modernisation has led to the dwindling of the importance of traditional, experience-based knowledge communicated orally from generation to generation, which is evident too in how proverbs are used in post-modern communities based on rational research. The didactic role, with an emphasis upon wisdom, has weakened, and wordplay and jokiness have increased, as has the application of parody.

of the ideal type. Honko is, of course, right to assert that researchers' genre definitions are ideal types, constructions which can only approximately and summarily reflect the multitude of traditions to which they are applied (Honko 1998: 24).

On the basis of this limited, but geographically broad, inter-cultural examination, the answer to whether there exists a universal category of the proverb appears to be equivocal. On the one hand, all the peoples considered here have proverbs, which are repeated in roughly the same form time and again, and which have a generic character, and a meaning expressed through typically concrete metaphor. Some sort of common core exists to the category of the proverb, but the category is surrounded by a rich array of verbally varying expressions which fulfil some of the type criteria of the proverb but which differ in others. The use of proverbial sayings is typically associated in social life when encountering problematic situations, where it is a good conversation strategy not to present a critical viewpoint in one's own name but to withdraw to the safety of collective experience. Similarly, figurative expressions are used when avoiding direct criticism of bad actions. Recognising what is said as belonging to tradition brings with it the authority of collective judgement.

Despite Ben-Amos's doubts, it is possible, on the basis of many-sided examination, to present criteria which define approximately, as an ideal type, an analytical type of the proverb. His other warning, however, holds: a remote community may be found in some corner of the world where nothing like proverbs is found in their oral culture (one good candidate is the Pirahã tribe of the Amazon: Everett 2005). How much importance is attached to such an exception is another matter, since the oral cultures of peoples living on every continent of the world afford sayings of a proverbial type which in some way correspond to the analytical type of the proverb. There are indications that the proverbial-like sayings of the native Americans and Pacific islanders do not differ in their modality from everyday speech in the way Eurasian and African proverbs do. On the basis of the overview conducted, it appears that these lack manifest genericness, which is brought out by unusual linguistic structures and gives proverbs a clearly regulated character and at the same time aids their recognition. Yet they are latently generic, reflecting collective tradition and expressing points of view metaphorically.

## Literature

Arora, Shirley 1984. The Perception of Proverbiality. *Proverbium* 1: 1–38.

Barakat, Rober A. 1980. *A Contextual Study of Arabic Proverbs*. FF Communications 226. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.

Bauman, Richard 1978. *Verbal Art as Performance*. Rowley: Newbury House Publishers.



- Ben-Amos, Dan 1992. Do We Need Ideal Types (in Folklore)? An address to Lauri Honko. *NIF Papers* 2. Turku: Nordic Institute of Folklore.
- Briggs, Charles 1988. *Competence in Performance. The Creativity of Tradition in Mexican Verbal Art*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Everett, Daniel L. 2005. Cultural Constraints on Grammar and Cognition in Pirahã. Another Look at the Design Features of Human Language. *Current Anthropology* 46 (4): 621–646.
- Finnegan, Ruth 1992. *Oral Traditions and Verbal Arts. A Guide to Research Practices*. London: Routledge.
- Firth, Raymond 1926. Proverbs in Native Life, with Special Reference to those of the Maori. I–II. *Folklore* 37 (2–3): 134–153, 245–270.
- Gossen, Gary 1994. Chamula Tzotzil Proverbs. Neither Fish nor Fowl. In Wolfgang Mieder (ed.) *Wise Words. Essays on the Proverbs*. New York: Garland Publishing.
- Holbek, Bengt 1970. Proverb Style. *Proverbium* 15: 54–56.
- Honko, Lauri 1989. Folkloristic Theories of Genre. In Anna-Leena Siikala (ed.) *Studies in Oral Narrative*. Studia Fennica 33. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Honko, Lauri 1998. *Textualising the Siri Epic*. FF Communications 264. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Judd, Henry P. 1971. *Hawaiian Proverbs and Riddles*. Bernice P. Bishop Museum Bulletin 77. Honolulu: Published by the museum (1930). New York: Kraus Reprint Co.
- Krikmann, Arvo 1974. *On Denotative Indefiniteness of Proverbs. Remarks on Proverb Semantics* 1. Preprint KKI-1. Tallinn: Academy of Sciences of the Estonian SSR Institute of language and literature.
- Kuusi, Matti 1985: *Proverbia Septentrionalia*. FF Communications 236. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Kuusi, Matti 1993. *Maailman sananlaskuviisaukset*. Helsinki: WSOY.
- Lakoff, George, and Mark Turner 1989. *More than Cool Reason. A Field Guide to Poetic Metaphor*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
- Lauhakangas, Outi 2004. *Puheesta ihminen tunntaan. Sananlaskujen funktiot sosiaalisessa vuorovaikutuksessa*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Mahina, ‘Okusitino, 2004. *Reed Book of Tongan Proverbs. Ko e tohi ‘a e reed ki he lea tonga heliaki*. Auckland: Reed Books.
- Mieder, Wolfgang 1989. *American Proverbs. A Study of Texts and Contexts*. New York: Peter Lang Publishing.
- Paczolay, Gyula 1996. *European, Far-Eastern and Some Asian Proverbs: A Comparison of European, Chinese, Korean, Japanese, Vietnamese and other Asian Proverbs*. Veszprém: Central Library of the University of Veszprém.
- Rohsenow, John S. 2001. Proverbs. In Victor H. Mair (ed.) *The Columbia History of Chinese Literature*. New York: Columbia University Press.
- Scarborough, William 1875. *A Collection of Chinese Proverbs Translated and Arranged by William Scarborough*. Shanghai: American Presbyterian Mission Press.
- Schellbach-Kopra, Ingrid 2008. “To Travel is Better than to Rest”. Sami Proverbs in Discourse. In Rui JB Soares & Outi Lauhakangas (eds.) *1st Interdisciplinary Colloquium on Proverbs. ICP07 Proceedings*. Tavira: Tipografia Tavirense Lda. Pp. 165–180.
- Töttö, Pertti 2000: *Pirullisen positivismin paluu. Laadullisen ja määrällisen tarkastelua*. Tampere: Vastapaino.
- Westermarck, Edward 1930. *Wit and Wisdom in Morocco*. London: George Routledge & Sons, Ltd.
- Yankah, Kwesi 1989. *The Proverb in the Context of Akan Rhetoric. A Theory of Proverb Praxis*. New York: Peter Lang Publishing.



# The Proverb Genre

## A Relic or Very Much Alive?

Liisa Granbom-Herranen

*[Language checking of this article is still pending.]*

The aim of this article is to analyse some changes both in the concept of proverb and in the genre of proverbs. The perspective is in folkloristic paremiology. The need to analyse the proverb genre comes firstly from the existence of diverse terms used when discussing proverbs and proverbial expressions in folkloristic paremiology<sup>1</sup> as well as in paremiology in general. The second reason is the modern proverb tradition, which has brought up changes in the proverb genre, whereas the earlier oral tradition has found a place in the colloquial written language.

This article is based on the observations in my researches focusing on Finnish proverbs in life stories (Granbom-Herranen 2004; 2008) as well as on the study dealing with contemporary use of proverbs (Granbom-Herranen 2010; 2011a; 2013a; 2013b). The examples of traditional proverbs are taken from the Folklore Archives of the Finnish Literature Society in Helsinki, the material consisting of life stories connected with everyday life in Finland before World War II (PE85). The examples with modern proverbs come from newspaper material from the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century (HS, SSS). Although the focus is in Finnish proverbs many of the observations are to be generalized in paremiology. Proverbs are viewed as a part of colloquial language, which occurs both in oral and written form. The empirical material has raised up the question what is meant with the concept ‘proverb’<sup>2</sup> and what is included to proverb genre. As examples of proverbs in different contexts, this article includes both traditional and modern proverbs. In this article the expression ‘traditional proverb’ means an

---

<sup>1</sup> Paremiology is the study of proverbs and proverbial expressions, which focuses on definition, form, structure, style, content, function, meaning and value of proverbs. Paremiography focuses on collecting and classifying of proverbs. (Mieder 2004: xii.)

<sup>2</sup> In this article ‘concept’ is understood to express an idea or abstract principle which is the conjunction of all the characteristic features of something. Here the ‘idea’ is an opinion or belief about something is or should be. The ‘term’ is a more restricted name meaning a word or an expression. As a concept ‘proverb’ is an artefact, including the end product and the process behind it.

utterance that is accepted to be an old proverb<sup>3</sup> as the ‘modern proverb’ refers to all kinds of forms and names proverbs have in contemporary use including the best known ‘anti-proverb’.

In this article neither the emic- nor the etic-concept ‘proverb’ is seen as a universal concept. In addition to the differences between cultures with the emic-concepts<sup>4</sup> there are quite big discrepancies between the academic disciplines with etic-concepts in the way they handle the concept of proverb. It is said that there are as many etic-definitions for the proverb as there are scientific languages (Grzybek 1987: 44). Even if Peter Grzybek made this statement 25 years ago, it still holds good. On the one hand, there are the disciplines that handle proverbs as objects, like folkloristics (focus on effect), and linguistics and philology (focus on formula and translations). There are fields that focus on the proverb itself and hold that proverbs constitute a genre (linguistics, folkloristics). Concerning proverb as object folkloristic paremiology can be said to concentrate on all the variants that can be found, whereas linguistic paremiology most often refers to codified versions in lexicographical sources (Grzybek 2012). On the other hand, there are disciplines that use proverbs as a method within their own specialities (as a tool). In Finnish studies proverbs are to be found as tools, for example, in economics, education, literary research, social sciences and theology.<sup>5</sup> Using proverbs as universal statements or a method quite often means the existence of some assumptions about their commonly known and universal interpretations.

### **Various Conceptionss of the Proverb**

When defining the proverb possibilities are endless. For example in the abstracts of the 2010 Interdisciplinary Colloquium on Proverbs (ICP2010), the concept ‘proverb’ comes up 106 times in about 50 forms:

a part of proverb, proverb proper, parody of proverb, didactic proverb, proverb parody, anti-proverb, proverb variation, existing proverb, new proverb, universal proverb, language of proverb, knowledge of proverb, Bible proverbs, Proverbs of King Solomon, European expressions or proverbs, proverbial expression, proverbial language, proverbial metaphors, proverbial rhetoric, proverbial instructions, proverbial wisdom, proverbial sign, proverbial meaning, proverbial, proverbial material, proverbial phrase, proverbially,

---

<sup>3</sup> Otherwise in the text the concept ‘traditional’ is to be understood in the meaning of typical and usual either in the past or present. (‘Finnish traditional proverbs’ in end note 9).

<sup>4</sup> The discussion on culture specified concepts of proverbs are to be found in Hakamies 2013.

<sup>5</sup> Examples of the most recent Finnish academic writings using proverbs can be found in Granbom-Herranen 2010b: 216. The Finnish folkloristic dissertations focusing on paremiology until 2012 are in Granbom-Herranen 2012: 180.

saying, popular saying, phrase, idiom, expression, refrain, winged words, wellerism, popular quotations, traditional wisdom, relating to proverb/saying, distinct items of lexis describing a self-contained concept or idea, contemporary adaptation, conundrum, lexical unit, complex multi word unit, language of words, locution, short sentence.

In paremiology the only consensus focuses on the brevity of proverbs and some kind of traditionality<sup>6</sup> in them. There is always something more to be added in order to make sure nothing is left out of the definition. Elias Lönnrot (1981: 8), the author of *Kalevala* – the Finnish national epic – and one of the first Finnish proverb collectors wrote in 1842: “Kaiken sananlaskuin rajoittamisen sananparsihin, sananpolvihin, sananmutkihin, vertauksiin j.n.e. luulemma soveliaaksi työksi silleen, jolla muuta työtä ei ole” (Lönnrot 1981: 8) [‘I will leave all that has to do with dividing proverbs into all kinds of subclasses like proverbs, sayings, phrases, comparisons, etc., to those who don’t have anything better to do’]. However, for researchers some etic-definition of the concept ‘proverb’ is necessary in order to recognise a proverb in speech or text as Lauri Honko (1989: 18–19) has pointed out. For contemporary research of proverbs, it has to be decided if a part of a traditional proverb is enough to make a sentence a proverb also for etic-use. If so, it has to be clarified if the beginning of the sentence is required or some key words are enough to make a sentence a proverb. Anyhow, nowadays the concept ‘proverb’ is most often used in the meaning ‘proverb and proverbial expression’ both in emic- and etic-language. This follows the international tendency in paremiology. However, it might be considered “It is not always necessary, or even possible, in the dynamic research tradition to define the key concepts exhaustively, for there must always be room for new connections” (Honko 1989: 14).

The concept ‘proverb’ has never been defined to perfection; it has been seen as too difficult a task, as there are no particular features that could indicate to us that a sentence is a proverb (Dundes 1981: 44). The problem of challenge of definition is not new or specific to either traditional or modern proverbs. As Wolfgang Mieder (1993: 18) says, it is obvious that the problem of defining a proverb is not new; the need to define it is as old as interest in it. He suggests it might be best to agree with Archer Taylor (1981: 6), who has stated that “an incommunicable quality tells us this sentence is proverbial and that one is not”. Since the 1970s researchers have been addressing the need for revising the proverb classification and the definition of the proverb genre based on the structure or form of the expression. Nowadays

---

<sup>6</sup> The traditionality is still seen as a notary fact, it is a well-known common fact that both academics and public is supposed to know.

attempts to create a definition are most often directed to a specific language or cultural area. (Reznikov 2009: 4–5, 177–179.) For example, one of the leading contemporary folkloristic paremiologists Mieder still defines the proverb as something “handed down from generation to generation” (Mieder 1993: 24; 2004: 3). In the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century proverbs in Finnish language (the same goes on with many other languages too) are not primarily transmitted either verbally or from one generation to another, but transmission takes place rather in written form (in written colloquial texts or in literature) and they are quite often used within one generation only. In the handbook of proverbs Mieder writes: “The definition of proverb has caused scholars from many disciplines much chagrin over the centuries.” He goes on referring to Archer Taylor’s statement: “[...] a definitive definition of the genre is impossibility.” (Mieder 2004: 2–3.) Time demands changes, new concepts and phenomena occur. Nearly everybody knows and uses proverbs. Those who study them are familiar with the concept and phenomenon. However, all this is done without being able to shortly and clearly define what a proverb is. That can be called the paradox of the proverb. It seems that scholars focusing on proverbs around the world will continue to find their own working definitions (Mieder 1993: 18):

[The proverb] is generally understood to epitomize simplicity and common sense, but it turns out to be both complex and hard to define. Although most people can list many examples of proverbs, few can accurately define what makes them proverbial. Scholars have discussed proverbs for hundreds of years, and hundreds of different definitions have been advanced, making it impossible to provide even a cursory summary of them. (Lau *et al.* 2004: 2)

In any case, it might be possible to find out some quite commonly accepted attributes connected with the concept ‘proverb’. Firstly, we need to accept the hypothesis that some linguistic features that are fundamental for proverbs have to exist. The conditions that are needed for a sentence to be accepted as a proverb in etic-language are to be itemized. Secondly, it should be known which of the features combined with the proverb are to be viewed as necessary premises and which ones as sufficient ones, as well as, which ones of them are enough to make a sentence ‘proverb’. However, the features cannot be universal because even if paremiology focuses on proverbs, the facultative needs differ from each other. Aspects such as currency, tradition and familiarity have been taken as necessary ingredients for a proverb, yet the definition of the concept ‘proverb’ has never focused only on these features. Nevertheless, they could seem inviting to be used, as these are traits that can be quantitatively measured and used to verify the findings. Both Mieder (1994: 298) and Peter Grzybek (1987: 73) consider certain frequency as

well as certain general acceptance for the proverb necessary to be regarded as a part of folklore. The familiarity and frequency together make a ground for an expression to become traditional in the meaning of typical and usual, either in the past or present. When looking at measured frequency, it is not entirely convincing that this kind of demand does justice to modern proverbs, particularly in a small linguistic and cultural area like the Finnish language and culture are. The familiarity of the proverb might be a more useful characteristic to focus on than pure frequency. Familiar items may or may not be frequent, but unfamiliar items cannot be frequently used.

Grzybek (1987: 40; 2012) views verified frequency at a particular point of time followed by frequency (= currency) over a given period of time as an indispensable premise for an utterance to first be a linguistic cliché that might become a proverb. No doubt it is true that those forms of folklore as well as the forms of proverbs which do have utility value in the contemporary lifestyle will remain. The difficulty is that when collecting contemporary proverbial expressions, we cannot know which of them will endure. It also means that there ought to exist quite a clear and ready-made understanding of the proverb, including old traditional, contemporary modern and future proverbs. The existing proverb definitions, when not allowing for the inclusion of “potentially-to-become-proverbs” (Grzybek 2011) do not support research considering proverbs in present-day contexts. In vernacular language the Finnish proverb genre has expanded and found a new form when broadened from oral tradition to colloquial written language. Modern proverbs are to be accepted as potential ones even if the frequency is not definite nor the distribution verified. Otherwise the last acceptable and frequency-measured Finnish proverbs would be the traditional ones in the published collections including Finnish proverbs up to World War II.<sup>7</sup>

Modern proverbs have many names in paremiological etic-language, starting with quasiproverb, proverb parodies, anti-proverb, Antispruchwort, postproverb (Kuusi 1989; Krikmann 1985; Mieder 1993; Raji-Oyelade 2008). Other expressions for modern proverbs can also be found, such as alteration, fake proverb, hoax proverb, mock proverb, modification, mutation, occasional proverb, perverb, portmanteau proverb, pseudo proverb, transformation,

---

<sup>7</sup> Thanks to the historic-geographic method (also known as the Finnish method), Finnish proverbs have been collected up to World War II and they are well mapped. Most of the traditional Finnish proverb types are included in published collections edited by R. E. Nirvi and Lauri Hakulinen (1948), Matti Kuusi (1953) and Kari Laukkanen and Pekka Hakamies (1978). The concept of proverb in Finland has primarily been advanced to coincide with the types and structures presented in the aforementioned publications.

variant and variation (Grzybek 2012: 139), as well as fractured proverbs, proverb innovations and wisecracks (Litovkina 2011: 87). These are not what we are accustomed to consider as proverbs in folkloristic paremiology. Even if Mieder's term *Antispruchwort* (anti-proverb) has widely been accepted, it might be worth being cautious with that one and also with the other concepts presented above, for it is possible that the utterances labelled as anti, quasi, pseudo or fake some decades ago are now more like modern proverbs with a hint of traditionality. We do not know what happens to the proverbs in the future. In everyday use, a proverb lives as long as it is referenced. This means that when looking for proverbs in present-day contexts, we have to search both for traditional and shortened ones as well as references to known proverbs.

### **Some Features Connected with the Concept of the Proverb in Finnish**

The 'Finnish proverb' can be understood as a short, independent statement, which is or has been familiar within a frame of time and place. The traditional proverb has been and may still be used in vernacular language, and so is its modern counterpart. To be a proverb, a statement must be relatively known among the general public. When a proverb is used, the authority of the earlier proverb speaker might be present too. The presence of the earlier authority has been verified within the pedagogical discourse (Briggs 1988; Granbom-Herranen 2008). However, this is an unclear statement in the urban tradition that is not pedagogically oriented. However, the earlier speaker does not have to come from the distant past. The earlier speaker is somebody who has used the proverb but this has nothing to do with the inviter of the proverb.

Proverbs have been viewed as anonymous units (Harris-Lopez 2003: 105), a proverb is not supposed to be invented by a person with name. As Arora (1994: 5) puts it when talking about Yoruba proverbs, they belong "to the anonymous past, the anonymous folk". This does not mean that all proverbs were born anonymous. The proverb is something that has been invented and used, and this is how it has become a part of vernacular language. Taylor does not take into account only the old and already existing proverbs but he points out that a proverb can be either an old or a new comment but he circumstances make the proverb spread and well-known (Taylor 1981: 3–8). Nowadays this process is fast and sometimes possible to track.

Modern proverbs are not necessarily anonymous by origin and they do not always come from the unknown past. There are many proverbs whose origins were known at some point, but were then forgotten over time. The proverb is always invited by somebody, as he or she has an idea to put it in a statement. The circumstances bound up with the concept of historically anonymous



expression have changed; thanks to the fast communication, in many cases it is possible today to identify the “first” user of the proverb. This is the situation with politics and well-known people in publicity. Quite often the public is aware of the origin of an expression that becomes an anonymous sentence, after that it is a cliché or saying and then a proverb. For example, among Finnish traditional proverbs there are some that originate in fairly recent poetry. *Kell’ onni on, se onnen kätkeköön* [‘He who has much happiness does well to hide it’] is the beginning of a poem by a Finnish author Eino Leino *Laulu onnesta* [Song of happiness], which was published for the first time in 1900, in a collection entitled *Hiihtäjän virsiä* [Hymns of a skier] (Leino 1978). Nowadays it is a proverb and often people do not know its origin.

Besides the traditional proverbs, there are modern ones whose origins are known. Among contemporary modern proverbs we can mention, for example, former Finnish Prime Minister Harri Holkeri’s *minä juon nyt kahvia* [‘it is my coffee time’] from 1990. Holkeri as Prime Minister, participated in a big meeting where the press wanted to get an interview from him. He felt disturbed and did not want to talk, and to all the questions he answered only: “*Minä juon nyt kahvia.*” [‘It is my coffee time’] (MTV3 7.8.2011) The answer spread out immediately via media and afterwards the utterance came to denote superiority towards the one who dared to disturb someone who was above him or her. Another one is former Prime Minister Paavo Lipponen’s *karavaani kulkee* [‘the caravan goes on’], which is the beginning of the proverb *Koirat haukkuvat, mutta karavaani kulkee* [‘Dogs are barking, but the caravan goes on’]. The newspaper text below refers to what former Prime Minister Holkeri had said about drinking coffee some ten years before (texts in examples are literally translated by the author. The proverb parallels are not used):

(1) Lipponen did not say much about the deviation inside his own party. “*Karavaani kulkee*” [‘The caravan goes on’], said Lipponen and went to take coffee. (HS 17.3.2001)

One of the best-known modern proverbs is the one by the former ski jumper Matti Nykänen – “sixty-fifty”. After the end of his career as one of the most famous sportsmen in the world, Nykänen has been famous for his sayings he has used in interviews. Presumably he has wanted them to be relevant, as in the situation when he was asked about the possibilities for something. He might have meant to answer “fifty-fifty” (in Finland commonly used in English) – but ended up with “fifty-sixty” (Matti Nykänen).

When a proverb is seen as a short unit, some common features behind the proverb performance in the verbal form and colloquial written language become quite obvious. Firstly, the performer

and the audience have to share some common knowledge about the past in order to be able to connect the message to the activity.<sup>8</sup> Secondly, when focusing on the features of the proverb use in everyday communication, we can see that what comes to the use of proverbs there are no fundamental differences between the verbal use and the colloquial written language. The presentational feature does not disappear when the proverbs are moved to new surroundings, from speech to colloquial written language: the proverb is a fixed part of the event; it aims at being associated with the situation; there is an expected ground meaning behind the proverb;<sup>9</sup> the use of the proverb is meaningful in a particular context and it is used in order to be assertive (Briggs 1985: 798–802).

### **Finnish Proverbs in Oral Tradition and Literary Use**

Every folkloristic item has some special value and all the genres have their value-laden orientations (Hanks 1987: 671). In Finnish history the interest in folklore and language in the 19<sup>th</sup> century paved the way for the folkloristic research for quite a long period (Granbom-Herranen 2012). The ideas from that time can be anchored in the 17<sup>th</sup> century Finland as well as in the Reformation. These eras were significant for the beginning of folkloristic activities and have an impact even to the contemporary folkloristics. All this gives a special status to traditional Finnish proverbs. Just like proverbs elsewhere, Finnish proverbs also have somehow sacrosanct label (e.g. Mieder 1993: 36). Very often proverbs are combined with the history of a nation. Finnish proverbs are combined with the Finnish origin, which has been considered as a value by itself.

One of the definition of the proverb used in contemporary Finnish folkloristic in 21<sup>st</sup> century (Apo 2001: 338) leans on that of Briggs's (1988: 132–133), which states that a proverb is a short expression that is common among folk. The meanings of 'people' and 'folk' have changed with time and the concept 'folk' can refer to the total population of a country, or to a part of the population that is defined by their language or social status. As Alan Dundes (1980) has put it: "Who are the folk?" when going on with the discussion started in 1893 if not even earlier (Jacobs 1893). Nowadays in folkloristics as well as in paremiology the concept 'folk'

---

<sup>8</sup> However, there are always listeners and readers who are incapable of understanding and/or interpreting proverbs (Granbom-Herranen 2008: 184, Ferretti *et al.* 2007).

<sup>9</sup> Ground meaning is a cultural bounded standard proverbial interpretation (SPI) that is understood as the universal, 'correct' interpretation (Norrick 1985: 109–117). The SPI presupposes universality and is often seen as a 'correct' interpretation when cultural prejudices are involved. According to Hilary Putnam (1975), universality of features among languages means universal structures, not universal meanings. Also, similarity in intention, at a micro level, does not mean similarity in extension, at a macro level.

appears in the meaning ‘a group of people who share something common’ (Honko 1998: 56; Dundes 1980).

Differentiating between proverbs in oral tradition and in literature has been quite easy when looking at the pre-World War II era in Finland; prior to the 20<sup>th</sup> century in Finland the main spoken language among people was Finnish although Finnish was rarely the written language. The written Finnish language was developed for a particular use: in the beginning it was the language of the Bible (17<sup>th</sup> century), as it was needed in order to teach the common people to read. In the 19<sup>th</sup> century, written Finnish was needed for official use in statutes, and later, chiefly in the 20<sup>th</sup> century, written Finnish was also used in newspapers. (Laine 2002: 17.)

As mentioned above, one of the root differences between verbal and literary use of proverbs is that the proverbs in Finnish language in the 19<sup>th</sup> century were mostly used in speech, while being a part of the language of the underprivileged majority. Proverbs had an important role as informal knowledge compared to the written information. (Granbom-Herranen 2008: 25–26, 36–39, 106–107; 2011b: 169.) The change from oral to literary society has not been just an “event” (Badiou 2009) but a longer process. Anyway, the process connected with proverbs is different in verbal use and in literary contexts. For literary use and for literature, proverbs are taught and learned – the influence of school and teachers can be seen. Because they are a part of learning, it is also a question of the right and wrong ways of using and understanding proverbs. Translations are needed in literature when using proverbs, which assumes some kind of universalism and using the ground meaning of proverb. In ordinary life, the interpretation of a proverb is a matter of situational and individual experience. Proverbs in emic-use are and their meanings rely on combinations of socio-cultural contexts, people, emotions and information in various situations. Nowadays the use of the proverbs with oral background and the ones from written sources (literature) has been merged especially in colloquial written language. At the same time proverbs from literary sources have been in use in vernacular language.

Nevertheless, today the proverb in spoken Finnish language is in many ways the same as the proverb in the colloquial written form in media language, everyday political rhetoric, mass media or the Internet. These days, the native Finnish-speaking population in Finland can read and write Finnish. This has changed the position of proverbs in the Finnish language and might be the explanation for the similarities between the use of proverbs both in spoken language and in written colloquial form. In its entirety, verbal and written communication has become more

and more similar in many ways. (Granbom-Herranen 2011a: 289.) When defining the concept of proverb, significant changes between the 19<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> centuries have occurred in the daily lives of the Finnish people, as well as in the environment in which Finnish proverbs are used.

### **Finnish Proverbs in the Frame of the Emic–Etic Discussion**

The concept ‘proverb’ in the emic-language differs from the concept used in academic studies – the etic-language. One of the most chuckling worthy descriptions of emic- and etic-concepts can be found in J. R. R. Tolkien’s novel *The Lord of the Rings*, when two hobbits meet a living tree, the Ent. Both the Ent and the hobbits give two names for themselves. The first one is how they call themselves and the other one is how the outsiders have named them. (Tolkien 1967: 84–85.) This is what goes on with the concept ‘proverb’. The group has a name for the utterance that is more like a phenomenon. The group uses these expressions, names them proverbs and is somehow aware what using and hearing a proverb means. The outsider who needs expressions not for using but for studying them as concepts or phenomena, gives different names to them, classifies and categorizes them.

Kenneth Pike (Pike 1954: 8) was the first to elaborate the distinction between ‘emic’ and ‘etic’ in the 1950s. The dichotomy of the emic and etic in language use can be handled in various ways, as we can see in the discussion between Marvis Harris and Pike. The biggest difference becomes evident in etic-interpretations and their justification. According to Pike (1990a: 71–72), the etic-approach offers an opportunity for a global perspective and minimizes practical difficulties with research resources, while Harris (1990b: 214) points out the observers’ inability to connect all that is significant to an activity. The discussion derives from Harris’s and Pike’s worldviews. Shortly expressed Pike leans on theism and involves the insight into the given and the right, whereas Harris as a naturalist is involved more with cultural materialism and evolutionistic theory (Harris 1990b: 206; Headland 1990: 14; Pike 1990b: 186). As a matter of fact, they are very much of the same opinion regarding the emic. After the conversation between Harris and Pike, emic and etic has from time to time become topical issue (Hakamies 2013). In terms of paremiology, we can glean from this discussion that both the name of the proverb genre and the concept of proverb can, have been and still are defined in the emic- as well as in the etic-language.

Research ought to obtain both emic- and etic-knowledge, which in the proverb genre means both emic- and etic-concepts of the proverb (Lett 1990: 132; Jardine 2004: 270). The presupposition is that the researchers both understand the languages and are aware of the

meanings that the users of tradition give to the utterances, actions, phenomena and so on. It is possible to understand the language but the tacit knowledge involved therein may remain unattainable (Jardine 2004: 263). This applies to one's own culture in another era as well as foreign cultures, both in the past and present. The identification of a 'proverb' is based on the assumption of socio-cultural knowledge but it is much easier to recognize the cultural connection in place than in time. When talking about Finnish proverbs, it is not possible to pass over the question of emic- versus etic-concepts and interpretations, as the foundations of the contemporary emic-concept of the Finnish proverb lie in the etic-concept of proverb from earlier times that also as a concept had connections with older emic-terms. Most of the etic-definitions are used in order to find out what the research subject actually is. The classification of Finnish proverbs and the proverb genre was mostly grounded in the existing folklore forms in the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century and derives from the 1950s (Kuusi 1954). It consolidates proverbs (*sananlasku*) and sayings (*puheenparisi*) into proverbs (*sananparisi*). This is confusing. This categorization of proverbs is familiar only to Finnish paremiologists. For them it is complicated but somehow understandable. Actually, if this kind of proverb classification is used, difficulties are bound to be encountered when using the concept of 'proverb' in any other language but Finnish.

If the language and proverbs are not understood as a part of culture, it is possible to conclude that some nations or ethnic groups do not have proverbs, as for example in the 1960s it was assumed that proverbs exist everywhere except among Inuits, most of the American Indians, and Pacific and Siberian peoples (Kuusi 1985: 82). Proverbs might exist in every language, even if they are called something else or they do not follow the same format as those defined in Western Europe and North America during the last 200–400 years. This comes to the question "what kind of oral tradition are we seeking when we speak about the existence of proverb?" (Hakamies 2013: 552).

In everyday use of the concept 'proverb' it does not help that Harris (1990a: 77) and Pike (1990b: 193) agree in one point: emic can become etic and etic can become emic. As Nick Jardine (2004: 275) formulates it: "Etics without emics is empty, emics without etics blind." Dan Ben-Amos (1976a) talks about ethnic and analytic genres that are much the same as the genres with emic- and etic-definitions. According to him, the definition of ethnic genres (emic) is directed toward communication and the analytic ones (etic) toward text organization. The

point is that the ethnic genres are quite real and the analytic genres abstract. They both are needed but to model different things.

In etic-language and in dictionaries numerous synonyms and parallel names given to the concept of proverb can be found: aphorism, axiom, citation, dictum, doctrine, figure of speech, idiom, maxim, metaphor, phrase, quotation, saying, simile and so on (Granbom-Herranen 2010; 2011a). Paremiologists and other researchers use etic-based definitions when the study is connected with structures and typologies. From that point of view the emic-based definitions can be understood more as concepts that are actually not defined. The most important ways to refer to proverbs in emic-language used in oral and colloquial written languages in both narratives and the media are:

<b>The term in emic language:</b>	<b>The meaning in etic language:</b>
1) 'is like something' ( <i>on kuin jokin</i> )	= figure of speech, metaphor, simile
2) 'proverb' ( <i>sananlasku</i> )	= dictum, proverb, quotation, saying
3) 'phrase' ( <i>fraasi</i> )	= idiom, phrase
4) 'general guide' ( <i>ohje</i> )	= axiom, maxim, doctrine
5) 'somebody said' ( <i>joku on sanonut</i> )	= aphorism, citation

Although what is meant with the 'proverb' (*sananlasku*), to a certain extent, clear to the Finnish proverb users, it is not as clear as Mieder and Shirley Arora have noted in their proverb materials among the English speakers (Arora 1994: 4; Mieder 1993: 36). Even if it is true that people have a clear idea of what proverbs (*sananlasku*) in emic are when using the Finnish language, proverb users speculate on the name of the concept, wondering if it is right to say *sananlasku* or *sananparsi* (both mean 'proverb' in English), concepts for etic use. In any case, there prevails some uncertainty regarding all the etic-concepts of short folklore forms. Both František Čermák (2005) and Risto Järv (2009) has pointed out it is obvious that users of proverbs cannot always identify proverbs or make difference between proverbs and other proverbial expressions. The question is if they should be able to do that?

For example, during the Europhras 2008 congress in Finland, the biggest Finnish daily newspaper published an article under the heading *Krokotiilin kyyneleitä itketään ympäri maailmaa* [Crocodile tears are wept all over the world] (HS 17.8.2008), for which a journalist had interviewed professors Jarmo Korhonen, Mieder and Gyula Paczolay about proverbs and phrases. At the end of the article the readers were invited to send in phrases and proverbs they

used in their everyday speech. The quality and quantity of the material that the newspaper received was about the emic concept of proverb as it consisted of all kinds of comments, sayings, poems, citations, traditional proverbs, phrases, short stories and modern proverbs. (HS material; Granbom-Herranen 2011a: 286.) The same phenomenon has occurred in the Internet conversations when Finnish proverbs were collected on a website called *Suomalaisia sananlaskuja* [Finnish proverbs]. The site administrator explained that the “[...] endeavour resulted in a random, mixed collection of all kinds of contemporary texts, such as short stories and humorous comments about the former Finnish ski jumper Matti Nykänen, international citations as well as utterances belonging to old Finnish folk tradition beginning from the citations of *Kalevala*” (Suomalaisia sananlaskuja). According to the site administrator, the biggest problem seemed to be the concept itself, the ‘Finnish proverb’ (Suomalaisia sananlaskuja). Both the readers of the newspaper and writers on the Internet certainly have a reason to call the expressions they use ‘proverbs’ but the reason cannot be elicited from the texts.

In the Finnish life stories from the early 20<sup>th</sup> century (PE85), over 60 different concepts were given as synonyms for the *sananlasku* [‘proverb’], for example *arvo* [‘value’], *neuvo* [‘advice’], *periaate* [‘principle’], *sanonta* [‘saying’], *varoitus* [‘warning’] and *viisaus* [‘wisdom’]. (Granbom-Herranen 2004, appendix 6.) There existed plenty of expressions that from the narrators’ emic point of view were called proverbs (*sananlasku*) and which actually from the etic point of view were something else. As synonyms, the narrators used terms such as *sananlasku* [‘proverb’], *puheenparsi* [‘saying’], *Raamatun lause* [‘Bible quotation’], and so on. Likewise, in the life stories there were many utterances that in etic-language were proverbs but that the narrators had not labelled as such.

(2) *Sananlasku* [‘Proverb’]: *Kyllä Georgiaan nopeasti pääsee mutta sieltä pois tulo on vaikeaa ja vie aikaa.*

You can get to Georgia fast but coming back from there is difficult and takes time.

(Jan, SSS, sent 22.8.2008)

(3) *Vaikka tuhat ihmistä uskoisi hölynpölyyn, se on silti hölynpölyä.*

Even if one thousand people would believe in nonsense, it is still nonsense.

(*Kiinalainen sananlasku* [‘Chinese proverb’], SSS, sent 25.7.2009)

(4) If you took advantage of others, you could hear *arvostelu* [‘criticism’]: “*Hyvä se on vieraal kankul tullee istuija*” [‘It is easy to sit on the fire with someone else’s buttock’]. If you were sad about somebody spreading gossip, you heard *lohdutus* [‘comfort’]: “*Kuiva rikka helmast karisoo*” [‘Dry mote falls down from the hem’] or “*Siel (kuolleina) ovat koht kaik, ampujat sekä kolistajat!*” [‘Soon all will be there (dead), the shooters and the noise makers! (the faultfinders and the spiteful)’]. A very valuable guideline for life is given in the saying (*sanonta*): “*Minkä taakseis paat, sen iestäis löyvät*” [‘Whatever you put behind you, you’ll find in front of you’]. (PE85, woman, born 1912)

Arora (1994: 22–23) does not deny the need to know the criteria by which people in emic-language classify proverbs in their own groups, yet she does not consider these sayings to be proverbs in etic-use even if the users accept them as such. Mieder stressed in the 1980s that proverb scholars should pay more attention to the present use of proverbs while continuing to tackle the frustrating question of whether a universal etic-definition of the proverb can be found. If some genre definitions have lost their relevance in time, it is not only the question of the genre but also of the users of genre systems (Ben-Amos 1976b: 215). The proverb genre is a tool, not an end in itself but the genre frames the research and the discipline. If we try to lean on etic-definitions in normal everyday communication, the speech becomes quite irrelevant and the use of proverbial expressions sounds artificial. However, if we study proverbs in context, the emic-view is to be reckoned with. (Mieder 1993: 36; Granbom-Herranen 2004; 2008; 2009.) In everyday life to have an idea of the proverb is in most cases enough for the proverb user. This might be what Taylor (1981: 6) calls an incommunicable quality, which differentiates between a sentence and a proverb. The bedrock for the concept of proverb and the proverb genre should lay in everyday life (emic), not in academic research (etic). As Ben-Amos (1992: 25) has stressed, the basis for the concept of proverb lies in everyday life in the context where the proverb is used.

### **Changes in Contexts and Proverbs**

Traditional and modern proverbs have been fixed in contemporary lifestyle and in everyday communication. The meaning of the concept ‘proverb’ has changed due to all the changes that have occurred both in the use of proverbs and in the everyday living context. Firstly, traditional proverbs are looking for new forms and they appear as combinations. They are found in all kinds of contexts, in which they might get quite extraordinary connections when compared with the assumed standard proverbial interpretation and from the etic-point of view. Moreover, new proverbs are created by using the existing ones and traditional proverbs are transformed into new ones, sometimes as parodies of the old tradition. The most common terms are ‘antiproverb’ and ‘proverb parody’ (Grzybek 2012: 140). When looking for proverbs in speech



and in colloquial written texts, we seek for proverbs, shortened proverbs, and references and allusions to proverbs. This is related to the fact that traditional proverbs are looking for new forms, proverbs are combined with other existing proverbs and modern proverbs are created by using the traditional ones. They have been called ‘proverb blendings’ or ‘spliced proverbs’ (Grzybek 2012: 141). Traditional proverbs are also found in new connections, and old proverbs are transformed into parodies of the old tradition. The genre of proverb might be in need of reassessment.

(5) Traditional proverbs are looking for new forms.

What a clumsy policeman who tried to make a turn in his car and ended in a ditch. This is really human. – *kaikille sattuu*, jotka jotain viel yrittävät tehdä [‘accidents will happen to all who still try to do something’]. (SSS, sent 5.9.2006)

The expression *kaikille sattuu* [‘accidents will happen’] refers to the proverb *Tekevälle sattuu* [‘Accidents will happen to him/her who works’] especially as the sentence goes on with “*yrittävät tehdä*” [try to do something]. Anyhow, the one used in the text is not a fixed form but a situation-related application.

(6) Traditional and/or new expressions /proverbs are combined or proverb blending.

The sense of proportion is lost. Week after week people fuss about SMS-messages and stones are thrown! – Pseudonym: *Heittäjätkö pulmusia?* [‘The throwers are snow buntings?’] (SSS, sent 28.3.2008)

The proverb in this SMS-message is from the Bible: *Se, joka on synnitön, heittäköön ensimmäisen kiven* [‘The one without sin shall throw the first stone’] and it is combined with a well-known phrase in Finnish *Puhdas kuin pulmunen* [‘Clean as a snow bunting (*Plectrophenax nivalis*)’]. The phrase in itself refers to the image of the bird (white and clean), not to the reality (black and white).

(7) Traditional proverbs are to be found in new connections.

Why send Finnish troops to other countries, if a minister finds it better to stay in a hotel only because of the burning tyres – *oma koti kullan kallis* [‘own home is worth of gold’]. (SSS, sent 23.1.2007)

This message is a comment on a situation when a Finnish minister was in a war zone and stayed in a hotel. It is unclear here what the ‘home’ is – Finland or the hotel.

(8) New proverbs are created by using traditional ones.

In this town we have many recycle points for collecting paper, so that it should not be thrown to the garbage cans at houses – *Jotakin tolkkua* [‘You ought have moderation in everything and use some common sense’]. (SSS, sent 30.1.2008)

*Jotakin tolkkua* points to the traditional proverb, *Kohtuus kaikessa* [‘Moderation in everything’]. The modern version would be *Kohtuus kaikessa, pullo päivässä* [‘Moderation in everything, just a bottle a day’].

(9) Traditional proverbs are transformed, sometimes as parodies of the old tradition.

Ungrateful, did you know that *kissa kiittämättä elää, viisas koirakin oppii kiittämään* [‘a cat lives without thanking, a wise dog learns to thank’]. We should learn from a dog! The one who gives a present gets a good feeling. – Yeah (SSS, sent 15.1.2008)

He or she got an answer immediately:

(10) Ungrateful. *Kissa elää kiitoksella, koira pään silityksellä* [‘A cat lives with thanking, a dog with someone stroking its head’]! – Yeah, yeah. (SSS, sent 24.1.2008)

Secondly, everyday Finnish communication is not anymore the same as it was when the study of proverbs began in the late 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries.<sup>10</sup> Everyday communication is no longer using only spoken language. A significant part of interaction between people takes place in written form. Since the 17<sup>th</sup> century in the sermons in Finnish and since the late 19<sup>th</sup> century also in political speeches, proverbs have been primarily spoken, not written texts even if proverbs in homily and later on also in politics constituted a part of written texts.

Proverbs occur individually only in dictionaries and in proverb lists. In other circumstances a proverb hardly appears alone. A proverb is always combined with something that is happening simultaneously. This involves both verbal use and written texts in colloquial style. It is difficult to imagine a pure proverb performance, either in a verbal or in colloquial written form. Proverbs are as a rule performed in discussion and they are not isolated from the remaining speech except with some leading comment or verb, a proverb marker. In Honko’s (1989: 26) coordination of narrative genres, proverbs are easy to set on any part of the table. Following the folkloristic genre division based on the action (Abrahams 1976), it is quite obvious that proverbs are situated in the conversational genre. Nowadays proverbs also appear in a modern urban context using modern media. In contemporary proverbs context discussion can substitute for storytelling, fantasia literature for making the invisible believable, popular songs for folk

---

<sup>10</sup> Proverbs have been collected from much earlier times, in Finnish the first collections date from the time when written Finnish was constructed in the 16<sup>th</sup> century (Granbom-Herranen 2012).

songs, aphorisms for folk poems (*kansanruno*) and cartoons for told anecdotes and jokes. Proverbs can be found in all of these connections. They can also occur in public communicative functions, for example in street art and advertisements. We can think of situations in which a legend, song or ritual is presented as an independent performance programme, or as a chapter in a book. With proverbs this is not possible; the vernacular use of a proverb needs some frames.

Thirdly, the folk have been substituted by a group. The mysterious Finnish folk, originating from the time of Finnish Romanticism and national romantic ideas in the 19<sup>th</sup> century, do not exist anymore – they might even never have existed. Nowadays a folkloristic group can be defined by a social standing, profession, ethnic background, language, domicile or whatever connects people, so it is possible to talk about some kind of membership. (Honko 1998: 1; Harris-Lopez 2003: 105.) Today we have to decide how to adapt to the issue of Internet communities and if these communities can be counted as ‘folk’. We have to consider if people communicating via reading newspapers and writing letters meant to be published constitute a group. Nevertheless, by today communication forms have changed and are still changing.

Fourthly, it is not clear what can be expected to survive when the environment changes but the content of speech stays unchanged. The environment and the technology used to transmit folkloristic traditions, such as proverbs, have been changing. Radio and television have had their impact on the folklore genre and the photocopier is an example of technology that made the beginning of Xerox-lore possible. Personal computers and e-mail as well as the Internet have recreated the proverb genre. Modern cameras, mobile phone cameras and video equipment have inspired recordings of folkloristic items such as proverbs in graffiti. Virtual reality is a possible world for folklore. (Harris-Lopez 2003: 109–114.) This has also awakened doubts about the origin of tradition, and already in the early 1980s the idea of computer-generated proverbs arose (Grzybek 1987: 73). However, folklorists themselves have adapted many of these technological advances like the tape recorder and photos as the first wave of technological applications and videos and computers as the second one. These are used in order to collect material more easily, quickly and effectively than before (Harris-Lopez 2003: 112). This is something that has been easy to accept. The change of the forms of tradition and the way it is transmitted has not been as easy to notice and to adapt to.

Finally, genres as well as typological systems and classifications have been and in many cases still are quite dominant among paremiological studies. They have provided frameworks for

both the study of folkloristic paremiology and for organizing proverb collections in various archives, and they have been built in order to take into account all that may be of interest to paremiologists. The typologies and classification systems focusing on proverbs and proverbial expressions have mostly been considered as givens, even in the 20<sup>th</sup> century. (Bauman 1992: 53–56.) In most folkloristic sectors this is not topical anymore. However, in paremiology the proverb genre with its sub-genres has been taken as a classificatory category or, alternatively, it has been brought into discourse as a permanent phenomenon (Kapaló 2011: 80). The classifications cannot be bypassed without any attention if the focus is on proverbs. In etic-use genres serve a dual purpose: to provide a system of classification and to give a conceptual framework for articulating the characteristics of components within a classification.

Proverbs as utterances can be relevant for hundreds of years. It is, for example, possible to trace some Finnish proverbs back to the time when they were used only in speech. The proverb *Sitä kuusta kuuleminen, jonka juurella asunto* [‘You have to listen to the advice given by the spruce you live next to’] is one of the oldest known Finnish proverbs (Haavio 1947). The proverb is still in use and the proverb has remained unchanged but the meaning has become different. Two examples of interpretations of this proverb in narratives are presented in examples 11.i–ii (PE85) (Granbom-Herranen 2004; 2008). The proverb received new interpretations and meanings, of which three examples from 2000 are presented in 11.iii–v (Granbom-Herranen 2013a: 381–382), and in 2009, the proverb was found in the contemporary material (SSS):

(11) (i) In the 1930s, elderly people remembered their childhood and, in particular, how children were brought up. At that time, parents’ words were law and a child brave enough to try to disprove them heard *Sitä kuusta kuuleminen, jonka juurella asunto*. (PE85, woman, born 1922).

(ii) Work had to be done so well that you’d get more later. You’d only earn your living when working. (...) The bible, the book of books, offers that advice; so do old sayings such as *Sitä kuusta kuuleminen, jonka juurella asunto*. (PE85, man, born 1937).

(iii) If you’re a worker, you are to side with your employer. (man, born 1938).

(iv) It’s a reminder. We all have roots somewhere and they shouldn’t be forgotten. (woman, born 1952).

(v) If you want to keep a job and income, it’s better when speaking to have the same opinion as one’s employer: ‘*Kenen leipää syöt, sen lauluja laulat*’ [Whose bread you eat, his or her songs you sing]. (woman, born 1955).

(vi) It is wrong to support political parties, perhaps not in a juridical sense but in a moral sense, as similarly, all bribery is wrong – ‘*Sitä kuusta kuuleminen...*’ (SSS sent 16.6.2009).

The infinity and inexhaustibility of the proverb is, on the one hand, connected with its meaning. In a new place and time the proverb can get new interpretations. On the one hand, the proverb genre is very constricted, while on the other hand, it is boundless as the boundlessness of proverbs is linked with the capability to transform. Nevertheless, despite many changes in culture, proverbs are still used; they have rhetorical power and they can be used in argumentation. The use of the proverb is linked up to the worldview and the present situation.

### **Conclusions**

In Finnish paremiology the etic-concept ‘proverb’ has been quite a stable and unchangeable element, unlike the proverb genre itself which has never been untouchable. On the contrary, paremiologies have for a couple of centuries, one after another, created classifications, typologies and groupings, which break apart the proverb genre and then piece it back together in a new order. All this has been done in order to clarify the etic-concept of proverb and the proverb genre. Proverb definitions are built into the classifications simultaneously as the need to organize proverbs sets requirements on proverb definitions. Some classification systems are needed to study proverbs as well as to organize proverb corpus to databases and to administer materials in various archives. The etic-classifications are relevant for specifying the genre that, for its part, is necessary for two reasons. The research has to be able to identify the focus of the work and classifications are essential for administering archives. However, proverbs are used in emic-surroundings for communication and in spite of the genre definitions in etic-format, people live, use and are allowed to use proverbs as they see fit. In the emic-context the proverb genre of the 21<sup>st</sup> century cannot be the same as it was in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

It does not matter whether we have to define; the conclusion is the same: it is difficult to do that perfectly. It has not been possible to create one common and universal definition for concept ‘proverb’ or genre of the proverb to be applied to both verbal use and literature as well as to all other disciplines. The contemporary proverb genre should not be simply a matter of introducing some new parts into an old system, but rather changing the limits of the genre and perhaps compiling some new features to look for when approaching the phenomenon from a novel point of view. Neither genres nor concepts need to cover everything everywhere. To conclude, in paremiology there exists a need for two kinds of etic- definitions of the proverb: folkloristic and linguistic. If genre is a restricted phenomenon, it can also be controlled. As

circumstances and lifestyles are changing more and more rapidly, the emic-concepts such as proverbs including their meanings cannot be the everlasting elements neither for academic use nor for ordinary people and in everyday life. Genres are cultural products in a time-and-space society and as time wears on, new concepts as well as genres and subgenres might be needed.

If the changes in etic-definitions of both the proverb and the proverb genre are seen as developmental steps towards emic-definitions, it is possible to state without any hesitation that the proverb genre is very much alive. It can be concluded that modern proverbs are a part of living tradition and proverbs are alive as long as they are used or referred to in everyday communication. Proverbs, both traditional and modern ones, still have their place in urban surroundings and new technology. Traditional proverbs are transforming, they are reconstructed and reevaluated. At the same time, modern proverbs are constructed or some of them just spring up. Many of the modern proverbs will be traditional after some decades, but we do not know which ones. The modern proverb is quite often created by somebody, by an unknown or a well-known person. If we have very regimented demands for frequency and distribution as well as what comes to anonymity of origin, it might be noticed that only traditional proverbs exist and the part of the proverb genre that deals with modern proverbs is more like an empty folder.

## REFERENCES

### Sources

*HS* = Helsingin Sanomat, a Finnish daily newspaper.

*HS 17.3.2001.* = „Paavo Lipponen: Jäätteenmäen aikana keskustan linja on ollut täydellistä populismia“. Helsingin Sanomat.

*HS 17.8.2008.* = „Krokotiilin kyyneleitä itketään ympäri maailmaa“. Helsingin Sanomat.

*HS material* = Reply letters to the questioning in Helsingin Sanomat. Research material, in the possession of the author.

*ICP2010* = *Interdisciplinary Colloquium on Proverbs year 2010, abstracts*  
<http://www.colloquium-proverbs.org/index.php?topic=seccao&seccaoid=37>  
[28.12.2011]

Kuusi, Matti 1953. *Vanhan kansan sananlaskuviisaus: suomalaisia elämänohjeita, kansanaforismeja, lentäviä lauseita ja kokkapuheita vuosilta 1544–1826*. Porvoo: WSOY.

Laukkanen, Kari ja Hakamies, Pekka 1978. *Sananlaskut*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran toimituksia 346. Helsinki: SKS.

Leino, Eino 1978. *Hymyilevä Apollo*. Helsinki: Otava.

*Mattinykänen*. <http://www.mattinykanen.net/thoughts.html> [26.1.2012]

*MTV3 7.8.2011.* <http://www.mtv3.fi/uutiset/kotimaa.shtml/2011/08/1370737/holkeri-muistetaan-myos-silakoista-ja-kahvista> [26.1.2012]

Nirvi, R.E. & Hakulinen, Lauri 1948. *Suomen kansan sananparsikirja*. Sanakirjasäätiön toimituksia 5. Porvoo: WSOY.

PE85 = Perinne elämässäni -kilpikirjoitus 1985. [Tradition in my life] in The Folklore Archives of the Finnish Literature Society in Helsinki.

SSS = Salonseudun sanomat, a Finnish daily newspaper.

SSS material = SMS-messages sent as letters to editors in Salonseudun sanomat, 2004–2010. Research material, in the possession of the author.

Suomalaisia sananlaskuja [http://fi.wikiquote.org/wiki/Keskustelu:Suomalaisia\\_sananlaskuja](http://fi.wikiquote.org/wiki/Keskustelu:Suomalaisia_sananlaskuja) [27.12.2011]

## Literature

- Abrahams, Roger D. 1976. The Complex Relations of Simple Forms. In Dan Ben-Amos (ed.) *Folklore Genres*. Publications of American Folklore Society, Bibliographical and Special Series 26. Austin & London: University of Texas Press. Pp. 193–214.
- Apo, Satu 2001. *Viinan voima. Näkökulmia suomalaisten kansanomaiseen alkoholiajatteluun ja -kulttuuriin*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Arora, Shirley L. 1994. The Perception of Proverbiality. In Wolfgang Mieder (ed.) *Wise Words. Essays on the Proverb*. New York: Garland Publishing. Pp. 3–29.
- Badiou, Alain 2009. *Being and Event*. New York: Continuum.
- Bauman, Richard 1992: Genre. In Richard Bauman (ed.) *Folklore, Cultural Performances, and Popular Entertainments*. New York, Oxford: Oxford University Press. Pp. 53–59.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1976a, Analytical Categories and Ethnic Genres. In Dan Ben-Amos (ed.) *Folklore Genres*. American Folklore Society Bibliographical and Special Series 26. Austin & London: University of Texas Press. Pp. 215–242.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1976b. Introduction. In Dan Ben-Amos (ed.) *Folklore Genres*. American Folklore Society, Bibliographical and Special Series 26. Austin & London: University of Texas Press. Pp. ix–xlv.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1992. Do We Need Ideal Types (in Folklore)? An address to Lauri Honko. In *NIF Papers 2*. Turku: Nordic Institute of Folklore.
- Briggs, Charles L. 1985. The Pragmatics of Proverb Performances in New Mexican Spanish. *American Anthropologist* 87: 793–810.
- Briggs, Charles L. 1988. *Competence in Performance. The Creativity of Tradition in Mexican Verbal Art*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Čermák, František 2005. Text Introducers of Proverbs and Other Idioms. In *Phraseologismen als Gegenstand sprach- und kulturwissenschaftlicher Forschung* : 57–77.
- Dundes, Alan 1980. Who Are The Folk? In Alan Dundes (ed.) *Interpreting Folklore*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press. Pp. 1–19.
- Dundes, Alan 1981. On the Structure of the Proverb. In Wolfgang Mieder & Alan Dundes (eds.) *The Wisdom of many. Essays on the Proverb*. New York & London: Garland Publishing. Pp. 43–64.
- Ferretti, Todd R., Schwint, Christopher A., Katz, Albert N. 2007. Electrophysiological and Behavioral Measures of the Influence of Literal and Figurative Contextual Constraints on Proverb Comprehension. *Brain and Language* 101 (1), 38–49. [online] [http://ac.els-cdn.com/S0093934X06002422/1-s2.0-S0093934X06002422-main.pdf?\\_tid=9602b4513ecc912233c1bb6b5cedccc5&acdnat=1334732314\\_6f0030b373587db57d6164f321d725db](http://ac.els-cdn.com/S0093934X06002422/1-s2.0-S0093934X06002422-main.pdf?_tid=9602b4513ecc912233c1bb6b5cedccc5&acdnat=1334732314_6f0030b373587db57d6164f321d725db)
- Granbom-Herranen, Liisa 2004. *Sananlaskujen käyttäjät ja käyttöyhteys. Sananlaskut käyttökontekstissaan 'Perinne elämässäni' -kilpikirjoituksen aineistossa* [Users of Proverbs and the Context] MA thesis. University of Helsinki. [online] <http://urn.fi/URN:NBN:fi-fe20051452>

- Granbom-Herranen, Liisa 2008. *Sananlaskut kasvatuspuheessa. Perinnettä, kasvatusta, indoktrinaatiota?* [Proverbs in pedagogical discourse. Tradition, upbringing, indoctrination?] Jyväskylä Studies in Education, Psychology and Social Research 329. University of Jyväskylä. (includes a summary in English, pp. 278–285). [online] <http://urn.fi/URN:ISBN:978-951-39-3111-7>
- Granbom-Herranen, Liisa 2009. Proverbs from Childhood. *Proverbium. Yearbook of International Proverb Scholarship* 26: 151–170.
- Granbom-Herranen, Liisa 2010. Is a Proverb Always a Proverb? In Rui Soares and Outi Lauhakangas (eds.) *3<sup>rd</sup> Interdisciplinary Colloquium on Proverbs*. Tavira: AIP-IAP. Pp. 215–221.
- Granbom-Herranen, Liisa 2011a. Proverb – a Literal Phrase And a Part of Everyday Speech. In Antonio Pamies, Juan de Dios Luque Durán & Patricia Fernández Martín (eds.) *Paremiología y herencia cultural*. Granada: Granada Lingvistica. Pp. 285–294.
- Granbom-Herranen, Liisa 2011b. *Rahvaan lapsen kasvatuksen tavoitteet Ruotsin ja Venäjän ajan säädöksissä*. [Upbringing of Common People’s Children in Finland – What Do the Statutes from Swedish and Russian Eras Tell Us?] *The Finnish Journal of Education Kasvatus* 42 (2): 167–176.
- Granbom-Herranen, Liisa 2012. *Suomalaisen sananlaskututkimuksen aikakaudet*. [Periods Of Finnish Paremiology] *Elore* 19 (2): 165–180. [online] [http://www.elore.fi/arkisto/2\\_12/granbom-herranen.pdf](http://www.elore.fi/arkisto/2_12/granbom-herranen.pdf)
- Granbom-Herranen, Liisa 2013a. *Some Theoretical Aspects of Processes Behind the Meanings of Proverbs and Phrases*. In Joanna Szeszunowicz & Boguslaw Nowowiejski & Katsumasa Yagi & Takaaki Kanzak (eds.) *Research on Phraseology Across Continents* 2. University of Białymstoku Publishing House. Pp. 372–388.
- Granbom-Herranen, Liisa 2013b. “Newspapers are the Schoolmasters of the Common People.” Some Paremiological Notes of Proverbs in a Finnish Newspaper. In Soares, Rui & Lauhakangas, Outi (eds.) *6<sup>th</sup> Interdisciplinary Colloquium on Proverbs*. Tavira: AIP-IAP. Pp. 315–328.
- Grzybek, Peter 1987. Foundations of Semiotic Proverb Study. *Proverbium. An International Yearbook of Proverb Scholarship* 4: 39–85.
- Grzybek, Peter 2011. *Proverb Variants and Variations. A New Old Problem?* Paper in the 5<sup>th</sup> Interdisciplinary Colloquium on Proverbs.
- Grzybek, Peter 2012. *Proverb Variants and Variations. A New Old Problem?* In Soares, Rui & Lauhakangas, Outi (eds.) *5<sup>th</sup> Interdisciplinary Colloquium on Proverbs*. Tavira: AIP-IAP. Pp. 135–152.
- Haavio, Martti 1949. Sitä kuusta kuuleminen, jonka juurelaa asunto. In *Kalevalareuran vuosikirja* 29. Porvoo: WSOY. Pp. 14 -33.
- Hakamies, Pekka 2013. Aspects on Proverb Genre. In Soares, Rui & Lauhakangas, Outi (eds.) *6<sup>th</sup> Interdisciplinary Colloquium on Proverbs*. Tavira: AIP-IAP. Pp. 542–554.
- Hanks, William 1987. Discourse Genres in a Theory of Practice. In *American Ethnologist* 14 (4): 666–692.
- Harris, Marvin 1990a. Harris’s Reply to Pike. In Thomas N. Headland, Pike, Kenneth L. & Harris, Marvin (eds.) *Emics and Etics. The Insider/Outsider Debate*. Frontiers of Anthropology, vol. 7. Newbury Park: Sage. Pp. 75–83.
- Harris, Marvin 1990b. Harris Final Responce. In Thomas N. Headland, Pike, Kenneth L. & Harris, Marvin (eds.) *Emics and Etics. The Insider/Outsider Debate*. Frontiers of Anthropology, vol. 7. Newbury Park: Sage. Pp. 202–216.
- Harris-Lopez, Trudier 2003. Genre. In Burt Feintuch (ed.) *Eight Words for the Study of Expressive Culture*. Urbana and Chicago: University of Illinois Press. Pp. 99–120.



- Headland, Thomas N. 1990. Introduction. A Dialogue Between Kenneth Pike and Marvin Harris on Emics and Etics. In Thomas N. Headland, Pike, Kenneth L. & Harris, Marvin (eds.) *Emics and Etics. The Insider/Outsider Debate*. *Frontiers of Anthropology* 7. Newbury Park: Sage. Pp. 13–27.
- Honko, Lauri 1989. Folkloristic Theories of Genre. In Anna-Leena Siikala (ed.) *Studies in Oral Narrative*. *Studia Fennica* 33. Helsinki:Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 13–28.
- Honko, Lauri 1998. Folklooriprotsess. In *Mäetagused* 6: 56–84.
- Jacobs, Joseph 1893. The Folk. *Folklore* 4 (2): 233–238.
- Jardine, Nick 2004. Etics and Emics (Not to Mention Anemics and Emetics). In *History of Sciences* 42: 261–278.
- Järv, Risto 2009. Aren't Proverbs there for the Taking? Kõiva, Mare (ed.) *Media & Folklore*. Tartu: EKM Teaduskirjastus. Pp. 239–268.
- Kapaló, James 2011. Genre and Authority in the Scholarly Construction of Charm and Prayer: a View from the Margins. In *Incantatio. An Internatiol Journal of Charms, Charmers and Charming* 1: 79–101. [online]  
[http://www.folklore.ee/incantatio/Incantatio\\_2011\\_1\\_Kapalo.pdf](http://www.folklore.ee/incantatio/Incantatio_2011_1_Kapalo.pdf)
- Krikmann, Arvo 1985. Vanasõnaparoodiatest. *Keel ja Kirjandus* 8: 88–103.
- Kuusi, Matti 1954. *Sananlaskut ja puheenparret*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Kuusi, Matti 1985. Lainasananlaskujen tutkimusongelmia. In Matti Kuusi (ed.) *Perisuomalaista ja kansainvälistä*. Tietolipas 99. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 72–84.
- Kuusi, Matti 1989. Sananparsistomme uusin kehitysvaihe. In Jyrki Pöysä (ed.) *Betoni kukkii. Kirjoituksia nykyperinteestä*. Tietolipas 115. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 215–231.
- Laine, Tuija 2002. Kirkossa, kaupungissa, kolhoosissa. Suomalaisten aapisten arvoista Agricolasta 1960-luvulle. In Inkeri Pitkäranta (ed.) *ABC Lukeminen esivallan palveluksessa*. Kansalliskirjaston gallerian julkaisuja 2. Helsinki: Suomen kansalliskirjasto. Pp. 79–132.
- Lau, Kimberly J., Tokofsky, Peter & Winick, Stephen D. 2004. Introduction. In Kimberly J. Lau, Peter Tokofsky & Stephen D. Winick (eds.) *What Goes Around Comes Around. The Circulation of Proverbs in Contemporary Life*. All USU Press Publications. Book 33, 1–19. [online] [http://digitalcommons.usu.edu/usupress\\_pubs/33](http://digitalcommons.usu.edu/usupress_pubs/33)
- Lett, James 1990. Emics and Etics. Notes on the Epistemology of Anthropology. In Thomas N. Headland, Pike, Kenneth L. & Harris, Marvin (eds.) *Emics and Etics. The Insider/Outsider Debate*. *Frontiers of Anthropology* 7. Newbury Park: Sage. Pp. 127–142.
- Litovkina, Anna T. 2011. The Nature of Women as Revealed Through Anglo-American Anti-Proverbs. *Proverbium. Yearbook of International Proverb Scholarship* 28: 87–120.
- Lönnrot, Elias 1981. *Suomen Kansan Sananlaskuja*. Espoo: Weilin&Göös.
- Mieder, Wolfgang 1993. *Proverbs Are never out of Season. Popular Wisdom in the Modern Age*. Oxford, New York: Oxford University Press.
- Mieder, Wolfgang 1994. Paremiological Minimum and Cultural Literacy. In Wolfgang Mieder (ed.) *Wise Words. Essays on the Proverb*. New York: Garland Publishing. Pp. 297–316.
- Mieder, Wolfgang 2004. *Proverbs. A Handbook*. Westport, Connecticut & London: Greenwood Press.
- Norricks, Neal R. 1985. *How Proverbs Mean. Semantic Studies in English Proverbs*. New York: Mouton.
- Pike, Kenneth L. 1954. *Language in Relation to a Unified Theory of the Structure of Human Behaviour*. Glendale: Summer Institute of Linguistics.

- Pike, Kenneth L. 1990a. Pike's Replay to Harris. In Thomas N. Headland, Pike, Kenneth L. & Harris, Marvin (eds.) *Emics and Etics: The Insider/Outsider Debate*. *Frontiers of Anthropology*, vol. 7. Newbury Park: Sage. Pp. 62–75.
- Pike, Kenneth L. 1990b. Pike's Final Response. In Thomas N. Headland, Pike, Kenneth L. & Harris, Marvin (eds.) *Emics and Etics: The Insider/Outsider Debate*. *Frontiers of Anthropology* 7. Newbury Park: Sage. Pp. 184–201.
- Putnam, Hilary 1975. Meaning of meaning. In Gunderson, Keith (ed.) *Language, Mind and Knowledge*. *Minnesota Studies in the Philosophy of Science* VII. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Raji-Oyelade, Aderemi 2008. Classifying the Unclassified. The Challenge of Postproverbiality in International Proverb Scholarship. In Rui Soares & Outi Lauhakangas (eds.) *1<sup>st</sup> Interdisciplinary Colloquium on Proverbs, Proceedings*. Tavira: AIP-IAP. Pp. 146–155.
- Reznikov, Andrey 2009. *Old Wine in New Bottles. Modern Russian Anti-Proverbs*. Vermont: University of Burlington,
- Taylor, Archer 1981. The Wisdom of Many and the Wit of One. In Wolfgang Mieder & Alan (eds.) 1981. *The Wisdom of many. Essays on the Proverb*. New York & London: Garland Publishing. Pp. 3–9.
- Tolkien, J.R.R. 1967. *The Lord of the Rings. Part Two, The Two Towers*. New York: Ballantine Books.

## Major Generic Forms of Dogri *lok gathas*

**Mrinalini Atrey**

Since the coining of the term ‘folklore’, the concept has travelled a long way. A broad definition of folklore includes the way people learn, share knowledge and form their identity. It is, as Dan Ben-Amos’s influential delineation abstracts it, ‘artistic communication in small groups’, (Ben-Amos 1971: 13). In the course of its development, scholars have attempted to define folklore in many ways, according to its components and according to theories that help us understand how it works. The definitions of folklore do not always name in specific terms the material that constitutes folklore. Folklorists have developed labels that organise and categorise types of folklore into genres (Sims & Stephens 2005: 12).

In general language, genre is a method to classify. Any kind of category based on criterion or a set of criterion can be called genre. The different kinds of cultural productions are distinguished from each other based on certain methods or distinguishing elements. The term ‘genre’ has been used in various medias, such as literature, folklore, cinema, music, dance, craft and painting. Thus, genre is either an abstract category coined by researchers or it is attributed to a given cultural form. There are many reasons to use the concept of genre as a classificatory tool:

Just as doctors do not talk about the body without knowing all principal parts, just as a linguist cannot talk about language without a vocabulary of terms that describe words, sounds, and meaning, so folklorist does not discuss folklore without a sound knowledge of its genres.... Without a generic terminology, we would have little hope of understanding each other. (Toelken 1996: 183.)

As folklorists study new and evolving folklore, they need to have ways to talk about the new types. The loose classifications of genres provide a foundation for identifying, discussing and analysing the qualities of various folklore items. Also, when folklorists sometime focus their career in the study of one particular type of folklore, the genre labels help them to locate and communicate with others studying the same kinds of folklore. Moreover, having a name or label gives us a place to start in understanding an artist’s and performer’s work. It also gives us a common language so that we can share and discuss ideas and interpretations. (Sims & Stephens 2005: 12.)

In folklore, generic labelling is based on the particular characteristics that an item shows and how it is expressed. As I see it, various forms of folklore can be divided into three broad genres – verbal, material and customary. Within these genres, there are numerous types and subtypes of lore. Verbal folklore includes all kinds of lore involving words, whether set to music; organised in chronological, story form; or simply labelling an activity or expressing a belief in a word or phrase. Among the most recognisable forms of verbal lore studied by folklorists are folk songs, myths, and folk tales, as well as contemporary or urban legends. Verbal folklore also includes jokes, jump-rope rhymes, proverbs and riddles; even individuals' own stories about their lives, their personal narratives are considered to be folklore. All these variant forms of verbal lore express beliefs and values of the society in which they exist. Often they function as a medium to educate members of the folk group among whom it is performed.

Material folklore takes a number of forms, some of them permanent such as architectural structures or functional tools and some of it ephemeral such as food, body painting or paper ornaments. Material folklore corresponds to techniques, skills, recipes and formulas transmitted across the generations and it is subject to the same forces of conservative tradition and individual variations as verbal art. In between oral literature and material culture lie areas of traditional life facing in both directions. One such area is customary lore or social folk customs. Here the emphasis is on group interaction rather than on individual skills and performances. (Dorson 1982: 2.) It includes rituals, festivals and celebrations, music dance, mode of worship outside established church, folk religion and folk medicine.

However, these genres are not watertight compartments and they do not exist in isolation to each other. Elements of all the three genres of verbal, material and customary may appear together. Often, celebrations include folklore from each of genre and frequently the many forms of texts present in a celebration express important group values and beliefs. For example marriage celebrations not only include verbal texts but also playing of traditional music and instruments. Brides, grooms and their families often rely on customary practices to express belief in the marriage vows. There are significant and sometimes symbolic texts which describe the material culture. Therefore, most folklorists feel that folklore items actually bridge many categories, and in addition, that the whole idea of genre can be relative. This leaves us with the problem whether there is any absolute genre. The genre we choose to place a folklore item into depends on which elements we emphasise when we analyse it. Thus, if we study for example marriage customs of a particular group, the genre definitions we make depend on our research

interests. Whether we want to study rituals, verbal, vows or music played therein, will also decide the genre in which we place the marriage custom. (Sims & Stephens 2005: 17.)

This relativism has made folklorists to look beyond genre classification, as folklore has developed as a complex, interconnected act of communication. As such 'text' and 'context' of an item becomes the focus of folklore research. Etymological meaning of 'text' is broad and means to weave. This aspect of definition suggests that text is like a cloth, a material object, woven of many different threads, all combined to create a coherent whole. (Sims & Stephens 2005: 19.) Herein text not only refers to written words but also includes other things such as performances, objects and rituals. This leads to mean that words, objects, ideas and behaviour and content of particular item of folklore is equally important. The context of the performance includes the physical settings and social situations in which members of folk groups share folklore as well as the relationships among audience members and performers. So analysis of both the text and the context of a folklore item can help us to understand it as an artistic communication.

It is in this context that the present paper intends to study and analyse *Dogri lok gathas* (folk narrative songs). It highlights that *Dogri lok gatha* is an important generic form existing in the region along with its sub genres. It also suggests the direction in which the research with regard to this generic form has to take place so that it becomes a unique way of understanding people, art, expression and communication in the region.

Dogri is a dialect which is spoken in Jammu region. Jammu region is a geographical entity which has been identified as a tract lying between River Jhelum and River Ravi, that is, between Plains of Punjab and the ascending hills of Pir Panjal. In ancient times the region was known by the name of *Darvabhisara*.<sup>1</sup> It also remained a part of the *Madradesh* in Vedic times.<sup>2</sup> The region is further divided into sub-regions of The Eastern Plains, the Eastern Hills, the western

---

<sup>1</sup> Jammu region was also identified by the name *Darva Abhisara* tract in ancient times. It was named so after the two ancient tribes, *Darva* and *Abhisara* which are said to have dwelt here in Pre-Mauryan times. *Darva* was the region lying between River Chenab and River Ravi and can be identified with present day Jammu and Billawar areas known as *Duggar Ilaqa (Land Of the Dogras)*. *Abhisara* was the area between the River Chenab and River Jhelum. Its ruler *Abhisara* is said to have entered into a diplomatic alliance with Alexander the great and thus, saved the region from destruction. Presently area is called Chibhal and includes Rajouri, Poonch and Bhimber. Since these two regions were adjacent to each other the whole region between the rivers Jhelum and Ravi came to be called *Darvabhasara*.

<sup>2</sup> *Madra* was an important tribe in Vedic times which had carved out a state in Punjab and adjoining area and had extended into the Plain areas of Jammu as well and therefore at one time in historical period, Jammu was a part of *Madradesh* (land of *Madra* tribe).

Plains and the Western Hill.<sup>3</sup> Presently the region forms a part of the state of Jammu and Kashmir, the northern most state of India. However some part of it including Bhimbar, Khari-Kharyali and Mirpur now lies in Pakistan.

Herein, many local dialects of *Gojri*, *Pahari*, *Bhaderwahi*, *Kishtwari*, *poonchi* are spoken along with *Dogri*. However except *Dogri*, other dialects have their own exclusivity due to a limited spatial area. *Gojri* is spoken by *Gujjars*, the major nomadic tribe of the region, *Pahari* is a dialect of people living in higher reaches of Jammu hills whereas *Bhaderwahi* is spoken only in Bhaderwaha area of the region, *Kishtwari* in Kishtwar and *Poonchi* in Poonch region. In comparison to these, *Dogri* has more spread area. This has been largely due the extension of *Dogra* culture and its dialect (*Dogri*) from the nucleus centres of Basholi, Jasrota and Bhillawar to the other areas of the region throughout the historical period. Moreover since last two hundred years, especially from the time of Maharaja Ranbir Singh (1857–1885 A.D.), efforts were made for the promotion and development of *Dogri* as a result of which *Dogri* has got enriched and achieved the status of a language from that of a simple dialect. In 2003 it got recognised as one of the major languages of India by its incorporation in the Eighth Schedule of Indian Constitution.<sup>4</sup> *Dogra* culture is now the main culture prevailing here, taking under its umbrella other sub cultures of the region and *Dogri* has become main language.

The struggle for recognition of *Dogri* as one of the major languages of India not only led to the development of the language but also led to the documentation and publication of *Dogri* folk literature. In this regard Jammu and Kashmir Cultural Academy has played a pivotal role in collecting and publishing *Dogri* folk literature.<sup>5</sup> It has brought out many volumes with respect to verbal lore such as folk songs, folk ballads, folk tales, proverbs and idioms. *Dogri Sanstha* is another organisation involved in documentation and publication of folk literature along with modern *Dogri* literature. The Department of *Dogri* Language, University of Jammu has also

---

<sup>3</sup> The Census Report of India 1911: 201.

<sup>4</sup> The Eighth Schedule to the Indian Constitution contains a list of scheduled languages, originally 14, but since expanded to 22. At the time the Constitution was enacted, inclusion in this list meant that the language was entitled to representation on the Official Languages Commission, and that the language would be one of the bases that would be drawn upon to enrich Hindi, the official language of the Union. The list has since, however, acquired further significance. The Government of India is now under an obligation to take measures for the development of these languages, such that they grow rapidly in richness and become effective means of communicating modern knowledge

<sup>5</sup> Jammu and Kashmir Cultural Academy has been doing documentation work on oral literary forms in collaboration with various government departments. The Academy has been established for the promotion of art and culture of the different regions and tribes of the state.

been actively engaged in this area of research. More over the individual initiative of the scholars like Prof. Ramnath Sastri, Sh.Om Goswami, Sh. Shiv Nirmohi, Dr. Asoka Jerath and many others also cannot be overlooked. As a result a rich treasure of *Dogri* folk oral narratives in its variant forms such as folk songs, folk tales, folk ballads, folktales, riddles, proverbs, idioms, etc., has come to light.

Among oral narratives, *Lok gathas* especially those connected with martyr deities have been documented in large numbers. State Cultural Academy has brought out many edited volumes on *Lok gathas* including *Namiyan Dogri Baran* (New Dogri Bars) by Asoka Jerath. Dogri Sanstha has also published *lok gathas* like *Gugga gatha* (*Lok gatha* of Raja Mandlik) by Ramnath Sastri. Among the individual works, *Meri mitti De Khatole and Marh Block De Shaheedan Diyan Lok Gathan* (*Lok Gathas of Martyr deities of Marh Block*) by Surendra Gandalgai are major contributions. *Duggar ki Lok Gathan* (*lok gathas of Duggar region*) by Shiv Nirmohi is also a major contribution in this regard.

This term '*lok gatha*' was first used by Dr. Krishandev upadhyay, a noted Hindi writer, to designate those narratives which tell a story in the form of a song. It is combination of two words, *lok* and *gatha* wherein former means folk and latter refers to a narrative therefore it means a narrative of the folk. It is usually a long narrative song organised into stanzas and is performed to the accompaniment of music. The tradition of *lok gatha* is prevalent in different regional languages of India where they are called as *pavade* in Garwal (region in Uttarakand), *Parmar* in Brij, *Pavado* in Malwa, *pavara* in Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh and *Pavada* in Maharashtra.

In *lok gatha*, the protagonist is usually a folk deity, folk hero, or a martyr who has sacrificed his life for a common cause. The *gatha* narrates the life story and main events connected with these heroes. The aim of its formation is to highlight the deeds of the hero and create a halo effect around the protagonist. Krishandev Upadhyaya (1960: 492) has delineated following characteristics which a narrative has to possess in order to qualify as a *lok gatha*. They are:

- Creator should be unknown
- Lack of authentic text, Performance is not text based
- It should be Lyrical, mixture of dance and music,

- It should be an Oral composition,
- Lack of preaching,
- Impact of local culture,
- Absence of rhetorical expression,
- Long text,
- Repetition of *tek pad* (sentences).

Many of the narrative songs in *Dogri* also possess the above mentioned characteristics and they fall in the genre of *lok gathas*. The generic forms which exist in *Dogri lok gatha* differ from each other on the basis of subject matter. In the following section attempt has been made to highlight generic forms of *Dogri lok gathas*. At the same time it would also look into the purpose of composition of the narratives and the singing community connected with their performance. The vernacular terms which designate the generic forms are part of local tradition and practice.

### **Generic forms of the Dogri lok gathas**

#### **1. Karak gathas (Sacred narrative songs)**

*Karaks* are sacred narratives sung in the honour of Brahmanical gods and folk deities in the region. They are performed only at the shrine of deity and on particular occasions by the designated person. So far as the word *karak* is concerned it has been derived from Sanskrit word *karika* which means *shalok* or special sacred song or something sacred said in few words. (Nirmohi 1982: 17.) Initially the term *karak* appears to have had a limited application. It was sung only in the honour of Vedic and Puranic deities. Later on same was adopted by the folk singers to sing the *gathas* of the local deities. It is said that probably *karak* singing was started by *Nath Jogis* who would sing in the honour of *Sidda Nath* but later on same was adopted by the folk singers for the local folk deities like *gram devtas* (village deities) and *kul devtas* (family



deities).<sup>6</sup> They are sung in a particular folk *raag* (one of the melodic modes used in Indian classical music which has its folk version as well).

So far as the formation of the *karak* is concerned, the stanza in *karak* ends with *e* where stress is laid and is sung in *alap*.<sup>7</sup> *Karak* is sung to the accompaniment of musical instrument known as *dhol*.<sup>8</sup> The aim of the *karak* formation is to bestow deity status on the designated person, especially in case of a person who has achieved martyrdom or followed the path of renunciation and also to honour the deity.

*Karak* is performed at the time of rituals and festivals held in honour of the deities. These festivals are annual congregations (*male*) and *Kharkas* (the first offering of the harvest to the deity) at their shrines. Thousands of devotees take part in it and become part of the performance. Through *karak* singing, a deity is invoked to get favours in the form of agricultural prosperity, wealth, progeny and protection from natural calamities.

In course of *karak* performance, when deity gets invoked, it communicates through a medium (designated person) called *Dowala*. He is a religious professional capable of having direct communication with deity and through him deity communicate its wishes to the gathered audience. This performance is called *jatra*. In course of *jatra* deity also suggest corrective measures to alleviate the sufferings of the persons affected who come there.

*Karaks* can be sung only by traditional folk singers called *gardis* and *jogis*. They are the people belonging to lowest strata of the society namely the *Megh* or *Dum* sub-caste.<sup>9</sup> *Karaks* form two sub groups among themselves as (a) those dealing with Brahmanical gods and goddesses called as 'Puranic', and (b) *gathas* of folk deities and family deities.

---

<sup>6</sup>Jogi is a colloquial term for the "yogi", which refers to the people who practiced Yoga as part of their daily rituals. The Jogi are followers of Yoga and worshipers of the Lord *Shiva*. Gorakshanath is credited with the systemization and categorization of the practice of yoga. The *Jogis* who are followers of *Gorak Nath* are called as *Nath Jogis*. They are further divided into many sub-sects.

<sup>7</sup> The *alap* is the opening section of a typical North Indian classical performance. It is a form of melodic improvisation that introduces and develops a raga. In dhrupad singing the *alap* is unmetred, improvised (within the *raga*) and unaccompanied, and started at a slow tempo.

<sup>8</sup> Dhol refers to any one of a number of similar types of double-headed drum widely used, with regional variations, throughout the Indian subcontinent.

<sup>9</sup> In the Hindu Social structure there are four main traditional *Varnas* (hierarchies)-*Brahman* (priestly class), *Kshtriyas* (warrior class), *Vaisya* (traders, peasants, artisans) and *Sudras* (serving other three Varnas). *Dums* belong to the *Sudra* section. However in Jammu region they do not do menial jobs as they are associated with worship of local deities. Their association with performance of rituals at the shrines of local deities has given birth to the legend where they have traced their origin to *Shiva* and *Parvati*.

*Puranic lok gathas* largely centre around the stories of *Shiva-Parvati*, their marriage and magic rituals associated with lord Shiva.<sup>10</sup> Of these the *Shiva vivah gatha* (narrative of Shiva's marriage) and *Shiva khelan jadia gatha* (shiva performing magic narrative) are very popular. The *Shiva vivah gatha* reflects local marriage custom and rituals. *Shiva khelan jadia* is a narrative which explains folk magic rituals but the singers have connected it with Shiva though its reference is not to be found in any of the Brahmanical literature.<sup>11</sup> The *gathas* connected with *Shiva-Parvati* are sung by singers called *jangams*.<sup>12</sup>

*Gathas* of folk deities include those of family deities (*kul devtas*(male deities) and *kul devis* (female deities), *Naga* deities (serpent deities), and village deities (*gram devtas* and *devis*) who over a period of time have achieved the status of folk deities like *Raja Mandleek*, *Baba Kali Beer* and *Baba Narsingh Dev*. On the other hand, *gathas* connected with the family deities include the narratives of *Baba Jitto*, *Baba Ranpat*, *Bua Kauri* and *Bua Banga*.<sup>13</sup> Family deities include both *shaheed devtas* (martyr male deities) and *satis* (martyred female deities). They were probably common folk people who were either killed or got sacrificed in the cause of humanity or for other various reasons. Once the victim died, the guilty person or community started revering the dead person, to escape his wrath and anger. This is the reason that the majority of *shaheed devtas* have come into being. The study of the deities' show that major cause for their martyrdom was largely the atrocities of the feudal lords, being killed in land and boundary disputes, victim of Human sacrifice, being killed through practice of *parha pratha* (self immolation) and untimely and unnatural death.<sup>14</sup>

---

<sup>10</sup> *Parvati*, the consort of Lord *Shiva*, is considered as daughter of the land and *Shiva* is considered as the Son-in-Law of the region. Their marriage is said to have been performed at Sudh-Mahadev (about hundred kilometers away from Jammu City). Most of the local god and goddesses are now considered as incarnation of Lord *Shiva* and *Parvati*

<sup>11</sup> *Shiva*, one of the main God of Hindu Pantheon is considered to be source of all magic knowledge.

<sup>12</sup> The *Jangam* or *Jangama* are a "Saivite" order of wandering religious mendicants. The *Jangams* are the priests or *gurus* of the *Saivite* sect. The word *Jangam* is derived from the movable emblem (*linga*) of Lord *Shiva*.

<sup>13</sup> *Baba Jitto* committed *Parha* (self immolation). He resented when the feudal lord wanted to carry away most of his harvest as tax. He has emerged as main peasant deity of the area. His daughter *Bua Kauri* (age nine years) also died along with him. *Baba Ranapat* was a *Brahman* who was killed in solving a boundary dispute. *Bua Banga* was a lady who revolted against undue taxation policy of the feudal lord and killed herself to protect her honour

<sup>14</sup> *Parha Pratha*, *Brahman*, highest caste in Brahmanical classic division of the Hindu society. He as a learned person has always been looked upon with respect and simple folk usually looked to him for guidance and protection. In Jammu region also, the *Brahmans* seem to have lived up to their duty. Many of the narratives refer to the practice of *Parha Pratha* by *Brahmans*. It was a kind of passive resistance or self-torture sometimes culminating in self-immolation and self-killing. A *Brahman* would practice it to take up stand against the injustice of the rulers and would sacrifice himself if he was unable to receive justice from him. Therefore he acted as a check on the misdeeds of the ruler. Moreover it was also practiced against individual wrongdoer who created problem in the society.

*Karaks*, connected with deities are still a part of the living tradition. No ritual or ceremony is performed without having first venerated them and their veneration essentially includes performance of *karaks* by the *gardis*. The deity cannot be invoked in the absence of *karak* performance. Therefore folk narrative songs form an essential part of the living heritage of the region. At the same time being the narratives of the local folk, they provide us an insight into the beliefs, rituals and traditions of the people in the region. The accounts of peasant resistance, atrocities of feudal lords, cattle raids and other kinds of social conflict in the society get reflected in the narratives.

These *lok gathas* also throw light on the religious beliefs of the people in the region. *Karaks*, as already pointed out, are largely devoted to the local deities – *kula devtas* and *kula devis*. It shows that the worship of local deities has been the dominant religious practice of the people in the region and it continues to be so. No ritual or religious ceremony is considered complete without reverence to these deities. In fact the every ritual starts with initial offering being made to the *kul devtas* and *kul devis*. Brahmanical gods are placed second in importance to them in spite of the fact that most of the region has now been brahmanised. This shows harmonious co-existence of little tradition with greater tradition and little tradition maintaining its identity.

The narratives also give us information about rituals connected with childbirth and marriage customs. The narratives connected with female deities shows that girls were usually married before puberty, whereas boys were married at a little advanced age. For example, the *gatha* of *Bua Makhna* and *Bua Bukhi*, two *sati* deities of the region, tell us that they were married off before attaining puberty. (Nirmohi 1982: 104–105.) Similarly much can be gleaned about marriage rituals from the ballads especially those dealing with marriage of *Shiva-Parvati*. In fact this narrative exists in *Dogri* and *Bhaderwahi* dialect (spoken in Jammu and Bhaderwaha district of Jammu region). A comparative study of the *lok gatha* in both these dialects reflects regional variation in customs and rituals in the above mentioned sub-regions of Jammu with regard to marriage custom.

## **2. *Bara Gathas* (Heroic narrative songs)**

Another major form of *gatha* prevalent in the region is *baran*. The word *bar* is a corruption of the Hindi term *vir*, which means brave or chivalrous. Since these *gathas* deal with the theme of prowess and adventure, they are called *baran* or the narratives dealing with heroism. These narratives, extol the bravery of warriors who at some point of historical period showed their military prowess and chivalry. However these narratives have been documented only from 17<sup>th</sup>

century onwards. *Gathas* prior to it, if they existed, have been lost to posterity. The available heroic ballads include tales of warriors like Mian Dido, Raja Ranjit Dev, Baj Singh etc.<sup>15</sup>

Bars were sung during the battles and in the courts of the *Dogra* rulers to inspire and infuse a sense of bravery among the soldiers. They were sung by the traditional singers called *dareas*. *Dareas* were courtiers of the *Dogra* feudal lords and were respected as court poets. *Dareas* were followers of Islam, but *Dogra* lords always asked the company of these bards especially during battles. Being masters of words and basically the poets, they were sensitive to the situations. They would watch keenly the events on the battle field and gather facts which were later woven in rhyme with a touch of their own. These bards created the *gathas* instantaneously and sung the praises of their lords. With their thundering voice and rhythm they always inspired the soldiers on the battlefield. (Jerath 1998: 66). They used a stringed instrument for rhythm popularly called *chakara* or *thumbha*. *Chakara* now almost nonexistent was a string instrument having a structure like that of *Ektara* and a bow with small jingling attached to it<sup>16</sup>. *Chakara* was played with such an expertise that audience was overwhelmed by the rhythm and fascinated to join war.

In comparison to *karak gathas* these *bara* are secular in nature. Their singing is not a scared act. With the end of royal houses and royalty these *baras* are no longer sung. Sometimes they are showcased as part of heritage on certain occasions.

### **3. Yogi gathas: (Narratives of the Yogis)**

*Yogi gathas* are also sacred in nature as they are sung in the honour of the *Nathpanthi* Saints who became yogis (a master of the supreme yoga). *Nath Panth* is a spiritual heterodox tradition within the Hindu cult.<sup>17</sup> These yogis came from all walks of life – rulers, royal persons and

---

<sup>15</sup> *Mian Dido* was a local *Dogra* chief who did not accept Sikh suzerainty (Raja *Ranjit* Singh of Punjab) unlike *Gulab Singh* (another local chief who later became *Maharaja Gulab Singh*) and wanted to expel Sikh power from the region. He put up a brave front but ultimately was killed in the *Trikuta* hills. *Raja Ranjit Dev* ruled over *Jammu* Principality from 1728–1780 and is considered most enlightened ruler who put a ban on ‘*Sati*’ (immolation of wife on the death of her husband). *Baj Singh* was the Army general of *Maharaja Pratap Singh* (1885-1925) who quelled the revolts in *Gilgit* and *Chitral* (in *Ladakh*).

<sup>16</sup> *Ektara* is a one-string instrument. In origin the *ektara* was a regular string instrument of wandering bards and minstrels from India and is plucked with one finger. The *ektara* usually has a stretched single string, an animal skin over a head (made of dried pumpkin/gourd, wood or coconut) and pole neck or split bamboo cane neck. Pressing the two halves of the neck together loosens the string, thus lowering its pitch. The modulation of the tone with each slight flexing of the neck gives the *ektara* its distinctive sound. There are no markings or measurements to indicate what pressure will produce what note, so the pressure is adjusted by ear.

<sup>17</sup> According to the *Nath* tradition it is said that *Yoga* for the first time expounded by *Lord Shiva* to His wife *Parvati*, where *Matsyender* acquired it by assuming the form of a fish. Later on *Matsyender* gave it to his disciple

common folk people like *Brithri*, *Raja Gopichand*, *Baba Pir Charangnath* and *Raja Hodi* who went on the path of renunciation leaving the worldly pleasures. Their *gathas* are also sung on special occasion at their shrines by their disciples called *jogis*. It is pertinent to mention here that *Yogi* Cult came to Jammu region from outside and as such their *gathas* also do not originally belong to this region but they have been reset in local conditions. These *Yogi gathas* provide a rich area to explore the original *gathas*.

#### **4. Pranya gathas: (Love narratives)**

*Pranya gathas* are the narratives of love and include those of *Kunju-Chanchlo*, *Sunni-Bhukhu*, *Mira-Julahi*, *Phulmu-Ranjhu*, *Pirthis Sing*, *Inder Dei*, *MianTe Maine*, *Nand Lal*, *Hemraj*, and *Channa Plasar*. (Jerath 1998: 65.) *Kunju-Chanchlo* is the love story of a Soldier (*kunju*) killed in the battle field and his beloved (*chanchlo*). *Sunni-Bhukhu* were the lovers who belonged to *Gaddi* tribe and died on receiving wrong news about each other's death. *Chann Plasar* is the story of two lovers from different castes. The boy (*Chann*) was from Brahmin (priestly caste) and his beloved was from the *Harijan* community (untouchables).<sup>18</sup> When there was an opposition from the society boy became a *Harijan* for his love. *Raja Hosn* is a story of prince who had won his bride in the *swayamvara* and when bride's brother refused to acknowledge the marriage, he had to fight a hard battle with bride's family.<sup>19</sup> *Mira-Julahi* is again a tragic love story of a lady and her warrior. Asoka Jerath, an eminent folklore collector also refers to love narratives of *Phulmu-Ranjhu*, *Pirthis Sing*, *Inder Dei*, *MianTe Maine*, *Nand Lal*, *Hemraj* etc. (Jerath 1998: 62–64). Siva Nirmohi another folklore collector has also referred to them (Nirmohi 1982: 155–162). He opines that the narrative of *Kunju-Chanchlo* and *Sunni-bhukhu* have got transformed into folk songs (Nirmohi 1982: 162–163). In case of some narratives complete text has not been found and appear to have been lost. As a result they have got shortened into songs. Therefore many of scholars have refused to accept them as narratives. Moreover many of the love narrative are not of local origin. They appear to have been borrowed

---

*Goraknath* who established *NathPanth* sect. In *Nathpanth* Sect the aim of human life is achievement of Salvation through *Yoga*.

<sup>18</sup> *Harijans* means beloved of *Hari* (God). In India, communities who are at the bottom of or outside the Hindu caste system. They were traditionally sweepers, washers of clothes, leatherworkers, and those whose occupation it was to kill animals. The term is also sometimes applied to the hill tribes of India, who are considered unclean by some because they eat beef. Originally called untouchables or pariahs, they were given the name *Harijans* by Mahatma Gandhi, who worked for many years to improve their lives. Many now refer to themselves as Dalits (broken) to indicate their oppressed position outside Hindu society.

<sup>19</sup> In ancient India *Swayamvara* was a practice of choosing a husband, from among a list of suitors, by a girl of a marriageable age. *Swayam* in Sanskrit means self and *Vara* means choice or desire also synonymous with bridegroom.

from outside and give local colour. These *gathas* were also for the entertainment of the village folk in the days when there was no other source of entertainment.

### **5. Chettri gathas or Dholru gathas and Bar Saware (seasonal narratives)**

*Dholru gathas* fall into the group of seasonal narratives as they are sung and performed in particular seasons of the year. They are sung in the Hindu months of *Phagun* (the eleventh month of Hindu calendar, from the middle of February to the middle of March) and *Chetr* (the twelfth month of Hindu calendar from the middle of March to the middle of April) (Goswami 1990: 6). Therefore, they are known as *Chettri gathas* as well. Their theme revolves around the birth of Lord Ram, his marriage with Sita and also his exile set in the local conditions.<sup>20</sup> They are sung by the traditional folk singers called *dholru* singers. The *dholru* singers of Ramnagar, Basholi, Duggi Dhar, Bhaddu, and Bhillawar area are well known for their excellent singing. They sing in a group of two or three and use a *dholki* as a musical instrument.<sup>21</sup> However, very few of *dholru* narratives have been documented, to mention some, *Sita ka Baiya* (the marriage of Sita) and *mhen De Na* (names of months). As such not much can be said about the structure of these narratives than that they are in the form of stanzas of four to six lines. Each stanza ends with salute to Lord Ram. The narrative is usually summed up in fifteen to twenty stanzas.

The purpose of singing *dholru* narratives in particular months is due to the fact that this is the time when harvest is ripe and farmers enjoyed *dholru* performances as an entertainment.

*Bar saware* also fall in the group of seasonal narratives. They are sung in the Hindu months of *Assu* (the sixth month of Hindu calendar, from the middle of September to the middle of October) and *Ketah* (the seventh month of Hindu calendar from the middle of October to the middle of November). Herein the narrative titled *Sarban Geet (Shravan)* is especially sung which tells the story of an obedient son called Sharvan Kumar whose parents were blind. When he was incidentally killed by King *Dasrath* of Ayodhya (of *Ramayan* fame) his parents cursed King *Dasrath* that he would also die, longing for his son. The story does not belong to Jammu region but has come from outside and got set in local tradition.

---

<sup>20</sup> *Lord Ram*, the incarnation of *Lord Vishnu* (of the Trinity Gods- Brahma, Vishnu and Mahesh in Hinduism), ruler of Ayodhya, Hero of *Ramayan* fame.

<sup>21</sup> *Dholki* is a two-headed hand-drum. It may have traditional cotton rope lacing, screw-turnbuckle tensioning or both combined: in the first case steel rings are used for tuning or pegs a twisted inside the laces. It is mainly a folk instrument

*Bar Saware* is sung by traditional bards to the accompaniment of local musical instrument called *dhaka*. These narratives were also for the entertainment for the village folk as the months in which they are performed is free time for the peasant folk as the crop is already in the field and they can have some time for themselves. *Chettri* singers are also known to have knowledge about astrology, rains and agricultural operations which they shared with village folk. Therefore they were highly respected in village community.

### **6. *Gusten Gathas* (Ritual Narratives)**

*Masade* and *gujri* fall in the genre of ritual narratives. The *masades* are sung during the performance of rituals like *gusten*. Therefore they are also called as *Gusten gatha* (narrative). *Gusten* are the rituals performed when the first offering of the new harvest is made to the family deity to invoke the blessings of the deity for prosperity. As such they are sung in the month of *Katah* (the seventh month of Hindu calendar, from the middle of October to the middle of November) and *Magr* (Eighth month of Hindu calendar, from middle of November to middle of December), when the new crop is ready. They are also sung in the months of *Magh*, *Phagun* and *Chetr*, when winter harvest is ready and is to be offered to the deity. (Goswami 1990: 7.)

They are sung by the traditional bards called *gurahiyas*. However it is pertinent to mention here that the meaning of the words of the documented *masades* are not clear. Scholars working on their documentation also showed their helplessness with regard to the meaning of the words. One view is that this tradition of *gurahias* is dying away as most of the exponents have died and those who have acquired this singing skill have forgotten the exact meanings of the words. *Gusten gatha* is performed with the help of the musical instruments known as *sarangi*, *dhol* and *kaesayia*.

### **7. *Anjaliyas***

Four narrative songs in this genre have been documented in *Dogri lok gathan* (Goswami 1990)<sup>22</sup>. These *gathas* narrate the stories of the *Pandava* brothers of *Mahabharat* fame and the *Shiva-Parvati* marriage. Unlike the preceding forms they are not designated to be sung on a particular occasion but for the entertainment of the folk by the folk singers. The *Shiva-Parvati* marriage narrative is different from *karak* form as under the *karak* performance, it is a sacred

---

<sup>22</sup> The State Cultural Academy has been doing the work of documentation of oral tradition and *Dogri lok Gatha* edited by Om Goswami refers to this form.

act to be performed only by *karak* singer but this one can be performed by any professional singer.

## 8. *Chijji*

*Chijji*, which means high volume noise, is a special type of narrative. They are called as such because they are sung in a high pitch with fast playing of the musical instruments. They primarily include devotional songs (*bhajans*) of the Mother Goddess, *durga*. It is pertinent to mention here that the main presiding deity of Jammu region is Mata Vaishno Devi whose shrine is situated at Katra. She has emerged as main *Shakti* shrine in India and *chijji* songs are sung in her honour<sup>23</sup>. Though earlier it was the traditional singers who performed in a group of three or four people it has now been taken over by professional singers. Nowadays people invite these singers to sing *chijj bhajans* at their homes on auspicious occasions.

Along with it some *bars* like that of *Bir Jodh*, *Chaudhari Kima*, *Prithvi Raj Chauhan* were also sung as *chijji* (Goswami 1990: 8).

### Structure of the *Lok gathas*

Among the *lok gathas*, *Karaks* are the most documented ones. Their performance being an essential part of the religious rituals, they have been preserved by families revering those deities. Within *karaks*, *lok gathas* connected with martyr deities have come to light in large numbers which makes them rich ground for further analysis. So far as structure is concerned *karaks* of martyr deities exhibit more or less similar form. Each *gatha* is largely formed of three main parts: the birth of the deity; the main story (cause and circumstances of death); and the death leading to deification. Some of the *gathas* have a special poem attached to it, called a *barnoli* which is sung before the narrative proper begins. Therefore the narratives of the martyr deities are made up of following parts.

The pre-narrative *barnoli*-poem prefaces a *gatha* of an important deity. This is true in the case of important martyr deities as well deities who have attained the status of folk deities. The

---

<sup>23</sup> *Shakti* is the concept, or personification, of divine feminine creative power, sometimes referred to as 'The Great Divine Mother' in Hinduism. On the earthly plane, *Shakti* most actively manifests through female embodiment and creativity/fertility, though it is also present in males in its potential, unmanifest form. Not only is *Shakti* responsible for creation, it is also the agent of all change. In *Shaktism* and *Shaivism*, *Shakti* is worshipped as the Supreme Being. *Shakti* embodies the active feminine energy of *Shiva* and is identified as *Mahadevi* or *Parvati*



*barnoli* is sung to invoke the concerned deity. As far as the *barnoli* itself is concerned, it contains details regarding the deity, the deity's *darbar* (court), the deity's *shakti* (strength) and narration of its main shrines.<sup>24</sup>

The first part of the narrative proper is the story of the birth of the deity. Since it is the birth of the deity, the holiness surrounding the birth is emphasized, for example in the *gatha* of *Bua Tript* (a *sati* deity) it depicts the birth as:

In Ramgarh You were born! You came from Heaven!  
When You were of five days You were given ritual bath!  
When You were of twelve days birth ceremony took place!  
Moon became your cradle which had golden nails.  
(Goswami (ed.) 1990: 92–95.)

The stories of birth of other deities also follow more or less same pattern such as in the *gathas* of *Bua Sheelawati*, *Bua Satyawati*, *Bua Bhukhi*, and so on and so forth. This part also contains the lullabies. These lullabies have now become a part of common life where mothers usually sing them to their babies. So far as the *gathas* of *shaheed devtas* are concerned they also follow more or less same arrangement as in the narrative of *Data Ranpat* (a martyr deity):

Moon was Your cradle with silken blanket!  
Ritual bath on fifth day! On the twentieth day was the birth ceremony!  
(Sharma & Madhukar (eds.) 1990: 37–47.)

This part of the *gatha* also contains information not only about the early childhood, education and the marriage of these deities but also the rituals connected therein.

The second part of the Main Story is a narration of those causes and circumstances which led to the death of the *sati* or *shaheed devta*. This is the most tragic part of the story for example *gatha* of *Bua Banga* carries the story of an enlightened lady who revolted against the imposition of the new excessive taxes by the feudal lord of the area. She organized the people of her area and asked them not to pay undue taxes. When the soldiers of the feudal lord came to arrest her, she committed *sati* along with her infant child:

Tax I will pay not! I kill myself  
Kutalas done a bad thing!  
(Goswami (ed.) 1990: 96–97.)

---

<sup>24</sup> Many of the *Barnoli* poems are documented in *Dogri Lok Gathyae* (Goswami (ed.) 1990: 3).

Injured Bua Banga came home, into the courtyard!  
Inside the house she bolted the door! Sat on the floor!  
Took in her lap, her only daughter! Set the house on fire!  
Burnt herself to death! Made no cries!  
(Goswami (ed.) 1990: 96.)

This part also gives information about social and economic and religious background of the main characters involved in the story thereby reflecting the conditions of the society as well.

The third part of the main narrative concerns the death and deification. In this part of the *gatha* the *sati* or *shaheed* dies. While dying, the *sati* or *shaheed* gives blessing to their supporters and bring curse on those responsible for their death. Sometimes they also give instructions regarding their worship and put restrictions on relations with certain clans (known as *chinna* in Dogri dialect) who made them suffer and while at other times they are known to have made their wishes known through *jogi* (person whose body is visited by the deity) As in the *gatha* of Bua Banga:

Center of Thera Galwal build my shrine!  
Only then the Raja would be absolved of his sin!  
Wish as this! Jogi conveyed to Raja Bhadwal!  
(Goswami (ed.) 1990: 97.)

After the death, the *sati* or *shaheed* goes to heaven and receives powers from the God and come back on the earth to destroy the persons responsible for his/her death.

Reached Heaven, Bua Banga ! Kutales won't be spared!  
Spared Kutales won't be! Raja Bhadwal gone mad!  
Guilty of murder Raja Bhadwal! Bua Banga won't spare them  
Raja begs for Pardon! Bua wont accept!  
(Goswami (ed.) 1990: 97.)

The curse on the responsible persons is reflected in the *karaks* by various bad omens like turning of rice into worms and vegetables into blood, dying of the horses, burning of clothes and house, disease and death in the family of the killers and other worldly problems. Then family under curse on the basis of knowledge of provided by the *jogi*, then starts worshipping the dead person as its family deity to escape its wrath and build shrine in its honour. The dead person becomes the *sati devi* or *shaheed devta* and gets defied.

### **The Composition of *lok gathas***

It is held that since these *lok gathas* are sung by particular singing communities so their creation may have been a communal effort. Moreover it is singing communities of *Dareas gardis*, *jogis*, *guriyas*, and *dholru* who are designated the job of singing and performing *karaks*. So probably their composition was also work of these communities. *Dareas* would compose *bars* on the battlefield itself. Moreover with regard to *karaks* and *barans*, they could not be sung by all the folk singers but only by *gardis* and *dareas*. So the bards were not only composing and performing but also acted as the custodian of the same. We can understand composition of *gathas* in the light of creation and recreation process. Here we need to take into account the theories regarding ballads composition in western research as *lok gatha* shows similarity with them. In western scholarship, communal school led by Francis Gummere and G.L. Kittredge believed that ballads were composed collectively and that folk songs, ballads are a product of communal creation.

But the principle of communal creation has long been discarded and has been replaced communal re-creation theory put forward by the American collector Phillips Barry and the scholar G.H. Gerould. According to this theory the ballad is conceded to be an individual composition originally. This fact is considered of little importance because the singer is not expressing himself individually, but serving as the deputy of the public voice, and because a ballad does not become a ballad until it has been accepted by the folk community and been remoulded by the inevitable variations of tradition into a communal product. (Friedman) Verbal art is the sum total of creation of a whole community over time. (Ben-Amos 1971: 7.) In context of *Dogri lok gath* also it appears that recreation theory seems more probable. To take the case of *Karaks*, the individual composition appears to have been recreated in the hands of singers, priest of the shrine, the folk community concerned. Similarly in case of *Baran*, it was acceptable to audience only when it had been recreated again and again till the satisfaction of warrior community. So probably *lok gathas* also went through the process of creation and recreation. Some of these *lok gathas* like *Karaks* which are still being performed are witnessing recreation with every performance. The coming of new means of communications like television and internet has also made a profound impact on how people communicate and new forms and adaptations of folklore have emerged as a result. Performances generated through these new means get recreated and the process goes on.

### **The Debate over Genres among Scholars**

The regional scholars working on the different aspects of oral narratives do not agree to the generic forms of *Dogri gathas* completely. They have put forward their own arrangements. Siva Nirmohi, who is a distinguished folklore collector, classifies *lok gathas* into: (a) *Gathas* of the deities (*karak*), which include Puranic *gathas* that is the *gathas* of gods belonging to the Brahmanical pantheon and *gathas* of the village deities and of family deities; (b) historical/heroic *gathas*, (c) *Yogic gathas* and (d) *Pranya gathas* ( Nirmohi 1982: 22-23). He recognises only two major forms in Dogri *gathas* that is *karak* and *baran* and places historical, yogic and love *gathas* in the category of *barans*. He includes in *bara* not only the heroic element but also the element of sacrifice and surrender as well which is evident in yogic and love narratives. Therefore he has classified *lok gathas* in two major forms (*Karaks*) *gathas* of deities and (*Bara*) those of heroism and sacrifice.

Archana Kesar from the Dogri literature department in the Jammu University also recognises only two major forms in dogri *lok gathas* –*karaks* and *barans*.<sup>25</sup> Moreover she also highlighted another form of narrative songs *ghatna prasang*. She has collected thirty five such songs which may be explained as episodic/event songs that refer to a particular episode rather than referring to the life history of a person. She refers to the story of a lame man (who lived in the Chambh-Joria area in Akhnur, on the India-Pakistan border) who robbed rich people to help poor and needy ones like Robin hood. Herein the various robberies he committed have become the theme of the narratives. However this form requires further detailed analysis which is being done by the above mentioned professor.

Another professor from the same department, Shashi Pathania includes *barans*, *karaks* and *pranya gathas* in the generic form of *lok gathas*.<sup>26</sup>

Prof. Ramnath Shastri, Doyen of Dogri literature and founder of Dogri Sanstha, who was associated with the documentation process of Dogri oral literature puts forward sevenfold classification of the *lok gathas*. (Shastri: 17.) He classifies *lok gathas* into (a) narratives of principal martyr deities – Baba Jitto, Data Ranpat – according to which martyr deities include

---

<sup>25</sup> The author interviewed and discussed *Dogri* folk narratives with Professor Archana Kesar, Post graduate department of Dogri ,University of Jammu, Jammu

<sup>26</sup> Pathania, Shashi, *An Introduction to Dogra Culture*, website: [www.Dogri.org](http://www.Dogri.org)

both *shaheed devtas* (male) and *silabantis* (female deities);<sup>27</sup> and (b) heroic narratives – *Mian Dido, Ramsingh Pathania*’; (c) legendary narratives – *Raja Mandlikh, Baba Suraj*; (d) mythical narratives – *Raja Hosn* (love story), *Baba Sidh Ghoria* ( *Nath Panthi yogi*); (e) Puranic narratives – *Baba surgal, Baba Bhair* – both being major *naga* deities who have achieved the status of regional deities; (f) yogic narratives include *gathas* of Brihatri, and Raja Gopichand, both of which appear to have come from outside;<sup>28</sup> and (g) under *majlum* narratives, he has placed all the martyr deities of the Marh area who died due some atrocity – Marh is a block with Jammu district, about fifteen kilometres from Jammu city, and in every village of this block we find more than two to three deities who sacrificed their life or got killed due to atrocities.<sup>29</sup> This classification of the narratives has been done on the basis of the theme of the *lok gatha*. He does not refer to major or minor forms but puts all form on equal footing. In fact, he says that it is wrong to use the terms *karak* and *bar* for the folk narrative songs as it would amount to ignorance of the natural form of these narratives. Moreover he was the first scholar who put forward the use of term *lok gatha* (as krishanadev upadhyay has done with regard to Hindi) for folk narrative songs instead of classifying them into *karaks* and *baras*.<sup>30</sup> However the problem of above said arrangement is that it overlooks the narratives of the main deities like *Vaishno Devi* (a major *Shakti* goddess of India), *Mata Mal Bhawani*, the main regional goddesses of the region whose *lok gathas* are very popular among the folk.

Asoka Jerath has used the word ballad for the *lok gatha* and has divided them into (a) *karaks*, those which are sung in the praise of family deities and which only *gardis* can sing; (b) *barans* of *Mian Dido*; (c) ballads of gods and goddesses which include *Shiva gathas, Shakti gathas* and *naga gathas*; (d) *yoga gathas*; (e) love ballads; (f) legendary ballads; (g) ballads of chivalry

---

<sup>27</sup> *Silabanti* is a *Dogri* connotation of the word Sati. Performance of Sati was a religious funeral practice among some Indian communities in which a recently widowed woman would immolated herself on her husband’s funeral pyre. The term is derived from the original name of the goddess Sati, also known as *Dakshayani*, who self-immolated because she was unable to bear her father *Daksha’s* humiliation of her (living) husband *Shiva*. However in context of Jammu region we find cases of Sati not only with reference to Husband’s death but woman committed sati also on the death of brother, father, Fiance and son.

<sup>28</sup> *Brihatri* was a king who in order to check the fidelity of his queen sent a wrong news about his death. Queen became *sati* and king out of remorse became a yogi. *Lok gatha* of *Raja Gopichand* probably came from Bengal and it is available in Bengali as well. *Raja Gopichand* became a *Yogi* after his mother made him realise that physical body is temporary, it gets destroyed so he should become a perfect *Yogi* and win over death and be free from cycle of births and rebirths.

<sup>29</sup> The author has documented these deities in her book, *Deity, Cult, Rituals and Oral Traditions in Jammu*, published by Saskham Books International, Jammu 2008. *Marh block ke Shaheed Devtas* by Surinder Gadgal is another work on these deities.

<sup>30</sup> Sastri, Ramnath, n-31

(Jerath 1998: 61-67). He has placed same *lok gathas* under *Barans* and ballads of chivalry<sup>31</sup>. Therefore his classification appears to be an overlapping one.

As against this seven generic forms have been discussed by Om Goswami such as (a) *karaks*, (b) *anjaliyas*, (c) *masade*, (d) *chettri* and (e) *sati lok gathas* which have been further divided into: 1) the main narrative and 2) lullabies, (f) narratives of the martyr deities, (g) *chijj*, (h) *barans* (Goswami (ed.) 1990: 2). He also proposes a theme based arrangement like narratives of the *naga* (serpent) deities, narratives of the *Pandavas* (of the *Mahabharat* war fame) and narratives of folk deities. The contribution of Om Goswami and his arrangement cannot be overlooked as he headed the documentation process of folk literature in the State Cultural Academy. He says that initially only two forms were recognised because of lack of research in the area. However now due to research and documentation process undertaken by the state cultural Academy with regard to *Dogri* oral narratives, the above mentioned forms have also come to light. He further says that with regard to the structure of some of them further research is required (Goswami (ed.)1990: 2.).

The above discussion shows that though the regional scholars disagree over the inclusion of some forms into *Dogri lok gathas* but, there is no outright rejection of any of the major forms. The only exception is Goswami, who includes *anjaliyas* as a narrative form which is not to be found in the arrangements put forward by other scholars. Moreover the number of *anjaliyas* is also very less. Till date the only *anjaliyas* documented, appear in volumes edited by Goswami. But they all accept *karaks*, *barans*, *Yogi gathas* and *pranya gathas* as forms of *Dogri lok gatha*. This may also be due to the fact research work on *Dogri* oral narratives is at very initial stages. The documentation process is going on as a result of grants from government. It is to be kept in mind that genre classifications tend to change with the availability of new information or emergence of new interpretation. This appears probable in context of *Dogri gathas*, where we find new narratives like *Ghatan prasang* find its way into the genre of *gathas*. At the present level of research we can say that *Dogri gathas* includes following generic forms:

(a) *Karak gathas*: Narratives of the deities

---

<sup>31</sup> *Lok gathas* including those of *Dogri* have been placed in the genre of folk ballads by many scholars. This is due to the reason that ballad is also a narrative set to music. However the western definition of ballad cannot be wholly applicable to India where a different tradition has developed about it. Therefore to use ballad for the same requires a bigger debate not only at Pan Indian Level but also at international level with regard to *lok gathas*.

- (b) *Baran gathas*: Heroic narratives
- (c) *Yogi gathas*: Narratives of the *Yogis*
- (d) *Chettri dholru* and *bar saware*: Seasonal narratives
- (e) *Masaadye*, *Gujri* and *Kerna*: Ritual narratives
- (f) *Pranya gathas*: Love narratives
- (g) *Chijji* and *anjaliyas gathas*: Assorted narratives

### **Dogri lok gathas and folklore research**

As stated at the outset, genre classification is a useful tool in looking at folklore. Having a name or label gives us a place to start in understanding artists' and performers' work. But there has been a significant development in folklore scholarship where the primary focus has shifted from 'products' or texts to a focus on the performance of texts in context. Scholars are looking at the interaction between and among those involved in acts of communication, as well the occasions and settings in which those acts take place. Looking at interactions between performers and audiences has encouraged folklorists to see that performance is an artistic act. (Sims & Stephens 2005: 26.)

*Dogri lok gathas* also requires to be seen in this framework. Here methodology and the tools of western research can be very helpful. Many of the gathas are not indigenous to the region. They have come from outside. Comparative and historic-geographical method can be used to study the migration of narratives those under genre of *Yogi gathas*, *Pranya gathas*. Some of the deities also who have attained the status of regional deities (*Baba Kailbeer*, *Raja Mandlik*, *Baba Narsingh Dev etc.*) have come from outside with the migrating tribes. Their *gathas* can help us to understand the process of transmission. Historic-geographical study of folk texts has focussed on comparing and analysing the ways texts evolved through time and across geographic regions.

But the same time we need to be open to new paradigms, models, tools, and theories that might emerge in the course of working with local data and social conditions. This might involve adding to and/or modifying already existing theoretical approaches. Therefore *Dogri lok gathas* provide a rich ground for folklore research. But this research will become meaningful only

when local scholars involve themselves in comparative study with other regions, not only within India but outside as well.

## REFERENCES

### Sources

The Census Report of India 1911.

Goswami, Om (ed.) 1990. *Dogri Lok Gathye*, Jammu & Kashmir Academy of Art, Culture and Languages, Jammu.

Sharma, Nilamber Dev and Madhukar, Khari Singh (Eds.) 1990. *Dogri Lok Geet vol-II*. Jammu: Jammu & Kashmir Academy of Art, Culture and Languages.

### Literature

Atrey, Mrinalini 2008. *Deity, Cult, Rituals and Oral Traditions in Jammu*. Jammu: Saskham Books International.

Ben-Amos, Dan 1971. Towards a Definition of Folklore In Context. *The Journal of American Folklore* 84 (331).

Dorson, Richard M. 1982. *Folklore and Folklife*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Friedman, Albert B. Ballad. [online]

<http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/50461/ballad>.

Gadgal, Surinder 1976. *Marh block ke Shaheed Devtas*. Jammu.

Gummere, Francis B. 1908. *The Popular Ballad*, New York.

Jerath, Ashok 1998. *Dogra Legends of Art and Culture*. Dew Delhi: Indus publishing Company.

Nirmohi, Siva 1982. *Duggar ki Lok Gathye*. Jammu: Radhakrishnanand and Company.

Sims, Martha C. & Stephens, Martine 2005. *Living Folklore, An Introduction to the Study of people and their Traditions*. Utah, Logan: Utah University Press.

Shivnath, 1997. *Two Decades of Dogri Literature*. Delhi: Sahitya Akademi.

Shastri, Ramnath. Karaks te barans. Na di te vargikarandi smaysyate samadhan. In *Sada Sahitya-Dogri lok Sahitya Vigyan*. Jammu: Jammu and Kashmir Cultural Academy.

Upadhyay, Krishandev 1960. *Bhojpuri Loksahitya ka Adhyayan*.

Tolken, Barre 1996. *Dynamics of Folklore*. Utah, Logan: Utah State University Press.



# Manifestations of Humour in Serbian Folklore Material

## An Example of *šala*<sup>1</sup>

Vesna Trifunović

When talking about the concept of *jokes* in Serbia's socio-cultural context, it is not quite clear which form of humour we are referring to: is it a joke as a *humourous narrative* or a joke as a *humourous utterance* and a *humourous deed*. The English term, *joke*, encompasses all of the mentioned forms, whereas Serbian language makes a conspicuous distinction between them, marking the first with the term *vic* (which is directly taken from German language – *der Witz*), and the other two with the native term *šala* (pronounced as *shala*). In other words, these would be two separate humorous forms in Serbian system of ethnic genres (Ben-Amos 1976). Precisely the second mentioned form of humour is going to be discussed in this paper, namely its definition, its difference from the related manifestations of humour and the problem of its classification into folklore material. By being ascribed a distinctive name (*šala*), humorous utterances or acts are recognized as a special category of communication and they become identifiable and discrete from other forms of social interaction and other similar folklore creations.

Depending on whether we are talking about a humorous utterance or a humorous act, I shall define *šala* as a speech act, or a deed, with a primary entertaining function and spontaneous, ephemeral character. Its origin is strictly individual and it should be thought of as an idiosyncratic creation. The objects of *šala* could be so diverse and many that are practically impossible to predict and number. The characteristics of this form of humour, namely its spontaneity, individual origin and ephemerality make collecting and presenting of this material a difficult enterprise. In addition to these characteristics, the immediate context of a situation in which *šala* is made is also an important part of its success and full understanding, which may also be the cause of *šala's* elusive nature when it comes to collecting and presenting. Once a certain situation no longer exists, it may be hard to explain the *šala* that was made in that situation and to produce the same entertaining effect that it had in the first place. This

---

<sup>1</sup> This text is the result of the work on the project *Interdisciplinarno istraživanje kulturnog i jezičkog nasleđa Srbije. Izrada Multimedijalnog internet portala „Pojmovnik srpske kulture“* (Interdisciplinary Research on the Cultural and Linguistic Heritage of Serbia. The Making of Multimedia Internet Portal "The Glossary of Serbian Culture") no. 47016, subproject EI SASA.

usually causes the forgetting of *šala*, despite the fact that it represents a wide-present form of humour in everyday life and thus has a significant place in interpersonal communication.

However, in some cases this form of humour may be so successful that it is remembered, retold and perpetuated mostly within different social groups. I shall discuss those cases in further text. For now this reveals one more important aspect of this form of humour which indicates that it is usually made among those who share various social relations, e.g. within family or friend circles, or among colleagues at work. *Šala* could be thought of as an "artistic communication in small groups" (Ben-Amos 1971) or a form of verbal art with a strongly emphasized performative aspect (Bauman 1975). This means that *šala* requires a certain common knowledge and interests that also ensure its success, and that it is mostly comprehensible within confined groups that could be based on different kinds of social relationships. As Holmes noted, the statements which produce a notable humorous effect among colleagues at work often are not understandable and seem foolish to someone who does not belong to this group (Holmes 2000: 159).

A good example of this would be the using of a quote from some form of popular culture among those who are fans of a certain movie, TV show, cartoon or comic book, for the purpose of generating humour. Thus, for someone who is not familiar with, for example, the movie "Chasing Amy"<sup>2</sup> a quote "What's a Nubian?" does not have any meaning. On the other hand, for those who have eagerly watched this movie several times, this quote evokes a particular scene<sup>3</sup> which automatically causes laughter. These kinds of quotes are usually uttered in specific, real-life situations which are recognized as somehow similar to the one presented in the movie, and could be marked as *šala* among those who are familiar with it.<sup>4</sup> In these situations the quote itself is enough to produce laughter, which means that it stands in a metonymic relation to the particular movie scene, and implies certain knowledge which enables its interpretation in a humorous key.

This does not imply that *šala* is exclusively used in confined social circles and it should also be noted that its nature depends on both the type of a social relationship between those who

---

<sup>2</sup> Directed by Kevin Smith, <http://www.imdb.com/title/tt0118842/>

<sup>3</sup> The scene in question can be watched on YouTube under the name of "What's a Nubian?": <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vHLJfxfXHBg>

<sup>4</sup> The phenomenon of using quotes from popular culture in everyday life is quite complex and deserves more research. Here it is only mentioned as an illustrative example of the form which *šala* may take within a certain group.

engage in this kind of humour, and on the immediate context in which it is made. Thus, it could be said that the more distant social relation or the more formal situation, the more restrained type of *šala* will be made. For instance it will not include a language or a deed that would be considered inappropriate. This is a common feature that *šala* shares with its similar forms of humour, such as jokes (see e.g. Dundes 1980: 27). But first and foremost, the complexity of *šala's* nature is best reflected in the fact that it, as already highlighted, represents a special manifestation of a curious phenomenon called humor.

### **What Is Humour Actually?**

The omnipresence of humour in human life has usually been taken as a triviality, which often causes this phenomenon to be treated as the complete opposite to "truly important things". Social sciences and humanities today unanimously recognize the significance of humour at the individual and socio-cultural level. However, concerning the very definition of humour, this unity vanishes and is replaced by disagreements, polemics, dilemmas and disputes over it. Despite the numerous intellectual efforts to fathom, explicate and define the notion of humour, it has never been fully and definitely defined.

Contemporary delineations perceive humour as something that exists in our minds, as mental experience of discovering and relishing the funny and ludicrously incongruous ideas, events and situations, as the suitable psychological state which is aimed at producing laughter, and, consequently, do not identify humour as an emotion, nor as a type of behavior (McGhee 1979; Veatch 1998). On the other hand, although it is hard to explain humour and say what it exactly is, it is quite easy to recognize it and especially to connect it with the stimulus that produces it, as well as with the response to this stimulus that is most often expressed in the form of laughter. Between these two elements, which figure as important in the general conceptualizations of humour, special and crucial significance is attributed to the cognitive and intellectual activity which is accountable for the perception and evaluation of the potential stimuli and which leads towards the experience of humour (Apte 1985: 13). This would, at the same time, be one of the significant differences between the amateurish and scientific deliberations of humour, regarding the fact that people mostly think that humour is associated with a situation and not derived from some process of thinking and drawing conclusions.

The theories about the potential stimuli for humour have also started the avalanche of polemics and controversies by trying to answer the seemingly simple question: "Why do we laugh?".

Three dominant and most often mentioned ones are the theories of incongruity, aggression and superiority. Thus, according to the philosophers such as Kant and Schopenhauer (McGhee 1979: 9), the essence of *šala*, as a humorous experience, would be incongruity, that is something which is unexpected, out of context, improper, illogical or excessive. It can, however, be noticed that many absurd and incongruous occurrences are simply not funny. Besides, when it comes to *šala*, it has already been noted that this form of humour is highly context-bound, and that its aim is usually not crossing the lines of propriety norms.

Humour, however, is of such a character that it also enables noting something that would otherwise be considered inappropriate. This is tightly related to the psychoanalytic approach, according to which humour is, in essence, disguised aggression whose nature is most often sexual and which would not be socially tolerated in another form (Veatch 1998: 192–193). On the other hand, *šala* as a manifestation of humour can often be non-aggressive in its form and function. It sometimes has an alleviating effect in certain social and psychological situations, as opposed to aggression which can be destructive and produce negative consequences in such situations (ibid: 187). Finally, according to the theory of superiority, and its famous advocate Thomas Hobbes, humour often approaches the faults of others, and not the faults of the observer thus creating a sense of superiority in him (Berger 1993: 2). And indeed, *šala* is frequently directed towards others which could provide opportunity for and give impetus to the sense of superiority. However, not less frequent are the situations in which an individual makes *šala* at his own expense, and laughs at himself which makes it difficult to ascertain who is superior to whom in such cases<sup>5</sup> (Veatch 1998: 188).

Due to such and similar quandaries that go with the attempts at defining humour and the problem of identifying the trigger of it, many authors have turned towards other, not so "eternal" questions, such as those pertaining to different forms of humour. The leadership in this belongs especially to folklorists, who have taken a great interest in jokes with a wide variety of subjects, from racial and ethnic stereotypes (Ben-Amos 1973; Dégh 1982; Eben Sackett 1987), over sexist humour (Mitchell 1977; Lynn Preston 1994; Thomas 1997), to catastrophes and different forms of black humour (Dundes 1979; Smyth 1986; Oring 1987;

---

<sup>5</sup> On further information about these, as well as other theories which deal with the problem of starting up humour see Veatch (1998). About theoretical developments and uses of humour in society and professional relationships see Chapman *et al.* (1996).

Ellis 2001).<sup>6</sup> Also, jokes have proved to be a very inspiring field of research not just for folklorists, so different theoretical frameworks for the interpretation of them have been developed, the most prominent one among them being the famous *General Theory of Verbal Humor*<sup>7</sup> by Victor Raskin and Salvatore Attardo (Raskin *et al.* 1991; Attardo *et al.* 2002).

Regarding anthropology, the phenomenon which has always attracted attention in this discipline is known by the name joking relationship. From the pioneer study by Radcliffe-Brown, the interest in this notion which is directly linked to humour or, even more precisely to *šala*, has remained unabated. According to the definition by this author, it is relationship between two persons in which one of them is allowed, and in some cases required, by custom, to tease or ridicule the other person, in which process it is required from this other person not to be offended (Radcliffe-Brown 1982: 126). The subject under discussion here is primarily the institutionalized, structured behaviour between persons with family ties or in some other specific social relationship which is characteristic of the so-called primitive societies.

However, similar interactions take place in the complex, industrial environments as well, as noted by Radcliffe-Brown himself, although he was of the opinion that, in keeping with the former division between the research on the primitive and developed societies, these informal codes of conduct should be left to sociology.<sup>8</sup> In such significantly different contexts, we can also find the crucial differences regarding joking relations. In the first case, these relations, which are primarily oriented towards family ties, are, as it has been said, formalized, compulsory and shaped by strict rules, while, in the developed societies, they are oriented towards an individual, they are voluntary, spontaneous and they unfold in the environment in which social relations are not rigidly determined (Apte 1985: 31).

Both forms of the given relationships have deservedly captured the attention of anthropologists, but what has remained the biggest weakness in their past research, from the aspect of the anthropology of humour, is the fact that emphasis has always been laid upon the significance of joking relations for the social structure, and almost never upon this very phenomenon (*ibid.*). As noticed by Mary Douglas, anthropologists did not debate on the very joke, while joking as

---

<sup>6</sup> It should be noted that folklorists have also posed questions about the nature of humour itself, for instance how it works or why it is employed, see e.g. Oring (2003).

<sup>7</sup> This theory was developed for treating exclusively verbally formulated and expressed humour or humorous texts, and was produced by revising Raskin's *Semantic Script Theory of Humour*.

<sup>8</sup> On the anthropological and sociological contribution to the studying of humour see Finnegan 1981; Davis 1995.

one form of expression is yet to be interpreted in its total relation to other forms of communication (Douglas 1968: 361). On the other hand, it should be mentioned that some anthropologists have provided detailed information on the verbal and physical manifestations of joking in certain social contexts which are quite similar to *šala* in Serbian context, emphasizing thereby the behavioural aspect of these activities (see Handelman *et al.* 1972).

The interest in different manifestations of humour in Serbian anthropology has been expressed through works analysing the ancient roots of black humour based upon humoristic epigrams and epigraphs from ancient Greece (Stevanović 2007, 2009), then specific forms of urban humour (Banović 2008), or domestic serials predominantly based upon ethnic humour (Krstić 2009). The humoristic folklore material which has attracted the attention of researchers is most frequently in the form of jokes (Kleut 1993; Ljuboja 2001; Trifunović 2009),<sup>9</sup> as well as in the form of funny stories and anecdotes (Latković 1967; Ljubinković 1976; Milošević-Đorđević *et al.* 1984; Pešić *et al.* 1997; Nikolić 1997; Samardžija 2006; Zlatković 2007). These folklore creations were practically impossible to be neglected or avoided in scientific debates, regarding how widespread they are and how significant they once were or still are in the social life of Serbia.

However, *šala* seems to be an all-pervasive form of humour which is left out and shoved back, as if it does not deserve a serious scientific analysis. As noted by some authors, spontaneous conversations constitute the object of much research in linguistics and sociology, while humour research has tended to lag behind with its traditional focus on humorous text (Norrick *et al.* 2009). The lack of academic texts dealing with *šala*, as well as all present inadequate definitions of *šala* in Serbian folklore studies, have inspired this paper to focus on its existence, usage, form and significance in the contemporary context of the Serbian society, with the aim to find its place among the related folklore creations with which it is often mixed up.

### **So, What about the Ordinary *šala*?**

*Šala* appears to be a simple and everyday humoristic form, yet it is used and defined in so many different ways. Here, I primarily refer to the academic literature in Serbia, from the field of

---

<sup>9</sup> To consult separately the thematic collected works on *vic*: Rad XXXVII kongresa SUFJ (The Work of XXXVII Congress SUFJ), Zagreb 1990.

anthropology and folklore. Thus the anthropologist and folklorist Gordana Ljuboja speaks about the genres, forms and types of *šala*, formulating this concept as an umbrella concept under which she groups such creations as the joke, anecdote and funny story: "Within the formally undifferentiated, content-related category of *šala*, numerous varieties, different genre forms are concentrated, each of which is conditioned by the structure of its own form and its own style of expression" (Ljuboja 2001: 242). This line of thinking neglects the fact that *šala* is a specific manifestation of humour, just as jokes or funny stories are, and that it should not be merely taken as a synonym for humour and thus treated as a general category that encompasses such creations.

Serbian dictionaries of literary terms, on the other hand, recognize *šala* as a separate form of humour, defining it as "oral story or short story formed in such a way as to produce laughter, primarily by means of entertaining, humorous and funny twists and denouement, but with no complex content or pretensions" (*Rečnik književnih termina* 1985; *Rečnik književnih termina* 1992). What generally share the numerous definitions of *šala*, including the mentioned ones, is the fact that it is primarily perceived as a narrative and is subsumed within the frameworks of the folk rhetorics, verbal art and conversational genres. Referring to *šala*, the mentioned dictionaries also refer to *vic* and *dosteka*<sup>10</sup> as similar and related forms of it, but the given definition of *šala* obscures the clear demarcation line among these three forms of humour manifestation, which gives rise to a debate on the differences among them.

First, it is important to draw attention to the terminological problems and differences which exist, primarily, between Serbian and English, and which are specifically related to the notion of *šala*. As noted at the beginning of this text, unlike the Serbian language, which precisely distinguishes and separates *šala* from *vic*, the English language has one noun, *joke*, for both of these notions. This has been the reason for translating this word into Serbian as *vic*, but also as *šala*, depending upon the form in which it is used. On the other hand, English designates types of jokes and draws a distinction between them depending on their expression, which is not the case in Serbian, in which for specific manifestations of verbal and physical humour the term *šala* is used exclusively. One should, therefore, bear in mind this distinction between Serbian

---

<sup>10</sup> More about these two Serbian words in the text to follow. *Vic* could be translated simply as *joke*, while *dosteka* could be translated as *witticism*, *sally*, *jest*, *repatee*.

and English because what is called *šala* in Serbian is wider in meaning than the word *joke*, encompassing certain other notions such as *prank* or *practical joke*.

In Serbian folklore, the notion *vic* denotes exclusively a short humoristic narrative which belongs to the domain of verbal communication and contains a punchline whose main function is producing a comic effect and entertainment. In further text I will use the term *joke* for *vic*. Regarding its form and expression, it can be determined as a contemporary and present form of immaterial creation. In Serbian folklore, *joke* is characterized by an abundance of motives, as well as by predominantly conventional structure made by the actions of characters or what they speak about, with the epilogue in the punchline by which the expectations previously settled by narration are breached in an unexpected manner, which produces laughter. The contents of the domestic jokes convey social, political, economic, cultural relations and problems, making fun of the faults and shortcomings, poking fun at individuals, ethnic groups; one can also notice the *joke cycles* such as those about blondes, policemen or the character generally known as *mali Perica* ['little Perica']. As well as in any other socio-cultural context, one can find here universal jokes, that is the kind of jokes referring to the universal human experience and universal perception of certain social phenomena, as well as those which are specific for the context of the Serbian society, and understandable only to the members of this society (see Davies 2005).

Universal jokes and especially those that are specific and comprehensible only in a certain social context, are based upon certain codes which must be explicit and known to the listener. The immediate context often has a decisive role in the understanding of them. Especially indicative for this is a specific phrase which introduced the telling of certain jokes during the 1970s and 1980s in Serbia: "Do you want me to tell you a joke for seven years time?". In order for the listener to understand the meaning of this phrase and the very joke that followed it, he had to have the proper knowledge. In the first place, he had to recognize the wordplay that was at work here, and which actually implied seven years in prison, while in order to fully understand the joke, he had to be acquainted with the sociopolitical circumstances of this period in Serbia and the fact that jokes treating certain subjects were not looked upon with favour in those days. Finally, the listener had to know all this in advance in order for the joke to work, without somebody else disclosing all this to him (Berger 1976: 113).

Moreover, the *joke* in the context of the Serbian society possesses numerous functions. Thus in it one can notice a critical attitude towards the society, collective contemplation of life,



attitude and relation to it, and the joke is often the medium for conveying a wide variety of social messages. As well as anything else that belongs to folklore material, the once told joke spreads very fast, is transformed and assumes various forms in comparison to the authentically told version. Social interest in this form of humour is great and is reflected in a significant number of humoristic publications which have a long publishing tradition in this society, and in which jokes take a significant place. This is also confirmed by the fact that many researchers have turned to the press as the main source material for this subject, since jokes are primarily conveyed in the spontaneous and informal communication, so the possibility of hearing and writing down the sufficient number of them for a satisfactory analysis is significantly reduced.

Undoubtedly, some of the mentioned characteristics of joke make this folklore creation quite similar to *šala*, such as the spontaneity and informality of the situation in which they are conveyed, the necessity of the proper knowledge in order to understand the meaning of them, as well as their function of criticizing and communicating opinions and social messages. It is possible that these are the main reasons why the two forms of humour are often confused and why the characteristics which undoubtedly separate them are often neglected. Lack of recognition of a clear distinction between *šala* and joke, therefore, is, in my opinion, to be attributed mostly to the perception of *šala* as a narrative with some kind of plot.

To define *šala* is to point to the forms and meanings in which it exists in everyday communication, as well as to the sense which this notion displays in the general social usage. Regarding this, *šala* cannot be comprehended through the prism of narrative: neither can it be simply reduced to a story, nor is it a story that has a determined structure and plot, as is the case with joke. Bearing in mind the very form of *šala* in everyday communication, along with its, on this occasion, verbal expression, I have already noted that this notion should be defined as a type of speech act, with primarily entertaining and humorous function and spontaneous, ephemeral character. I have opted for the sociolinguistic category of speech act because it emphasizes the use of language, while it in itself denotes an utterance within a speech event, that is within a cluster of communication activities. Apart from this: "It can be an utterance with a formal grammatical status of a sentence, or even a cluster of sentences, but it does not have to be that, meaning that the speech act can be presented through separate words or word groups with the function of sentence equivalent" (Radovanović 2003: 160). This gives the necessary breadth to the definition of verbal *šala*, which, consequently, can be stretched from an utterance in words, over word groups, to entire sentences and conversations, but never

crossing the line which separates it from a clearly structured narrative. In keeping with this, and for the sake of making precise distinction between *šala* and similar humoristic forms, I suggest that this type of humour in its verbal version should be translated into English as humorous utterance.

Having defined *šala* in this manner, we can address the problem of drawing a line between *šala* and *dosetka* [‘repartee’, ‘witticism’]. If it is to be judged according to the linguistic expression, *šala* and *dosetka* are very similar, if not the same. Both of them, therefore, can be defined as verbal acts, so that the distinction between them is to be searched for primarily in their function. Thus, witticism is usually determined as a sharp, humorous remark, judgement or a conclusion (Rečnik srpskohrvatskog književnog, narodnog jezika 1966), which implies that *šala's* purpose is exclusively that of providing enjoyment through humour, while witticism is always tendentious, as Freud noted in his study of wit and its relation to the unconscious (Frojd 1979). However, it can be said that such strict distinction between *šala* and *dosetka* does not exist in the general conceptualizations expressed in the Serbian language. This is supported by the saying "Many a true word is spoken in jest"<sup>11</sup>, which exactly to *šala* attributes the function of communicating something with sense and meaning and perceives it as a specific way of saying or conveying something in an indirect, but effective manner. Therefore, in order to draw as clear as possible line in meaning between *šala* and witticism, another definition of *šala* in the contemporary Serbian context should be underlined, the definition which sharply distinguishes between *šala* and other exclusively verbal forms of humour. The point is that this term in general application is also used, as already highlighted, to denote an action, that is something done in order to produce the effect of humour. Therefore, unlike witticism and joke, which are always verbal, *šala* is not necessarily so, which means that apart from perceiving it as a *humorous utterance*, it should not be forgotten that it can refer to a *humorous act* as well.

In this sense, *šala* in the domestic meaning encompasses also the already mentioned notions from the English language such as prank, horseplay, practical joke, gag or antic. These terms can be translated into the Serbian language as *šala*, although there are other terms for the literal translation of them that have a negative connotation. That is why I am of the opinion that the translation in this case to a great extent depends upon the perception or success of the *šala*. It

---

<sup>11</sup> Literal translation of the Serbian saying "U svakoj šali ima malo istine" would be "There is a grain of truth in every *šala*".

is well-known that *šala* in everyday use can cross the line of what is allowed, when depending upon the context, the one who uses it and the listener or participant, if we are talking about an action, it can be used in an improper moment, said or done in an inadequate manner, as well as misinterpreted, which produces the opposite effect to the expected one.

The sensitivity to *šala* is not an unusual phenomenon, although we are expressly talking about mild, benign derision or prank which, as a rule, is not taken seriously and not intended to insult. In cases when *šala* "crosses the line", a usual response of the person to whom it was intended is anger, and only in rare occasions this could have more extreme consequences. These cases may occur when this form of humour is aimed at the weaknesses of the victims, such as old habits, fears, obsessions or anything else which is important to the victim (McEntire 2002: 146). A typical gag (or a humorous act) is opening the cover of a saltcellar but leaving it on the top of it, so that the person who wants to salt his food would spill the whole content into his plate. I was told once about a situation when the victim of this prank was so annoyed, because he was hungry and had ruined his food, that he spilled the content of an ashtray into the plate of his friend who pulled the prank. Interestingly, this caused even more laughter, which means that the one who falls for *šala* is generally expected either to react in good nature or to pull even better prank, even more so since this form of humour usually takes place in smaller groups and among people known to each other.

### **But How Does *šala* Function?**

To define *šala* and precisely determine everything that is meant by this notion in the Serbian social context is only half the distance crossed towards the understanding of it. If we accept that this form of humour does not have its special morphology and structure, such as the one characteristic of joke or funny story, there remains the issue of its formation and functioning. What is, therefore, inherent to an action or speech act, apart from its entertaining and humorous purpose, which makes us call it a *šala*? A similar question was posed by Freud, deliberating on witticism, and his answer was the concept of technique which is used in this humoristic form in order to produce a suitable effect. Concerning the exclusively verbal expression of witticism, the techniques identified by Freud refer to the specific use of language which produces the effect of humour (Frojd 1979: 15–118). Although in his study Freud did not offer the precise definition of the very technique, he did provide a good starting point for the understanding of *šala*, regardless of the fact that apart from the verbal form it has the physical form as well. On the other hand, we had to wait for the study *An Anatomy of Humor* by Arthur Asa Berger in

order to obtain not only the definition of the technique, in the sense similar to the one used by Freud, but also the exhaustive list of techniques which we can find in a wide variety of humoristic forms.

As opposed to some authors who contemplated the phenomenon of humour by posing the question *why* we laugh, Berger did it by posing the question *what* starts up humour. In this manner he arrived at the technique of humour as the mechanism whose main purpose is to produce laughter, which entails the means for the analysis of any example of humour, created in any period of time, belonging to any genre and expressed through any medium (Berger 1993: 15). As Berger pointed out himself, his glossary is very much similar to Vladimir Propp's "functions" which are at the heart of all narratives. Berger's assumption is that humour has a process aspect to it which can be separated into various parts and analyzed:

Any example of humor 'shields' various techniques that generate the humor, and something is funny or humorous, in the final analysis, not because of the subject matter or theme but because of the techniques employed by whomever created the humor. (Berger 1993: 17).

In his study we find four basic categories under which all the techniques are subsumed:

1. Language. The humor is verbal. In humor involving language, it is wordplay and other attributes of language that are basic.
2. Logic. The humor is ideational. In humor involving logic, the humor involves ideas and the problems we face in making sense of the world.
3. Identity. The humor is existential. Identity humor is, in essence, existential and deals with problems we have with our identities.
4. Action. The humor is physical or nonverbal.<sup>12</sup> (Berger 1993: 17).

These categories are useful in that they give us a sense of what kind of humour is being produced, but the techniques are essential matter to consider in analyzing humour.

My objection to Berger, however, is the usage of the words technique and mechanism alongside, that is to say making no distinction between these notions. Some of his techniques refer to the so-called accidental humour, when a combination of circumstances and situation are perceived as comic, with no intentional and conscious interference of an individual. This

---

<sup>12</sup> For clear understanding of these techniques and the ways of their functioning it is necessary to consult Berger's study *An Anatomy of Humor* (1993).

is, for instance, the case with the technique *slapstick* which refers to different kinds of physical gaffes and clumsiness which amuse us, such as slipping on the banana peel, or the technique of coincidence referring to lapses or slips of the tongue. On such occasions, I am of the opinion that it is advisable to talk about the mechanism of humour. On the other hand, the very word technique is good for it gives us the opportunity to differentiate *šala* from the mentioned kinds of accidental humour, since it suggests a conscious and intentional choice of the appropriate means of producing laughter, which *šala* basically does (Trifunović 2009: 36). According to that, I would separate mechanisms of humour, which are not relevant in relation to *šala*, from the techniques that are deliberately employed to produce humour, that are significant for understanding the functioning of *šala* and that provide methodological means for analysing this form of humour.

First and foremost, it is exactly the usage of the techniques of humour which makes a speech act or an action a *šala*. The technique of humour is, consequently, the basic unit of the verbal and physical form of *šala* whose main purpose is to produce laughter and which differentiates *šala* from other types of actions and speech acts. In addition to this, the usage of a particular technique of humour in a humorous utterance or act points at their function in a certain context. Consider, for instance, the following example in which the basic unit of *šala* is sarcasm: A traffic policeman pulls over a speeding car, and when a driver naively asks if he was driving too fast, the policeman answers: "No sir, you were flying too low."

The function of this particular *šala* is to deliver an effective remark about somebody's problematic conduct. This again shows the importance of an immediate context in which a concrete humorous utterance occurred for understanding the function of that utterance. However, as Berger himself noted: "Sarcasm may generate some humor, but it tends to be a costly kind of humor" (Berger 1993: 49). According to that, by means of similar techniques such as ridicule, irony, insults, caricature, imitation or parody, *šala* could test the elasticity of the social conventions, assess the boundaries of tradition, good taste, etiquette, switch the professional and social order and investigate the boundaries of the allowed personal humiliation (McEntire 2002: 147). To put it shortly, through *šala* we learn about ourselves as well as about those around us, especially when this form of humour is used between those who assume different social positions and statuses.

*Šale* (plural of *šala*.), as already mentioned, especially circulate and are exchanged within narrower social groups formed by persons of similar interests and hobbies, owing to friendly

relationships or inside their business environment. This type of humour, in this case, plays an important social function of maintaining solidarity and the sense of belonging, setting the boundary between the group members and foreigners, facilitating communication within the group and controlling the behaviour of its members (Fine *et al.* 2005: 7). *Šala* then represents a portion of the expressive culture of such groups, whose members share specific knowledge which enables them to interpret and understand *šala* in the specific manner.

Similarly, while the very *šala* is situational, its subject in these cases is often predictable and it mainly pertains to that which captures the attention of the given group or prompts worry inside it. The best depiction of this is given by Gary Alan Fine who studied the culture of joking activity among mycologists which yields insight into their worry over the effects that this hobby may produce, as well as a specific contradiction regarding this worry, so that jokes are mostly made with the subject of dying when consuming certain mushrooms, but also at the expense of those who are afraid of tasting those mushrooms (Fine 1988: 193). *Šala* is here, therefore, a folklore manner of treating subjects which figure as important to a certain group, while the technique of humour used in it, be it sarcasm, caricature, allusion, comparison or the like, is an even more precise indicator of the relations which exist in the mentioned group according to the given subject.

### **Retelling of *šala***

*Šala*'s specific quality at the level of texture is, as it has already been said, the technique of humour which separates it from other types of communication. The conventions concerning time, place, social environment, or in short context, also exist regarding the usage and telling of *šala*. At the level of text, concerning the fact that *šala* in its verbal form, unlike riddle, tongue twister, proverb and a wide variety of prose narratives which belong to the category of verbal art, is not characterized by fixed structure. It is spontaneous, contextualized, made on the spur of the moment and it is practically impossible to foresee what the target of it will be. *Šala* also has the known, individual origin, while in the creation and formation of it the community does not participate. In short, it is an ephemeral, idiosyncratic creation and formulation of an individual. But as such, it represents a folklore form which has the potential to be a convenient cultural resource for the creation of playful or amusing scenes in everyday life (see Leary 1980).

In contemporary Serbian context *šala* is widely used in everyday interpersonal communication and its purpose in those common situations usually comes down to the mentioned creation of an amusing atmosphere. A friend of mine provided me with detailed information about such

an occasion in which he himself participated. He walked into a store wanting to buy underpants for the upcoming winter in which an older woman worked, who he never met before. The first impression he had of this saleswoman upon addressing to her was that she was a serious and experienced worker. They started talking about different kinds of underpants and the woman asked him if he needed them for skiing, to which he jokingly replied: "No, I need them for bus waiting", which induced laughter among them. This reply could be thought of as a typical example of individual, ephemeral, idiosyncratic *šala*, used in a specific context and with a specific purpose.

First of all, the aim of my friend in this situation was to make someone who gave the impression of a serious person smile. He did that by creating an amusing atmosphere in a spontaneous way, that is, by using *šala* with a specific technique of humour known as Reversal. According to Berger, this technique involves a resolution of some action that turns out to be the opposite of what is hoped for, and also offers insights that are amusing and sometimes profound (Berger op. cit: 47). In this case it was wisely used to refer to the common experience that people in Belgrade had with bad public transportation. In addition to that, by saying that he needed those underpants for bus waiting instead of skiing, my friend also latently referred to the economic crisis which this society has been enduring for quite a while now. In that way he managed to identify with this saleswoman as someone who was probably troubled by the same issues. To put it shortly, they laughed at the problems that they both have been facing, which tacitly equalized their social status (even though they did not know each other) and provided basis for more relaxed communication and possibly further joking. These kinds of humorous utterances, that are directed towards social, political or economic problems, are quite common in contemporary Serbian society, and therefore represent a form of folklore which is manifested in everyday communication.

This, however, does not mean that *šala* cannot also be developed from ephemeral and individual into durable and shared. As is emphasized by Jakobson and Bogatirjov: "The existence of a folklore creation as such begins only when a certain community has accepted it, and from this creation exists only that which the community has adopted" (Jakobson *et al.* 1971: 18). These authors also propagate the idea that folklore retains only those forms which have proved its functionality for the given community (ibid: 19). Therefore, I believe that *šala* can become durable and shared if, due to the specific function that it has, it remains remembered in the community in a manner which incorporates it into a shorter narrative which

will lay emphasis on it. In such cases it can freely be said that the subject under discussion is some kind of "story about *šala*". This is especially illustrative in the study by Branko Banović *Urbani humor Pljevalja* [‘Urban humour of Pljevlja’] in which the author analyses the contents which he termed humorous episodes, and which are exchanged in everyday interaction and are transferred from generation to generation in different interactive contexts (Banović 2008: 18).

Banović used the humorous episodes to designate short narratives whose core represent *šala* or *dosetka* which, thanks to their specific function in the given environment or even more, because of the individuals who found themselves in the role of their creators, have become remembered. *Šale*, which many years ago really took place, through further retelling, have grown into characteristic urban stories with humorous content whose protagonists are the inhabitants of Pljevlja and setting the town of Pljevlja<sup>13</sup>. They have to the present day continued to circulate in oral communication among the inhabitants of Pljevlja. "Seemingly naive, banal and taken frivolously, these stories had a certain role in the social life of the town of Pljevlja, as well as their protagonists who also had a significant role in the social life of the town." (Banović 2008: 17). On this occasion, I shall cite two examples from the study by Banović in order to present the phenomenon of transforming individual *šala* into folklore material as clear as possible:

Хусеин Куновац је важио за изузетно духовитог и образованог човека чије су се шале дуго препричавале и остајале у сећању Пљевљана. Једна од њих је следећа:

Назове Хусеин Куновац потпредседника Среза Ахма Селмановића, представљајући се да је дежурни на хидрофору. Камуфлираним и потпуно званичним гласом обавестио га је да је Брезница пресушила и да „Водовод“ има нерешив проблем. Ахмо је насео и отрчао према хидрофору. Кад је сав уплахирен дошао до хидрофора, позвао је дежурног радника говорећи му да је Брезница пресушила. На то је дежурни радник збуњено гледао показујући на воду која је шикљала јаким млазом на све стране. Тада су и један и други схватили да је реч о нечијој смицалици и почели да се смеју. Оно што је у целокупној епизоди најсмешније је да је Ахмо сигурно 700-800 метара трчао поред корита Брезнице, јер је једини начин да се дође до хидрофора дуж корита, а да није приметио да вода тече несмањеним интензитетом.“ (Banović 2008: 38.)

---

<sup>13</sup> Pljevlja is a small town at the north of Montenegro.



Husein Kunovac was highly reputable as an exceptionally witty and educated man whose stories were retold for a very long time and stayed in the memory of the inhabitants of Pljevlja. One of them is the following:

Husein Kunovac phoned the county vice-chairman Ahmo Selmanović, presenting himself as the duty worker on the water pump. In a camouflaged and entirely official voice, he informed him that Breznica<sup>14</sup> had run dry and that “Vodovod” [‘Water Company’] had an insoluble problem. Ahmo took the bait and ran to the water pump. When, highly agitated, he came to the water pump, he called the duty worker and told him that Breznica had run dry. The duty worker looked at him in confusion showing him the water which gushed forth. Then both of them realized that it was a trick and started laughing. The funniest thing in this entire episode is the fact that Ahmo must have run for entire 700-800 metres alongside the river bed, for this is the only way to get to the water pump, without noticing the water flowing with unabated intensity.

The next story is one of the many humorous episodes pertaining to the great friendship between priest Krezo and Ljubo Stojkanović, which were gladly retold in the town:

Поп Крезо и Љубо Стојаковић су били комшије. Уколико би ишао у центар Љубо је морао проћи поред куће попа Креза. Једном приликом Љуба заустави попадија: „Бога ти, Љубо пошто је прота отишао у град, а заборавио штап, молим те, понеси му га.“ Љубо је био у чаршији па на пијаци и кад се враћао свратио је у кројачку радњу Ивана Голубовића у којој су често седили. Знајући да поп Крезо воли штапове, Љубо с врата рече: 'Био сам на пијаци и купио јефтино овај штап, али пошто ми не треба продаћу га.' Поп Крезо се почео распитивати о цени и на крају купи овај штап. Кад је поп дошао кући, са врата се похвалио супрузи како је јефтино купио добар штап. На то му је она одговорила: „Е бога ми, прото, то ти је Љубо продао твој штап. Ја сам му дала да ти га понесе, пошто си га ти јутрос заборавио.“ Након тога поп неколико дана није хтео да прича са Љубом. Наравно, то није била озбиљна љутња. (Вановић 2008: 48.)

Priest Krezo and Ljubo Stojaković were neighbours. When going to the centre of the town, Ljubo had to pass by the house of priest Krezo. On one occasion, Ljubo was stopped by the priest's wife: 'Ljubo, since the priest went to town forgetting his staff, would you, please, bring it to him?'. Ljubo went to bazaar, then to the market-place, and on his way back home, he dropped by the tailoring shop of Ivan Golubović in which they often sat. Knowing that priest Krezo likes staffs, Ljubo said on the doorstep: "I have been at the market and bought this staff cheaply, but since I do not need it, I will sell it." Priest Krezo started asking about the price and bought the staff in the end. When the priest came home, he mentioned with pride to his wife, at the very doorstep, that he bought a good staff cheaply. To this she replied: 'For heaven's sake, Krezo, Ljubo sold you your own staff. I

---

<sup>14</sup> Breznica is a river that flows through the town of Pljevlja.

gave it to him to bring it to you, because you had forgotten it this morning'. After this the priest would not speak to Ljubo for several days. Naturally, this was not a genuine anger. These humorous episodes are the best example of remembering, taking over and forming *šala* by the community as well as the indicator of making folklore material out of one otherwise ephemeral creation. Passive listener or social environment in this case are of special importance, for it is exactly to producing enjoyment in others, which is one of the important functions of *šala*, that these forms owe its perseverance.

Also, such "stories about *šala*" should not be mixed up with *šaljiva priča* ['funny story'] as a narrative predominantly based upon the humour of the situation and wordplay. Funny story once had a significant place in the Serbian folklore and is closest to the type of story that is marked in Aarne-Thompson index as *Schwank* (Aarne *et al.* 1961). The frequent motif in the funny story is a funny combination of circumstances into which one falls owing to ignorance and such characteristics as stupidity, slyness, greed, sagacity, resourcefulness, cunningness, quick wit, then the behaviour which is not in keeping with the principles of the environment or the clash of different norms and worlds producing a misunderstanding primarily owing to the usage of unknown words, homonyms, localisms and literal comprehension. As we could see in text above, similar motifs can be found in the "story about *šala*" as well. However, there are certain characteristics which clearly separate funny stories from these "humorous episodes".

Judging by the multitude of details from rural life, the greatest portion of funny stories emerged from or resumed its final shape in the rural Serbian environment. Although the setting of some of them is the town, consulting room, courthouse, barber's shop, classroom, the funny stories predominantly deal with the topics related to life and circumstances in the countryside and relations in the family, so that the frequent characters are priest, monk, qadi, village headman, serf, mother-in-law, son-in-law, parents and children, etc. The protagonists of the funny story are, therefore, predominantly anonymous characters, although the actions in the funny story can be attributed to certain individuals such as Era to whom an entire cycle of funny folklore stories in the domestic folklore is dedicated. This character, on the other hand, is typified, quick-witted protagonist of funny stories whose actions are mainly targeted at the social strata hostile towards peasantry, such as aga, landowner, but also priest, monk, etc.

The funny stories thus can indirectly treat social problems and be used as an agitation instrument in the struggles between social groups being based more upon the social than upon the national opposites. In general, their subjects are diverse and can refer to a wide variety of

social moments having the function of social criticism and self-criticism. This folklore creation contains observations on people, human relations and everyday events, which means that it is more indirectly tied to everyday life (Samardžija 2006; Pešić *et al.*1997). Today, however, it can be ascertained that the funny story is not that actual anymore. It could be said that in the contemporary period it has been substituted by its border forms such as anecdote or joke, which owing to the new social circumstances, urbanization, but also regarding its motifs and themes, more efficiently fit into the everyday and direct communication. On the other hand, "story about *šala* ", as it has been shown, is still very alive as a humoristic form and has not lost its role in the social life.

## Conclusion

“How ironic, then, that this seemingly trivial, inconsequential, common thing we know as humor is so enigmatic and plays so vital a role in our psychic lives and society.”

– A. A. Berger

Based upon everything that has been said so far, it seems that the notion "humour" in the above quotation could freely be replaced by the notion "*šala*", even more so due to the fact that everyday humour most frequently appears in this form exactly. In other words, *šala* is an indicator and a proof of the omnipresence of humour in everyday life. It has always had its place in interpersonal communication and it can almost certainly be said that it is a humoristic form which will always be used and will never become obsolete.

While it is true that in colloquial speech the term *šala* sometimes refers to any humorous activity or creation, it also has a specific meaning which has not yet been considered in Serbian folklore studies. By using the technique of humour, as well as by the special name which is used to denote this humoristic form in the Serbian language, *šala* is culturally recognized as a special communication category so that it gains an identification trait which differentiates it from other forms of social interaction, all of which indicate the existence of the cultural awareness of its specific character and functions (Ben-Amos 1971: 10). This is why it should not be equated with joke or witticism, nor treated as a mere synonym of humour and a classification category for humorous folklore creations. Regarding its form and usage in contemporary Serbian context, I argued that this is a special manifestation of humour which refers to utterances and acts and is not to be confused with narratives.

This everyday and seemingly simple humoristic form is also of quite a complex nature, which ranges from its elusiveness when it comes to collecting and presenting, to the importance of

the immediate context and special knowledge for its success and understanding. Closely related to this are various functions that *šala* as a special form of communication may have. It may serve as the confirmation of a shared identity among the members of a certain group, as the means of testing or reassessing social norms and relations or of communicating something with sense and meaning in an indirect, but effective manner. Its strictly individual origin and ephemerality did not prevent *šala* from turning durable and shared, for there are cases when it remains in community's memory or use due to its specific function in the given environment.

The main aim of this paper was to define as precisely as possible this manifestation of humour, to determine the principles of its formation and functioning, and to delineate its particularity in relation to similar folklore creations. In Serbian anthropology and folklore studies, the concept of *šala* has usually been avoided due to its imprecise meaning (see Banović 2008: 20). It is exactly this fact that has inspired this paper and stressed the need of scientific understanding of *šala* in order to mark the beginning of the use of it as an analytical concept (Ben-Amos 1976).

## Literature

- Aarne, Antti, & Stith Thompson 1961. *The Types of the Folk-Tale. A Classification and Bibliography*. FF Communications 184. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Apte, Mahadev L. 1985. *Humor and Laughter. An Anthropological Approach*. Ithaca NY: Cornell University Press.
- Attardo, Salvatore, Christian F. Hempelmann & Sara Di Maio 2002. Script Oppositions and Logical Mechanisms. Modeling Incongruities and their Resolutions. *Humor* 15 (1): 3–46.
- Banović 2008 = Бановић, Бранко 2008. *Урбани хумор Пљеваља*. Пљевља: Општина Пљевља.
- Bauman, Richard 1975. Verbal Art as Performance. *American Anthropologist* 77 (2): 290–311.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1971. Toward a Definition of Folklore in Context. *Journal of American Folklore* 84 (331): 3–15.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1973. The “Myth” of Jewish Humor. *Western Folklore* 32 (2): 112–131.
- Ben-Amos, Dan 1976. Analytical Categories and Ethnic Genres. In Dan Ben-Amos (ed.) *Folklore Genres*. Austin & London: University of Texas Press. Pp. 215-242.
- Berger, Arthur A. 1976. Anatomy of the Joke. *Journal of Communication* 26 (3): 113–115.
- Berger, Arthur A. 1993. *An Anatomy of Humor*. New Jersey: Transaction Publishers – The State University.
- Chapman, Antony J. & Hugh C. Foot. *Humor and Laughter. Theory, Research, and Applications*. Transaction Publishers.
- Davis, Murray S. 1995. The Sociology of Humor. A Stillborn Field? *Sociological Forum* 10 (2): 327–339.
- Davies, Christie 2005. European Ethnic Scripts and the Translation and Switching of Jokes. *Humor* 18 (2): 147–160.

- Dégh, Linda 1982. The Jokes of an Irishman in a Multiethnic Urban Environment. *Jahrbuchfür Volksliedforschung*, 27. Jahrg. Festschrift für Lutz Röhrich zum 60. Geburtstag. Pp. 90–108.
- Douglas, Mary 1968. The Social Control of Cognition. Some Factors in Joke Perception. *Man* 3 (3): 361–376.
- Dundes, Alan 1980. *Interpreting Folklore*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Dundes, Alan 1979. Dead Baby Joke Cycle. *Western Folklore* 38 (3): 145–151.
- Ellis, Bill 2001. A Model for Collecting and Interpreting World Trade Center Disaster Jokes. *New Directions in Folklore* 5: 1–12.
- Fine, Gary Alan & Michaela De Soucey 2005. Joking Cultures. Humor Themes as Social Regulation in Group Life. *Humor* 18 (1): 1–22.
- Fine, Gary Alan 1988. Dying for a Laugh. Negotiating Risk and Creating Personas in the Humor of Mushroom Collectors. *Western Folklore* 47 (3): 177–194.
- Finnegan, Alford & Richard Alford 1981. A Holo-Cultural Study of Humor. *Ethos* 9 (2): 149–164.
- Frojd, Sigmund 1979. *Dosetka i njen odnos prema nesvesnom*. Novi Sad: Matica srpska.
- Handelman, Don & Bruce Kapferer 1972. Forms of Joking Activity. A Comparative Approach. *American Anthropologist* 74 (3): 484–517.
- Holmes, Janet 2000. Politeness, Power and Provocation. How Humor Functions in the Workplace. *Discourse Studies* 2 (2): 159–185.
- Jakobson, Roman, & Pjotr Bogatirjov 1971. Folklor kao naročit oblik stvaralaštva. In Maja Bošković Stuli (ed.). *Usmena književnost: izbor studija i ogleda*. Zagreb: Školska knjiga. Pp. 17–29.
- Kleut, Marija 1993. Beleženje i pričanje viceva. *Folklor u Vojvodini* 7: 121–127.
- Krstić, Marija 2009. „Kursadžije“ – Terapeutska uspavanka? Analiza popularne humorističke serije. *Antropologija* 7: 137–152.
- Latković 1967 = Латковић, Видо 1967. *Народна књижевност I*. Београд: Научна књига.
- Leary, James P. 1980. Recreational Talk among White Adolescents. *Western Folklore* 39 (4): 284–299.
- Ljuboja 2001 = Љубоја, Гордана 2001. *Етнички хумор XX века у хумористичкој штампи Србије*. Београд: Етнографски музеј.
- Ljubinković 1976 = Љубинковић, Ненад 1976. *Шаљиве народне приче*. Београд: Рад.
- McEntire, Nancy Cassell 2002. Purposeful Deceptions of the April Fool. *Western Folklore* 61 (2): 133–151.
- McGhee, Paul E. 1979. *Humor – Its Origin and Development*. San Francisco: W. H. Freeman and Company.
- Mitchell, Carol A. 1977. The Sexual Perspective in the Appreciation and Interpretation of Jokes. *Western Folklore* 36 (4): 303–329.
- Milošević-Đorđević 2006 = Милошевић-Ђорђевић, Нада 2006. *Од бајке до изреке*. Београд: Друштво за српски језик и књижевност Србије.
- Milošević-Đorđević 1984 = Милошевић-Ђорђевић, Нада & Радмила Пешић 1984. *Народна књижевност*. Београд: Вук Караџић.
- Nikolić 1997 = Николић, Десанка 1997. Анегдота – израз ерског менталитета. *Гласник Етнографског института САНУ* књ. XLVI: 149–159.
- Norricks, Neal R. & Delia Chiaro 2009. *Humor in Interaction*. John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Oring, Elliott 1987. Jokes and the Discourse on Disaster. *The Journal of American Folklore* 100 (397): 276–286.
- Oring, Elliott 2003. *Engaging Humor*. University of Illinois Press.

- Pešić 1997 = Пешић, Радмила & Нада Милошевић-Ђорђевић 1997. *Народна књижевност II*. Београд: Требник.
- Preston, Cathy Lynn 1994. „Cinderella“ as a Dirty Joke: Gender, Multivocality and the Polysemic Text. *Western Folklore* 53 (1): 27–49.
- Rad XXXVII kongresa SUFJ 1990. Zagreb: Plitvička jezera.
- Radovanović, Milorad 2003. *Sociolingvistika*. Novi Sad: Izdavačka knjižarnica Zorana Stojanovića Sremski Karlovci.
- Raskin, Victor & Salvatore Attardo 1991. Script theory revis(it)ed: joke similarity and joke representation model. *Humor: International Journal of Humor Research* 4(3/4): 293–347.
- Radcliffe-Brown, A. R. 1982. *Struktura i funkcija u primitivnom društvu*. Београд: Библиотека XX век.
- Rečnik srpskohrvatskog književnog narodnog jezika* 1966. Београд: SANU, Institut za srpskohrvatski jezik.
- Rečnik književnih termina* 1985. Београд: Nolit.
- Rečnik književnih termina* 1992. Београд: Nolit.
- Samardžija 2006 = Самарџија, Снежана 2006. *Одлике шалвие народне приповетке: антологија*. Крушевац: Гутенбергова галаксија.
- Sackett, Robert Eben 1987. Images of the Jew: Popular Joke-telling in Munich on the Eve of World War I. *Theory and Society* 16 (4): 527–563.
- Smyth, Willie 1986. Challenger Jokes and the Humor of Disaster. *Western Folklore* 45 (4): 243–260.
- Stevanović, Lada 2009. *Laughing at the Funeral: gender and anthropology in the Greek funerary rites* 69. Belgrade: SASA Institute of Ethnography.
- Stevanović, Lada 2007. Ridiculed Death and the Dead: Black Humor. *Glasnik Etnografskog instituta SANU* LV (1): 193–204.
- Thomas, Jeannie B 1997. Dumb Blondes, Dan Quayle and Hillary Clinton: Gender, Sexuality and Stupidity in Jokes. *The Journal of American Folklore* 110 (437): 277–313.
- Trifunović, Vesna 2009. *Likovi domaćih viceva: socijalni tipovi lude u domaćim vicevima*. Etnološka biblioteka knj. 43. Београд: Srpski genealoški centar.
- Veatch, Thomas C. 1998. A Theory of Humor. *Humor: The International Journal of Humor Research* 11: 161 – 215.
- Zlatković, Branko 2007. Usmena narodna anegdota. *Književnost i jezik* 54 (3–4): 281–289.

## **PART V:**

# **Between Folklore and Literature**

# The Genre of Reminiscence Writings

## Applying the Bakhtin Circle's Genre Theories<sup>1</sup>

**Ulla Savolainen**

In the field of contemporary folkloristics the concept of genre is regarded as an organizing principle for utterances, texts, or expressions that serves as a communicative and flexible framework guiding the production, reception, and interpretation of discourse (e.g. Briggs & Bauman 1992; Hanks 1987; see also Dorst 1983). From this standpoint, genres are not understood as rigid categories or stable classifications, even though the notion of genre on some level always focuses on the conventional features of expression in addition to the similarities and connections between utterances. This perspective on genre gained significance after the notion of genres as distinct entities became problematic and insufficient for understanding the blurred, mixed, and heterogenic forms and meanings that characterize discourses or performances of tradition (Siikala & Siikala 2005, 87–90). This understanding of genre is among other theories based on the works of Mikhail Bakhtin and the so-called *Bakhtin Circle*<sup>2</sup>. Mikhail Bakhtin defines speech genres as determined by the areas and events of human interaction in which they are created and used. Each of these events of language creates its own relatively stable types of utterances, or speech genres, which also reflect the situation in question. (Bakhtin 1986, 60, 87; Seitel 2003, 278.) In line with Bakhtin, Pavel Medvedev, too, defines genre as a viewpoint on the world at a given time and place (Bakhtin/Medvedev 1979, 130–135). What makes the Bakhtin Circle's genre theories so compelling is the significance that it attaches to the social and communicative nature of genre and the messages and values that the genre conveys.

In this article, I examine the genre of reminiscence writings from the perspective of the Bakhtin Circle's genre theories, by applying them in the analysis of two different kinds of materials:

---

<sup>1</sup> I am grateful to the Finnish Cultural Foundation for funding my research.

<sup>2</sup> Later known as the Bakhtin Circle, this group of Russian scholars with a shared interest in language, literature and other related topics collaborated and exchanged ideas in the 1920s that continue to endure in the study of language and culture. The most well-known of these thinkers were Mikhail Bakhtin, Pavel Medvedev, and Valentin Voloshinov. In fact, the authorship of some of the works by members of the Bakhtin Circle remains uncertain. Recent research suggests that a number of these writings were jointly created—in keeping with the spirit of their theoretical and philosophical point of view—through dialogue, and then finalized in written form later by each individual according to his personal preferences. The works of the Bakhtin Circle focused on key questions concerning social life in general and artistic creation in particular, and one of the Circle's central ideas was that linguistic production is *dialogic* and formed in the process of social interaction. (Brandist 2005.)



texts about childhood memories, to be precise, archived autobiographical writings about the evacuation journey from Karelia to Finland generated by a collection campaign organized by the Finnish Karelian League in collaboration with the Folklore Archives, and the published memoirs and fiction of Eeva Kilpi, a Finnish novelist who was also a child evacuee from Karelia. Through this process, I seek to observe the kinds of intertextual, communicative, and social interactions that reminiscences about the past connect to.

By following this idea, I start my analysis by outlining some of the challenges that are involved in the analysis of reminiscence writings produced through collection campaigns<sup>3</sup> from the standpoint of genre. I see the concept of genre as a powerful tool for understanding poetic and linguistic works, for such expressions are always fundamentally bound up in the world from which they have sprung. With this in mind, I investigate the genre's external or direct orientation toward the actual context, through which reminiscence writings written by a certain author become existent in a certain situation, in a certain interaction between the author, the recipient, and the historical context. Thereafter, I describe the genre's typical perspectives on the world, by perceiving how reminiscence writings internally orientate toward the world based on temporal viewpoints characteristic to it. (See Bakhtin/Medvedev 1978, 130–133). If we choose to follow the Bakhtin Circle's genre theories, regarding different genres as discrete units with strictly defined boundaries cannot be the final goal of analysis. As Pavel Medvedev puts it, "Poetics should really begin with genre, not end with it" (Bakhtin/Medvedev 1978, 129). Indeed, the Circle's approach to genre encourages the apprehension of overlaps, relations, and links between genres which may open new windows for understanding dimensions of human expressions<sup>4</sup> absent on the linguistic or thematic level of the utterance but taking place between and across genres. Thus, in this article, the emphasis is not on seeking to set reminiscence writings apart as a category distinct from other categories but on creating an analysis of the characteristics that connect it together with other genres. One aspect that prevails throughout my analysis is the comparison and relation between the collected reminiscence writings and

---

<sup>3</sup> There is no established English translation for the material produced in the context of collection campaigns. They have been called *folklore produced by the collecting competition* (Pöysä 1997, 435), *reminiscence materials*, *oral history in the form of texts* (Latvala 2005, 274), *life stories*, *emotional experience stories* (Laurén 2006, 217), *theme-based writings*, *recollected narration* (Peltonen 1996). In international folkloristics, the established term that is sometimes used to describe these collected materials is *personal experience narrative*. I use the term *reminiscence writing* because it refers to their nature as written texts and written expression.

<sup>4</sup> Depending on the genres in question, these meanings may be, for instance, political, ideological, or artistic, but on the whole they are rhetorical on some level.

other historically oriented or retrospective forms of narration, such as literary memoir, oral history accounts, and autobiographies. This exposes the confluences and differences between the reminiscence writings produced in the context of different collection campaigns and other neighboring genres.<sup>5</sup> As an example of how the borders between genres overlap and are thus ever open to new interpretations, I compare the works of Eeva Kilpi to collected reminiscence writings about childhood evacuation journeys. In connection with these issues, I also offer examples of how the intertextuality of genres can be seen in evacuation journey writings.

Reminiscence writings are typically produced or brought to the “public” thanks to various thematic collections and writing competitions; these campaigns are frequently organized by the Finnish Literature Society’s Folklore Archives in co-operation with various associations concerned with the theme in question (Latvala 2005, 24–33; Pöysä 2006, 223–228.) As an example of reminiscence writings produced in the context of a collection campaign, I analyze the collection called “Children’s evacuation journey” (2004). The writings concern the evacuation journey(s) from Karelia to Finland during the Second World War and were written by Karelians who were children during the evacuations. These writings thematically link together with the chosen works of Eeva Kilpi and they also share a focus on childhood memories. In addition, the children’s evacuation journey writings and the chosen works of Eeva Kilpi both dwell on the following topics: the loss of Karelia, evacuations, and recollections of childhood in Karelia. My interpretation as well as the examples are based on one particular thematic collection about the childhood evacuation journey, but I suggest that the arguments presented here apply also more generally to these kinds of accounts about and around personal experiences and memories of the past.

Before going any further, it is necessary to provide some background information on the “lost Karelia” and the evacuations. Karelia is a region on both sides of the border between eastern Finland and Russia. Between 1939 and 1944, Finland fought two wars against the Soviet

---

<sup>5</sup> Research on this kind of material is a prominent line among contemporary Finnish folkloristics and other related fields. (For more examples, see Pöysä 1997; Peltonen 1996; Latvala 2005; Laurén 2006; Kaarlenkaski 2012; and also Taira 2006.) In Finland the connection between the study of reminiscence writings and oral history research has typically been a strong one to the extent that the term oral history research has generally been translated as *muistitietotutkimus* (memory knowledge research) or *muistitietohistoria* (memory knowledge history), terms which do not delimit the research material according to its orality or literacy. (Abrams 2010, 27; Bornat 1994, 17–30; Heimo 2010, 42–44; Fingerroos & Haanpää 2006, 26–30; Kalela 2006, 67–74; Pöysä 2006, 221–228; Peltonen 1996, 32–33.)

Union, both of which led to the cession of parts of the Finnish Karelian region—among other areas of Finland—to the Soviet Union. After the Winter War (1939–40) and the Continuation War (1941–1944), the Finnish population from ceded Karelia was evacuated across the new state border, and thus the group of migrant Karelians or Karelian exiles (407,000 people, nearly 11% of the national population) was born. The evacuations and the ceding of Karelia also generated the charged concepts of “the lost Karelia” and “Karelian evacuees.” Evacuated Karelians were resettled in their new dwelling places while Finland paid the reparations to the Allied governments. While the resettlement of the Karelian population and the restoration and reparation period has been considered one of the central events in the grand narrative of Finnish history (Armstrong 2004, 2), the evacuation journey has continued to endure as the core of the grand narrative of Karelia for Karelian evacuees (Kuusisto-Arponen 2008, 175).<sup>6</sup>

### **The Bakhtinian Idea of Genre as a Dialogic Framework**

The Bakhtin Circle’s notions about genre are deeply embedded in the idea of the dialogic and social nature of language and the interconnectedness of utterances and their meanings. (Bakhtin 1981; 1986; Bakhtin/Medvedev 1978; Vološinov 1973; on dialogicality, see also Todorov 1984; Allen 2000, 21–30; Lähteenmäki 1998; on the Bakhtin Circle, see Brandist 2005.) This means that language or utterances and speech genres are replete with other words and others’ words, and therefore they include a connection to other utterances and discourses. (Bakhtin 1981, Bakhtin 1986, 88–89.) As a result of this, language is always fundamentally interactive and social, thus unable to exist as a synchronic system apart from its historical and social context<sup>7</sup> (Vološinov 1973, 65–68). Dialogue or dialogism is probably considered one of the main epithets<sup>8</sup> defining the theories and thinking of Mikhail Bakhtin as well as the theories of

---

<sup>6</sup> The evacuated Karelians and evacuations have been the subject of many researches, e.g., Waris & al. 1952; Heikkinen 1989; Paukkunen 1989; Lehto & Timonen 1993; Sallinen-Gimpl 1994; Raninen-Siiskonen 1999; Armstrong 2004; Willman 2006; Fingerroos & Loipponen 2007; Fingerroos 2007; 2008; 2010; Kuusisto-Arponen 2008; 2009; Niukko 2009; Kananen 2010.

<sup>7</sup> Vološinov criticizes Saussurean linguistics and Medvedev’s formalist method in literary theory because, regardless of their other benefits, these theories disregard the social and historical dimensions of language. (For more on Russian thought from the late 1800s up to the 1930s: Tihanov 1998.)

<sup>8</sup> Other central concepts in Bakhtin’s works that are also sometimes confused with heteroglossia and polyphony. Bakhtin introduced the term heteroglossia [*raznorečie*] in the essay “Discourse in the Novel” (Bakhtin 1981, 259–422; Holquist 1981, xix). Its literal translation is “different-speech-ness” (Roberts 1994, 248). According to Allon White, paraphrased by Sue Vice, Bakhtin uses the term heteroglossia or “differentiated speech” to describe “the complex stratification of language into genre, sociolect, dialect and mutual interanimation of these forms”. (White 1994, 136; Vice 1997, 18). Michael Holquist in turn describes heteroglossia as “the base condition governing the operation of meaning in any utterance. It is that which insures the primacy of context over text.” (Holquist 1981, 428.) Compared to dialogism and heteroglossia, the concept of polyphony has enjoyed more currency in the study of literature (see Bakhtin 1984). According to Sue Vice, polyphony “refers precisely to the construction of the voices of characters and narrator in the novel,” and it means “‘multi-voicedness’, while

genre.<sup>9</sup> Dialogism for Bakhtin is a characteristic epistemological mode of a world and it means that all meanings are part of a bigger whole, in interaction with each other and also possibly inflecting each other. (Bakhtin 1981; Holquist 1981, 426–427; Holquist 1990; Vice 1997, 46–49; Lähteenmäki 1998.) According to Sue Vice, dialogism means “double-voicedness” or “double-wordedness” (Vice 1997, 45). In his early works on the novel, Bakhtin discusses the idea of the “internal dialogism of the word,” especially in the context of literature, although on a rather theoretical or ideal level (Bakhtin 1981, 282; Tihanov 1998, 45), but the principle of dialogue, or epistemology of dialogue, is at the basis of all of the works produced by the Bakhtin Circle (Holquist 1990, 14–17). Later on dialogism also emerges as a precondition of the ideas he introduces in his essay “Speech Genres” (Bakhtin 1986). As Bakhtin puts it, “The utterance is filled with dialogic overtones [...] After all, our thought itself – philosophical, scientific, and artistic – is born and shaped in the process of interaction and struggle with others’ thought, and this cannot but be reflected in the forms that verbally express our thought as well.” (Bakhtin 1986, 92.)

Bakhtin writes that in order to understand what someone says, it is just as necessary to understand speech genres as it is to understand the thematic content and forms of the language (lexical composition and grammatical structure) of the utterance. (Bakhtin 1986, 80, 92.) According to him, all written and oral utterances or speech genres are extremely heterogenic. Thus he decides to emphasize the significant difference between simple and complex speech genres. Complex speech genres are, for example, novels, dramas, or scientific researches which are formed in relatively advanced cultural and (often written) communication which is, for instance, artistic, scientific, or sociopolitical. In the course of their development, complex genres incorporate various simple genres such as rejoinders in dialogue or proverbs. These primary genres retain their original form and gain their special significance only when embedded in complex genres and as part of them or through them. (Bakhtin 1986, 60–62.)

---

‘heteroglossia’ means ‘multi-languagedness’ and this apparently small difference in meaning is very significant”. She continues: “Polyphony refers to the arrangement of heteroglot variety into and aesthetic pattern.” (Vice 1997, 112–113).

<sup>9</sup> Mikhail Bakhtin’s treatment of dialogue is far from clear but as the terminological quiddity is not in the primary scope of this article I settle for a brief description of the concept. A representational example of multiple meanings can be found in the index of *Speech Genres and Other Late Essays*. The editors of the book itemize 13 different meanings or functions as to how Bakhtin refers to and uses the concept of dialogue (Bakhtin 1986, 173; on ambiguity, see also Vice 1997, 3, 45–46.)

Bakhtin mentions the novel as one example of a complex genre. Also, his perception of speech genres, interrelated and constantly shaping each other, evokes his understanding of the genre of the novel in his earlier works; in the case of speech genres, however, he takes his ideas from the realm of the literary and begins to approach language more generally as communication. Nevertheless, the earlier emphasis on the special nature of the novel continues to shine through in his latter essays. According to Bakhtin, the novel as a genre is unique<sup>10</sup> because of its capacity to include other genres while retaining its “novelness.” Bakhtin approaches the novel “as a genre-in-the-making,” which means that it is incomplete and transgressive—an open form premised on mixing genres and breaking and crossing their boundaries. (Bakhtin 1981, 3–40; Holquist 1981, xxxii; Lyytikäinen 2006, 176–179). Due to their heterogeneity, reminiscence writings can be compared to Bakhtin’s complex genre (see Portelli 1998, 23–25; Pöysä 2006, 231–233). Reminiscence writings represent a complex genre that takes shape in the communication between a writer eager to share her/his views and experiences of the past and create a piece of writing based on them and a recipient interested in an ancillary or alternative view on the past. Each of the writings constitutes a unique whole made up of varying simple genres. Similar to how Bakhtin sees the genre of novel, reminiscence writings also represent an incomplete and changing genre characterized by genre inclusiveness (see Latvala 2005, 71–72).

In his book *The Formal Method in Literary Scholarship* (1978), Pavel Medvedev describes genre as a system of methods for the conscious control and finalization of “reality,” which means, in other words, that a genre reflects a certain kind of viewpoint on the world in a certain situation. According to Medvedev, every genre has a twofold orientation in reality that also defines the genre. External or direct orientation means the actual conditions of production and reception or performance of the discourse, whereas internal or thematic orientation refers to the discourse’s own perspective on reality. Medvedev also points out that these orientations are actually a single two-sided orientation because both sides are inseparable and one determines the other. (Bakhtin/Medvedev 1978, 130–135; Dorst 1983, 414–415). These views on genre are rather consistent with Bakhtin’s work on speech genres where he states that “Genres correspond to typical situations of speech communication, typical themes, and consequently,

---

<sup>10</sup> Bakhtin compares and opposes novel to an epic.

also to particular contacts between the meanings of words and actual concrete reality under certain typical circumstances.” (Bakhtin 1986, 87).

What the Bakhtin Circle suggests is that word and discourse genres, including the genre of novel, are not only dependent on formal and thematic elements but also always relational in terms of each other and their contexts. These works emphasize the relevance of the contextual and social aspects to word and genre. (Allen 2000, 14–21.) Consistently with Bakhtin and Medvedev’s conception of the wholly social and contextual nature of genre or sociohistorical poetics, John Dorst points out the importance of dialectics that investigate the relationship between genres and the social and historical forces operating in concrete circumstances (Dorst 1983, 425; for commentary on Dorst, see Abrahams 1985). The dialogic dimension of genre is therefore extralinguistic but at the same time it is an integral property of language and cannot be inspected separately from it (Bakhtin 1981, 425). This, however, raises the question of how can we perceive particular genres if not on the basis of their formal and thematic features? Bakhtin suggests that the best way to conceive genres in literature is on the basis of how they fix time and space (time being the primary category) and these chronotopes define genres and what makes each genre special and distinct from other genres. (Bakhtin 1981, 85, 243, 250–251.) To generalize, the works of Mikhail Bakhtin and the Bakhtin Circle about genre can be divided into three lines of thought 1) theoretical insights about genre as a response and critique of formalist method in literary scholarship (Bakhtin/Medvedev 1978, 129–141) 2) theory and exemplary analyses of various literary examples such as studies on the genre of novel (e.g., Bakhtin 1981), and 3) the concept of speech genres which detaches the concept of genre from the realm of literature and literary scholarship (Bakhtin 1986, 60–102; see also Vološinov 1973). These lines are of course closely connected, but the reader also encounters ambiguity and inconsistent treatments of definitions and terms, especially in the works of Bakhtin himself, whose views were constantly evolving during the course of his career.

### **The External Orientation of the Genre: Issues of Diversity, Authorship, and Authority**

Reminiscence writings that are sent to collection campaigns or the Folklore Archives are heterogeneous to the extent that one might say that heterogeneity as opposed to certain typical thematic or formal features is a defining quality of the genre. According to Pauliina Latvala, these writings typically mix different literary conventions and narrative genres (Latvala 2005, 48). In many ways the heterogeneity of reminiscence writings resemble the texts sent to the British *Mass observation* (see Sheridan 1993). Reminiscence writings may consist of various

overlapping text types such as narrative, argumentative, expository, and descriptive. Although prose narration is dominant in reminiscence writings, they may also include poetry or lyrics that are either quotations or composed by the writer. (Pöysä 2006, 231; Kaarlenkaski 2010, 361; see also Sheridan 1993.) The lengths and structures of the responses also vary. While reminiscence writings may be stylistically coherent pieces, they may also be divided into thematic or stylistic sections. The personal motives for participating in these collections and competitions also vary from writer to writer (Latvala 2005, 36; see also Sheridan 1993, 32). In addition to writing, a wide repertoire of media including visual narration with photographs, drawings, or old maps can be deployed in the creation of reminiscence writing (see Sheridan 1993, 31).

The external orientation of reminiscence writings in Finland is evidenced by the fact that they are often produced in the context of a collection campaign or a writing competition on a given theme. Nonetheless, writing collections organized by archives are not their definitive and sole production context. Reminiscence writings, not to mention thematic collections, may also have been previously published. Such contributions may, for example, either be photocopies of articles that have already appeared in newspapers or they may at least include such materials. There are also self-published books inside and outside of these collections that can be regarded as representatives of the genre of reminiscence writings. Reminiscence writings may also be viewed as mixtures of genres because they include, for example, quotations from old diaries, accompanying letters, clarifying comments, photographs, poems, or lyrics of religious hymns. The writings also frequently refer to performances or situations of oral communication and their topics can be based on oral narratives that are shared and repeated within a family or a community (see Latvala in this collection; Latvala 2005, 65; Sheridan 1993, 32–33). When incorporated into the complex genre of reminiscence writings, these passages or items of text represent examples of Bakhtinian simple genres, because they gain their meaning as parts of and through the complex genre.

Reminiscence writings resemble and overlap with other complex genres such as personal documents, questionnaires, texts sent to mass observation, oral history narratives, fiction, or historiography. Drawing a distinction between the genre of reminiscence writings and genres of autobiographies and memoirs can be seen as an act of interpretation, for the borders between these various genres are far from clear and absolute. One reason why reminiscence writings can be regarded as a different genre from autobiographies or memoirs is that reminiscence

writings are generally responses to theme collections or writing competitions organized by an archive or a civic organization. The collector also plays an instrumental role in the production of reminiscence writings or at least in their “publication” by giving them to the archives and parts of these collections. (See Sheridan 1993.) The absence of the interview or face-to-face interaction between the interviewer and narrator has been considered the most essential difference between reminiscence writings and oral history narratives. (Abrams 2010, 26.) Reminiscence writings are not produced in the context of an interview but in privacy, thus allowing the author to work and re-work and edit the “text” before “publication”—that is, sending it to an archive or as a response to a collection campaign. (Pöysä 2006, 228–231.) Also Alessandro Portelli has underlined the difference between oral autobiographical narratives and autobiographical texts. (Portelli 1998, 28.) Many oral historians have stated that it is the presence of interviewer in the oral history interview that not only grants legitimacy to the narration of a life but also creates a shared authority (e.g. Frisch 1990; Abrams 2010, 27.)

The relationship between The Folklore Archives and the respondents, including the writers of reminiscence writings, has been given critical attention for some time in Finland (e.g. Apo 1995, 175–186; Peltonen 1996; Pöysä 1997; Latvala 2005; Mikkola 2009). The role of the dialogue between the collector and the writer in the formation of the reminiscence writings, or to be precise, the formation of the collection of writings and their specific contextual meanings as responses sent to this collection, is actually quite similar to the role of the interviewer in the creation of an oral history narrative (Abrams 2010, 26–27; see also Portelli 1998, 23; Pöysä 2006, 231–232), even though it is neither physical nor taking place in a particular time and place.<sup>11</sup> The archive, sometimes in collaboration with the researcher, initiates this dialogue by inviting people to submit writings on a given topic; the writer then, in one way or another, responds to this request and maybe proposes amplifying questions. (Latvala 2005, 56–58, 65; Pöysä 1997, 39.) Jyrki Pöysä has pointed out that writers do not by any means automatically obey the collector’s request for a given topic or viewpoint, but instead they may either confirm or contradict it. (Pöysä 1997, 42) Not only the concrete dialogue taking place between writer and collector but also the collector’s role in encouraging writers to write and contribute to the

---

<sup>11</sup> The term oral history covers a wider range than the term reminiscence writing, as Alessandro Portelli has pointed out in his article about the genre of oral history. According to Portelli, oral history refers to 1) the oral materials or the sources, 2) the discourse that the historians produce, and 3) the process wherein researcher and narrator meet in an interview context and jointly produce these materials (Portelli 1998, 23; Pöysä 2006, 231–232). As Portelli suggests, oral history does not only refer to the “text” and the process of making the “text” but also to the “text” made by the researcher.



collection is important. After all, it is this dialogical relationship between the writers and the collecting organization that ultimately shapes the genre and is intertwined with deeper questions regarding which topics and which narrative practices are selected for presenting and interpreting the past.

How the themes of a certain collection of writings or how the viewpoint of the genre in general is defined can be seen as a result of a dialogism that, according to Bakhtin, permeates not only each utterance in a given situation but is also a defining quality of language itself and how it tends to construct and convey meanings (Bakhtin 1981, 273, 280; Vice 1997, 45–46, 50; Hirschop 1989, 6, 9, 20). Interpretations and narratives about history and the past in general are formulated by the negotiations among and between communities, institutions such as memory organizations, researchers, and writers with their personal experiences (Latvala 2005, 33–36). Various interpretations of history and the past in general link up to form an entirety, molding supporting, countering, and even contradicting each other. Also the viewpoint what the writers wish to express when they tell a narrative about their past connects to this process. Reminiscence writings as well as organized collections and competitions with their particular themes both mirror and participate in the cultural negotiations about the past and history. They reflect the elements from the present that should be remembered as history in the future. The often shared interests of the collecting organizations and their collaborating researchers serve to define the topics and events considered important and interesting enough to warrant the theme of a collection campaign (Latvala 2005, 33–36). Some past events and experiences are always deemed more interesting and important than others. Some views nonetheless surface in the culture and serve to generate countering interpretations and lines of history. This dialectic also is predominant in one of the central internal orientations of the genre of reminiscence writings, namely, an alternative viewpoint on the past. Multiple players take part in a culture totally permeated by a dialogism that is constantly shaping and creating the genre.

A writer's class or status also provides distinctive criteria for determining genres. In other words, the reminiscing done by professional writers or the "rich and famous" tends to fall under the category of memoir or autobiography, not of reminiscence writing, personal narrative, or oral history (e.g., Abrams 2010, 27; Bornat 1994, 17–30).<sup>12</sup> This leads to the question as to

---

<sup>12</sup> According to Lynn Abrams and Joanna Bornat, *inclusivity* and *political instrumentality* can be regarded as the factors that distinguish oral history from autobiography (see Abrams 2010, 27; Bornat 1994, 17–30). However, in Finland the difference between autobiographies and reminiscence writings or oral history is not as striking as it is

whether the role of the author has an impact on how the text is identified generically. Can the genre of reminiscence writings be defined by the fact that the writers are not professional writers and thus have no other channels for publishing their texts and expressing their views of the past and their life? In my view, characteristics of the author do not suffice for determining whether or not an account is an example of reminiscence writing; instead, we have to consider the author's point of view and the role that he or she assumes. Moreover, the context also plays a role in how the genre of certain text is interpreted. For example, if a so-called "common person" or an amateur writer writes a seemingly objective account of a historical event and offers it to an archival collection campaign, readers will tend to see the piece as an example of reminiscence writing. However, if a professional historian does the same, the genre of the contribution may not be so easily defined. Although this is more of a hypothetical than an actual example, there are actual cases, for example, relating to the reminiscence writings of Karelian evacuees, where the question of writer's role and the publication context makes the definition of the genre of a text open to various interpretations.

### **The Internal Orientation of the Genre: Retrospective, Autobiographical, and Alternative Viewpoints on the Past**

The genre of reminiscence writings has three essential features 1) retrospectivity, 2) autobiographicality, and 3) an ancillary interpretation of history. All three features define the genre's characteristic orientation toward the world. However, these qualities as such are too general in order to be the only definitive qualities of a particular genre. Moreover, as viewpoints they apply to several genres of retrospective personal narration. What characterizes these qualities particularly in the case of the genre of reminiscence writings is firstly that the retrospective gaze is restricted to a limited temporal range and secondly that the personal experiences or the life story is narrated from the point of view of a certain theme. The ancillary viewpoint of a genre, however, should be understood in a rather broad sense and always closely connected together with and stemming from the first two.

Retrospectivity and autobiographicality may have a wide range of manifestations in reminiscence writings. The calibration of the personal point of view and the gap between the

---

in the examples of Abrams and Bornat. In Finland autobiographies have not only been written by the "rich and famous"; moreover, their legitimacy does not derive from the social status of the writers, but instead there are numerous autobiographies to be found in archives that are written by "common people" and the majority of them have been collected in a similar fashion to the reminiscence writings.

moment of writing and the moment of the events (the present and the past) is executed by applying the narrative means and expressions of fictionality<sup>13</sup> (Savolainen 2012, 29–30; 2015, 170–214; Kaarlenkaski 2010, 376–377; Latvala 2005, 77–78; see also Salmi–Niklander 2004, 175–179; for more on fictionality, see Walsh 2007). One example of this calibration is that the author fades out the personal perspective and distances her/himself from the described events. Also this distancing can create different kinds of rhetorical effects. The writer can place her/himself in the position of a historian who narrates events and periods from the past. In this case the emphasis is on the objectivity and truthfulness of the told and the telling. (Savolainen 2012, 28; 2015, 106–112.) In addition, the writer can also use third-person narration and insert her/himself as character in the story. Such an approach highlights the artistic nature of the writing and fosters empathy and sometimes also humor (Savolainen 2012, 29–30; Kaarlenkaski 2010, 376–377). In both cases autobiographicality is not explicit but pervades the writings nonetheless.

Another example of the calibration is that in narration the writer reduces the distance between the moment of writing and the past events to the minimum. This is done by describing the past events, such as the evacuation journey, from a personal point of view in the present tense. This creates the impression that the described event is happening exactly at the same time as the writing. The effect of closing the gap is similar to the use of third-person narration and both of these are fictional and highly performative narrative acts that enable both the writer and the reader to feel closer to the past events and to empathize with the past experiences. (Laitinen 1998, 83–85; see also Wolfson 1979; Silverstein 1993.) The tendency to use a rich array of multiple and varying writer positions is also a generic quality that distinguishes the genre of reminiscence writings from oral history.

Besides autobiographicality and retrospectivity, a third essential feature of reminiscence writings is an ancillary interpretation of the past and history. In the evacuation journey writings, the authors, who are former child evacuees themselves, reminisce about and narrate a historical event significant not only for the community of migrant Karelians but also for the wider Finnish society. Often, when it comes to significant historical events, there are dominant and countering interpretations of what happened and to whom it happened; needless to say, the authors of

---

<sup>13</sup> Fictionality does not refer to the referentiality of the account but is understood as a narrative or rhetorical device typical of written narration. (Walsh 2007.)

reminiscence writings, people who were once child evacuees, are also participating and positioning themselves in this conversation. I suggest that the genre of reminiscence writings operates in this dialogue about the past as a complementing, countering, or alternative point of view on the historical yet still topical event, time period or theme. This perspective also acts as a major impetus for why the writers want to take part in the collection.<sup>14</sup> The ancillary perspective means that the writers feel that their own experience and interpretation of the past, one that has yet to be properly expressed or recognised, is worth telling and sharing. This also means that reminiscence writings are always somewhat testifying or witnessing and they intertwine with and engage in discussion with other writings and interpretations of history

Another dimension of this quality is that reminiscence writings allow authors to articulate their personal viewpoints and experiences but they do so as members or advocates of a wider reference group and are thus connected through the subject of reminiscence. This brings us back to the requirement of a certain delimited topic or a theme through which the narration is filtered. Nonetheless, it varies as to how unambiguous or organized or clear these groups and themes can be considered. The groups may be, for example, Karelian evacuees, children, women, nurses, or just “common people” or amateur writers opposed to professional historians. Although the characteristic themes of reminiscence writings often relate to the grand events of history such as wars, crises, or other exceptional situations, the writings may also describe the everyday life and experiences of people. Still, it is rather typical that the group in which the author of the reminiscence writing positions her/himself is represented to offer an alternative, parallel, “from below,” or at least ancillary viewpoint to the common and hegemonic conception of history and story of the past. In these cases, a personal connection to this group not only legitimates the reminiscence writing as a testimony and interpretation of a certain meaningful event of the past, but it also shows that autobiographicality and retrospectivity are central to the genre’s potential for offering an ancillary perspective on history.

---

<sup>14</sup> In addition to this dimension and with it, reminiscence writings may also be artistically ambitious texts or seeking to process personal experiences and emotions. (Savolainen 2012; 2015, 103–138; Kaarlenkaski 2012; Latvala & Lauren 2012; Laurén 2006; Latvala 2005, 34–36.)

## **Eeva Kilpi's Works: Works of Fiction, Literary Memoirs, Autofictions, or Reminiscence Writings?**

Eeva Kilpi is a Finnish novelist and poet whose works have a particular resonance among Karelian evacuees; the influence of her literary efforts is evident on many different levels in the writings sent in response to the collection campaign for narratives about the children's evacuation journey. Eeva Kilpi has drawn heavily upon personal experience in her writings about leaving Karelia. As a child evacuee, she has written and published four volumes of memoirs<sup>15</sup> about the war, evacuations and her childhood in Karelia. These books are *Talvisodan aika. Lapsuusmuistelma* (1989 [2012]) (Time of the Winter War, Childhood memoir), *Välirauha, ikävöinnin aika* (1990 [2012]) (Truce, Time of longing), *Jatkosodan aika* (1993 [2012]) (Time of the Continuation war) and *Rajattomuuden aika. Kertomus lapsuudesta* (2001) (Time of infinity. Story about childhood). Before the memoirs, Kilpi published several novels such as *Elämän evakkona* (1983) (Evacuee of life) and *Elämä edestakaisin* (1964) (Life back and forth) and collections of short stories *Noidanlukko* (1959) (Moonwort) and *Se mitä ei koskaan sanota* (1979) (What is never said); these novels deal thematically with the lives of Karelian evacuees and the loss of home. Kilpi's memoirs, novels, and collections of short stories cover similar themes as those in the children's evacuation journey writings; in fact, these writings contain many references and acknowledgements to Kilpi's work. Besides these more overt associations, some of the respondents, as they attempt to capture the evacuation journey in writing, appear to have internalized the narrative style of Kilpi's memoirs.

True to the narrative conventions of the form, Kilpi writes her memoirs in the first person. A typical feature of her narration is the free association between several temporal levels, thus allowing the past of her childhood to intermingle with more recent times in the present. The rememberer, the writer, with her doubts, speculations, and feelings about the memories, is vividly present in the text as a narrator. This technique serves to underline and bring up the main topic of Kilpi's memoirs—namely, the problematic nature of autobiographical memory and the veracity of memory. These qualities make her memoirs comparable to autofiction, a literary genre that combines fiction and autobiography. The genre has two key characteristic features: first, the main character and the writer share the same name; and second, the work

---

<sup>15</sup> On their back covers these works are described with several terms that refer to their genre, such as *half-document* (puolidokumentti), *reminiscence book* (muisteluteos), *literary document* (kaunokirjallinen dokumentti), *reminiscence novel* (muistelmaromaani), and *Series of great Finnish war memoir* (suuri suomalainen sotamuistelmasarja).

declares itself to be a work of fiction, for instance, a novel. Literary historians generally locate autofiction near postmodernism because the genre tends to break and renounce the conventional categories and definitions of literature as well as the basic structures of life in general. By transgressing various borders and questioning their very existence, postmodernist writing aims to elicit responses in the reader, rather than offer her/him reasonable explanations. In autofiction the intermingling of the categories of fiction and autobiographicality can be seen as challenging and breaking existing categories. (Zipfel 2005, 36–37; Doubrovsky 1977 [2001], 10; Doubrovsky 1993, 34; Doubrovsky & Ireland 1993, 45–46; McHale 1987, 9–10, 202–203, 206; Hughes 2002, 567; Koivisto 2005, 178–179, 182–183; Makkonen 1997; Fokkema 1984, 37–56.)<sup>16</sup>

Like Kilpi in her memoirs, the respondents to the collection campaign also reflect on the problematic nature of autobiographical memory. Yet Kilpi goes further than the respondents to the collection campaign, for she endeavors to make the process of memorizing and the process of forming the reminiscences into narratives more visible through meta-reminiscing. For instance, in her memoirs she often ponders why certain memories remain crystal clear and surface in the mind time and time again, whereas others are familiar only from the narratives of others, but not recollected per se. One key topic in Kilpi's memoirs is speculation as to whether the things that she remembers are her "original" memories or based on later accounts such as family narratives that have merged with her own memories. She also uses official documents of events in the war and juxtaposes them to her own memories. Meta-reminiscing and the use and integration of various types of sources also features in the collected reminiscence writings. In the reminiscence writings such approaches generally remain unarticulated, whereas for Kilpi the memoirist the problematic nature of remembering and memories plus the question of their ownership emerge as a main theme. As Kilpi puts it,

---

<sup>16</sup> The roots of the concept of autofiction have been (quite unanimously) located in the foreword of the novel *Fils* (1977) by the French writer and literary scholar Serge Doubrovsky. Later on, autofiction becomes associated with fictive autobiographies, such as *Roland Barthes* (1975) by Roland Barthes. (Zipfel 2005, 36; Hughes 2002, 566; Koivisto 2005, 178–179; Koivisto 2011, 12.) Doubrovsky coined the concept autofiction as a result of his frustration over Philippe Lejeune's (1989) strict definition of the genre of autobiography as a prose narrative that aims for and requires biographical continuity. (Hughes 2002, 567; Doubrovsky & Ireland 1993, 44–45; Doubrovsky 1993, 33–34; Koivisto 2011, 12, 16–17.) The typical example of this kind of autobiography is *The Confessions* by Jean-Jacques Rousseau. The modern western autobiography was defined as a distinct genre and became established between the 18<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries, even though phenomenon itself is not new. (Lejeune 1989; Anderson 2001, 1; Kosonen 2000, 14–15; Kosonen 2007, 11–12.) The relationship between autobiography, fiction, and referential narration has also intrigued many scholars of literature and autobiography (e.g. Cohn 1999; Genette 1991, 82–83; Smith & Watson 2001, 186.)

“Memories turn out to be fickle when you approach them. They seem firm and clear at first but when you start to touch them they are suddenly fragile and breakable” [Muistot osoittautuvat oikukkaiksi kun niitä lähestyy. Ne tuntuvat ensin kiinteiltä ja selviltä, mutta kun niitä alkaa kosketella, ne ovatkin äkkiä hauraita ja särkyviä] (Kilpi 1989 [2012], 15). As the narrative progresses, memory evolves into a character in the memoir, a personality with its own quirks, occasionally even addressed by the narrator.

Matters of referentiality or the truth of autobiographicality characterize both reminiscence writings and works of autofiction. The writers of autofiction, however, treat these questions in a manner strikingly different from both the writers of the collected reminiscence writings and Eeva Kilpi the memoirist. Autofiction distances itself from the requirement of referentiality characteristic of autobiographical writing, whereas Kilpi and the writers who contributed to the collection campaign make a point of finding “truthful,” memories, or at least discerning which of their memories are authentically their own and which have been learned from narratives about the event. They are processes of connecting events and creating an autobiographical continuum that is placed also within a wider sociohistorical or family context; hence, memoirs aim primarily at making sense of memories. The memoirs seek to make life and the past understandable, whereas autofiction works in quite the opposite way. Generally speaking, the reader approaching the collected reminiscence writings or Kilpi’s memoirs tends to trust the writer and narrator’s commitment to truth; but this is not the case with autofiction. Based on the above considerations, Eeva Kilpi’s memoirs have less in common with autofiction than with the genre of reminiscence writing or so-called traditional autobiography,<sup>17</sup> a work more closely connected to modernism than postmodernism in literary history. (See Koivisto 2005, 179–180; Lejeune 1986, 64; Fokkema 1984, 15–18, 43–50.)

With their autobiographical and retrospective stance to the world, Kilpi’s memoirs offer a complementary interpretation of history. Such a stance can be easily likened to the viewpoint in the writings in the children’s evacuation journey collection, and also more generally to the internal orientation of the genre of reminiscence writings. Furthermore, when we compare their thematic and stylistic qualities and temporal dimensions of narration, not to mention their use of external and complementing sources such as other people’s memories or other documents in order to construct a narrative about the past, Eeva Kilpi’s memoirs are so similar to the

---

<sup>17</sup> Sometimes the genre is also called modern autobiography.

writings produced in the context of the organized collection that they could be considered to represent the same genre. But how do Kilpi's earlier novels and short stories concerning similar topics then relate to these? Do they share similar thematic, stylistic, and temporal features with her memoirs? Do they have a similar internal viewpoint on the world typical of the genre reminiscence writings? Or do her works of fiction more closely resemble the genre of autofiction? In her novels and collections of short stories, Kilpi's personal role as a character of a story or a person who has experienced the described events is not as self-evident as it is in her memoirs.

In her novels Kilpi distances herself from the text by creating a distant narrator, whereas her memoirs are narrated in the first person. This distancing effect makes the works of fiction appear more temporally flat or logical, thus depriving them of the retrospective range created by the intermingling and association of different time levels of the life of the writer's life in the narration of her memoirs. In many ways the style and structure of her fiction is more conventional than in her memoirs. The temporal consistency of her fiction also means that the question of the truthfulness of memory does not assume as crucial a role as in her memoirs. Nonetheless, there are also thematic similarities between the memoirs and the fiction, for Kilpi does subtly address questions of autobiographicality in her fiction even though these works are not overtly autobiographical.

When compared to her memoirs, the autobiographicality of Kilpi's fiction becomes apparent. For example, in her novel *Elämän evakkona* (1983) (Evacuee of life), the family, its members, and their life histories recall Kilpi's own family as it is described in her memoirs. Moreover, the home places of the novel's family such as Hiitola, their home parish in Karelia, are the same as Kilpi's home places. The autobiographical nature of Kilpi's collections of short stories is even more evident. The subtitle of Kilpi's first work, *Noidanlukko* (1959) (Moonwort), is *Sarja lapsuudesta* (Series from childhood), which can easily be read as a clue of autobiographicality. Intertextual connections between Kilpi's works also suggest autobiographicality. For example, the title refers to a rare plant, a flower that never blossoms. In one of the short stories, a girl, who is also the first-person narrator, waits for the moonwort to bloom, but before it does so the war breaks out and girl has to leave her home in addition to the moonwort. In her memoirs, Kilpi reminisces several times about the moonwort in Karelia and her realization that it would never bloom and her fear that the war would destroy the plant. With these kinds of intertextual references, Kilpi retrospectively narrows the distance between



herself as a writer, a narrator, and a character. These shared features also make it possible to interpret her works of fiction as closely connected to her memoirs and the genre of reminiscence writings, even though they do not have a similar internal orientation and perspective on the world.

Kilpi's novels and short stories easily qualify as fictional works with autobiographical traces. Therefore, we may want to ask whether her fiction could be defined as autofiction. Nonetheless, despite the obvious autobiographical sources Kilpi draws on in creating fiction about the life of Karelian evacuees, her stories do not meet the criteria for autofiction, at least if we strive for theoretical correctness. For example, her fiction lacks the most fundamental feature of autofiction: the main character should have the same name as the author. Interestingly, many readers as well as critics have regarded Kilpi's fiction about the lives of Karelian evacuees to be inspired by the writer's own life, and undoubtedly this interpretation has strengthened after she published her memoirs (see also Enwald 1989, 661–666; Makkonen 1997, 98–115).

The similarities between Eeva Kilpi's memoirs and the evacuation journey writings by Karelian child evacuees are not merely the result of amateurs imitating professionals. Indeed, the similarities between the discourses arise from the fact that both represent accounts of childhood memories. As a rule, the amount of time that has passed between the actual event and its telling, not to mention the narrator's life situation combined with cultural and social considerations, affect what and how things are told. (Korkiakangas 1996, 11, 53; Knuuttila 1994, 60–61.) Additionally, the likenesses also spring from the cultural memory cherished and created by Karelian evacuees. However, even though a given genre's thematic orientation is determined in a cultural dialogue that reaches beyond the particular situation in which the texts are produced, their publication context has an impact on the reception of the texts and can make two thematically and formally similar texts represent different genres. The reception of the discourse is a process of generic decisions with a substantial impact on the interpretation of the text as well (see Hanks 1987, 670). For example, if we consider Eeva Kilpi's memoirs and novels about Karelia and the life of an evacuee, their themes and topics are in accordance with the reminiscence writings of Karelian evacuees in the theme collections; moreover, they can be seen as similar responses in the cultural dialogue that defines their thematic orientation. Kilpi's works, however, are produced and published in the commercial context of a literary institution, thus ascribing to them a literary status associated with the work a professional

writer, despite their reminiscent quality. By contrast, the reminiscence writings of Karelian evacuees are produced and “published” in the context of collection campaigns requesting writings from ordinary citizens, which means that the texts are interpreted first and foremost as accounts of the personal past – as reminiscence writings.

### **Levels of Intertextuality**

The idea of the dialogicality of language and genres has also led several scholars in literary studies and linguistic anthropology to develop the concepts of intertextuality<sup>18</sup> and generic intertextuality, which this article only discusses briefly. According to Charles Briggs and Richard Bauman, genre is inherently intertextual and generic intertextuality means that an expression, which is recognized as a representative of a genre, also automatically refers to prior similar expressions and acquires certain generic conventions and expectations from them. (Briggs & Bauman 1992, 147.) When we speak about generic intertextuality, it is not relevant whether intertextual connections and references to different genres are matters of a conscious choice or not. Moreover, if we consider the reminiscence writings, generic intertextuality reflects the cultural knowledge of various different genres that people have and which they employ when producing their writings. Generic intertextuality can be seen as evidence of the writer’s competence and knowledge of different cultural discourses. In the case of the complex genre of reminiscence writings, generic intertextuality appears twofold on the levels of a complex and simple genre, and hence, forms a complex web of references. The genre of reminiscence writings can be understood as a certain kind of compiled genre, which cannot be reduced to merely a collection of several genres, but rather it is a collage of genres wherein the combination generates an independent genre with a distinct viewpoint on the world. It is also necessary to say that like the whole endeavor to separate simple and complex genres, also the task of locating generic intertextuality on these levels is not unambiguous, but rather open to various interpretations.

---

<sup>18</sup> For example, Kirsteva 1980; Genette 1992; 1997a;1997b; Briggs & Bauman 1992; on the study of the term intertextuality, see Allen 2000. Bakhtin does not use the concept of intertextuality, only dialogicality. The term intertextuality was coined by Julia Kristeva in the mid 1960s in her essays introducing the works of Bakhtin. Kristeva and other French post-structuralists’ understanding of intertextuality as a textual phenomenon differs from Bakhtin’s idea of dialogicality as entirely contextual and communicative. Kristeva limits intertextuality to the world of texts and sees it as an infinite allusiveness of texts. Kristeva’s ideas are more generally aligned with post-structuralist discussions of texts devoid of human actors, creators, or social contexts. (see Kristeva 1980; Allen 2000, 14–15; Hebel 1989, 1; Parry 1998, 82; Saariluoma 1998, 7–10; also Pesonen 1991, 32–34, 45.).

In the case of the reminiscence writings, intertextuality at the level of complex genre means that the writing or parts of it recall some other complex genre such as historiography, literary memoir and autobiography, or genres of literary fiction or documentary prose. In the evacuation journey writings, as well as in Kilpi's memoirs, intertextuality of this kind may appear, for example, as the use of a factographic mode, which according to the narratologist Leona Toker, is a typical feature of genres of documentary prose. Toker distinguishes the factographic mode from testimony which recounts the author's firsthand experiences, and historiography which recounts information obtained from other sources. (Toker 1997, 187, 190–192.) In reminiscence writings, the use of the factographic mode connects the writing intertextually to the genre of historiography or testimony. The next example is written by a man who was born in 1933. The excerpt concerns the time after the Winter War, the first evacuation, and the first loss of Karelia when the Continuation War had just started:

The new situation on the war front enabled the return. After the peace making, the Soviet Union started to pressure Finland in various ways, trying to claim more and more rights for itself. On the other hand, Germany was preparing for war against the Soviet Union. And so Hitler announced on 22 June 1941 that the general offensive in the East had started. The air force of the Soviet Union committed a massive air offensive on ten Finnish cities, among others Helsinki and Turku. The air offensives were also aimed at the airports of South-East Finland. As a result of this offensive, late in the evening of 25 June 1941, the Finnish Parliament was forced to note that Finland was in a war against the Soviet Union. [...] After the situation stabilized at the front on the Karelian Isthmus, the government decided to provide the former inhabitants a chance to move back.

Paluun teki mahdolliseksi uusi tilanne sotarintamalla. Rauhanteon jälkeen Neuvostoliitto ryhtyi painostamaan Suomea eri tavoin, vaatien yhä uusia oikeuksia itselleen. Toisaalta Saksa valmistautui sotaan Neuvostoliittoa vastaan. Hitler julistikin 22.6.1941 yleishyökkäyksen Idässä alkaneeksi. Jo 25.6. 41 Neuvostoliiton ilmavoimat tekivät massiivisen ilmahyökkäyksen kymmeneen Suomen kaupunkiin, muun muassa Helsinkiin ja Turkuun. Tämän lisäksi ilmahyökkäykset kohdistuivat myös Kaakkois-Suomen lentokentille. Tapahtuneen hyökkäyksen seurauksena Suomen eduskunta joutui toteamaan myöhään illalla 25.6. Suomen olevan sodassa Neuvostoliittoa vastaan.[...] Tilanteen Kannaksen rintamalla vakiinnuttua Hallitus teki päätöksen Kannaksen entisten asukkaiden takaisin muuton mahdollistamisesta. (SKS. KRA. LEM 538–546. 2004, man born 1933.)

This example connects the text in question intertextually to the genre of historiography as the writer depicts the past factually and precisely as concrete historical events from the war. This intertextual connection appears also as precise coordinates of time and place and as accurate naming. The past is reported from the perspective of a distant or omniscient narrator with a style that strives for objectivity and resembles the one prevailing in historiographies of war.

Although the writer's role in the described events is not very obvious in this excerpt, his reason for choosing to write about the events from the war in accordance with historiographical conventions is purely autobiographical. He is telling about the general war history in order to preface and explain why his family moved back to Karelia. Drawing on narrative techniques common to historiography, the writer connects his life history to the shared history of Finland. The rhetorical effect of this is first, to demonstrate the writer's commitment to the truth, to say these things really happened; and second, to give weight to the personal past, to say I was part of these crucial events of Finnish history. For Karelian evacuees, connecting personal experiences with shared national history legitimates and validates the trauma of the evacuation journey and the loss of home, and also gives the writer the authority to tell about the history. In some cases these links can also highlight the political relevance of the memories (Huttunen 2007,182).

In addition to intertextual links with the genre of historiography, the factographic mode unfolds in evacuation journey writings, as well as in Kilpi's memoirs, as connections to the genre of testimony. In evacuation journey writings, recounting exact eyewitness observations commonly serves to create intertextual links with the genre of testimony. The next example is written by a man born 1929:

My first evacuation journey began in September - October 1939—I cannot remember the exact date. [...] I don't recall objecting to the journey, because in those days children had to obey their parents. [...] We were able to return home to a beautiful, autumnal Viborg—of course I don't remember the date. [...] We children didn't understand the severity of the situation because our parents, although they may have been nervous, they didn't show us their fears. Because the diaries were not filled and the events of those times were not discussed with parents or relatives, I don't remember if the schools were open in September-October anymore. It would be possible to get information from the archives, but it would not have influenced my trips.

Ensimmäinen evakkomatkeni alkoi syys-lokakuun vaihteessa 1939 – päivämäärää en muista. [...] En muista vastustaneeni matkaa, sillä siihen aikaan lapset tyytyivät vanhempien tahtoon. [...] Pääsimme palaamaan kotiin kauniiseen syksyiseen Viipuriin – en tietenkään muista päivämäärää. [...] Emme me mukulat ymmärtäneet tilanteen vakavuutta, kun vanhemmat vaikka ehkä olivatkin jännittyneitä eivät meille pelkojaan paljastaneet. kun päiväkirjoja ei täytetty, eikä vanhempien ja muiden sukulaisten kanssa keskusteltu sen ajan tapahtumista, en muista olivatko koulut toiminnassa enää syys-lokakuussa. Arkistoista voisi tietoja saadakin, mutta ne eivät olisi vaikuttaneet reissuihini. (SKS. KRA. LEM 334, man born 1929.)

In the excerpt, the writer repeatedly mentions his lack of exact information and memories about the details of the first evacuation journey. He is also uncertain about how he reacted to the news of having to leave home. Interestingly, this concern about the deficiency of factual information and emphasis on the limitations of memory serves a similar function as the eyewitness observations: both underline the writer's intention to tell the truth—and thus function similarly to the intertextual links with the genre of historiography. However, their rhetorical mechanism is somewhat different. Accounts of eyewitness observations gain their substance from a wealth of elaborate details, whereas accounts that include admissions of forgetting are convincing because of their modest sincerity and honest imperfection, typical features of childhood impressions and memories. This also means that the point of view of the child legitimates the narrative about the past in the evacuation journey writings.

On the level of complex genre, reminiscence writings are often also intertextually connected with the genre of literary fiction understood in a broad sense. This means that the writers strive for fictionality by using narrative conventions common in literary works—namely, altering perspectives, written dialogue, and indirect speech. (See Kaarlenkaski 2010, 366–376; Salmi-Niklander 2004, 175–179; Walsh 2007, 6–7, 15). These intertextual connections may also be more precise. In the children's evacuation journey writings intertextual connections with literary idylls and the chronotope of idyll are typical because the childhood memories of Karelia tend to be positive and virtually sublime. According to Bakhtin, idyll is one of the major chronotopes of novel, and it is “the chronotope that defines genre and generic distinctions,” at least regarding literature. (Bakhtin 1981, 84–85, 224–236, 250–251.) In order to be effective, idylls require a non-idyllic opposition and therefore they often also include the loss of the idyll (see Bakhtin 1981, 230, 233). The evacuation journey writings create a division between the times before and after the evacuation journey, which also represents the divide between the blissful existence in Karelia and the bleak days of exile outside of it.

The writers generally describe the Karelia of their childhood as “the Golden Karelia,” an idyllic place evoking nostalgia. Karelia represents childhood, innocence, peace, and harmony. It is a place where timeless time prevails and people live in harmony with nature and animals—in other words, descriptions of life dwell on the natural and the sublime (Bakhtin 1981, 224–236). These writings are intertextually connected with the genre of idyll and more generally with the genres of literary fiction because they often aim consciously for finalization with texts replete with poetic expressions and descriptions. Another key characteristic is a lyrical tone

full of sweetness and longing. Extensive and lyrical accounts of nature typically feature in these texts and intertextually connect them with idyll, as is evident in the next example written by a woman born in 1930:

Nobody can choose their place of birth. I, however, was born exactly in the place where I probably already in my mother's womb would have wanted to be born. I was born where the green forests were fragrant with the resin of pines, the crisp needles of spruces, the sappy nectar of birch trees, the moss as soft as velvet, the delicate chickweed wintergreens, and all the abundance that makes childhood memories so beautiful. I truly had the luck to be born in the most beautiful corner of the world.

Syntymäpaikkaansahan ei voi kukaan valita. Minä kuitenkin synnyin juuri siellä, missä olisin varmaan jo äidin kohdussa ollessani halunnut syntyä. Minä synnyin siellä, missä vihreät metsiköt tuoksuivat männyn pihkalta, kuusen kirpeiltä neulasilta, koivujen mahlaisilta mesiltä, sametin pehmeiltä sammaleilta, hentoisilta metsän tähdiltä ja kaikelta paljolta, mikä lapsuuden muistoja kaunistaa. Sain tosiaankin syntyä maailman kauniimmassa kolkassa. (SKS. KRA. LEM 400, woman born 1930.)

Describing Karelia and childhood as idyllic also expresses a nostalgia creating a contrast between the times prior to the evacuation journey and the times after it. The evacuation journey represents an essential dividing line in the narratives. The journey marks the starting point of difficulties and the end point of the "golden times" of childhood located in Karelia. This division also features in an account of the evacuation journey written by a woman born in 1930 as she continues her narrative:

Nothing compares to those childhood memories. Even if I would try to reminisce this "later time," I cannot find the wonderful feeling that prevailed in each memory-filled day of childhood times. How it is that what comes to mind best and what one longs for are those dear childhood landscapes with flower fields and open lakes shining silver. Even my "first love" on the refugee trip feels a lot more interesting than those relationships with boys I experienced when I matured a bit, not to mention even my current marriage.

Ei noille lapsuuden muistoille mikään vertoja vedä. Vaikka yrittäisin miten muistella tätä "uudempaa" aikaa, en vain löydä sitä ihanuuden tunnetta joka sisältyi noitten lapsuudenaikain jokaiseen muistorikkaaseen päivään. Miten vain parhaimmin muistuu mieleen ja niitä kaipailee ovat nuo rakkaat lapsuuden maisemat kukkapeltoineen, ja järven hopeaa hohtavine selkineen. Vieläpä pakolaisreissulla oleva "ensirakkauskin" tuntuu paljon mielenkiintoisemmalta kuin nuo jo vähän aikuisemmaksi tultuani kokemani poikasuhteet, nykyisestä avioliitostani puhumattakaan. (SKS. KRA. LEM 419, woman born 1930.)

The narrative tone changes as the writer begins to describe the evacuation journey; as the story progresses, the temporal stratification also penetrates the narrative as the writer starts to

compare later periods of life with childhood in Karelia. All of these shifts underscore the journey's role as an essential borderline in the writer's life as presented in narrative. This division also creates the idyll. (Savolainen 2012, 29; Savolainen (forthcoming).) The idyllic chronotope combined with actual loss of Karelia also has convergences with the concept of a biblical paradise; indeed, the whole complex relates strongly to nostalgia as well (see Chase & Shaw 1989; Lowenthal 1989; on historical inversion: Bakhtin 1981, 146–151.) Nostalgia about the lost place of home in the past does not concern only Karelian evacuees but is a typical feature of diasporic discourse in general and takes form in different practices as well as has several functions (e.g. Savolainen (forthcoming); Armstrong 2004; Fingerroos 2008; Niukko 2009; Basu 2006; Huttunen 2007; Lehto & Timonen 1993; see also Cashman 2006; Korkiakangas 1996).

Intertextuality on the level of simple genre (which could also be called embedded intertextuality) means that units of text that represent simple genres, such as poems, jokes, proverbs, written dialogue, or references to passages from a simple genre, such as lines from a letter, a diary, or a song, are included in and embedded in a piece of reminiscence writing. For example, many authors of evacuation journey writings incorporate certain religious hymns or references to them in their texts. Typically these recurrent hymns<sup>19</sup> include the idea complex of a journey and a road as metaphors for the human life, and this very same idea complex is also adopted as an essential part of the culture of Karelian evacuees in many different ways and it is repeated continuously. Therefore, the references to hymns in reminiscence writings not only refer to the typical contexts of the hymns that relate to the church and Christianity but also to the wider and shared discourse of Karelian evacuees. In other words, the hymns connect the writings into a general discourse shared by Karelian evacuees and thus link the writers to this community. In addition to this, the references to these hymns may have other functions as well. The hymns may, for instance, highlight the religious and humble nature of the evacuees, a people who resign themselves to the loss of home and for whom God is their only refuge in an otherwise unsafe situation. Despite their apparent humility, the tone of these writings is not submissive. Moreover, these hymns highlight the personal sacrifice that the evacuees made for the whole of Finland. (See Savolainen (forthcoming).)

---

<sup>19</sup> For example, Hymn 631a ja 631 b. Suomen evankelis-luterilaisen kirkon Virsikirja (Finnish Evangelical Lutheran Church Hymnal) 1986.

## Conclusions

Due to the variety and heterogeneity of the writings, it may seem pointless or even impossible to think of the reminiscence writings as a genre. As Richard Bauman has said, “there is an operational tendency to restrict the notion [of genre] to those discursive forms and practices for which conventional expectation and textual boundedness, cohesion, and coherence are relatively and recognizably more apparent.” (Bauman 1999, 85). In this article I have broadened the notion of genre to include a more complex and heterogenic form of discourse, namely, reminiscence writings. The rationale behind the reluctance to open the discussion on genre to discourses that are more versatile and variable by their features stems from the fact that genre can also be understood as a fixed collection of typical features of a given discourse. This kind of approach has undeniable advantages, especially when it comes to archival practices. But when we follow the Bakhtin Circle’s theories, the essence and benefit of the concept of genre is not to discover or to create typologies or fixed categories, but instead to open new vistas to the world of communication and poetic expression, a world which is thoroughly social.

Understanding the genre of reminiscence writings in a Bakhtinian way, in other words, as a flexible and layered framework of expectations, which is always and inherently dialogical, also has pragmatic benefits. The Bakhtin Circle’s genre theory beckons researchers to interpret texts not only as individual pieces but also as a network of texts in relation to each other. In this network the creation of meanings of linguistic and poetic expression is located in the relations between the texts and genres. Intertextuality is one example of meaning-making interconnectedness that relates to genres and their communication. In the case of the reminiscence writings about the childhood evacuation journey and Eeva Kilpi’s works, reading them as generically interconnected can allow us to see them as parts of certain historical and social continuums that form the contemporary world that these writings connect to. When it comes to memories of Karelia, this situation is attached to many kinds of ideologies, historical traumas, and narrative cultures with many kinds of testimonies and representations. Reminiscence writings are combinations of various linguistic materials, narrative forms and themes that all have a certain kind of communicative significance within the writing and in relation to the genre. Seeing individual writings as representatives of a genre does not necessarily mean that the individual writings bear or adhere to the meanings of their genre but rather that the individual writings shape the genre with their own individual meanings. This



means that the genre of reminiscence writings includes the function of the narration as a focal point of interactive, communal, and personal meanings.

Reminiscence writings are not defined by their formal or thematic qualities. Of course it is somewhat necessary and useful to perceive typical formal and thematic features in order to classify, describe, and to become acquainted with a given body of materials, but when genre is understood in a Bakhtinian way, it is also a simplification to limit the concept only to these. Instead, relevant and defining dimensions of the genre of reminiscence writings are linked to the genre's characteristic orientation toward the world. The three essential features, 1) retrospectivity concentrating on a limited time period, 2) autobiographicality presented through certain theme, and 3) an ancillary viewpoint on history, define the generic perspective on the world that is typical for reminiscence writings. In Finland, both this topic and the viewpoint of the writings, to some extent, are defined or at least inspired by the collecting organization, often an archive. Moreover, reminiscence writings are also directed outwards, which means that they are inclined to provide evidence or give testimony and offer an alternative or ancillary perspective on the past, and hence they are always in dialogue with other interpretations and narratives of the past. A common feature in reminiscence writings as well as oral history texts and memoirs in general is the author's chance to write and re-write or process the account and to use literary devices in the creation of her/his narrative. In effect, the author of a piece of reminiscence writing is the person who takes a perspective and role in a certain situation that is in accordance with these principals.

These three qualities are also inextricably bound and thus inseparable. Furthermore, they are also somewhat general and not very exceptional, which then raises the question of how the genres of memoir and autobiography differ from the genre of reminiscence writings? Considered from the Bakhtinian understanding of genre, the search for fixed and absolute categories is basically futile, for the boundaries between genres are invariably unclear and open to interpretation, as the example of Eeva Kilpi's memoirs will demonstrate. Very often, on the level of text and narration the most obvious difference between these genres may simply be one of name. Obviously, genres are bound to overlap; it is the interpreter and the context that ultimately define the genre of such borderline cases. As I see it, the overlaps and confluences between genres and the kinds of meanings, references, and impressions they possibly bear are far more interesting to explore than discreet generic qualities.

When we analyze the generic qualities of Kilpi's memoirs and fiction as well as those of the writings submitted to the children's evacuation journey collection and the linkages between them, it is fair to say that the boundaries between the complex genres of reminiscence writings, memoirs, autobiography and autofiction overlap and that the relationships of individual texts to these genres may be far from clear. How adjacent genres and their relationships appear in a certain work could perhaps be best described with a visual metaphor. Genres are transparent and partly overlapping, and the work is located in the area that they share. Hence, the work partakes in several qualities of each relevant genre but not in all of the qualities of any of them. When we follow the Bakhtin Circle's theories of genre, however, we cannot limit ourselves to a discussion of only works and genres, but we also have to remember the importance of the context of reception and consider how that affects the interpretation of the genre of a given work. The text or utterance has the potential to represent several complex genres, but the context of both the production and the reception defines its genre in that particular moment. Ultimately, this also means that each reader interprets the genre of the text depending on the situation or context, which is on some level typical, recurrent, and social. As Medvedev puts it, "the poetic work, like every concrete utterance, is an inseparable unity of meaning and reality based on the unity of the social evaluation which totally permeates it" (Bakhtin/ Medvedev 1978, 125; Bakhtin 1986, 60–87). Due to this social evaluation that mediates between abstract language and a certain historical reality of language, both genre and individual writings can never be seen as complete and fixed, but moreover partial and transitional. (Bakhtin/Medvedev 1978, 125; Hanks 1987, 681.)

## REFERENCES

### Sources

- Lasten evakkomatkat*. SKS. KRA. LEM. 2004  
Kilpi, Eeva 1959. *Noidanlukko. Sarja Lapsuudesta*. Helsinki: WSOY.  
Kilpi, Eeva 1964. *Elämä edestakaisin*. Helsinki: WSOY.  
Kilpi, Eeva 1979. *Se mitä ei koskaan sanota*. Helsinki: WSOY.  
Kilpi, Eeva 1983. *Elämän evakkona*. Helsinki: WSOY.  
Kilpi, Eeva 1989 [2012]. *Talvisodan aika. Lapsuusmuistelma*. Helsinki: WSOY.  
Kilpi, Eeva 1990 [2012]. *Välirauha, ikävöinnin aika*. Helsinki: WSOY.  
Kilpi, Eeva 1993 [2012]. *Jatkosodan aika*. Helsinki: WSOY.  
Kilpi, Eeva 2001. *Rajattomuuden aika. Kertomus Lapsuudesta*. Helsinki: WSOY.

## Literature

- Abrahams, Roger D. 1985. Neck-Riddles in the West Indies as They Comment on Emergent Genre Theory. *The Journal of American Folklore* 98 (387): 85–94.
- Abrams, Lynn 2010. *Oral History Theory*. New York: Routledge.
- Allen, Graham 2000. *Intertextuality*. The New Critical Idiom. London & New York: Routledge.
- Anderson, Linda 2001. *Autobiography*. London: Routledge.
- Apo, Satu 1995. *Naisen väki. Tutkimuksia suomalaisten kansanomaisesta kulttuurista ja ajattelusta*. Helsinki: Hanki ja Jää.
- Armstrong, Karen 2004. *Remembering Karelia. A Family's Story of Displacement during and after the Finnish Wars*. New York & Oxford: Berghahn Book.
- Bakhtin, Mikhail 1981. *The Dialogic Imagination. Four Essays by M. M. Bakhtin*. Ed. Michael Ed. Michael Holquist. Trans. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Bakhtin, Mikhail 1984. *Problems of Dostoevsky's Poetics*. Theory and History of Literature, Vol 8. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Bakhtin, Mikhail 1986. *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Ed. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Trans. Vern W. McGee. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Bakhtin, M. M/ Medvedev, P. N. 1978. *The Formal Method in Literary Scholarship. A Critical Introduction to Sociological Poetics*. Harvard University Press.
- Barthes, Roland 1975. *Roland Barthes*. Paris: Seuil.
- Basu, Paul. 2006. *Highland Homecoming. Genealogy and Heritage Tourism in the Scottish Diaspora*. London/New York: Routledge.
- Bauman, Richard 1999. Genre. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 9 (1–2): 84–87.
- Bornat, Joanna 1994. Is Oral History Auto/Biography? *Auto/Biography* 3 (2): 17–30.
- Brandist, Craig 2005. The Bakhtin Circle. *IEP Internet Encyclopedia of Internet. A Peer-Reviewed Academic Resource*. [online] <http://www.iep.utm.edu/bakhtin/>
- Briggs, Charles L. & Bauman, Richard 1992. Genre, Intertextuality and Social Power. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 2 (2): 131–172.
- Cashman, Ray 2006. Critical Nostalgia and Material Culture in Northern Ireland. *Journal of American Folklore* 119 (472): 137–160.
- Chase, Malcolm & Richard Shaw 1989. The dimensions of nostalgia. In Richard Shaw & Malcolm Chase (eds.) *The Imagined Past. History and Nostalgia*. Manchester & New York: Manchester University Press. Pp. 1–17
- Cohn, Dorrit 1999. *The Distinction of Fiction*. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Dorst, John D. 1983. Neck-riddle as a Dialogue on Genres Applying Bakhtin's Genre Theory. *The Journal of American Folklore* 96 (382): 413–433.
- Dobrovsky, Serge 1977 [2001]. *Fils*. Éditions Galiléé.
- Dobrovsky, Serge 1993. Autobiography / Truth / Psychoanalysis. In *Genre XXVI*: 27–42.
- Dobrovsky, Serge & John Ireland 1993. An Interview with Serge Dobrovsky. In *Genre XXVI*: 27–42.
- Enwald, Liisa 1989. ”Se mitä olen” – Eeva Kilpi. In Liisi Huhtala, Kirsti Manninen & Marja-Liisa Nevala (eds.) *Sain roolin johon en mahdu. Suomalaisen naiskirjallisuuden linjoja*. Helsinki: Otava. Pp. 661–666.
- Fingerroos, Outi & Riina Haanpää 2006. Muistitietotutkimuksen ydinkysymyksiä. In Outi Fingerroos, Riina Haanpää, Anne Heimo & Ulla-Maija Peltonen (eds.) *Muistitietotutkimus. Metodologisia kysymyksiä*. Tietolipas 214. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 25–48.

- Fingerroos, Outi 2007. Uuskareliaanit nyky-Karjalassa. Teoksessa Outi Fingerroos & Jaana Loipponen (eds.) *Nykytulkintojen Karjala*. Nykykulttuurin tutkimuskeskuksen julkaisuja 91. Jyväskylä: Jyväskylän yliopisto. Pp. 16–32.
- Fingerroos, Outi & Jaana Loipponen (eds.) 2007. *Nykytulkintojen Karjala*. Nykykulttuurin tutkimuskeskuksen julkaisuja 91. Jyväskylä: Jyväskylän yliopisto.
- Fingerroos, Outi 2008. Karelia. A Place of Memories and Utopias. *Oral Tradition* 23 (2): 235–254. [online] <http://journal.oraltradition.org/issues/23ii/fingerroos>
- Fingerroos, Outi 2010. *Karjala utopiana*. Nykykulttuurin tutkimuskeskuksen julkaisuja 100. Jyväskylä: Jyväskylän yliopisto.
- Fokkema, Douve W. 1984. *Literary History, Modernism, and Postmodernism*. Utrecht publications in general and comparative literature 19. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Frisch, Michael 1990. *A Shared Authority. Essays on the Craft and Meaning of Oral and Public History*. New York: State University of New York Press.
- Genette, Gerard 1991. *Fiction & Diction*. London: Cornell University Press.
- Genette, Gerard 1992. *Architext. An Introduction*. Berkeley CA & Oxford: University of California Press.
- Genette, Gerard 1997a. *Palimpsests. Literature in the Second Degree*. Lincoln NE & London: University of Nebraska press.
- Genette, Gerard 1997b. *Paratexts. Thresholds of Interpretation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Hanks, William F. 1987. Discourse genres in a theory of practice. *American Ethnologist* 14 (4): 668–692.
- Hebel, Udo 1989. Introduction. In Udo Hebel (ed.) *Allusion and Quotation – an International Bibliography of Critical Studies*. Bibliographies and Indexes in World Literature 18. New York, Connecticut, London: Greenwood Press. Pp. 1–19.
- Heikkinen, Kaija 1989. *Karjalaisuus ja etninen isetajunta. Salmin siirtokarjalaisia koskeva tutkimus*. Joensuun yliopiston humanistisia julkaisuja 9. Joensuu: Joensuun yliopisto.
- Heimo, Anne 2010. *Kapina Sammatissa. Vuoden 1918 tulkinnat osana historian yhteiskunnallisen rakentamisen prosessia*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran Toimituksia 1275. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Holquist, Michael 1981. Introduction. In Bakhtin, Mikhail 1981: *Dialogic imagination. Four Essays by M. M. Bakhtin*. Ed. Michael Holquist. Trans. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Austin: University of Texas Press. Pp. xv–xxxiii.
- Holquist, Michael 1990. *Dialogism. Bakhtin and His World*. London: Routledge.
- Hughes, Alex 2002. Recycling and Repetition in Recent French Autofiction. Marc Weitmann's 'Dobrovskian Borrowings'. *Modern Language Review* 97 (3): 566–576.
- Huttunen, Laura. 2007. Between 'the World' and a Pear Tree: Memory and Belonging in Bosnian Diaspora. In *On Foreign Ground. Moving Between Countries and Categories*. Minna Ruckenstein & Marie-Louise Karttunen (eds.). *Studia Fennica Anthropologica* 1. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 174–187.
- Kaarlenkaski, Taija 2010. Kilpakirjoitusten fiktionaalisten piirteiden tulkintaa. In Jyrki Pöysä, Helmi Järviluoma & Sinikka Vakimo (eds.) *Vaeltavat metodit*. Kultaneito VIII. Joensuu: Suomen Kansantietouden Tutkijain Seura. Pp. 361–381.
- Kaarlenkaski, Taija 2012. *Kertomuksia lehmästä. Tutkimus ihmisen ja kotieläimen kulttuurisen suhteen rakentumisesta*. Kultaneito IX. Joensuu: Suomen Kansantietouden Tutkijain Seura.
- Kalela, Jorma 2006. Muistitiedon näkökulma historiaan. In Outi Fingerroos, Riina Haanpää, Anne Heimo & Ulla-Maija Peltonen (eds.) *Muistitietotutkimus. Metodologisia kysymyksiä*. Tietolipas 214. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 67–92.

- Kananen, Heli 2010. *Kontrolloitu sopeutuminen. Ortodoksinen siirtoväki sotien jälkeisessä länsi-Savossa (1946–1959)*. Jyväskylä: Jyväskylän yliopisto.
- Knuuttila, Seppo 1994. *Tyhmän kansan teoria. Näkökulmia menneestä tulevaan*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Koivisto, Päivi 2005. Minähän se olen! Miten elämästä tulee fiktiota Pirkko Saision romaanissa *Pienin yhteinen jaettava*. In Pirkko Lyytikäinen, Jyrki Nummi & Päivi Koivisto (eds.) *Lajit yli rajojen. Suomalaisen kirjallisuuden lajeja*. Tietolipas 207. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 177–205.
- Koivisto, Päivi 2011. *Elämästä autofiktioksi. Lajitradition jäljillä Pirkko Saision romaanisarjassa "Pienin yhteinen jaettava", "Vastavalo" ja "Punainen erokirja"*. Helsinki: Helsingin yliopisto.
- Korkiakangas, Pirjo 1996. *Muistoista rakentuva lapsuus. Agraarinen perintö lapsuuden työnteon ja leikkien muistelussa*. Kansatieteellinen arkisto 42. Helsinki: Suomen Muinaismuistoyhdistys.
- Kosonen, Päivi 2000. *Elämät sanoissa. Elety ja kerrottu epäjatkuvuus Sarrauten, Durasin, Robbe-Grillet'n ja Perecin omaelämäkerrallisissa teksteissä*. Helsinki: Tutkijaliitto.
- Kosonen, Päivi 2007. *Isokrateesta Augustinukseen. Johdatus antiikin omaelämäkerralliseen kirjallisuuteen*. Jyväskylä: Atena.
- Kristeva, Julia 1980. *Desire in Language. A Semiotic Approach to Literature and Art*. New York: Columbia University Press.
- Kuusisto-Arponen, Anna-Kaisa 2008. Identiteettipoliittista rajankäyntiä: muistot evakko- ja sotalasten paikatunteen rakentajina. *Terra* 120 (3): 169–181.
- Kuusisto-Arponen, Anna-Kaisa 2009. The mobilities of forced displacement: commemorating Karelian evacuation in Finland. *Social & Cultural Geography* 10 (5): 545–563.
- Laitinen, Lea 1998. Dramaattinen preesens poeettisena tekona. In Lea Laitinen & Lea Rojola (eds.) *Sanan voima. Keskusteluja performatiivisuudesta*. Tietolipas 160. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 81–136.
- Latvala, Pauliina 2005. *Katse menneisyyteen. Folkloristinen tutkimus suvun muistitiedosta*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran Toimituksia 1024. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Latvala, Pauliina & Kirsi Laurén 2012. The Sensitive Interpretation of Emotions: Methodological Perspectives on Studying Meanings in Written Life-Historical Narratives. *Retrospective Methods Newsletter* 4: 126–136.
- Laurén, Kirsi 2006. *Suo – sisulla ja sydämellä. Suomalaisten suokokemukset ja –kertomukset kulttuurisen luontosuhteen ilmentäjinä*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran Toimituksia 1093. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Lehto, Liisa & Senni Timonen 1993. Kertomus matkasta kotiin. Karjalaiset vieraina omilla maillaan. In Pekka Laaksonen & Sirkka-Liisa Mettomäki (eds.) *Kauas on pitkä matka*. Kalevalaseuran vuosikirja 72. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 88–105.
- Lejeune, Philippe 1986. *Moi Aussi*. Paris: Editions de Seuil.
- Lejeune, Philippe 1989. *On Autobiography*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Lowenthal, David 1989. Nostalgia tells like it wasn't. In Richard Shaw & Malcolm Chase (eds.) *The Imagined Past. History and Nostalgia*. Manchester & New York: Manchester University Press. Pp 18–32.
- Lyytikäinen, Pirjo 2006. Rajat ja rajojen ylitykset. In Anne Mäntynen, Susanna Shore & Anne Solin (eds.) *Genre – tekstilaji*. Tietolipas 213. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 165–183.
- Lähteenmäki, Mika 1998. On Meaning and Understanding. A Dialogical Approach. *Dialogism* 1: 74–91.

- Makkonen, Anna 1997. Paljastuksia kaikilta vuosilta. In Mervi Kantokorpi (ed.) *Muodotonta menoa. Kirjoituksia nykykirjallisuudesta*. Helsinki: WSOY. Pp. 98–115.
- McHale, Brian 1987. *Postmodernist Fiction*. New York & London: Methuen.
- Mikkola, Kati 2009. *Tulevaisuutta vastaan. Uutuuksien vastustus, kansantiedon keruu ja kansakunnan rakentaminen*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Niikko, Kirsi 2009. The Concept of Landscape Among Karelian Migrants in Finland. *Journal of Borderlands Studies* 24(2): 62–77.
- Parry, Christoph 1998. ”Nimi Osip tulee sinua vastaan”. Paul Celanin Niemandrose tekstien ja runoilijoiden kohtaustapaikkana. In Hakkarainen & Saariluoma (ed.) *Interteksti ja konteksti*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 82–104.
- Paukkunen, Leo 1989. *Siirtokarjalaiset nyky-Suomessa*. Jyväskylän yliopiston yhteiskuntapolitiikan laitoksen tutkimuksia. Jyväskylä: Jyväskylän yliopisto.
- Peltonen, Ulla-Maija 1996. *Punakapinan muistot. Tutkimus työväen muistelukerronnan muotoutumisesta vuoden 1918 jälkeen*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran Toimituksia 657. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Pesonen, Pekka 1991. Dialogi ja tekstit. Bahtinin, Lotmanin ja Mintsin virikkeitä intertekstuaalisuuden tutkimiseen. Teoksessa Auli Viikari (ed.) *Intertekstuaalisuus. Suuntia ja sovelluksia*. Tietolipas 121. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 31–58.
- Portelli, Alessandro 1998: Oral History as a Genre. In Chamberlain, Mary & Thompson, Paul (eds.): *Narrative and Genre*. London & New York: Routledge. 23–45.
- Pöysä, Jyrki 1997. *Jätjän synty. Tutkimus sosiaalisen kategorian muotoutumisesta suomalaisessa kulttuurissa ja itä-suomalaisessa metsätyöperinteessä*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran Toimituksia 669. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Pöysä, Jyrki 2006. Kilpakirjoitukset muistitietotutkimuksessa. In Outi Fingerroos, Riina Haanpää, Anne Heimo & Ulla-Maija Peltonen (eds.) *Muistitietotutkimus. Metodologisia kysymyksiä*. Tietolipas 214. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 221–244.
- Raninen-Siiskonen, Tarja 1999. *Vieraana omalla maalla. Tutkimus karjalaisen siirtoväen muistelukerronnasta*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran Toimituksia 766. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Roberts, Graham 1994. Glossary. In Pam Morris & Edward Arnold (eds.) *The Bakhtin Reader. Selected Writings of Bakhtin, Medvedev, Voloshinov*. London: Hodder Arnold Publications.
- Saariluoma, Liisa 1998. Saatteeksi. In Hakkarainen & Saariluoma (eds.) *Interteksti ja konteksti*. Helsinki: Suomalaisen kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 7–12.
- Sallinen-Gimpl, Pirkko 1994. *Siirtokarjalainen identiteetti ja kulttuurien kohtaaminen*. Kansatieteellinen arkisto 40. Helsinki: Suomen Muinaismuistoyhdistys.
- Salmi-Niklander, Kirsti 2004. *Itsekasvatusta ja kapinaa. Tutkimus Karkkilan työläisnuorten kirjoittavasta keskusteluyhteisöstä 1910 - ja 1920 -luvulla*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran Toimituksia 967. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura.
- Savolainen, Ulla 2012. Lapsuuden evakkomatkan monet merkitykset. Kerrontastrategiat muistelukirjoituksissa. *Elore* 1: 15–36.
- Savolainen, Ulla 2015. Muisteltu ja kirjoitettu evakkomatka. Tutkimus evakkolapsuuden muistelukerronnan poetiikasta. *Kultaneito* XV. Joensuu: Suomen Kansantietouden Tutkijain Seura.
- Savolainen, Ulla (Forthcoming). The Return: Intertextuality of Reminiscing of Karelian Evacuees in Finland. *Journal of American Folklore* XXX.
- Sheridan, Dorothy 1993. Writing to the Archive. Mass-Observation as Autobiography. *Sociology. The Journal of the British Sociological Association* 27 (1): 27–40.

- Seitel, Peter 2003. Theorizing Genres. Interpreting Works. *New Literary History* 34 (2): 275–297.
- Siikala, Anna-Leena & Jukka Siikala 2005. *Return to Culture. Oral Tradition and Society in the Southern Cook Islands*. FF Communications 287. Helsinki: Academia Scientiarum Fennica.
- Silverstein, Michael 1993. Metapragmatic Discourse and Metapragmatic Function. In Lucy (ed.) *Reflexive Language. Reported Speech and Metapragmatics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. Pp. 33–58.
- Smith, Sidonie & Watson, Julia 2001. *Reading Autobiography. A Guide for Interpreting Life Narratives*. Minnesota: University of Minnesota Press.
- Suomen evankelis-luterilaisen kirkon Virsikirja (Finnish Evangelical Lutheran Church Hymnal) 1986. <http://evl.fi/virsikirja>
- Taira, Teemu 2006. *Työkulttuurin arvomuutos työttömien kerronnassa*. Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seuran Toimituksia 1097. Helsinki: SKS.
- Tihanov, Galin 1998. Bakhtin's Essays on the Novel (1935–1941): A Study of Their Intellectual Background and Innovativeness. *Dialogism* 1: 30–56.
- Todorov, Tzvetan 1984. *Mikhail Bakhtin. The Dialogical Principle*. Theory and History of Literature 13. Manchester: Manchester University Press.
- Toker, Leona 1997. Toward a Poetics of Documentary Prose – from the Perspective of Gulag Testimonies. *Poetics Today* 18(2): 187–222.
- Walsh, Richard 2007. *The Rhetoric of Fictionality. Narrative Theory and the Idea of Fiction*. Columbus: The Ohio State University Press.
- Waris, Heikki & Jyrkilä, Vieno & Raitasuo, Kyllikki & Siipi, Jouko 1952. *Siirtoväen sopeutuminen. Tutkimus Suomen karjalaisen siirtoväen sosiaalisesta sopeutumisesta*. Helsinki: Otava.
- White, Allon 1994. Bakhtin, Sociolinguistics, Deconstruction. In *Carnival, Hysteria and Writing. Collected essays and an autobiography*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. Pp. 135–159.
- Vice, Sue 1997. *Introducing Bakhtin*. Manchester: Manchester University Press.
- Willman, Terhi 2006. Urbanized Karelians. In Maria Lähteenmäki & Hanna Snellman (eds.) *Passages Westward*. Studia Fennica Ethnologica 9. Helsinki: Suomalaisen Kirjallisuuden Seura. Pp. 143–164.
- Wolfson, Nessa 1979. The Conversational Historical Present Alternation. *Language* 55 (1): 168–182.
- Vološinov, V. N. 1973. *Marxism and the Philosophy of Language*. New York & London: Seminar Press.
- Zipfel, Frank 2005. Autofiction. In David Herman, Manfred Jahn & Marie-Laure Ryan (eds.) *Routledge Encyclopedia of Narrative Theory*. London & New York: Routledge. Pp. 36–27.

# The Chronotope of the Legend in Astrid Lindgren's *Sunnanäng*

## Toward an Intergeneric Level of Bakhtinian Chronotopes

Camilla Asplund Ingemark

The relationships between folklore and literature are multiple and varied, as are the approaches taken in studying them. Generally, these approaches have been divided into three distinct ones: viewing folklore as some kind of protoliterature, preceding written literature in time (and in early folklore research also having been superseded by it); construing folklore as a cultural resource for authors that is sometimes depicted as virtually impossible to avoid incorporating into literary works (the lore in lit-approach); and finally, regarding folklore and literature as parallel art forms. (Bacchilega 2012: 448–456; Brown 1998: xxxii–xxxvii) In this article, I primarily draw on the second and third approaches. In the latter case, folklore and literature are seen to share important strategies for shaping the material, whereas in the former, passages in literary texts are compared to items of documented folklore in order to elucidate the impact of folklore on literary meaning-making. As a case study, I use Swedish author Astrid Lindgren (1907–2002), the world famous writer of many classic children's books, such as *Pippi Longstocking*, *Emil of Lönneberga* and *The Brothers Lionheart*. At present, her books have sold in 150 million copies worldwide, and have been translated into 95 languages (Saltkråkan 2013).

The fact that Astrid Lindgren was intimately acquainted with the oral tradition of the province of Småland where she grew up is a well attested one. Her father and mother, Samuel August Eriksson and Hanna Jonsson, transmitted the more realistic oral genres, such as personal experience narratives and anecdotes, whereas her paternal grandmother, Ida Ingström, told her grandchildren many belief legends, ghost stories in particular (Lindgren 1984: 10, Ruhnström 1996: 13–15). One of these, the ghastly legend of Skinn Skerping, was Ida Ingström's *pièce de résistance* (Lindgren et al. 1992: 45), and Lindgren gave her own variant of the story in the book entitled *Skinn Skerping – det hemskaste spöket i Småland* ('The Ghost of Skinny Jack'). In an article on oral traditions in Lindgren's oeuvre, Bengt af Klintberg has contended that Lindgren stayed close to the oral tradition in this work; she acts like a traditional narrator would (af Klintberg 1996: 28–29, 45). In her other works, the extent of the literary adaptation, or re-situation (de Caro & Jordan 2004: 6), of folkloric material varies. The use of oral genres is



quite prominent in the Emil of Lönneberga books (Nettervik 1996; Edström 1992), and snippets and reminiscences of traditional songs appear in many of her works (Gustafsson 1996).

In this article, I examine how the chronotope of the legend has been utilised in two short stories from the collection *Sunnanäng* ('South Meadows'): "Sunnanäng" ('The Red Bird'), and "Spelar min lind, sjunger min näktergal" ('My Nightingale Is Singing'). Due to the lack of space, I have to postpone the analysis of a third story, "Tu tu tu" (these are nonsense words from a nursery rhyme). The last story of the collection, "Junker Nils av Eka" ('Junker Nils of Eka'), is quite different in character, with references to chivalric romances rather than folklore, and will not be considered here either. This collection has been rather overlooked in Lindgren's literary production among the general public, but the stories in it possess a sense of mystery and suggestive fascination that marks the beginnings of a pervasive trait in her later works: the bittersweet combination of grief and ecstasy (Edström 1997: 110–111). I have primarily chosen these stories for their brevity, as it is my conviction that a sustained analysis of the construction of chronotopes in Lindgren's stories is required. This is because they are usually more complex than they seem at first sight, and a superficial examination of them would not further our understanding of her art, and of the role of folklore in shaping it.

My hypothesis is that it is the chronotope of the legend in particular that endows these stories with their peculiar ambience. To some extent, the formative power of the oral legend on these narratives has been recognised (Edström 1996: 50), but not how pervasive this influence is. I believe this is because the issue has not been framed in terms of chronotopes, only in terms of the folkloric legend motifs and themes employed.

### **Chronotope, Genre and Intertext**

Mikhail Bakhtin defined the chronotope as "the intrinsic connectedness of temporal and spatial relationships that are artistically expressed in literature" (Bakhtin 1986a: 84). Thus, time and space are not studied in isolation, but as the shared context within which literary characters live and act; the chronotope materially affects the way in which human beings and the world in which they live can be portrayed. Bakhtin was particularly concerned with the possibilities for character development, which he found rather scant in all literary genres except the novel.

Bakhtin regarded the temporal dimension of the chronotope as primary in literary narrative, and although the universal validity of this *a priori* position has been challenged, it remains relevant to the stories considered here. (Bakhtin 1986a: 85; Salvestroni 1997: 361) However,

in some instances it is not easy to determine if the spatial or the temporal dimension is dominant, and in these cases it is not my objective to try to resolve this question, as I do not view the issue of primacy as important.

A fully fleshed-out chronotope should incorporate all aspects of time, i.e., provide a genuine sense of the past, present and future. (Falconer 1998: 701) Aberrations from this pattern represent significant manipulations of the structure of the chronotope. In his discussion of historical inversion, for example, Bakhtin points to the effects of “mythological” thinking involving paradisiac or Golden Age images on the apperception of the future: when the ideal life or society has been located in the past, the future becomes “empty and fragmented”, as it is no longer capable of embodying this ideal. (Bakhtin 1986a: 147–148) The weight attributed to the past, present and future respectively is a crucial facet of the stories studied here, and it is a decisive one for how the characters are represented in terms of their possibilities in life, and of the rules regulating their interaction.

As is well-known, Bakhtin also regarded the chronotope as constitutive of genre (Bakhtin 1986a:84). In this article, I treat the chronotope as an important element in the active construction of genre, a process I analyse in line with Charles Briggs and Richard Bauman’s theory of intertextual gaps (1992). They argue that narrators actively reconstruct and reconfigure genres by selecting and foregrounding particular elements of a generic model while suppressing others. Thus, the fit between a text and the generic model is not complete; there is always a gap, and these intertextual gaps can either be minimised by the narrator, to decrease the distance between text and genre, or maximised, in order to increase the distance. (Briggs & Bauman 1992: 148–149.)

The active constitution of genre was not taken into account by Bakhtin in his essay on the chronotope, but as it is partly implicit in his later work on speech genres (Bakhtin 1986b: 64), I do not consider it far-fetched to apply the notion to the theory of chronotopes. Here Bakhtin’s notion of primary and secondary genres becomes pertinent. Secondary genres tend to be longer artistic forms that absorb and digest other, primary genres, which Bakhtin viewed as rooted in an everyday reality. (Bakhtin 1986b: 61–62) Although the distinction between “artistic” and “real-life” genres is not always apt, the idea of secondary genres absorbing other genres is a useful one for the study of short stories, which are constructed through such absorption.

However, I believe that the chronotope of a text belonging to a secondary genre is not only created through the fitting of the text to the generic model, but also by the specific intertexts – the other utterances – that are being absorbed and transformed. (Kristeva 1978: 84–85) When Bakhtin made a distinction between the chronotopes of whole genres and of individual motifs, he did not address the delicate question of the balance between these chronotopes. At which point can the chronotopes of individual motifs be said to affect and actually transform the chronotopes of genres? I think that point might lie in the intersection of intertext and generic model, in the active construction of genre, and hence of chronotopes.

In this attempt to sort out the implications of chronotopes for the study of folklore genres, the theory of chronotopes constitutes a complement to the already well-established folkloristic adaptations of intertextual theory (see e.g. Tarkka 1993; Tarkka 2005; Skjelbred 1998; Ingemark 2004), and Charles Briggs and Richard Bauman’s theory of intertextual gaps. Notions of time and space are fundamental to our perception of the world, and guide us in situating ourselves in it. If Bakhtin is correct in his assertion that they also influence our view of man, an exploration of chronotopes is necessary to understand popular conceptions of man and the nature and limits of human agency as represented in folklore. (see Ingemark 2006: 2) Even though conceptions of time-space were not explicitly discussed by Briggs and Bauman in their presentation of the model of intertextual gaps, it is nevertheless elastic and inclusive enough to easily accommodate an examination of chronotopes as well. This enterprise is facilitated by the fact that all three theories are interconnected: Julia Kristeva based her notion of intertextuality on Bakhtin’s conception of the word (Kristeva 1978), and Briggs and Bauman drew on both Kristevan intertextuality and Bakhtin’s late work on speech genres to formulate their views on genre. Even one of the guiding metaphors of intertextuality – the idea of the text as an intersection of textual surfaces (Kristeva 1978: 83–84) – is inherently chronotopic, as it refers to a textual space that is riddled with many layers of meaning, some of them being carried over from prior historical and cultural contexts.

### **The Generic Chronotope of Short Stories and Belief Legends**

The generic chronotope of Astrid Lindgren’s stories mostly conforms to the patterns of the modernist short story. This includes structuring the story around the revelation of a universal truth which ultimately transcends time, i.e., which is essentially achronotopic. There is also a tendency to privilege the experience of individual temporalities over the passage of “public” time. The formative influence of a sense of imminent closure – which is due to the brevity of

the form – that has been emphasised is visible as well. (Falconer 1998:703–705) In other respects, Lindgren's stories have affinities with the chronotopes of the contemporary short story. In her analysis of Martin Amis's collection of short stories *Einstein's Monsters*, Rachel Falconer points to the way in which stories clustering around a common theme, the threat of nuclear holocaust, taken together can voice different scenarios of a post-nuclear war future, while remaining unconnected by a temporal sequence: they induce a sense of perceiving the present branching out into numerous possible futures. (Falconer 1998: 709) By virtue of the shared first words of Lindgren's stories, "För länge sen, i fattigdomens dagar..." ('Long ago, in the days of poverty...'), an analogous effect can be seen. The stories are not connected sequentially, but they all branch out from this shared point *in the past*: thus, the collection grows out from this common chronotopic centre in different directions, forming a four-pointed star.

The initial chronotope of the two stories studied is a dreary one. It is highly realistic, complete with orphaned children, disease and starvation, lice and potatoes dipped in herring pickle – with no herring in it. It is a world in which everything can be ruined: the happy home, one's livelihood, all joy and beauty in life. It is a world in which children are defenceless against the arbitrary authority of adults, who deny them the right to play ('The Red Bird') and refuse to shelter them when they are in need ('My Nightingale Is Singing').

The reason I compare the chronotope of these stories to the oral legend is, apart from the similarities in setting with historical legends of disease and famine, the solution proposed to the children's problems and the context in which it is advanced. In both stories, the children attain happiness through some kind of supernatural experience: entering another paradisiac world ('The Red Bird'), or metamorphosing into a linden tree ('My Nightingale is Singing'). As Max Lüthi has suggested, the human world and the otherworld are portrayed in divergent ways in the folktale and the legend. In the folktale, humans and supranormal creatures basically share the same world: there is no obvious boundary between them. Thus, when humans experience a supernatural encounter, this is no cause for surprise. In the legend, there is a distance between the worlds that has to be overcome in some way. Not just anyone can find his way to the supranormal sphere, and supranormal experiences inspire fear or wonder. (Lüthi 1962: 27; Lüthi 1992: 12) However, when the worlds do meet in the legend, there is often a seamless intertwining of the two: the passage from the ordinary human world to the otherworld

can go unnoticed at first, but is then revealed by some unexpected occurrence. This tendency is also visible in Lindgren's texts.

The chronotopes of folklore are still under-researched, and much of the work that has been done has – perhaps not surprisingly, given its derivation from literary studies – tended to focus on the intersection of folklore and literature. In an earlier article, I have studied the motif of enchantment in oral belief legends in terms of chronotopes, suggesting that the utility of the concept lies in the possibility to formulate fundamental cultural conceptions of the nature and destiny of man, which were influenced by religious literature in this case (Ingemark 2006). Patricia Aelbrecht has examined how electronic travelogues on trans-Atlantic sailing articulate the voyage as chronotopic (Aelbrecht 2013), and Madhu Krishnan has investigated the rise of new ways of incorporating orality and oral tradition into Nigerian contemporary literary narrative (Krishnan 2014). Recently, discussions on chronotopic discourses of race have touched on their role in Cuban cultural performances (Wirtz 2011), and in the struggles of black communities in the U.S. to access environmental justice resources (Blanton 2011).

This relative dearth of research implies that the terms used in this article, such as *chronotope of the legend*, *Märchenchronotope*, etc., are of my own invention, and that they have been introduced to cover important chronotopes that have hitherto largely remained unnamed. It is nevertheless vital to do so, as an understanding of the construction of time-space in oral narrative is just as fundamental to our grasp of its character, purpose and meanings as it is in literature.

### **The Red Bird**

“The Red Bird” is about two orphans, Anna and Matthew, who have come to live on a farm when their mother has been died. The farmer starves them and forces them to work constantly. He denies them the leisure to play, and is even reluctant to send them to school, but since primary education is compulsory in Lindgren's taleworld, he cannot actually refuse them the right to attend school.

Being the first story in the collection, this is the also the first time we encounter what I have termed the initial chronotope of all four stories in the collection:

För länge sen, i fattigdomens dagar, var det två små syskon som blev ensamma i världen. Men barn kan inte vara ensamma i världen, någon måste de vara hos, och därför kom Mattias och Anna från Sunnanäng till bonden i Myra.[...]

”Jag får visst aldrig mer något roligt i mitt barnaliv, sa Anna och grät, där hon satt på mjölkpallen.

”Nej, här i Myra är alla dagar grå som sorkarna i lagårn”, sa Mattias.

I fattigdomens dagar var det ont om mat i gårdarna, och bonden i Myra trodde heller inte, att barnmagar behövde något annat än potatis doppad i sillake.

(Lindgren 1959: 5–6.)

Long ago, in the days of poverty, two little siblings were left alone in the world. But children cannot be alone in the world, they have to be with somebody, and therefore Matthew and Anna from South Meadows came to the farmer of Myra. [...]

“I’ll surely never get any fun in my child’s life”, Anna said and wept as she was sitting on the milking stool.

“No, here at Myra all days are grey as the voles in the cow-house”, Matthew said.

In the days of poverty, food was scarce on the farms, and the farmer of Myra did not think that children’s tummies needed more than potatoes dipped in herring pickle either.

Life as an existence of endless toil and drudgery is made quite explicit in this opening. It is so endless that it actually seems to leech the present of all sense of concreteness and presence. For unlike the chronotopes associated with the literary depiction of agricultural labour, which do possess meaning for those who perform the work – it allows them to live and eat – Anna and Matthew’s performance of their work has no such intrinsic meaning (cf. Bakhtin 1986a: 207). They are not allowed to drink the milk they extract with their own hands, and they have no share in the other produce of the farm, except the potatoes.

When Anna and Matthew are to start school in the winter, they hope to find some relief from their perpetual sorrow and labour. This proves to be an illusion, as the farmer of Myra still expects them to do all their work, and they are ashamed of their meagre packed lunch, consisting of cold potatoes when the other children get sandwiches with ham and cheese, or even pancakes. (Lindgren 1959: 12–13) One day, when Anna has lost all hope, a miracle occurs:

Men en dag stannade Anna mitt på vägen och tog Mattias hårt i armen.

“Mattias”, sa hon, “det hjälpte inte med skolan. Jag har inget roligt i mitt barnaliv, och jag önskar jag inte levde till våren.”

Just som hon hade sagt det, såg de den röda fågeln. Han satt på marken, han var så röd mot den vita snön, så illande, illande röd mot det vita. Och han sjöng så klart, att snön på granarna brast sönder i tusen snöstjärnor, och de föll till marken helt tyst och stilla.

Anna sträckte sina händer mot fågeln och grät.

“Han är röd”, sa hon, “å, han är röd.”

Mattias grät också och sa:

“Han vet nog inte ens, att det finns grå sorkar i världen.”

Då lyfte fågeln sina röda vingar och flög. Anna tog Mattias hårt i armen och sa:

“Om den fågeln flyger ifrån mig, då lägger jag mig ner här i snön och dör.”

(Lindgren 1959: 14)

But one day Anna stopped in the middle of the road and gripped Matthew’s arm strongly.

“Matthew”, she said, “school didn’t help. I have no fun in my child’s life, and I wish I didn’t live until spring.”

Just as she’d said this, they saw the red bird. He was sitting on the ground, he was so red against the white snow, so bright, bright red against the white. And he sang so clearly that the snow on the firs exploded in a thousand stars of snow, and they fell quite silently and serenely to the ground.

Anna stretched out her hands toward the bird and wept.

“He’s red”, she said, “oh, he’s red.”

Matthew wept as well and said:

“He probably doesn’t even know there are grey voles in the world.”

Then the bird lifted its red wings and flew away. Anna gripped Matthew’s arm firmly and said:

“If that bird flies away from me, I’ll lay myself down in the snow to die.”

Right there on the road, on the way home from school – and a long and cold way it is – two worlds meet: the human world and the supernatural one. The chronotope of the road is, as Bakhtin noted, a fertile one, and highly appropriate for depicting random encounters, such as is the case here. This chronotope is charged with emotions and values, and it is also “a point of new departures and a place for events to find their denouement”, both in the most concrete and in a more metaphorical sense. (Bakhtin 1986a: 243–244) The chance encounter with the red bird serves as an emotional catalyst: it prompts Anna and Matthew to find renewed hope, and the appearance of the bird itself evokes an intense emotional response. Both children weep when they see it, and the red colour assumes a strong symbolic significance in relation to the greyness of Anna and Matthew. Red represents the fullness of life, play and happiness. (cf. Edström 1997) At this very point, their existence begins to change. The chronotope of the belief legend enters their world, and it transforms everything:

Där var framför dem en hög mur och i muren en port. Porten stod på glänt som om någon nyss hade gått igenom och glömt att stänga efter sig. Snön låg i drivor på marken och vinter dagen var frostig och kall, men över muren sträckte ett körsbärsträd sina blommande vita grenar. [...] Och då såg de den röda fågeln, det var det första som de såg. Han satt i en björk, och björken hade små gröna, krusiga blad, och det var vår. All vårens ljuvlighet var över dem i ett klingande huj [...] Ja, det var många barn där som lekte [...] Och de hade röda och blå och vita kläder och lyste som vårblommor i det gröna gräset.

“De vet nog inte ens att det finns grå sorkar i världen”, sa Anna sorgset. Men i samma ögonblick såg hon, att Mattias också hade röda kläder, hon hade själv röda kläder, de var inte längre grå som sorkarna i lagårn.

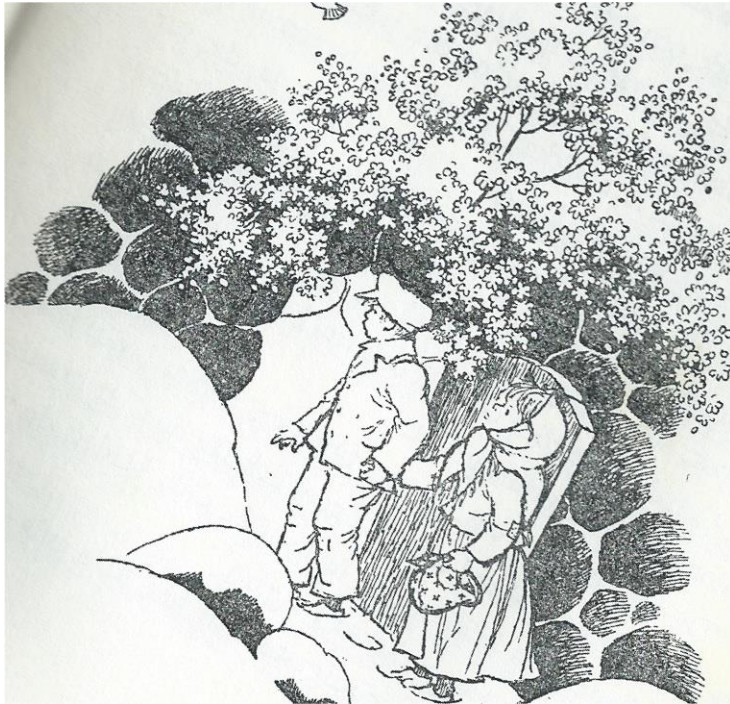
(Lindgren 1959: 17–18)

In front of them there was a high wall and in the wall a gate. The gate was ajar as if someone had just passed through and forgotten to close it again. The snow was lying in drifts on the ground and the day was frosty and cold, but over the wall a cherry tree stretched its blooming white branches. [...] And then they saw the red bird, it was the first thing they saw. He was sitting in a birch, and the birch had tiny green, curled leaves, and it was spring. All the sweetness of spring was over them in a resounding second [...] Yes, many children were there to play [...] And they had red and blue and white clothes and shone like spring flowers in the green grass.

“I don’t think they know that there are grey voles in this world”, Anna said sadly. But at that moment she saw that Matthew also had red clothes, she herself had red clothes, they were no longer grey as the voles in the cow-house.

The otherworld is clearly separated from the human sphere in this passage: the children are only able to find the supranormal sphere by following the red bird. According to Max Lüthi, this is typical for the oral legend, in contradistinction to the folktale in which the two spheres essentially belong to the same world. (cf. Lüthi 1962: 27; Lüthi 1992: 12) In describing the passage between the worlds, the contrast Lindgren introduces between the winter landscape of the human world – constructed as a reflection of the barrenness and coldness of the social world in which the children live – and the blossoming spring of the otherworld is stark. The cherry tree itself stands on the very boundary of the worlds: it is liminal, being rooted in the soil of the paradisiac otherworld, but spreading its lovely branches into this world. (cf. Gaare & Sjaastad 2004: 138.)





**Figure 1. The cherry tree stands at the boundary of the paradisiac otherworld of South Meadows and the squalid social world of Anna and Matthew at the farm of Myra. Courtesy of Ilon Wikland AB.**

The chronotope of the otherworld is one of plenitude, contentment and emotional attachment. The children are allowed to play freely, and the figure of Mother provides both food and gentle care. She welcomes Anna and Matthew into their midst, and encourages them to come back when they leave. They realise they will soon be late for their chores at Myra, and return to the cold and hunger of the human world:

Då följde Mattias och Anna de andra barnen över ängen bort till en liten stuga, och där var Mor. Man kunde se, att det var Mor, hon hade en mors ögon och en mors händer, och hennes ögon och händer räckte till för alla barnen som trängdes omkring henne. Hon hade gräddat pannkakor åt dem och hon hade bakat bröd, hon hade kärnat smör och hon hade ystat ost, allt fick barnen äta av så mycket de ville, och de satt i gräset, medan de åt.

“Detta var det godaste som jag har ätit i mitt barnaliv”, sa Anna.

Men Mattias blev blek med ens och sa:

“Gu’tröste oss om vi inte är hemma vid mjölkdays.”

Och nu fick de brått, nu kom de ihåg, att de hade varit alltför länge borta. De tackade för vad de hade fått att äta, och Mor strök dem över kinden och sa: “Kom snart igen!”

[...] Men utanför porten låg snön djup och skogen frostig och kall i vinterskymningen. Mattias tog Anna vid handen, och så sprang de ut genom porten. Strax var kölden över

dem, men också hungern, det var som om de aldrig hade ätit några pannkakor och som om de aldrig hade fått något bröd.

(Lindgren 1959: 21–22.)

Then Matthew and Anna followed the other children over the meadow to a little cottage, and there was Mother. You could see that it was Mother, she had a mother's eyes and a mother's hands, and her eyes and hands were there for all the children who were flocking around her. She had made pancakes for them and she had been baking bread, she had churned butter and she had made cheese; all of this the children were allowed to eat of as much as they liked, and they were sitting in the grass while they were eating.

“This was the most delicious [food] I've ate in my child's life”, Anna said.

But Matthew suddenly grew pale and said:

“God help us if we aren't home for milking.”

And now they were in a hurry, now they remembered they had been away for too long. They thanked for the food they had been given to eat, and Mother caressed their cheeks and said: “Come back soon!” [...] But outside the gate the snow was deep and the forest frosty and cold in the winter twilight. Matthew took Anna by the hand, and they ran out through the gate. Soon the cold was over them, but hunger too, it was as if they had never eaten any pancakes and been given any bread.

The paradisiac world of this *Sunnanäng* (South Meadows) rests on an idyllic chronotope, which Bakhtin characterises as a little spatial world “limited and sufficient unto itself, not linked in any intrinsic way with other places”. (Bakhtin 1986a: 225) This characterisation certainly fits South Meadows; it is wholly self-contained. Unlike idylls in a completely thisworldly setting, the link between place and the succession of generations is not so prominent in Lindgren's story in the sense that all generations would be visibly present in the otherworld. Mother and her children do nevertheless represent this idea in condensed form. The nurturing aspect of Mother that is emphasised in the passage quoted above actualises another important aspect of the idyll, according to Bakhtin: the association of food and children. Food and drink is social, or rather family, in nature in the idyll, and Bakhtin relates this to the tendency of the idyll to transform agricultural labour into life events in the lives of the characters: they consume the produce of their labour. (Bakhtin 1986a: 227) In Lindgren, the serving of food and drink is closely connected to the image of the good family, and in South Meadows, the children are not part of the labour force that produces this food. This is in stark contrast to the situation at the farm of Myra: the children had to work to produce the food, but were not allowed to consume the fruits of their own labour.

Bakhtin also links the role of children in the idyllic chronotope to the notion of the beginnings of growth and the renewing of life. (Bakhtin 1986a: 227) This trait is certainly present in Lindgren's story: the children do represent the beginnings of growth and the renewing of life. However, implicit in this idea is the expectation that they will eventually grow up to become adults and make their own contribution to the succession of generations. Whether this ever happens in South Meadows is doubtful. Though it is never stated explicitly, my impression is that the children might remain children forever, and this would undermine the orientation to the future – or a sense of becoming – that is so characteristic of the idyll. (Waithe 2002: 462.)

If the children remain children in this otherworld, this assimilates the chronotope in Lindgren's story to the chronotope of historical inversion, in which the future is leeched of all weight. It differs from the common manifestation of this chronotope in one crucial respect, however, and that is in its stress on the ideal form of time as an eternal present, not as a paradise or Golden Age located in the past. (Bakhtin 1986a: 147) In Lindgren, the past is rather transmuted into a distant memory. Anna and Matthew forget for a long while that they have to return to Myra, but eventually recall this at the last possible moment.

I argue that this is because the image of this paradisiac otherworld is modelled on folkloric descriptions of such realms. These tend to depict the otherworld as a world of wealth and plenty. This plenitude is usually material in nature in oral legends: the abode of the troll is standing on sixteen silver pillars (LUF 2354: 2), as in a legend from the parish of Mistelås, or filled with shining objects, a golden spinning-wheel in particular, as in a legend set in the parish of Karlslunda (LUF 971: 5). In Lindgren's story, the children might be deprived of virtually all material comfort, but the loss they really feel deeply is that of the right to play and be children. Hence, their paradisiac world is a world of fun and play. However, the image of the nurturing supranormal female giving children their favourite food does have parallels in oral tradition, as in the legend from the parish of Rumskulla quoted below. In Lindgren, the sandwich topped with honey has been replaced by pancakes:

En flicka i Vintzelholm en halv mil från Rumskulla kyrka blev enligt sägen bergtagen ett par tre dagar. Sedan man ringt i kyrkklockorna fann man henne dock i skogen ej lån[g]t från det berg, där hon troddes varit. Flickan talade om att hon varit hemma hos en främmande "moster" och fått "honungssmörgås" av henne. (LUF 1797: 55a–55b)

A girl in Vintzelholm fifty kilometres from Rumskulla church was according to legend taken into the hill some three days. After ringing the church bells, they found her in the

forest not far from the hill in which she was believed to have been. The girl said that she had been in the home of an unknown “aunt” and received “a sandwich topped with honey” from her.

The story ends with Anna and Matthew entering the otherworld of South Meadows for perpetuity, closing the door behind them to seal this paradisiac world off from the human world of suffering that they know. (Lindgren 1959: 25–26) In a sense, it represents a return to the happy childhood that they experienced before their mother’s death, but it is enhanced and extended. For even though Lindgren never explicitly describes the past of Anna and Matthew, the life they were living when their mother was still alive, it must be reasonably assumed that it was a fairly happy – albeit materially modest – life, as this is a necessary backdrop to the horrible existence at Myra. On one level, the drudgery of Myra is implicitly constructed against a past happier life, and on another, more explicit level, against a general notion of what a child’s life should be like. Life at Myra is the antithesis of life fit for a child; even death is preferable, as Anna repeatedly says. This is the universal truth that the story is designed to illustrate: the good mother saves children gone astray from the biting cold of darkness and toil into the world of light and play. (Gaare & Sjaastad 2004: 138)

### **My Nightingale Is Singing**

In “My Nightingale Is Singing”, we are introduced to Malin, an eight-year-old girl who has lost her parents in tuberculosis. Since the farmers of Norka parish in which she lives fear she carries the disease as well, they refuse to receive her for payment, and she is forced to move to the local workhouse. (Lindgren 1959: 27) This is not a proper environment for a young girl, and Malin is horrified by the ugliness of the place:

Men här i fattigstugan var det så fult att man kunde gråta åt det, och utanför fönstret fanns bara ett magert potatisland, inget blommande äppelträd och ingen liljekonvaljlund. [...] Malin vaknade framåt morgonen, och i det kalla grå gryningsljuset såg hon vägglössens skaror spatsera på tapeten. Nu vände de hem till sina gömmen och springor, men nästa natt skulle de komma tillbaka och mätta sig på Norka fattighjon.

(Lindgren 1959: 31)

But here in the workhouse everything was so ugly that it made you cry, and outside the window lay only a meagre plot planted with potatoes, no apple trees in bloom and no grove of lilies-in-the-valley. [...] Malin woke in the morning, and in the cold grey light of dawn she saw the hordes of lice walking on the wallpaper. Now they returned home to their dens and cracks, but tomorrow night they would come back and satisfy their hunger on the paupers of Norka.

The chronotope of this world is constructed around the motifs of ugliness and hopelessness. They deprive the present of all meaning, and situate a happier existence in the past, when Malin did possess the things that made her life beautiful: an apple tree in bloom, and a grove of lilies-of-the valley, a cupboard painted with roses and a blue chandelier, not to mention mother's newly baked bread. (Lindgren 1959: 30)

The world of the workhouse is not a world in which Malin feels at home; she is an observer of this world, but does not engage with it emotionally. There is always a psychological distance between herself and the environment of the workhouse. This is somewhat reminiscent of the chronotope of the ancient adventure novel of everyday life discussed by Bakhtin, in which the hero is cast into the everyday world as a form of punishment. He remains an outsider, and eavesdrops on everyday life from the vantage point of a detached observer. Everyday life is then a condition from which he has to "liberate himself". (Bakhtin 1986a: 111, 120–121.) Likewise, the "everyday life" embodied in the workhouse is a condition from which Malin seeks to escape, but she does not suffer this degradation as a punishment. It is more the result of chance, and in this respect, the chronotope resembles that of the ancient Greek romance, which was entirely predicated on the vicissitudes of chance, according to Bakhtin (1986a: 94–95).

Malin is described as a distanced observer, but also as a paradigmatic folktale heroine with a good heart:

Men Malin hade ett gott hjärta och försökte vara lillpiga åt dem alla. När Höns-Hilma inte kunde knyta skobanden med sina förvärkta fingrar, då var det Malin som knöt dem åt henne, när Kära Hjärtans tappade sina nystan, då var det Malin som hämtade dem åt henne, och när Jocke Kis ängslades för rösterna som han hörde inne i sitt huvud, då var det Malin som gav honom lugn och tröst. Men sig själv kunde hon inte trösta, ty för den som inte kunde leva utan något vackert, fanns i Norka fattigstuga ingen tröst att få.

(Lindgren 1959: 35)

But Malin had a good heart and tried to be the little maid of them all. When Hen-Hilma could not tie her shoelaces with her aching fingers, then Malin was the one to tie them for her, when Oh Dear accidentally dropped her balls of yarn, then Malin was the one to fetch them for her, and when Jocke Kis was anguished by the voices in his head, then Malin was the one to give him peace and solace. But herself she could not console; for anyone not able to live without beauty, there was no consolation to be had in the workhouse of Norka.

The "image of man" that we can discern in the image of Malin in this passage might be derived from the folkloric notion of the kind girl. We know that Astrid Lindgren was very fond of the tale of "Lilla Rosa och Långa Leda" ('Little Rose and Tall Leda'), in which Little Rose is the kind girl who is rewarded for her benevolence, whereas her step-sister Tall Leda is evil and punished for her cruelty (Edström 1997). In this wondertale, which was collected in the province of Småland, Little Rose is mistreated by her stepmother, the evil new queen. Once she commands Little Rose to fetch the axe that had been forgotten by the castle's gardeners in the forest:

När nu lilla Rosa kom ut i skogen, fick hon se var yxan låg. Men tre vita duvor hade satt sig att vila på yxskaftet. Då tog hon bröd, som var kvar av hennes frukost, smulade sönder det i handen och räckte det åt de små duvorna.

"Stackars mina små duvor", sade hon vänligt, "nu får ni lov att gå därifrån, för jag är tvungen att bära yxan till min styvmor."

Duvorna åt ur hennes hand och gick villigt bort från skaftet, så att hon kunde taga yxan. Men hon hade inte hunnit långt, förrän duvorna började tala med varandra och överlade om, vad lön de skulle ge lilla Rosa, som varit så snäll mot dem.

(Swahn 1986: 55)

When Little Rose came into the forest, she saw where the axe lay. But three white doves had settled down to rest on the handle. Then she took some bread that was left from her breakfast, crumbled it in her hand and gave it to the little doves.

"My poor little doves", she said kindly, "now you have to leave, because I must carry the axe to my stepmother."

The doves ate from her hand and willingly left the handle, so that she could take the axe. But she had not gone far, before the doves started talking with each other and discussed what reward they would give Little Rose, who had been so kind to them.

The doves decide to make her twice as beautiful as she was before, give her golden hair, and let a red golden ring drop from her mouth each time she smiles. (Swahn 1986: 55) Malin is just as kind to the paupers of Norka, but she does not receive her reward at this stage of the story. The tale of Little Rose and Tall Leda is the most important intertext for Lindgren's narrative in many respects; just how important it is for the development of the details of Lindgren's story has not been emphasised enough in prior research. Vivi Edström states that Lindgren transposes certain features from "Little Rose and Tall Leda" to "My Nightingale Is Singing" (Edström 1997: 133), but she does not mention all of them, and some of these are quite crucial for Lindgren's story.

One of the parallels that Edström does mention is what we might term the turning point in the narrative, when Malin finally encounters something beautiful, something that makes life worth living. She has accompanied Pompadulla to the parsonage, and through an open door listens to a tale told to the parson's children. The beautiful words of this tale resonate with her, and she gains new hope in her previously sordid world:

Hon hade inte vetat förut att ord kunde vara vackra, nu visste hon det, och de sjönk ner i hennes själ som morgondagg över en sommaräng. Ack, hon ville gömma dem hos sig till tidens slut och aldrig glömma dem, men redan när hon med Pompadulla kom hem till fattigstugan, var de försvunna ur hennes minne. Bara ett par av de skönaste hade hon kvar, och dem läste hon tyst för sig själv om och om igen.

Spelar min lind,  
sjunger min näktergal,

så var orden hon läste, och i deras glans försvann fattigstugans hela armod och elände.

(Lindgren 1959: 36)

She had not known before that words could be beautiful, now she knew, and they sank into her soul like morning dew over a meadow in the summer. Alas, she wanted to hide them within her until the end of time and never forget them, but already when she returned home to the workhouse with Pompadulla, they had vanished from her memory. Only a few of the most beautiful ones did she have left, and these she read silently to herself over and over again.

Is my linden tree playing  
Is my nightingale singing,

Such were the words she read, and in their glow the utter poverty and misery of the workhouse disappeared.

The words Malin half remembers are drawn from "Little Rose and Tall Leda", and appear towards the end of the tale, when Little Rose has been transformed into a golden goose by her evil stepmother. Little Rose, who has married a king and given birth to a son, asks a fisherman on the seashore: "Is my linden tree playing? Is my nightingale singing? Is my little son crying? Does my lord ever make merry?" (Swahn 1986: 59) The dreariness of the workhouse temporarily disappears, and Malin enters a different time-space, one of beauty and succor.

The magic of storytelling described in this passage also draws on a real-life chronotope, so to speak (on chronotopes in real life, see Bakhtin 1986a: 252–256), Astrid Lindgren's own first encounter with the wonderful world of stories, in the kitchen of Kristin, the wife of the Eriksson

family's cow herd. Her daughter Edit read the story of the Giant Bam-Bam and the fairy Viribunda to a five-year-old Astrid Lindgren, who later talked of the experience as "setting my child's soul rocking in a motion that has not quite yet abated". (Lindgren 1984: 240) This almost transcendent experience was a resource for Lindgren in her own creative work, just as it is for Malin, who uses it to transform her world. For the snippets she remembers from this life-transfiguring story also encourage her to take action to ameliorate her own situation by planting a linden tree herself. The problem is that she does not have a linden seed, so she takes a pea instead:

Medan hon låg där och kliade sig, följde hon med ögonen solstrimmans gång in under Sommar-Nisses säng, och då såg hon något ligga på golvet, något litet och gult och runt. Det var bara en ärt som hade trillat ur Sommar-Nisses trasiga påse, men det kom för henne att hon kunde ta den i stället för ett frö. Kanske Gud i sin godhet för denna enda gångs skull ville låta en lind spira ur en ärt.

"Med tro och längtan så går det", tänkte Malin. Och hon gick ut i potatislandet och grävde med sina bara händer en grop i jorden, där stoppade hon ner ärten som skulle bli en lind.

Och sedan började hon tro och längta. Hon trodde så starkt och längtade så innerligt, varje morgon när hon vaknade satte hon sig upp i bädden och lyssnade med hela sin själ utåt potatislandet efter en spelande lind och en sjungande näktergal. Men hon hörde bara hjonen snarka i sina sängar och sparvarna kvittra utanför.

(Lindgren 1959: 39–40)

While she was lying there scratching herself, she followed the path of the sun beam underneath Summer-Nisse's bed with her eyes, and then she saw something lying on the floor, something small and yellow and round. It was just a pea that had fallen out of Summer-Nisse's ripped bag, but she got the idea that she could take it instead of a seed. Perhaps this once, God in his kindness would let a linden tree sprout from a pea.

"With faith and longing it will happen", Malin thought. And she went out into the potato field and dug a hole in the earth with her bare hands, in which she placed the pea that would become a linden tree.

And then she started believing and longing. She believed so strongly and longed so utterly; each morning when she woke up, she sat up in bed and listened with her whole soul toward the potato field after a playing linden tree and a singing nightingale. But she only heard the paupers snoring in their beds and the sparrows chirping outside.

In "Little Rose and Tall Leda", the genesis of the linden tree and the singing nightingale is miraculous. At one point, Little Rose's stepmother conceives such an intense hatred for her



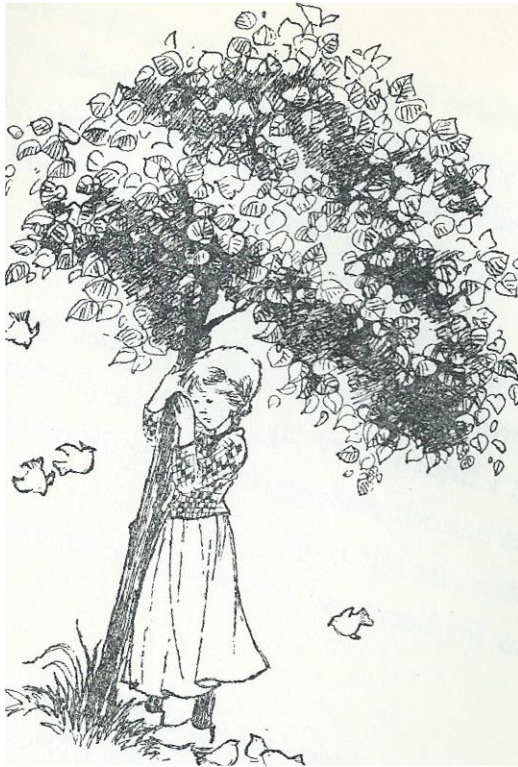
that she hires a skipper to drown Little Rose in the sea. Before this evil plan can be carried out, the ship is destroyed in a storm, and Little Rose is the sole survivor, living as a castaway on an island. One day, she finds the head and legs of a deer that has been lacerated by wild animals. She puts them on a pole to allow the birds to eat the meat. She falls asleep, and when she wakes, she hears the wondrous jingle of a linden tree, and the singing of a nightingale. They have emerged out of the carcass. (Swahn 1986: 57)

Malin has to wait for a long time before the miracle occurs, but one day a linden tree has sprouted in the potato field, and it is the most beautiful tree imaginable, with fine, tiny green leaves, beautiful little branches and a fine, straight trunk. (Lindgren 1959: 42) But there is no nightingale, and the tree is dead:

I hela Norka socken var väl ingen vaken mer än Malin, ändå kände hon att natten var full av liv. I blad och blom och gräs och träd var vårens ande levande och nära, ja, i minsta ört och strå var ande och liv. Bara linden var död. Den stod i potatislandet vacker och tyst och var död. Malin la sin hand mot stammen, då kände hon med ens hur svårt det var för linden att ensam vara utan liv och att inte få spela. Och det kom för henne, att om hon kunde ge sin ande åt det döda trädet, så skulle liv strömma in i de gröna små bladen och de fina små grenarna, och då skulle linden i ett jubel börja spela, så att alla näktergalar hörde det i alla lunder och skogar på jorden.

(Lindgren 1959: 44–46)

In the whole of Norka parish no-one except Malin was still awake, yet she felt that the night was full of life. In leaves and flowers and the grass and the trees the spirit of spring was alive and close, yes, in the smallest herb and straw there was spirit and life. Only the linden tree was dead. It was standing in the potato field, beautiful and silent, and was dead. Malin laid her hand on the trunk; then she suddenly felt how difficult it was for the linden tree, for it alone to be lifeless and not be permitted to play. And she realised that if she could give her spirit to the dead tree, life would stream into the tiny green leaves and the fine little branches, and then the linden tree would start playing in jubilation, so that all nightingales heard it in all groves and woods on Earth.



**Figure 2. Malin embraces the dead linden tree, and realises that she can give it life by surrendering her spirit to it. Courtesy of Ilon Wikland AB.**

Malin decides to give her life to the tree, and becomes one with it. This process is not explicitly described; we are simply told that Malin vanished, and that her friend Jocke Kis, who suffered from a mental disorder, used to say that he heard her voice in his head every time the linden tree played. (Lindgren 1959: 46–47)

In this story, Lindgren transposes wondertale elements into a more legend-like setting, in which the marvellous has no easy place. Malin's world is extremely prosaic, although this begins to change after her encounter with the magic of story. This experience is liminal in the sense that it creates a new space of betwixt and between in which she is transported from her old life and is en route to a new, happier existence.

The wondertale elements that are gradually inserted into the story serve to increasingly maximise the distance between the text and the legend-like elements of its generic model in order to reconstruct an existence that is tolerable for Malin, one in which she can enjoy the beauty of life by becoming beauty herself; I take this to be the universal truth embodied in the text. This means that I interpret the merging with the tree not as a simple escape from her dreary life, but as a positive form of self-transformation. At the same time, the generic framework shifts from a predominantly legend-inspired to a largely Märchen-inspired one. Yet it is not

until the very end, with the emergence of the linden tree and Malin's fusion with it, that the Märchen chronotope truly begins to displace the legendary one. When this chronotopic transformation is complete, so is Malin's.

### **Toward a Third Level of Chronotopes?**

It is now evident that the original notion I had of the impact of the oral legend on Lindgren's short stories was too simplistic. Even though both stories have legend-like qualities, particularly in the basic construction of their world as one not fully merged with the supranormal realm, the increasing domination of wondertale elements in 'My Nightingale Is Singing' undermines this initial position. The multitude of chronotopes that go into the construction of the text must be taken fully into account in order to understand Astrid Lindgren's use of folkloric chronotopes in the stories.

However, this much said, it seems that the chronotopes of the oral legend and wondertale serve to produce a different inflection to established literary chronotopes. In "The Red Bird", drawing on oral legends of the plenitude of the otherworld allows Lindgren to redefine the temporal orientation of the chronotope of historical inversion from a past- to a present-oriented one. Similarly, she undermines the orientation to the future so characteristic of the idyllic chronotope by appearing to imply that the children might remain children in the otherworld of South Meadows, rather than grow up to bear and rear their own children. This almost frozen chronotope is not unusual in oral belief legends (Ingemark 2006), and might represent another instance of how the impact of folkloric chronotopes has transformed literary ones. In "My Nightingale Is Singing", Lindgren adopts a similar strategy, but uses the oral wondertale to modify oral legend chronotopes. Here, the insertion of elements from "Little Rose and Tall Leda" have repercussions on the formation of chronotopes in the story; this indicates that the genre to which an intertext belongs is not neutral: the wondertale elements carry an aura of generic meanings into their new context, and eventually transform this context.

Notwithstanding, on the most basic level, the chronotope of the short story remains unchanged. The stories still attempt to voice a universal truth; they still privilege individual temporalities; they still owe their density to the brevity of form. The changes that do occur are situated on the level of the intersection between the chronotope of the secondary genre (the short story) and those of the primary genres that contribute to the fleshing-out of its rather abstract characteristics. I therefore suggest adding a third level of chronotopes inserted between Bakhtin's original two, the chronotopes of genres and the chronotopes of motifs. This level

could be referred to as intergeneric or intertextual, and it mediates between the other two. In his classic essay, Bakhtin does not sufficiently explain how the chronotopes of genres can change, and I perceive this as a result of the lack of a mediator between his two levels of chronotopes. In terms of the future prospects of research on folkloric chronotopes and genre, the notion of an intergeneric level of chronotopic constitution might be worth a look. This could profitably include scrutiny of the gendered nature of chronotopes, an issue I have not been able to address here.

## REFERENCES

### Sources

- Lund, Folklivsarkivet: LUF 971, LUF 1797, LUF 2354  
Lindgren, Astrid 1959. *Sunnanäng*. Stockholm: Rabén & Sjögren.  
Lindgren, Astrid 1984. *Mina påhitt – Samuel August från Sevedstorp och Hanna i Hult*. Stockholm: Rabén & Sjögren.  
Lindgren, Astrid et al. 1992. *Fyra syskon berättar*. Stockholm: Boa i Näs.  
Swahn, Jan-Öjvind 1986. *Svenska folksagor*. Stockholm: Bonniers.

### Literature

- Aelbrecht, Patricia 2013. "Le Grand Voyage": *L'expérience, l'expérience racontée et l'économie d'expérience*. Åbo Akademis förlag, Åbo.  
Bacchilega, Cristina 2012. Folklore and Literature. In Regina F. Bendix & Galit Hasan-Rokem (eds.) *Companion to Folklore*. Hoboken NJ: Wiley-Blackwell. Pp. 447–463.  
Bakhtin, M. M. 1986a. *The Dialogic Imagination. Four Essays by M. M. Bakhtin*. Ed. Michael Holquist. Trans. Caryl Emerson & Michael Holquist. Austin: University of Texas Press.  
Bakhtin, M. M. 1986b. *Speech Genres & Other Late Essays*. Austin: University of Texas Press.  
Blanton, Ryan 2011. Chronotopic Landscapes of Environmental Racism. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 21 (1): 76–93.  
Briggs, Charles L., & Richard Bauman 1992. Genre, Intertextuality, and Social Power. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 2: 131–172.  
Brown, Mary Ellen 1998. Introduction. In Mary Ellen Brown & Bruce Rosenberg (eds.) *Encyclopedia of Folklore and Literature*. Santa Barbara, Denver & Oxford: ABC-CLIO. Pp. xxxi–xli.  
de Caro, Frank & Rosan Augusta Jordan 2004. *Re-Situating Folklore. Folk Contexts and Twentieth-Century Literature and Art*. Knoxville: The University of Tennessee Press.  
Edström, Vivi 1992. *Astrid Lindgren, vildtoring och lägereld*. Stockholm: Rabén & Sjögren.  
Edström, Vivi 1996. Tu tu tu! En farlig saga om fattigdomens dagar. In Per Gustavsson (ed.) *Astrid Lindgren och folkdikten*. Stockholm: Carlssons. Pp. 49–68.  
Edström, Vivi 1997. *Astrid Lindgren och sagans makt*. Stockholm: Rabén & Sjögren.  
Falconer, Rachel 1998. Bakhtin's Chronotope and the Contemporary Short Story. *The South Atlantic Quarterly* 97 (3/4): 699–732.  
Gustafsson, Magnus 1996. I himmelen där är en stor glädje. Folklig vistradition i Astrid Lindgrens författarskap. In Per Gustavsson (ed.) *Astrid Lindgren och folkdikten*. Stockholm: Carlssons. Pp. 111–141.

- Gaare, Jørgen & Øystein Sjaastad 2004. *Världens bästa påhitt. Nya filosofiska vandringar i Astrid Lindgrens värld*. Stockholm: Natur och kultur.
- Ingemark Camilla Asplund 2004. *The Genre of Trolls. The Case of a Finland-Swedish Folk Belief Tradition*. Åbo Akademi University Press, Åbo.
- Ingemark, Camilla Asplund 2006. The Chronotope of Enchantment. *Journal of Folklore Research* 43 (1):1–30.
- af Klintberg, Bengt 1996. Skinn Skerping och Orets doter. Två exempel på gammal muntlig tradition i Astrid Lindgrens barndomsmiljö. In Per Gustavsson (ed.) *Astrid Lindgren och folkdikten*. Stockholm: Carlssons. Pp. 27–48.
- Krishnan, Madhu 2014. The Storyteller Function in Contemporary Nigerian Narrative. *The Journal of Commonwealth Literature* 49 (1): 29–45.
- Kristeva, Julia 1978: *Σημειωτική. Recherches pour une sémanalyse*. Paris: Seuil.
- Lüthi, Max 1962. *Es war einmal. Vom Wesen des Volksmärchens*. 6<sup>th</sup> ed. Göttingen.
- Lüthi, Max 1992. *Das europäische Volksmärchen. Form und Wesen*. 9<sup>th</sup> ed. Tübingen.
- Nettervik, Ingrid 1996. Illbattningen Emil. Om folkligheten i Emilböckerna. In Per Gustavsson (ed.) *Astrid Lindgren och folkdikten*. Stockholm: Carlssons. Pp. 89–110.
- Ruhnström, Leif 1996. Ene unn'lie unge. Ett samtal med tre systrar. In Per Gustavsson (ed.) *Astrid Lindgren och folkdikten*. Stockholm: Carlssons. Pp. 11–25.
- Saltkråkan 2013. *Våra verksamheter. Böcker*. [online] <http://www.saltkrakan.se/verksamhet/bocker>.
- Salvestroni, Simonetta 1997. Dialogue, the Frontier and the Chronotope in Michail Bakhtin's Thought. *Russian Literature* 41: 353–370.
- Skjelbred, Ann Helene Bolstad 1998. *Fortellinger om huldre – fortellinger om oss*. Oslo: Tano Aschehoug.
- Tarkka, Lotte 1993. Intertextuality, Rhetorics and the Interpretation of Oral Poetry. The Case of Archived Orality. In Pertti J. Anttonen & Reimund Kvideland (eds.) *Nordic Frontiers. Recent Issues in the Study of Modern Traditional Culture in the Nordic Countries*. Turku: Nordic Institute of Folklore. Pp. 165–193.
- Tarkka, Lotte 2005: *Rajarahvaan laulu. Vuokkiniemen kalevalamittainen runokulttuuri 1821–1921*. Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society.
- Waithe, Marcus 2002. News from Nowhere, Utopia and Bakhtin's Idyllic Chronotope. *Textual Practice* 16 (3): 459–472.
- Wirtz, Kristina 2011: Cuban Performances of Blackness as the Timeless Past Still Among Us. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 21 (1): 11–34.

# Genre and the Prosimetra of the Old Icelandic *fornaldarsögur*

**Helen F. Leslie**

‘Genre’ is both a fluid term and concept denoting a type or kind of literature. It surfaces as an expectation in our own reading of a literary text and may lead us to project this expectation backwards onto those who created that text. The potential gap in expectation between the creator of the text and reader is the space bridged by typologies of two kinds: one that could be said to stem directly from the texts in a descriptive fashion, and another that could be forced onto the texts prescriptively by the reader to corral the material into more easily analysed categories. The purpose of this paper is to consider the question of genre in Old Norse saga literature from the perspective of the inclusion of poetry in prose works. Focus is on the saga subgenre of the Old Icelandic *fornaldarsögur* [‘sagas of ancient times’] (sg. *fornaldarsaga*), which will be treated as a case study.

The genre terminology that modern scholarship uses to discuss Old Norse literature is, on the whole, not a medieval one. The Old Norse-Icelandic narrative form ‘saga’ is considered to be a prose genre of Old Norse literature; subgenres of the saga form include *fornaldarsögur* [‘sagas of ancient times’], *Íslendingasögur* [‘sagas of Icelanders’], *konungasögur* [‘sagas of kings’], *riddarasögur* [‘sagas of knights’], *heilagramannasögur* [‘sagas about holy people’], *biskupasögur* [‘sagas about bishops’], and *postolasögur* [‘sagas of the apostles’]. The saga subgenres are diverse in terms of content, the source of that content, and the expression of that content, and they are linked together only by the most basic criterion that they are a narrative primarily in prose, whether that is a story, history or hagiography. The subgenre designation ‘*fornaldarsögur*’ is translated variously in English as ‘legendary sagas’, ‘heroic sagas’, ‘legendary-heroic sagas’, ‘mythical-heroic sagas’, and ‘sagas of ancient times’ (the most literal translation). The variation in translations reflects the fact that the sagas contain legendary, heroic, mythical and ancient material, albeit rather mixed together. ‘*Norð(u)rlanda*’ [‘of the Northern/Nordic lands’] is sometimes appended as a clarifying element to *fornaldarsögur*, since all these tales are set in ancient Scandinavia (as opposed to Iceland, the scene of much other medieval Icelandic literature).

Medieval manuscript compilations frequently contain a mixture of the saga subgenres according to their modern designations, but nevertheless the divisions made in the saga genre by modern scholarship can to some extent be backed up by codicological evidence. Most terms

for the types of sagas employed by modern critics to study the sagas are not found in medieval times (with the notable exception of *riddarasögur* in the field of romance sagas).<sup>1</sup> However, certain codicological decisions in medieval manuscripts seem to indicate that, while Icelandic medieval scribes did not have an articulated genre system, certain types of sagas were thought to go together. Two good examples of this are books that could be described as ‘romance anthologies,’ the manuscripts AM 343a 4to and AM 471 4to, which are related vellum manuscripts from the fifteenth century. AM 343a 4to groups *fornaldarsögur* and *riddarasögur* together, and has the following contents (in manuscript order):

*Þorsteins þátrr bæjarmagns* (1r–5v); *Samsons saga fagra* (5v–14r); *Egils saga einhenda og Ásmundar berserkjabana* (14r–21v); *Flóres saga konungs og sona hans* (21v–30v); *Vilhjálmss saga sjóðs* (30v–48v); *Yngvars saga víðförla* (48v–54r); *Ketils saga hængs* (54r–57v); *Gríms saga loðinkinna* (57v–59v); *Qrvar-Odds saga* (59v–81v); *Áns saga bogsveigis* (81v–87r); *Sálus saga ok Nikanórs* (87r–98v); *Hálfðanar saga Eysteinsonar* (99r–103v); *Bósa saga* (2 fragments: the first on 103v, the second on 104); *Vilmundar saga viðutan* (105r–108r); *Perus saga meistara* (108r–110r)

Of the sixteen sagas, nine are *fornaldarsögur* and six are *riddarasögur*. AM 471 4to, on the other hand, groups *Íslendingasögur* [‘sagas of Icelanders’] together with those *fornaldarsögur* that have been described as leaning towards that subgenre, and one popular *riddarasaga*; it preserves the following sagas:

*Þórðar saga hreðu* (1r–21v); *Króka-Refs saga* (21v–36r); *Kjalnesinga saga* (36r–49r); *Ketils saga hængs* (49r–56v); *Gríms saga loðinkinna* (57r–60v); *Qrvar-Odds saga* (61r–96v); *Viktors saga ok Blávus* (96v–108v)

These are three *Íslendingasögur* (*Þórðar saga hreðu*, *Króka-Refs saga*, and *Kjalnesinga saga*), three *fornaldarsögur* and one *riddarasaga*. None of the three *Íslendingasögur* sit comfortably in that subgenre: according to Jónas Kristjánsson (2007: 239, 289), *Þórðar saga hreðu* is only an imitation of older *Íslendingasögur* and both it and *Króka-Refs saga* are entirely fictional. Meanwhile, the strong links of *Kjalnesinga saga* to the *fornaldarsögur* have been noted (Jónas Kristjánsson 2007: 286). The compiler of the manuscript likely collected the sagas in the manuscript together for this reason.

---

<sup>1</sup> Note that here I use the term ‘romance’ in the sense of a collective designation for *fornaldarsögur* and *riddarasögur*. It refers to their mode of expression and is not a genre term in itself. Later in the article, ‘romance’ is used as a term to denote a subdivision of the *fornaldarsaga* subgenre; when it should be understood thus ought to be clear.

In other instances too, medieval feelings of suitable sagas to collect together closely mirror our own. Such is the case with Möðruvallabók (AM 132 fol.) from the mid-fourteenth century, a manuscript that contains eleven *Íslendingasögur* arranged topographically, some of which are extant in their complete form only here. As a collection, this codex even to some extent defines the *Íslendingasaga* subgenre. (Cf. Sigurður Nordal 1953: 180; Clover 1982: 57; Jónas Kristjánsson 2007: 208). Manuscript collections of *konungasögur* too, such as Morkinskinna, Fagrskinna and Flateyjarbók, also indicate that medieval Icelandic compilers sometimes directly employed what we would acknowledge to be genre divisions, in the case of the compilations of kings' sagas, a division perhaps enforced by the expectations of their royal audiences. Although typologies are not explicit in such codices, they are suggested, and the apparent sense of the manuscript compilers concerning which texts went together seem to have intuited some of our own divisions.

'*Fornaldarsaga Norðurlanda*' is not a medieval term but rather was coined by the Dane Carl Christian Rafn (1795–1864), who first collected together thirty-two similar sagas from manuscripts and published them under that title in his three volume edition of 1829–1830 in Copenhagen.<sup>2</sup> His rationale in selecting the sagas was to assemble those “er orðit hafa hér á Norðrlöndum, áðr enn Island bygðist á 9du öld” (Rafn 1829–1830 I: v) [‘which are set here in the Nordic countries before Iceland was settled in the ninth century’].<sup>3</sup> To all intents and purposes these criteria remain unchanged and the subgenre label *fornaldarsaga* has stuck: “time has proved it an apt term” (Torfi H. Tulinius 2007: 447). The sagas and *þættir* [‘short tales’] (sg. *þáttr*) making up the *fornaldarsögur* corpus are those then that take place in Scandinavia before the settlement of Iceland (and thus before, as Torfi H. Tulinius notes, the unification of Norway by Haraldr hárfagri), and so what separates the *fornaldarsögur* from “other sagas is their chronological and geographical setting” (Torfi H. Tulinius 2007: 447).

A premise of my argument in this paper is that I accept that the genre typologies in Old Norse literature (typologies not used as such by the medieval authors),<sup>4</sup> are indeed useful analytical

---

<sup>2</sup> This is counting what Rafn titles *Frá Fornjóti ok hans ættmönnum* as two texts, since it is made up of *Hversu Noregr byggðist* and *Fundinn Noregr*.

<sup>3</sup> Guðni Jónsson published several editions of the *fornaldarsögur* corpus based on Rafn's edition with several texts added. All quotations from the *fornaldarsögur* in this paper are from the three volume edition he published with Bjarni Vilhjálmsson in 1943–1944. All translations from Old or Modern Icelandic are my own.

<sup>4</sup> Any evidence that can be gleaned from the medieval sources themselves has usually held to be preferable to the modern genre categories that could be seen as being imposed on the medieval material; unfortunately the sources offer very little in the way of establishing a set of genre norms. Lars Lönnroth in his 1975 article “The Concept



tools, which nevertheless can be refined. These constructed genre groupings are useful to modern critics because they group the sagas into manageable units for study, and because they prompt us to identify similarities and differences between sagas, which can suggest research questions into the relationships between the saga subgenres. The manner in which this paper seeks to approach genre is as a generative system of prescriptive elements and features within the vernacular culture that are seen as belonging together, with poetry in particular focus as one element in the genre system of the saga that can be employed or not. Many of the saga subgenres contain poetry, particularly the *fornaldarsögur*, *Íslendingasögur* and *konungasögur*, but use diverse poetry in different ways. The other saga subgenres do not habitually contain verse. The role of poetry in the sagas has been used profitably to open avenues of questioning on the narrative roles of verse in the different saga subgenres and about the development of the sagas. The examination of the role of verse in sagas also ought to allow us to probe the similarities and differences between sagas in the same subgenre, for example, whether verse is present and what narrative function it fulfils in the prose narrative. This article argues that the presence or absence of verse has a fundamental role in the question of genre in the *fornaldarsögur*, and that the absence of poetry in some sagas depends on the fact that they are influenced by the *riddarasögur*, a genre with a different origin lacking verse.

The question of generic classification and the sagas' use of verse is an important one for the study of the *fornaldarsögur*, since discussion of the origin of the *fornaldarsögur* often revolves around how the sagas in the subgenre evolved out of material originally transmitted in eddic metre, their written prosimetric form being a reflection and development of this.<sup>5</sup> It could be noted here that these arguments pertain only to the *fornaldarsögur* and not to the *Íslendingasögur*, which are posited as having a different development trajectory with regards to how verse may have influenced their development, and the *Íslendingasögur* that lack verse probably date from the same time and have the same origin as those with verse. Nevertheless, the role in the narrative that verse plays in these two saga subgenres is naturally comparable.

I wish to take issue with the weight given to poetry as responsible for the development of the *fornaldarsögur*, since around half the sagas commonly included in the corpus do not contain

---

of Genre Literature" defends his approach in this vein (one first published in detail 1964), against Joseph Harris's criticism of paying attention to medieval terms to look for suitable labels or approaches to genre classification (1972).

<sup>5</sup> For a debate on many of the issues touched upon here, see "Interrogating Genre in the *Fornaldarsögur*: Round-Table Discussion" (2006).

verse. The established corpus of *fornaldarsögur* and related *þættir* have thus been determined by Rafn (in his edition of 1829–1830), and later by Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (in their edition of 1943–1944), who expanded the corpus slightly, and runs thus:

***Prose only fornaldarsögur (15 sagas)***

*Af Upplendinga konungum*

*Frá Fornjóti ok hans ættmönnum*<sup>7</sup>

*Hálfðanar saga Brönuþóstra*

*Hálfðanar saga Eysteinssonar*

*Egils saga einhenda ok Ásmundar berserkjabana*

*Hrólfs saga Gautrekssonar*

*Hrómundar saga Gripssonar*

*Illuga saga Gríðarfóstra*

*Sturlaugs saga starfsama*

*Sögubrot af nokkrum fornkonungum í Dana ok Svíaveldi*

*Sörla saga sterka*

*Tóka þáttur Tókasonar*

*Yngvars saga víðförla*

*Þorsteins saga Víkingssonar*

*Þorsteins þáttur bæjarmagns*

***Prosimetric fornaldarsögur (19 sagas)***<sup>6</sup>

*Áns saga bogsveigis* (5)

*Ásmundar saga kappabana* (8)

*Bósa saga ok Herrauðs* (9)

*Friðþjóðs saga ins frækna* (30)

*Gautreks saga* (35)

*Gríms saga loðinkinna* (7)

*Hrólfs saga kraka ok kappa hans* (11)

*Hálfs saga ok Hálfsrekka* (78)

*Helga þáttur Þórissonar* (1)

*Hervarar saga ok Heiðreks*<sup>8</sup> (95)

*Hjálmþes saga ok Ölvis* (46)

*Ketils saga hængs* (42)

*Norna-Gests þáttur* (27)

*Ragnars saga loðbrókar* (41)

*Sörla þáttur*<sup>9</sup> (1)

*Völsunga saga* (30)

*Þáttur af Ragnarssonum*<sup>10</sup> (9)

*Örvar-Odds saga* (146)

*Göngu-Hrólfs saga* (3)

At the very least, the reason for the absence of verse from half the standard corpus ought to be considered. This area of investigation has been overlooked in favour of debating the fuzzy fringes of the subgenre (for example, whether *Ynglinga saga*, which begins the great

<sup>6</sup> The numbers in brackets after the title of the saga is the number of stanzas that the saga contains, according to the three volume collection edited by Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (1943–1944). Cf. my discussion of the selection of the corpus below.

<sup>7</sup> *Frá Fornjóti ok hans ættmönnum* could be counted as two sagas, since it is made up of two shorter pieces, *Hversu Noregr byggðist* and *Fundinn Noregr*.

<sup>8</sup> Also known as *Heiðreks saga konungs ok Hervarar*.

<sup>9</sup> Also known as *Héðins saga ok Högna* or *Högna saga Hálfðanarsonar*.

<sup>10</sup> Also known as *Ragnarssona þáttur*.

compilation of *konungasögur Heimskringla*, might be a *fornaldarsaga*),<sup>11</sup> and consequently there have been few reflections on the role of poetry in determining the generic status of the core body of texts.

### **The *fornaldarsögur* Corpus**

According to the most widely used criteria to make divisions in Old Norse saga literature, the *fornaldarsögur* are grouped as sagas set in pre-Christian Scandinavia before the settlement of Iceland; additional descriptive factors are that they contain many supernatural characters and episodes, and that the sagas contain poetry in the eddic metre. Other attempts to distinguish the *fornaldarsögur* from other saga genres are more descriptive in nature, and often include observations that they have “traditional heroes, eddic-style poetry, wide-ranging geography, and occasional trips to the Otherworld,” (Mitchell 1991: 13), or describe the sagas as “fictional,” “fantastic,” and “stories told for pure entertainment,” in order to juxtapose them with the realism of the *Íslendingasögur* (Lönnroth 1975: 419–420). The latter statements are particularly unhelpful in this regard, since they deal not so much with the text itself, but rather with the reaction of the audience to the text (Bibire 1982: 55).

A useful starting point in a discussion of genre and corpus context in terms of the definition of the *fornaldarsögur* is that proposed by Stephen Mitchell, which he calculates to include distinguishing characteristics of the *fornaldarsögur* but not those aspects that they share with other saga subgenres:

*fornaldarsögur*: Old Icelandic prose narratives based on traditional heroic themes, whose numerous fabulous episodes and motifs create an atmosphere of unreality. (Mitchell 1991: 27.)

We may take each of these prescriptive elements in turn. Whilst the supernatural is certainly central to the *fornaldarsögur*, this is not a definite criterion that alone can divide the sagas from other subgenres. Other saga subgenres, such as the *Íslendingasögur*, contain a great number of supernatural episodes, and, as I have argued elsewhere, “their narrative worlds are rooted in our reality” and they blend “the gritty realism of the *Íslendingasögur* [...] smoothly with fantastic occurrences, supernatural beings and a multitude of Other Worlds” (Leslie 2009: 119). The characteristic of the *fornaldarsögur* being based on “traditional heroic themes” must be

---

<sup>11</sup> For the relationship of *Ynglinga saga* to the *fornaldarsögur* see, for example, Mitchell 1991: 18, 104; Jørgensen 2009; Mundal 2009.

qualified; as Matthew Driscoll notes, only some of the *fornaldarsögur* have a basis in the older heroic tradition (such as *Völsunga saga* and *Hervarar saga ok Heiðreks*), and have been accorded merit on that basis. Others, such as *Egils saga einhenda ok Ásmundar berserkjabana* and *Bósa saga ok Herrauðs*, are clearly not related to an old heroic tradition in origin or theme, rather being closer to the romance tradition, and their literary qualities have been derided. (Driscoll 2009: 72.) I might add that these narratives are not wholly prose: like most other saga genres described as prosaic, they are in fact prosimetric, that is, they contain a good deal of verse interspersed in the prose (for an overview of Old Norse prosimetric tendencies, see Harris 1997; Leslie 2013). More specifically, whereas the *Íslendingasögur* and *konungasögur* contain large amounts of skaldic verse, the *fornaldarsögur* contain mainly eddic verse, suggesting an immediate connection in their development with the eddic tradition (Torfi H. Tulinius 2007: 448). We can conclude from this that although all of the elements that Mitchell identifies can indeed be found in the *fornaldarsögur*, they can be found in various permutations and not necessarily all in the same saga. This must suggest a flexibility in generative production and expression in the use of defining elements, rather than binary oppositions at play in the construction of sagas. This leads to the question of whether the presence or absence of poetry should play a role in discussing the limits and formation of the *fornaldarsaga* subgenre and potentially classifications within it. Although the *fornaldarsögur* will be the focus here, I will make reference to other saga subgenres in order to orient the discussion.

### **Eddic Poetry and the Development of the *fornaldarsögur***

The corpus of Old Icelandic poetry is customarily divided into kinds of poetry referred to ‘eddic’ and ‘skaldic’.<sup>12</sup> Different subgenres of saga contain a predominance of one kind of

---

<sup>12</sup> Although Kristján Árnason concludes in his study of the Old Norse poetic metres that “Eddic and skaldic poetry coexisted in a tradition which made use of essentially the same rhymical means” (1991: 172), metre is one good dividing mechanism between the different types of poetry: the skaldic form is the stricter of the two, the eddic form far more relaxed in terms of rhythm and variation in the number of syllables, although still with regular alliteration (Kristján Árnason 1991: 45; for a full overview of the metrics of eddic and skaldic verse, see Mundal 2004: 224–231 and 246–247). The standard metre of skaldic poetry is *dróttkvætt* [‘court metre’], which has a six syllable line. Like skaldic poetry, eddic poetry is stanzaic, although the stanzas are of irregular length. Eddic poetry is also characterised by alliteration and formulaicity. The most common eddic metre is *fornyrðislag* [‘ancient story metre’]; other eddic metres are *málháttur* [‘speech metre’], *ljóðaháttur* [‘song metre’] and *galdralag* [‘spell metre’]. However, ‘eddic’ and ‘skaldic’ denote both a metre and a style of poetry, and there is no eddic-style poetry extant in *dróttkvætt* (a skaldic metre) (Clunies-Ross 2005: 21). Skaldic-style verse is often in a skaldic metre, however Margeret Clunies Ross (2005: 22, following Anthony Faulkes 1999: 83) has pointed out that *fornyrðislag* (an eddic metre) is the second most common metre in the corpus of skaldic poetry published by Finnur Jónsson (1912–1915), and consequently the metre cannot be the sole determining factor for whether a stanza is eddic or skaldic.

It is thus common to use a number of formal and functional criteria to distinguish between eddic and skaldic poetry (Gade 1995: 1), summarised here (see Hollander 1945: 1–2, 18; Turville-Petre 1976: xii–xvii; Gade 1995:

verse: the *Íslendingasögur* and the *konungasögur* contain mainly skaldic verse, while the prosimetric *fornaldarsögur* contain mainly eddic-style poetry.

It cannot be assumed that the eddic poetry found in some *fornaldarsögur* is older than the prose narratives that hosts it. The poetry in the *fornaldarsögur* is often portrayed to be spoken by a legendary figure from the distant past, and eddic poetry is affiliated in nature with ancient times. In purporting to be spoken by legendary figures, the poetry is claiming to be ancient, and although we cannot be certain of the actual age of most eddic poetry, it seems some of poems are indeed old (Clunies Ross 2005: 11). *Hljóðskviða* (known in English as *The Battle of the Goths and the Huns*) from *Hervarar saga* (Heusler & Ranisch 1903: 1–12), *The Death Song of Hildibrandr* from *Ásmundar saga kappabana* (Heusler & Ranisch 1903: 53–54), and *Víkarsbálkar* from *Gautreks saga* (Heusler & Ransich 1903: 38–43) are thought to be amongst the oldest Old Norse poetry (Clunies Ross 2005: 11). Otherwise, it is difficult to tell whether poetry in the *fornaldarsögur* is older than the prose that contains it, or whether it is the same age. The *fornaldarsögur* are preserved predominantly in manuscripts from the fifteenth century onwards. The manuscript *Hauksbók*, dated by Stefán Karlsson to the first decade of the fourteenth century (1964), contains a version of *Hervarar saga* and the *Þáttur af Ragnarssonum*, which indicates *fornaldarsaga* material was written down by then.

From manuscript evidence, it seems that the *fornaldarsögur* could date no further back than the late twelfth century, but it is very likely that the sagas circulated in some form in oral tradition well before then and that verses were central to these oral texts.<sup>13</sup> The oft quoted wedding-feast which took place at Reykhólar in 1119 from *Þorgils saga ok Hafliða* tells that a

---

1–2): on the whole, verse in eddic metre and eddic style is anonymous, whereas verse in the skaldic style is rarely anonymous. Eddic poetry is often not set in a particular period of time, or focuses on events from the past, whereas skaldic-style verse focuses on contemporary events. Eddic poetry tends to treat heroic, gnomic and mythological themes, whereas skaldic-style verse frequently praises, honours or eulogises a chieftain or a ruler. The content of eddic poetry is “common property, rooted in oral tradition” (Gade 1995: 2), whereas skalds were conscious of the creative process and tried to leave their mark on the stanzas. Eddic poetry relates the heroic and mythological themes in a fairly straight-forward style, whereas skaldic-style poetry uses the same mythological and heroic themes as the basis for complex kennings. While skaldic metre counts syllables, the eddic form is in ‘free’ measures; stresses and not syllables or line-endings are counted. The eddic metres *fornyrðislag* and *málaháttur* developed so that syllables did begin to be counted; this was probably under the influence of the skalds (Turville-Petre 1976: xiii). Likewise, the older poetry is frequently not in strophe form or in loose strophe form with strophes of varying lengths, and this developed into an eight line strophe with a deep caesura after the fourth line, also probably under the influence of the skalds (Turville-Petre 1976: xiii; for an alternative view, see Kristján Árnason 2006), since skaldic metre is in strict strophe form.

<sup>13</sup> In addition to the scene from *Þorgils saga ok Hafliða* discussed below, the inclusion of *fornaldarsögur* type material in Saxo Grammaticus’s *Gesta Danorum* from around 1200 shows that such material was in oral tradition across Scandinavia. See Bjarni Guðnason 1981.

saga was delivered and *margar vísur með* (Brown 1952: ch. 10, 18) [‘many stanzas accompanying it’] that seems to be a lost version of *Hrómundar saga Gripssonar*. The saga as extant is from the seventeenth century, not prosimetric and based on *rímur*, so clearly the twelfth century version was somewhat different, if the source is to be believed.<sup>14</sup> In the same account, it also says that *Ingimundr prestr sagði sögu Orms Barreyjarskálds ok vísur margar ok flokk góðan við enda sögunnar, er Ingimundr hafði ortan* (Brown 1952: ch. 10, 18) [‘Ingimundr the priest told the story of Ormr Barreyjarskáld and many verses and a good *flokkr* (poem) at the end of the saga, which Ingimundr had composed’]. Ursula Brown [Dronke] describes these oral sagas’ likely format as “verses set in a simple narrative framework of prose” (1952: 75), and Mitchell has suggested that this is likely to have been the origin for many of the *fornaldarsögur*: traditional poetic material transformed into prose sagas, an argument that would also explain the genre’s distinct preference for eddic rather than skaldic poetry (Mitchell 1991: 67, 72). Anne Holtmark’s widely accepted theory from 1965 is that the prose passages likely first accompanied the verses in *fornaldarsaga*-like oral material for explanatory reasons and provided context, much like the apparent purpose of the prose passages that appear around many of the poems in the collection of eddic poetry found in manuscript GkS 2365 4to, the Codex Regius of the *Poetic Edda*,<sup>15</sup> and it was the enlargement of these verses in the *fornaldarsaga* material that eventually formed the prosimetric *fornaldarsaga* as we have it today. A similar process is envisaged by Lars Lönnroth, who conceives of the verses of a *fornaldarsaga* as the “nucleus” around which the saga would be built up (1979: 105). The foremost theories of *fornaldarsögur* development thus all propound that verse was the primary element in the development of the saga form, and that the existence of the prose portions of the saga is dependent on the presence of the verse in the first instance. However, this does not explain the sizable number of sagas that contain little or no verse.

### **The Role of Verse in the Prose Sagas**

The *fornaldarsögur* containing both prose and verse are termed ‘prosimetric’. The prose-verse mixed form in Old Norse Icelandic texts preserves much of our extant skaldic and eddic poetry from the medieval period. This literary form was apparently established long before being

---

<sup>14</sup> *Borgils saga ok Hafliða* is from the fourth decade of the thirteenth century (Brown 1952: 17–18), and it has been questioned whether a saga composed so long after an event claimed to have happened in the early twelfth century is valid evidence for the claims made about the saga in the seventeenth. See Foote 1953–1956; Jesch 1984.

<sup>15</sup> The manuscript from c.1270 preserves eleven mythological and eighteen heroic poems in eddic metres. Two short pieces only in prose accompany the poems (known as *Dráp Niflunga* and *Frá dauða Sinfjötla*).

committed to writing (Kuhn 1952: 276–277; Poole 1991: 23), and is termed ‘prosimetrum’ after its service in describing a similarly mixed classical form, most notably menippean satire and Boethius’s *Consolatio Philosophiae* (Dronke 1994). As such, the term ‘prosimetrum’ does not indicate what one might expect to find in terms of narrative content, and its generic applications are diverse.

Typically, there are thought to be two roles played by verse in Old Norse prose: evidence-based quotations or verses in a situational role (O’Donoghue 2005; Phelpstead 2008: 25, 35 n.12). Bjarni Einarsson, however, has a slightly different classification, preferring to divide verses into one group of evidence based stanzas and a second group of story stanzas, those that are considered part of the story (Bjarni Einarsson 1974: 118). This implies two different opinions on whether the verses carry the narrative, because although evidence stanzas can be skipped without damaging the content, if one skips story stanzas the understanding of the context as a whole is damaged, largely because story stanzas are usually a versified reply to a question (Bjarni Einarsson 1974: 118, 122). The latter type of prosimetric verse has also been termed ‘ornamental,’ but, as Heather O’Donoghue points out, the narrative function of situational or non-narrative carrying non-corroborative verse exceeds that of merely ornamental (2005: 5–6).

The role of verse in the prose differs between saga subgenres. In the *konungasögur*, stanzas are chiefly quoted as evidence, but in the *Íslendingasögur* this is rarely the case, where they function mainly as entertainment. Similarly, in the contemporary sagas, stanzas are chiefly quoted for entertainment (80% of the time), rather than evidence (20% of the time). (Bjarni Einarsson 1974: 118–119, 121). Bjarni Einarsson emphasises that in the *fornaldarsögur*, verse is used as evidence far more commonly than in *Íslendingasögur* (1974: 124), whereas Karsten Friis-Jensen emphasises that the prosimetric form is displayed in the abundance of versified dialogue in the *fornaldarsögur* (1987: 46). Either way, such verses in the *fornaldarsögur* may, of course, be wholly fictitious (invented by the saga author), or made up by the story-teller if it originally were an oral saga (Bjarni Einarsson 1974: 124). Certainly evidence-based quotations of verse make up a clear category if one needs to define the obvious roles of the verse in their prose contexts; the idea that some verses are story verses and thus carry narrative is an important one, although they are not in the majority in the *fornaldarsögur*; the last useful category however – dialogue verses – are common in *fornaldarsögur*.

### **Divisions of the *fornaldarsaga* Subgenre**

Rafn's selection of sagas, made on the basis of the saga being set in the Nordic lands before the settlement of Iceland (Rafn 1829–1830 I: v), established a corpus that, in practical terms, remains largely unchanged today.<sup>16</sup> The normal genre grouping has been challenged on the grounds that the sagas fulfilling the criteria of being set in ancient Scandinavia before the settlement of Iceland are, in fact, rather dissimilar to each other (Torfi H. Tulinius 2007: 448). Nevertheless, this has not prevented several studies that analyse the *fornaldarsögur* as though they were a cohesive group in terms of content.<sup>17</sup> Scholars have attempted to compensate for the genre's lack of internal cohesiveness by dividing the corpus into subcategories, the most enduringly popular being Helga Reuschel's 1933 division of the corpus into *Heldensagas* ['Heroic sagas'], *Wikingersagas* ['Viking sagas'], and *Abenteuersagas* ['Adventure sagas'], subdivisions that became entrenched by Kurt Schier's adoption of them in his 1970 handbook (86–91).

Reuschel creates her sub-groups on the basis of important aspects of the material and content of the *fornaldarsögur*: they come out of heroic legends and traditions, stories of Viking travellers, myth and folktales, and influences from continental romance traditions (Torfi H. Tulinius 2007: 448–449). Heroic sagas / legends and adventure stories of heroes are set at two extremes of content, with Viking tales in between. Certainly, the *fornaldarsögur* are in many ways a hybrid genre in terms of their use of material, pulling elements, motifs and structures from various sources (including folkloric, heroic, and wholly invented material), yet combining them in a manner that makes the resulting saga recognisable as belonging to the subgenre (cf. Lönnroth 2003).

### **The Prosimetric *fornaldarsögur***

Reuschel's divisions of the *fornaldarsögur* into three categories broadly coincides with the presence or absence of verse in the sagas. It can be observed clearly that the *Heldensagas* and *Wikingersagas* contain the most poetry, something I will return to below. The internal genre system of the *fornaldarsögur* devised by Elizabeth Ashman Rowe is another useful tool with

---

<sup>16</sup> Although the additions made by Guðni Jónsson are by and large accepted; see above and cf. Driscoll 2009: 73–74.

<sup>17</sup> For example Righter-Gould's study of the structure of *fornaldarsögur* (1980) and Hallberg's treatment of the *fornaldarsögur* as a corpus (1982). Righter-Gould's conclusions have been criticized by Marianne Kalinke as her findings are equally applicable to the *riddarasögur*, although from the point of view of genre development, this makes Righter-Gould's results even more interesting in themselves.



which to examine the prosimetric sagas, since it allows sagas containing similar narrative material to be considered together. She divides the *fornaldarsögur* into five groups: genealogical sagas and regnal lists; sagas of Germanic heroes and Scandinavian mythology; kings' sagas; family sagas, and romances (1990: 26). The distribution of the prosimetric sagas across these groups is thus: no genealogical sagas or regnal lists have verse; all sagas regarding Germanic heroic or mythological material contain verse; likewise, all the family *fornaldarsögur* are prosimetric and almost all the sagas linked with *konungasögur* contain at least one stanza. By and large, the romances do not contain verse, with the notable exceptions of *Gautreks saga* and *Hálfs saga ok Hálfsrekka*.

It is the content not the expressive style of the narrative of those texts in the category 'genealogies and regnal lists' that generically link them with the *fornaldarsaga* subgenre. Given the genealogical or list form of the sagas fall into the first group (genealogies and regnal lists), it is unsurprising that they do not contain interspersed verse: the narratives are very compressed and concise, for example: *Nú skal segja dæmi til, hversu Noregr byggðist í fyrstu eða hversu konunga ættir hófust þar eða í öðrum löndum eða hví þeir heita Skjöldungar, Buðlungar, Bragningar, Öðlingar, Völsungar eða Niflungar, sem konunga ættirnar eru af komnar* (*Hversu Noregr Byggðist*. ch. 1, 137) ['Now the story be told of how Norway was settled in the beginning or how the generations of kings dwelt there or in other lands or why they are called Skjöldungar, Buðlungar, Bragningar, Öðlingar, Völsungar or Niflungar, from whom the generations of kings came']. Clunies Ross has demonstrated the importance of genealogies to *fornaldarsögur* writers (1993), and, as I have argued elsewhere, the sagas in this small group share strong concerns in establishing the worldview of the *fornaldarsögur* with the other members of their genre (Leslie 2008), both prosimetric and pure prose.

Next we might consider another set of short texts that contain eddic verse that is not structurally significant. Of the *fornaldarsögur* relating to kings sagas, three are prosimetric: *Helga þáttur Þórissonar*, *Norna-Gests þáttur* and *Sörla þáttur*. All the texts in this category are *þættir*, and appear embedded in longer sagas about kings, *konungasögur*. These short texts can thus be viewed as hybrids that straddle two saga subgenres. Their affinity to the *fornaldarsögur* is granted by their inclusion of eddic verse as well as motifs familiar from the *fornaldarsögur*. The *konungasögur* predominantly employ skaldic verse in an evidence-based role. That the eddic stanzas in the *þættir* are predominantly used as dialogue or situational stanzas serves to highlight these embedded tales from their larger context in the kings' sagas that contain them.

In *Norna-Gests þátr*, the narrative is built predominantly around quotations of other poems containing Völsung material, although they are all used as dialogue or situational stanzas rather than as evidence (the use of the verses in *Völsunga saga* is divided between evidence and dialogue). The single stanza in *Helga þátr Þórissonar*, preserved in Flateyjarbók, is a situational stanza spoken by Óláfr Tryggvason. It is characteristic of stanzas that function as dialogue in the *fornaldarsögur* to be versified replies to a question, but not so here: the king's stanza is very much a comment on the narrative happenings:

Konungr lætr fylla hornin Gríma af góðum drykk ok lætr byskup blessa ok lét færa þeim Grímum, at þeir drykki fyrst af. Þá kvað konungr vísu þessa:

Gestir skulu hornum  
í gegn taka,  
meðan hvílast látum þenna  
þegn Guðmundar,  
ok af samnafna  
sínnum drekki;  
svá skal Grímum  
gott öl gefast.

Þá taka Grímar við hornunum ok þykkjast nú vita, hvat byskup hefir yfir lesit drykkinum. Þeir segja þá: “Eigi ferr nú fjarri því, sem Guðmundr, konungr várr, gat til. Er þessi konungr prettótt ok kann illa gott at launa, því at konungr várr gerði til hans sæmiliga. Stöndum nú upp allir ok verðum í brottu heðan.” (*Helga þátr Þórissonar*, ch. 2, 424).

The king has the horns Grímr and Grímr filled with good drink, and has the bishop bless them and had them brought to the men Grímr and Grímr, so that they could drink first. Then the king said this verse:

Guests shall take the horns while they get to rest, Guðmundr's thanes, and drink from their namesakes, so shall the Grímrs be given good beer.

Then the Grímrs took the horns and now it occurred to them what the bishop has read over the drinks. Then they say: “now it's not far from what Guðmundr, our king, supposed. This king is deceitful, and can reward good with evil when our king deserves his honourable treatment. Everyone stand up now and get away from here!

The metre of the stanza is (eddic) *fornyrðislag*, as is normal in *fornaldarsögur*, although the kings' sagas, where this stanza is preserved, usually contain skaldic verse. Only in *Sörla þátr* is the role of the single *haðarlag* stanza<sup>18</sup> evidence-based. The diverse use of eddic verse in

---

<sup>18</sup> *Haðarlag* is a simple metre somewhat in between eddic and skaldic measures; it has been described as *málaháttr* with *dróttkvætt* rhymes (Turville-Petre 1976: xxxiv–xxxv). It is most well-known for its use in *Hrafnsmál*.

these *þættir* demonstrates the aesthetic capabilities of poetry to embellish narratives, as well as being an element that contribute to the classification of the *þættir* as *fornaldarsögur*.

The sagas in the category ‘Germanic Heroic Legends and Scandinavian Mythology’ are all prosimetric, but exhibit markedly different developmental trajectories when it comes to the formulation of the narratives that include verse. Nevertheless, it is sagas like these that gave rise to theories like that of Holtsmark (1965), who argues that the *fornaldarsögur* developed out of heroic poetry (see above). It is nonetheless important to notice that while all of these sagas may have developed from poetry to some extent, they did so under different impulses. The stanzas of *Völsunga saga*, for example, are citations of verse material known from elsewhere; the saga author has thus structured his prose around quotations and this prose is clearly dependant on poetry, rather than prose and verse existing in a more symbiotic relationship (cf. Finch 1962–1965). The prose and verse of *Hervarar saga*, on the other hand, while generally intensely prosimetric, has a substantial inset poem *Hervarkviða* [‘A Poem about Hervör’], which is versiprose, that is, it has substantially more verse than prose in its description of Hervör raising her dead father, Angantýr (ch. 4, 198–203). In contrast to *Völsunga saga*, it must be noted that the verse is not preserved elsewhere and thus it cannot be conclusively determined whether the *Hervararkviða* poetry was in written circulation before its inclusion in the saga. The riddle section at the end of the saga is very different, in which the god Odin, calling himself Gestumblindi, challenges king Heiðrekr’s wisdom: the riddles are posed in verse and answered in prose. There is nothing to suggest that the answers were ever preserved in verse. The verse and prose of this section are thus organically linked. From this, it cannot be argued that all of the prosimetric *fornaldarsögur* share the same developmental trajectory any more than it can be said that the sagas with and without verse are similar in terms of origin.

The *fornaldarsögur* in Rowe’s category ‘family sagas’ (*Ketils saga hængs*, *Gríms saga loðinkinna*, *Örvar-Odds saga*, and *Áns saga bogsveigis*), are presumably categorised thus because they all deal with the same family descended from Hallbjörn hálftröll of the island of Hrafnista in Norway.<sup>19</sup> The Hrafnista sagas are all prosimetric, but they also all use the poetry in slightly different ways. *Ketils saga hængs* contains rather many verses (42 in the 1943 edition), and predominantly uses the verses as dialogue. A good example is the spirited

---

<sup>19</sup> See *Ketils saga hængs*, ch. 1, 246.

exchange between Ketill and a hag (1943: 259–226, and which can be found edited separately by Heusler & Ranisch 1903: 80–82). *Gríms saga loðinkinna* contains only seven verses, five of them also in a run of dialogue (ch. 1, 270–272) between Grímr and two troll women. The remaining two stanzas are situational stanzas spoken to commemorate the slaying of twelve berserkers, introduced with *Pá kvað Grímr vísu* [‘Then Grímr spoke a verse’], followed by *Ok enn kvað hann* [‘And yet he said’] (ch. 3, 278), to indicate a continuation of the stanza sequence, a relatively common conjoining phrase found within runs of stanzas spoken by the same character (see also, for example, *Örvar-Odds saga* ch. 14, 325).

*Örvar-Odds saga* in its longest redaction contains 146 verses, by far the most of any of the *fornaldarsögur*. The saga is more like the Germanic Heroic Legends (for example *Hervarar saga*), in how the poetic materials are employed in the saga narrative. This is because the stanzas are generally employed in very specific contexts rather than as stanzas simply dotted here and there as dialogue (*lausavísur*) (although see *Örvar-Odds saga* 1943: 302–303 for two stanzas used as such, and also: ch. 18, 340 spoken by a giantess; ch. 23, 356–357 for stanzas spoken by the evil Ögmundr).

An exchange in verse form between Hjálmar, Oddr and Angantýr in *Örvar-Odds saga* echoes in tone the exchange between Hervör and a shepherd in *Hervarar saga* (ch. 4, 199–200). In both *Örvar-Odds saga* and *Hervarar saga*, these exchanges are followed by groups of stanzas that seem to form standalone poems, poems that could be considered formal units and building blocks of the sagas. In *Örvar-Odds saga*, it is followed by a section known as Hjálmar’s death song, metrical last words that the hero Hjálmar recites as he dies (Heusler & Ranisch 1903: 49–53; *Örvar-Odds saga* ch. 14, 327–330).<sup>20</sup> In *Hervarar saga*, the scene with a poetic exchange between Hervör and a shepherd is followed by *Hervararkviða*, the poem mentioned above in which Hervör raises her dead father. Also of note is the section known as Örvar-Oddr’s drinking contest (following the title of an essay by Lars Lönnroth), a *mannjafnaðr* [‘comparison of men’] that Lönnroth (1979: 109) proposes as a candidate for the “traditional nucleus” from which at least part of the saga could have developed. This is because it summarises much of Oddr’s life, but the same is true of Örvar-Oddr’s death song, a lengthy poem recited by Oddr as he dies, summarising all the escapades and friends of his long life (*Örvar-Odds saga* 1943: 391–398). As in *Ketils saga hængs* and *Gríms saga loðinkinna*,

---

<sup>20</sup> *Hervarar saga* also contains Hjálmar’s death song. See Heusler & Ranisch 1903: xxxvii–xliv.

*Örvar-Odds saga* also has an exchange between the protagonist and a supernatural creature (ch. 29, 382–384), this time a pagan priestess who can shoot arrows out of all her fingers (ch. 29, 382). The saga closes with the death song, which is conceived of as a poem in itself by the saga prose: *ok er lokit var kvæðinu...* (ch. 32, 398) [‘and when the poem was finished...’]. The final poem also has stanzas that frame the recounting of Oddr’s life that anchors the poem in the present context of the saga narrative.

*Áns saga bogsveigis* continues the family line as the final saga in the cycle of the *Hrafnistumannasögur* [‘sagas of the men of Hrafnista’], as he is descended from the daughter of Ketill hængur, and is the generation after Örvar-Oddr.<sup>21</sup> Although references to the men of Hrafnista can seem somewhat superficial in the saga,<sup>22</sup> there is enough evidence surviving externally in the genealogical tradition, likely to have been preserved orally, to demonstrate that Án really was considered to be part of the clan at the time the *fornaldarsögur* were written down as well as earlier (see Leslie 2010). The prosimetric structure of the saga is however somewhat different from those commemorating his forbearers. The saga contains only five stanzas. The first stanza is a *dans* stanza, the lyrical first stanza of a *rímur*, and it is used in the saga prose as situational verse, introduced with *Án kvað þá vísu* (ch. 4, 410) [‘Án spoke a verse’]. While the first stanza has the metre of *rímur*, the rest of the stanzas are metrically mixed: the second stanza is in (eddic) *ljóðaháttur* (ch. 4, 412), the third is skaldic (ch. 14, 413), and the fourth and fifth are in *fornyrðislag* (ch. 4, 416; ch. 5, 417–418). Stanzas two to five are *lausavísur* [‘loose verses’, i.e. not part of a longer poem], and are introduced as situational verses. These four ‘family’ *fornaldarsögur* are clearly related to each other in content, but use verses are diverse, even including skaldic verse. This demonstrates that even skaldic and eddic verse are not necessarily diametrically opposed in the *fornaldarsögur*.

The ‘romance’ category of *fornaldarsögur* is rather diverse in terms of its use of verse, despite the fact that few of these sagas are prosimetric. Of the fourteen sagas in this category, only five contain verse: *Örvar-Odds saga*, *Gautreks saga*, *Bósa saga*, *Hjálmþés saga ok Ölvis*, and *Hálfs saga ok Hálfsrekka*. In this categorisation, *Örvar-Odds saga* straddles the romance and family sagas types, and has been discussed above with the family sagas. *Gautreks saga* and *Hálfs saga*

---

<sup>21</sup> Án is the younger son of Björn and Þorgerðr, who is the daughter of Böðmóðr Framarsson and Hrafnhildr, the daughter of Ketill hængur (*Áns saga bogsveigis*, ch. 1, 404).

<sup>22</sup> This is interesting particularly given Elizabeth Ashman Rowe’s work on *Áns saga* as a hybrid between a *fornaldarsaga* and an *Íslendingasaga* (1993), where the emphasis is on *Áns saga* as a family saga.

*ok Hálfisrekka* stand out in this category, because despite being grouped in content into a category that is largely not prosimetric, both of these sagas contain rather a number of stanzas, *Gautreks saga* containing 35 (in the 1944 edition) and *Hálfis saga* containing 78 (in the 1944 edition).

*Hálfis saga ok Hálfisrekka* is not unlike *Örvar-Odds saga* in its composition, in that it contains many stanzas and several longer inset autobiographical poems. Several of the situations in which stanzas appear in *Hálfis saga* have immediate parallels in other sagas. As in *Hervarar saga*, in which the dead Angantýr speaks stanzas from the mouth of his grave mound, poetry is spoken from a grave: *Hann heyrði vísu þessa kveðna í hauginn* (ch. 2, 160) [‘he heard this verse spoken in the mound’]. As in *Ketils saga hængs*, stanzas are also spoken by supernatural creatures. The king Hjörleifr has a short poetic exchange with a *þurs* [‘ogre’<sup>23</sup>] (ch. 5, 162–163), and their speeches are specifically noted by the prose to have been in verse, since although Hjörleifr’s stanza is simply introduced with *Konungr kvað* (ch. 5, 162–163) [‘the king said’], the creature’s stanza in reply is introduced with *þá kvað þurs af bjargi annat ljóð* (ch. 5, 163) [‘then the giant said another verse from the cliff’].<sup>24</sup> A stanza heard by king Hreiðarr is unusual because it is heard out of nowhere: *er Hjörleifr konungr kom, heyrði Hreiðarr konungr kveðit* (ch. 8, 167) [‘when king Hjörleifr came, king Hreiðarr heard pronounced’]. Also found in this saga is a long exchange of dialogue similar to that in *Ketils saga hængs* between Ketill and the troll woman. Here, however, the rather long exchange of fifteen stanzas is between the character Innsteinn and king Hálfir (although the last stanza is by a third character Útsteinn) (ch. 6, 170–172). This is followed by a related five-stanza speech by Innsteinn about the situation in which they find themselves, as they are trapped in a burning hall (ch. 7, 173) – a situation which the stanzas he spoke with Hálfir had predicted. Such a long commentary about an immediate situation (rather than a retrospective at the time of death), is rather unusual, and it continues with several short prose interludes for four stanzas (ch. 8, 174–175). Suddenly, however, it becomes clear to the audience that Innsteinn is indeed about to meet his death. The last four stanzas build up by recording the deaths of Hálfir and Hrókr; the penultimate stanza switches tone to a concise retrospective mode:

---

<sup>23</sup> The literal translation of this term is problematic: in the context, this creature seems to be a kind of generic troll.

<sup>24</sup> Other stanzas spoken by supernatural creatures in the saga are introduced with the standard *hann kvað* [‘he said’] or similar (for example: one stanza in ch. 6, 164 by a man-shaped cliff coming out the sea; eight stanzas by a sea-goblin in ch. 7, 165–166).

“Ek hefi út  
átján sumur  
fylgt fullhuga  
flein at rjóða.  
Skal ek eigi annan  
eiga drottin  
gunnar gjarnan  
né gamall verða.” (ch. 13, 174)

“I have been raiding eighteen summers, followed a dauntless hero to redden an arrow. I shall not have another lord eager for battle, nor become old.”

The retrospective mode continues with Útsteinn’s stanzas, which record the death of Hálfir while commenting on it in hindsight (ch. 15, 176–177), first in a *mannjafnaðr* and then in a long *ævidrápa* [‘poem about a life’] (ch. 16, 178–180). It seems here that this section of the saga, recording the death of King Hálfir, is built around the poetry, similar to many sections containing inset autobiographical poetry in the *fornaldarsögur*. Autobiographical poetry is a condensed way to preserve the life stories of heroes and was likely an oral genre; the most extreme of these is Örvar-Oddr’s death song, which preserves events that run through the entire saga. In *Hálfs saga*, the poetry is thus used in very specific contexts rather than as general stand alone dialogue stanzas. *Lausavísur*, unconnected to other stanzas, are at a minimum: there are only two: one in which Alrekr foresees a Geirhildr’s child being given to the god Óðinn (ch. 2, 160), and the very last stanza in the saga (ch. 17, 182), a *lausavísa* by the skaldic poet Bragi inn gamli Boddason, who is envisaged in the saga as having been present, since he partakes in the action and speaks his verse as a situational stanza, which is nevertheless in an eddic metre. Eddic poetry is thus vital to the construction of *Hálfs saga*, and in its construction it is closer to sagas such as *Örvar-Odds saga* and *Hervarar saga* than it is to other sagas in the romance category that are not formed by verses. *Gautreks saga*, though a romance and prosimetric, is constructed rather differently.

*Gautreks saga* provides an example of saga prose being composed around stanzas. The saga is made up of three *þættir*: *Gauta þátr*, containing five stanzas, *Víkars þátr*, a story about Starkaðr, containing most of the stanzas in the saga,<sup>25</sup> and *Gjafa-Refs þátr*, containing two stanzas. The form of the saga containing all three of these *þættir* is the longer redaction of the

---

<sup>25</sup> In the edition of *Gautreks saga* from 1944 there are 33 (chs. 3–7, 13–28), but in Heusler & Ranisch 1903, edited differently, there are 24 (1903: 38–43).

two existing forms;<sup>26</sup> the shorter form does not contain *Víkars þáttr* and the shorter form thus has far fewer stanzas. It is generally held that the shorter version, without much poetry, is older than the longer version that includes *Víkars þáttr*, and as such that the longer version is a reworking of the shorter version (Bampi 2006: 91). Massimiliano Bampi contends that:

the saga writer has probably decided to insert *Víkars þáttr* into *Gautreks saga* because the story of Starkaðr was suitable to represent a further example of the themes the saga dealt with. In particular, the analogies between *Gjafa-Refs þáttr* and *Víkars þáttr* are rather interesting in that they represent stories of gift exchange with different outcome. (Bampi 2006: 91.)

*Víkarsbálkr* is thought to be amongst the oldest Old Norse poetry, dated by Heusler & Ranisch (1903: xxxiii) to the eleventh century, and is another example of a form of death song in the *fornaldarsögur* or *ævidrápa*. The fact that the stanzas about Starkaðr are corroborative verses may be an indication of their age, since this is the predominant use of (skaldic) stanzas in the *konungasögur*, a saga subgenre that was written down before the *fornaldarsögur*. This section of the saga was almost certainly composed around the stanzas. The stanzas in *Gauta þáttr* are used as speech stanzas, whereas of the two stanzas in *Gjafa-Refs þáttr*, one is a skaldic stanza spoken by Jarl Neri about a shield, introduced as a situational stanza – *Hann kvað þá vísu* (ch. 9, 32) [‘he spoke a verse’] – and the other is an eddic stanza spoken by an anonymous speaker, introduced simply with *þá var þetta kveðit* (ch. 11, 38) [‘then this was composed’].

The clear correlation between what kind of content the sagas have and whether or not they contain poetry may suggest that the type of material drawn upon for the plot of the *fornaldarsaga* could determine, in general, the generic demand for verse in that saga (there are exceptions to this, as I have shown). Were a *fornaldarsaga* to be composed, for example, on a Germanic/heroic theme, generically that saga type may have been expected to contain verse. Whether the narrative itself was formed from verse or what role the verse otherwise plays in the narrative could differ, since the expectation of its presence is a different question from the question of how or whether verse in the sagas can determine their origin, and the ways in which sagas developed from and employed verse are manifold.

---

<sup>26</sup> Note that several of the *fornaldarsögur*, for example *Örvar-Odds saga* and *Bósa saga*, exist in more than one form, usually a longer and shorter one. I have not gone into detail about this here, but mention it for *Gautreks saga* since the difference between the versions is rather extreme considering the saga is not that long.



### ***Fornaldarsögur* without Verse**

If we accept that fact that sagas that do not contain verse can be counted as *fornaldarsögur*, then we must also concede that the inclusion of poetry was not an absolute aesthetic or structural demand in the composition of the subgenre. One reason for the absence of verse in the sagas would thus simply be normal variation with the subgenre. However, there are multiple other reasons why some sagas that are counted as *fornaldarsögur* might not contain verse. The most obvious is that there was no verse material about that particular story line for the saga writer to draw upon when the saga was recorded, and, since the inclusion of verse is not an absolute necessity, the writer did not feel compelled to compose any especially for the presentation of the saga (although certainly some of the verses in the *fornaldarsögur* were composed at the same time as the prose). This means that, in the current corpus, not all *fornaldarsögur* developed out of poetic material, or at least did not preserve the poetic material even if they did. The disparate origin of the sagas in the subgenre regarding the potential for a prosimetric form is apparent in this respect.

It is also possible that verses did once exist and were simply paraphrased into prose. Indeed, sometimes they are still traceable: this is clearly the case in *Völsunga saga* (see Finch 1962–1965), and in some of the short prose parts of the *Poetic Edda* and additionally in parts of *Gylfaginning* in *Snorra Edda* (see Lorenz 1984). In these cases, however, tracing the transition from verse into prose is facilitated by the preservation of the younger verses especially in the collection of eddic poems known as the *Poetic Edda*. I also do not find it likely that any of the *fornaldarsögur* that do not contain verse exclude poetry solely for this reason. It is difficult to say how parts of sagas in prose that are identifiably based on verse should be viewed. Ronald George Finch (1962–1965) has isolated the parts of *Völsunga saga* by to have come directly from eddic poems. This bears witness to a saga composition process that relied on verse (and thus to some extent prosimetrum). On the other hand, the author of the extant saga explicitly chose to express certain material in prose rather than presenting traditional verses that we know were available, and it is not clear why.

From an opposing perspective, there is the possibility that some of the material classified as verse may indeed simply be embellished prose (Abram 2006). This concerns the difficulty of discerning a distinct metre in prose that could otherwise simply be heavily rhythmical or alliterative. Michael Schulte (2009) has discussed this difficulty in connection with early (potentially) metrical runic inscriptions. However, the prose in saga literature is often

ornamented in this manner as a direct result of the translation of verse into prose, as with the saga subgenre of the translated *riddarasögur* [‘sagas of knights’]. In this case, the noticeable rhythm and alliteration in the prose has been explained by Þórir Óskarsson (2007: 367) as “a sort of compensation for the poetic colouring that is lost when poetry is translated into prose.” As far as the *fornaldarsögur* are concerned, as in the early runic inscriptions, the issue is more often material arranged as verse that could well be rooted in prose. Prosaic proverbial material is the most likely candidate – in *Hrólfs saga kraka* we find: *Eigi flýr sá eldinn, / sem yfir hleypr* (ch. 61, 73) [‘That one flees no fire, [he] who jumps over it’]. This proverb is metrical enough to be verse (it is in *fornyrðislag*), even if only two lines long. Another couplet also occurs nearby: *Aukum nú eldana / at Aðils borg* [‘Let us now increase the fires at Aðils stronghold’] (ch. 61, 72). Such alliterative, short statements could be taken as prose – there is also nothing in the prose surrounding them that indicates they are verse – but these are usually considered verse.<sup>27</sup> The potential fluidity between verse and rhythmic prose is

Other, more overtly literary narrative strategies may have been enjoyed by the saga writers and employed at the expense of verse, particularly in the later periods. It is speculative but interesting to suggest that prosimetric *fornaldarsögur* could have been associated by writers and audiences with an oral period, and as the genre developed in its written form, along with influences from subgenres of saga writing such as the *riddarasögur*, the prosimetric style became less important as other narratological concerns took precedence (cf. Hall 2005).<sup>28</sup> *Egils saga einhenda ok Ásmundar berserkjabana* may be a good example of this. It is likely to be a somewhat younger saga, and the oldest manuscript is AM 343 a 4to from the fifteenth century. There are no verses, but the narrative is sophisticated, with a series of inset stories, prolepsis and analepsis in a narrative construction that do not seem to have come from an oral background (Leslie 2009). Here, other aesthetic demands seem to control narration.<sup>29</sup>

---

<sup>27</sup> Another dubious alliterative couplet of this kind is in *Gylfaginning*: *Hár segir at hann komi eigi heill út nema hann sé fróðari, ok ‘Stattu fram meðan þú fregn/sitja skal sá er segir.’* (Faulkes 1982: 8) [‘High says that he would not emerge unscathed unless he were wiser, and “Stand forward while you enquire, the one who says shall sit.”’]. Faulkes comments that these lines “are metrical enough to be arranged as verse, but whether they are a quotation, and if so from what, it is impossible to say” (Faulkes 1982: 58).

<sup>28</sup> The transformation of the *fornaldarsögur* material into *rímur* and ballads in the late and post medieval period seems to support this.

<sup>29</sup> It is also possible that there were once verses that have disappeared in the course of transmission, although this is by and large impossible to say.

It is also worth mentioning that verse originals in another language were sometimes translated into prose in Old Norse. Those foreign romance tales that were translated into Old Norse fall not into the *fornaldarsögur* subgenre, but rather into the related *riddarasögur* subgenre. Suffice it to say here that it is not obvious why continental and German verse romances were translated entirely into prose rather than into prosimetric or verse forms, but there is a good chance that this choice of pure prose influenced the *fornaldarsögur* subgenre, notably those sagas in the romance category, which are close to the *riddarasögur* in style and very few of which contain verse.<sup>30</sup>

As a final point, I would like to suggest that it is possible that the non-prosimetric sagas in Rowe's 'Romance' category have been influenced by contact between the vernacular oral genre of the *fornaldarsögur* and the *riddarasögur* texts. It seems probable that they have found their form through this stimulus. The *riddarasögur* were initially translations made in Norway from continental sources (translated *riddarasögur*), but indigenous sagas of the type quickly followed (for overviews, see Driscoll 2007; Glauser 2007). These indigenous sagas have been well summarised by Paul Bibire as having "abandoned inherited narratives in favour of morphology and motif composition" and do not seem to have developed under the influence of other native saga subgenres to any meaningful degree (Bibire 1982: 62). Other scholars have sought rather to emphasise the difficulty in drawing sharp lines between the various saga subgenres belonging to the romance tradition. This topic is too large to open here, but it is worth mentioning Marianne E. Kalinke's (1982: 77) observation that grouping sagas too definitively into distinct categories of *riddarasögur* versus *fornaldarsögur* presents the danger of precluding the study of interrelationship between them.

---

<sup>30</sup> There is not space here to go in to the complex question of why verse romances were translated into prose in Old Norse, but see Bibire (1982: 59–61), whose two arguments can be summarised by saying that prose was the preferred target form because unsuitable metres existed in Old Norse, and because the prose saga was the dominant literary art form. Both are interesting suggestions but neither are convincing: as for the first suggestion, Bibire dismisses outright the possibility of translation into skaldic verse (which I agree with, because it was usually used for completely different purposes), and discounts using eddic verse because it "may not have been culturally acceptable because of the specific associations of these metres with the native heroic myth and poetry" (59); as I commented on above, however, there is a large amount of skaldic-type material in eddic metre, so there must have been a great deal of flexibility in the use of the eddic metres. His second reason, that the *riddarasögur* were translated into prose because it was the dominant art form does not explain why they predominantly contain no verse at all: translations moulded specifically to fit the dominant art form would have been prosimetric, nor does Bibire's explanation that the Icelandic saga "developed more or less simultaneously with the European romance during the second half of the twelfth century" (61) help this; this is likely the time of the transition of the saga to the written form, but the native saga form must have existed in oral tradition for a long time before this, prosimetric sagas included.

It is possible that the thirteenth century translation of the *riddarasögur* into Old Norwegian provided the initial inspiration to write down oral *fornaldarsögur*. Neither the translated nor indigenous *riddarasögur* contained verses, and once the native *riddarasaga* was established as a productive class of narrative discourse, it likely influenced the *fornaldarsögur* subgenre. Much material handled in the *fornaldarsögur* subgenre reflects long-standing vernacular traditions. However, at the time of the entry of the *riddarasögur* into Old Norse literature, the *fornaldarsögur* subgenre was still a productive one in terms of saga composition, and the *fornaldarsögur* without verses are likely the product of this influence. The absence of verses in the *riddarasögur* is thus probably the reason for the absence of the verses in the Romances included in the *fornaldarsögur* subgenre.

### Conclusions

My study of the popular subdivisions of the *fornaldarsögur* show that the prosimetric sagas have affinities with certain saga types. Within the threefold division of Reuschel and Schier, the prosimetric sagas fall predominantly into Heroic and Viking saga categories. In addition, different sections of the same saga can vary as to the origins and use of the verse employed, as was shown in *Hervarar saga* and *Gautreks saga*. This must reflect the origins of the sagas to an extent. The development of the sagas from an oral stage of verse interspersed with prose can only be true for some of the prosimetric *fornaldarsögur*. Nevertheless, the development of individual sagas or of *þættir* that were combined into sagas must have happened in several ways:

1. The prose is developed on the basis of poems that were already in circulation even in written form (known in the cases of *Völsunga saga* and *Norna-Gests þáttir*).
2. The prose is an organic development from sequences of verse (e.g. sections of *Hervarar saga* and almost all of *Hálfs saga* and *Örvar-Odds saga*).
3. The prose and verse seem to be on equal standing, with verse intertwined with the prose as natural dialogue and as part of the story (e.g. *Ketils saga hængs*). This may – but does not necessarily – imply that the verses of this kind of saga were composed at the same time as the prose.

Nevertheless, the inclusion of verse is but one element of the generic system that produced the *fornaldarsögur*. The Romances are kept within the parameters of the *fornaldarsögur* subgenre by virtue of their being set in prehistoric Scandinavia. However, they do not have a core of verse, nor do they try to imitate the prosimetric form by including stanzas, and rather are imitative of the *riddarasögur*. These sagas can be approached as a special hybrid subgenre that

can be distinguished from *fornaldarsögur* proper, which are characterized by more traditional structure and content. Sagas and *þættir* with minimal verse, say one stanza or poem, may well be grouped more appropriately with those that contain no verse, since their metrical segments are likely to be structurally insignificant.

Even if the non- prosimetric or minimally-prosimetric *fornaldarsögur* potentially ought to be thought of differently in terms of the trajectories of the development of the subgenre, both orally and into its written manifestations, it is after all the clear link in content (not structure or form) that lead to the sagas lacking verse to be grouped with the heavily prosimetric sagas in the first place, and the expression of this generically related content must not be underestimated. As Alastair Fowler has said:

genre has a quite different relation to creativity from the one usually supposed, whereby it is little more than a restraint upon spontaneous expression. Rightly understood, it is so far from being a mere curb on expression that it makes the expressiveness of literary works possible. Their relation to the genres they embody is not one of passive membership but of active modulation. Such modulation communicates. (Fowler 1982: 20)

Fowler's general point has a useful application to the *fornaldarsaga* corpus in underlining that however disparate their origins and forms may be, the generic expression of shared content in the *fornaldarsaga* subgenre happened for a reason. For example, the genealogies or regnal lists counted as amongst the *fornaldarsögur* have at their core a concern with the boundary between this world and the otherworld, the crossing of the boundary between then and how the two worlds can blend. In *Fundinn Noregr* (ch. 2, 151), for example, the woman Góí is kidnapped by Hrólfr ór Bjargi, the son of the giant Svaði, who takes her to Kvenland. After her brother Nórr fights the giant's son and both are wounded and reconciled, Nórr marries the giant's sister and Hrólfr marries Góí. This key focus on the boundary of the otherworld and its transgression is a central part of the *fornaldarsaga* subgenre and brings these shorter narratives firmly into the orbit of the rest of the legendary sagas. (Leslie 2008.) As discussed above, the appearance of translated and then indigenous *riddarasögur* likely facilitated the emergence of the non-prosimetric *fornaldarsögur*, and the shared content and strategies of the *fornaldarsaga* subgenre serve to hold an otherwise, perhaps unforgivably, diverse genre together.<sup>31</sup>

---

<sup>31</sup> Although topoi could, however, be shared between the *riddarasögur* and the *fornaldarsögur*, for example the bridal-quest plot type (Kalinke 1990), influence of the *fornaldarsögur* upon the *riddarasaga* subgenre seems to have been avoided (cf. Bibire 1982: 73).

The non-prosimetric *fornaldarsögur* need further study concerning the balance of their content and structure and their origin as a probable hybrid between the prosimetric *fornaldarsaga* subgenre and its episodic use of verse and the motif-based and highly patterned structure of the indigenous *riddarasögur*. A fuller understanding of that relationship could perhaps provide a more certain understanding of the development of the *fornaldarsaga* subgenre itself. Genre studies of the *fornaldarsögur* must be augmented with more consideration of the role of prosimetrum in the development of the sagas, and the role of the verses in the sagas as we have them preserved today. More generally, the preceding survey and discussion demonstrates that a generative approach to genre is more helpful when trying to make sense of disparate elements in otherwise clearly related texts than approaching generic categories at any level as exclusive.

## REFERENCES

### Sources

- Áns saga bogsveigis* 1943. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 1, pp.403–432.
- Bósa saga ok Herrauðs* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 2, pp.465–497.
- Brown, Ursula (ed.) 1952. *Porgils saga ok Hafliða*. Oxford English Monographs. London: Oxford University Press.
- Egils saga einhenda ok Ásmundar berserkjabana* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 3, pp.155–189.
- Faulkes, Anthony (ed.) 1982. *Snorri Sturluson. Edda*. Prologue and *Gylfaginning*. London: Viking Society for Northern Research.
- Faulkes, Anthony (ed.) 1999. *Snorri Sturluson. Edda. Háttatal*. London: Viking Society for Northern Research.
- Finnur Jónsson (ed.) 1912–1915. *Den norsk-islandske skjaldedigtning. A: Tekst efter håndskrifterne. B. Rettet tekst*. Copenhagen: Villadsen & Christensen.
- Fundinn Noregr* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 2, pp.149–152.
- Gautreks saga* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 3, pp.3–41.
- Gríms saga loðinkinna* 1943. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 1, pp.269–280.
- Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944. *Fornaldarsögur Norðurlanda*. 3 vols. Reykjavík: Bókaútgáfan Forni.
- Hálfs saga ok Hálfsrekka* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 2, pp.159–182.
- Helga þátr Þórissonar* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 3, pp.421–426.
- Hervarar saga ok Heiðreks* 1943. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 1, pp.191–242.
- Heusler, Andreas & Wilhelm Ranisch (eds.) 1903. *Eddica Minora. Dichtungen Eddischer art aus den Fornaldarsögur und anderen Prosewerken*. Dortmund: Ruhfus.

- Hrólfs saga kraka ok kappa hans* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 2, pp.3–93.
- Hrómundar saga Gripssonar* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 2, pp.273–286.
- Hversu Noregr Byggðist* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 2, pp.137–148.
- Ketils saga hængs* 1943. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 1, pp.245–266.
- Norna-Gests þáttur* 1943. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 1, pp.167–187.
- Örvar-Odds saga* 1943. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 1, pp.283–399.
- Rafn, C. C. (ed.) 1829–1830. *Fornaldar Sögur Nordrlanda, eptir gömlum handritum*. 3 vols. Copenhagen: n. p.
- Sögubrot af nokkurum fornkonungum í Dana- ok Svía- veldi* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 2, pp.113–134.
- Sörla þáttur eða Heðins saga ok Högna* 1944. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 2, pp.97–110.
- Völsunga saga* 1943. In Guðni Jónsson & Bjarni Vilhjálmsson (eds.) 1943–1944, vol. 1, pp.3–91.

## Literature

2006. Interrogating Genre in the Fornaldarsögur. Round-Table Discussion. *Viking and Medieval Scandinavia* 2: 275–96.
- Abram, Christopher 2006. Snorri's Invention of Hermóðr's *helreið*. In John McKinnell, David Ashurt and Donata Kick (eds) *The Fantastic in Old Norse/Icelandic Literature. Sagas and the British Isles. Preprint Papers of the Thirteenth International Saga Conference. Durham and York 6th-12th August, 2006*. Pp. 22–31.
- Bampi, Massimiliano 2006. Between Tradition and Innovation. The Story of Starkaðr in *Gautreks saga*. In John McKinnell, David Ashurt and Donata Kick (eds) *The Fantastic in Old Norse/Icelandic Literature. Sagas and the British Isles. Preprint Papers of the Thirteenth International Saga Conference. Durham and York 6th-12th August, 2006*. Durham: Durham University. Pp.88–96.
- Bibire, Paul 1982. From Riddarasaga to Lygisaga. The Norse Response to Romance. In Régis Boyer (ed.) *Les sagas de chevaliers (Riddarasögur)*. Civilisations 10. Toulon: Juillet. Pp. 55–74.
- Bjarni Einarsson 1974. On the Rôle of Verse in Saga-Literature. *Medieval Scandinavia* 7: 118–125.
- Bjarni Guðnason 1981. The Icelandic Sources of Saxo Grammaticus. In Karsten Friis-Jensen (ed.) *Saxo Grammaticus. A Medieval Author Between Norse and Latin Culture*. Copenhagen: Museum Tusulanum Press. Pp. 79–93.
- Clover, Carol 1982. *The Medieval Saga*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
- Clunies Ross, Margaret 1993. The Development of Old Norse Textual Worlds: Genealogical Structure as a Principle of Literary Organisation in Early Iceland. *Journal of English and Germanic Philology* 92: 372–385.
- Clunies Ross, Margaret 2005. *A History of Old Norse Poetry and Poetics*. Cambridge: Brewer.
- Driscoll, Matthew James 2007. Late Prose Fiction (*lygisögur*). In Rory McTurk (ed.) *A Companion to Old Norse-Icelandic Literature and Culture*. Blackwell Companions to Literature and Culture 31. Malden, MA: Blackwell. Pp. 190–204.

- Driscoll, Matthew James 2009. A New Edition of the *Fornaldarsögur Norðurlanda*. Some Basic Questions. In Fulvio Ferrari and Massimiliano Bampi (eds.) *On Editing Old Scandinavian Texts. Problems and Perspectives*. Trento: Università degli studi di Trento, Dipartimento di studi letterari, linguistici e filologici. Pp. 71–84.
- Dronke, Peter 1994. *Verse with Prose From Petronius to Dante: The Art and Scope of the Mixed Form*. London: Harvard University Press.
- Fidjestøl, Bjarne 1997. Skaldic Stanzas in saga-prose. Observations on the relationship between prose and verse in Snorri's *Heimskringla*. In Odd Einar Haugen & Else Mundal (eds.) *Selected Papers*. The Viking Collection 9. Odense: Odense University Press. Pp. 255–276.
- Finch, Ronald George 1962–1965. The Treatment by the Compiler of Sources in the *Völsunga saga*. *Saga-Book* 16: 315–53.
- Foot Peter G. 1953–56. Sagnaskemtan: Reykjahólar 1119. *Saga-Book* 14: 226–239.
- Fowler, Alastair 1982. *Kinds of Literature. An Introduction to the Theory of Genres and Modes*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Friis-Jensen, Karsten 1987. *Saxo Grammaticus as Latin Poet. Studies in the Verse Passages of the Gesta Danorum*. *Analecta Romana Instituti Danici*. Supplementum 14. Rome: L'Erma di Bretschneider.
- Gade, Kari Ellen 1995. *The Structure of Old Norse Dróttkvætt Poetry*. *Islandica* 49. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
- Glauser, Jürg 2007. Romance (Translated *riddarasögur*). In Rory McTurk (ed.) *A Companion to Old Norse-Icelandic Literature and Culture*. Blackwell Companions to Literature and Culture 31. Malden, MA: Blackwell. Pp. 372–387.
- Hallberg, Peter 1982. Some Aspects of the Fornaldarsögur as a Corpus. *Arkiv för Nordisk Filologi* 97: 1–34.
- Hanson, Kristin & Paul Kiparsky 1997. The Nature of Verse and its Consequences for the Mixed Form. In Joseph Harris & Karl Reichl (eds.) *Prosimetrum: Cross-Cultural Perspectives on Narrative in Prose and Verse*. Cambridge: Brewer. Pp. 17–28.
- Harris, Joseph 1972. Genre and Narrative Structure in Some Íslendinga Þættir. *Scandinavian Studies* 44: 1–27.
- Harris, Joseph 1997. The Prosimetrum of Icelandic Saga and Some Relatives. In Joseph Harris and Karl Reichl (eds.) *Prosimetrum. Crosscultural Perspectives on Narrative in Prose and Verse*. Cambridge: Brewer. Pp. 131–163.
- Hermann Pálsson 1979. Towards a Definition of *Fornaldarsögur*. In *Fourth International Saga Conference*. München: Institut für Nordische Philologie der Universität München. (Papers paginated individually.)
- Hermann Pálsson 1985. *Fornaldarsögur Norðurlanda*. In Joseph L. Strayer (ed.) *Dictionary of the Middle Ages* 6. New York: Scribner. Pp. 137–143.
- Hollander, Lee 1945. *The Skalds: A Selection of the Poems, with Introductions and Notes*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Holtmark, Anne 1965. Heroic Poetry and Legendary Sagas. *Bibliography of Old Norse-Icelandic Studies*: 9–21.
- Jesch, Judith 1984. Hrómundr Gripsson Revisited. *Skandinavistik* 14: 89–105.
- Jónas Kristjánsson 2007. *Eddas and Sagas*. 4th ed. Reykjavík: Hið íslenska bókmenntafélag.
- Jørgensen, Jon Gunnar 2009. *Ynglinga saga* mellom fornaldersaga og kongesaga. In Agnete Ney, Ármann Jakobsson & Annette Lassen (eds.) *Fornaldarsagaerne. Myter og virkelighed. Studier i de oldislandske fornaldarsögur Norðurlanda*. København: Museum Tusulanums Forlag. Pp. 49–59.



- Kalinke, Marianne E. 1982. Riddarasögur, Fornaldarsögur and the Problem of Genre. In Régis Boyer (ed.) *Les sagas de chevaliers (Riddarasögur)*. Civilisations 10. Toulon: Juillet. Pp.77–87.
- Kalinke, Marianne E. 1990. *Bridal Quest Romance in Medieval Iceland*. Islandica 46. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
- Kristján Árnason 1991. *The Rhythms of Dróttkvætt and Other Old Icelandic Metres*. Reykjavík: Institute of Linguistics, University of Iceland.
- Kristján Árnason 2006. The Rise of the Quatrain in Germanic Musicality and Word Based Rhythm in Eddic Meters. In *Formal Approaches to Poetry. Recent Developments*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter. Pp. 151–169.
- Kuhn, Hans 1952. Heldensaga vor und außerhalb der Dichtung. In Hermann Schneider (ed.) *Edda, Skalden, Saga: Festschrift zum 70. Geburtstag von Felix Genzmer*. Heidelberg: Carl Winter Universitätsverlag. Pp. 262–278.
- Leslie, Helen F. 2008. “Heima í millum”: *Landscape and the Other Worlds of the Fornaldarsögur*. MA thesis: Háskóli Íslands.
- Leslie, Helen F. 2009. Border Crossings. *Landscape and the Other World in the Fornaldarsögur*. *Scripta Islandica* 60: 119–135.
- Leslie, Helen F. 2010. ‘The Matter of Hrafnista.’ *Quaestio Insularis* 11: 169 – 208.
- Lönnroth, Lars 1964. Tesen om de två kulturerna: Kritiska studier i den isländska sagaskrivningens sociala förutsättningar. *Scripta Islandica* 10: 3–97.
- Lönnroth, Lars 1975. The Concept of Genre in Saga Literature. *Scandinavian Studies* 47: 419–426.
- Lönnroth, Lars 1979. The Double Scene of Arrow-Odd’s Drinking Contest. In Hans Bekker-Nielsen, Andreas Haarder, Preben Meulengracht Sørensen, Peter Foote (eds.) *Medieval Narrative. A Symposium*. Odense: Odense University Press. Pp. 94–119.
- Lönnroth, Lars 2003. Fornaldarsagans genremässiga metamorfoser: mellan Edda-myt och riddarroman. In Ármann Jakobsson, Annette Lassen & Agnete Ney (eds.) *Fornaldarsagornas struktur och ideologi. Handlingar från ett symposium i Uppsala 31.8–2.9 2001*. Uppsala: Uppsala Universitet. Pp. 37–45.
- Lorenz, Gottfried 1984. *Snorri Sturluson: Gylfaginning: Texte, Übersetzung, Kommentar*. Darmstadt.
- Mitchell, Stephen A. 1991. *Heroic Sagas and Ballads. Myth and Poetics*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
- Mundal, Else 2004. Edda- og skaldediktning. In Odd Einar Haugen (ed.) *Handbok i norrøn filologi*. Bergen: Fagbokforlaget. Pp. 215–266.
- Mundal, Else 2009. *Ynglinga saga* ok genreproblematikken. In Agnete Ney, Ármann Jakobsson & Annette Lassen (eds.) *Fornaldarsagaerne. Myter og virkelighed. Studier i de oldislandske fornaldarsögur Norðurlanda*. København: Museum Tusulanums Forlag. Pp. 61–65.
- O’Donoghue, Heather 2005. *Skaldic Verse and the Poetics of Saga Narrative*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Phelpstead, Carl 2008. ‘With Chunks of Poetry in Between’. *The Lord of the Rings and Saga Poetics*. *Tolkien Studies* 5: 23–28.
- Poole, Russell 1991. *Viking Poems on War and Peace: A Study in Skaldic Narrative*. Toronto Medieval Texts and Translations 8. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Reuschel, Helga 1933. *Untersuchungen über Stoff und Stil der Fornaldarsaga*. Bausteine zur Volkskunde und Religionswissenschaft 7. Bühl-Baden: Konkordia.
- Righter-Gould, Ruth 1980. The *Fornaldar Sögur Norðurlanda: A Structural Analysis*.” *Scandinavian Studies* 52: 423–441.

- Rowe, Elizabeth Ashman 1990. *Fabulæ i þeim bestu sögum. Studies in the Genre of the Medieval Icelandic Mytho-Heroic Saga*. Ann Arbor, MI: University Microfilms.
- Rowe, Elizabeth Ashman 1993. Generic Hybrids. Norwegian “Family” Sagas and Icelandic “Mythic-Heroic” Sagas. *Scandinavian Studies* 65: 539–554.
- Schier, Kurt 1970. *Sagaliteratur*. Stuttgart: Metzlersche.
- Schulte, Michael 2009. Early Runic 'metrical' inscriptions. How metrical are they? In Tonya Kim Dewey & Frog (eds.) *Versatility in Versification. Multidisciplinary Approaches to Metrics*. Berkeley Insights in Linguistics and Semiotics 74. New York: Peter Lang.
- Sigurður Nordal 1953. Sagalitteraturen. In Sigurður Nordal (ed.) *Litteraturhistorie. Norge og Island*. Nordisk Kultur 8B. Stockholm: Albert Bonniers Förlag. Pp. 180–273.
- Stefán Karlsson 1964. Aldur Hauksbókar. *Fróðskaparrit* 13: 114–21.
- Torfi H. Tulinius 2007. Sagas of Icelandic Prehistory (*foraldarsögur*). In Rory McTurk (ed.) *A Companion to Old Norse-Icelandic Literature and Culture*. Blackwell Companions to Literature and Culture 31. Malden, MA: Blackwell. Pp. 447–461.
- Turville-Petre, E. O. G. 1976. *Scaldic Poetry*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Þórir Óskarsson 2007. Rhetoric and Style. In Rory McTurk (ed.) *A Companion to Old Norse-Icelandic Literature and Culture*. Blackwell Companions to Literature and Culture 31. Malden, MA: Blackwell. Pp. 354–371.

# From Traditional to Transitional Texts

## South Slavic Oral Tradition and its Textualization

**Aleksandar Pavlović**

The concept of the transitional text has so far had a destiny of the spectre of oral studies – its disturbing presence occasionally comes into view, but somehow without a proper recognition and place in the real world. Initially rejected and then accepted by Albert Lord (1960: 129, 1986a: 479–481), the term subsequently gained certain currency among the leading theorists (Foley 1988, Finnegan 1992: 116), only to be questioned again in the more recent scholarship (Jensen 1998: 94–114, 2008: 50). By revisiting Lord's analyses and South Slavic oral and written tradition, this article describes transitional texts as a distinctive generic form involving two principal modes of enunciation – literary notion of fixed textuality and oral performative principle of composition in performance in traditional oral-formulaic language. Following the discussions of Lord and Foley, it also offers a synthetic framework for their analysis, based on the phraseology, style, outlook and contextual evidences about their documentation and singers.

South Slavic tradition offers a continuum of published texts with various degrees of oral traditionality, and upon closer examination some turn out to be literary works written by educated poets familiar with oral tradition, whereas others are nothing more but fixed, fossilized texts that do not involve oral composition in performance and are not part of a living oral tradition (see also: Miletich 1988: 100–102). But this still leaves us with a number of examples that involve both oral and written attitudes and techniques of composition and cannot be reduced to either. After examining early nineteenth-century examples of the emerging literary influence on the still predominantly oral Montenegrin culture of the time, I will argue that such transitional South Slavic texts emerged in two principal ways, either by educated writers adjusting their literary technique to accommodate an oral traditional content, or by oral singers appropriating originally literary characteristics to their oral performative manner and style. In the final instance, the article advocates that a consistent theoretical model of transitional texts can provide leverage for comparative studies of the contacts between orality and literacy, and invites further analyses of the interpellations between oral and literary culture in other traditions.

### **Direct Copying and the Notion of Fixed Textuality as Literary Features**

Since, as Lord says, in order to speak about transitional texts one has to have some actual knowledge of oral traditional texts (1995: 216), I will briefly describe the concept of oral tradition as developed in Parry-Lord theory, and then supplement these views by Lord's later analyses of South Slavic transitional texts. Parry and Lord conducted their research in former Yugoslavia, where oral tradition still lived on among predominantly illiterate oral singers, who composed their songs using the repertoire of traditional formulas and patterns inherited from the oral tradition. In other words, they did not actually memorize songs by heart but developed procedures for recomposing them during each performance, which is a process Parry and Lord perceived as essentially different from written literature (Lord 1960: 13–29).

Approaching the question of the differences between traditional and transitional texts, essential criteria that Lord proposes for such discrimination is the distinction between the composition in performance as a fundamental oral principle and the notion of the fixed text as a literary feature. As he points out, “one of the important differences between an oral traditional singer and a nontraditional one is the fact that the traditional singer does not think in terms of fixed textuality, whereas the nontraditional singer does” (1995: 213). This induces Lord to suggest that the notion of fixed textuality could be taken as the distinctive factor between them. Lord takes the moment “when he begins to think of really fixed lines, when he actually memorizes them” (1995: 213) to be the point when a traditional singer becomes a nontraditional poet.

Lord's criterion may seem to be vague and rather metaphorical, since it is hard to see how such a moment could ever be identified. Nonetheless, let us first consider the core of his argument, which rests on composition in performance as the fundamental principle of oral tradition. Both Parry and Lord repeatedly insist that what actually matters is not whether the song is simply recited orally or not, but whether it is composed and performed according to the principles of oral composition. In Parry's words, “[n]o graver mistake could be made than to think that the art of the singer calls only for memory ... the oral poem even in the mouth of the same singer is ever in a state of change” (1997: 335). In other words, it is the rule of oral composition that, unless it is fossilized in the textual form, a song constantly changes from one performance to another and one singer to the next. Lord, for his part, also reminds us that oral “does not mean merely oral presentation . . . what is important is not the oral presentation but rather the composition during performance” (1960: 5).

It should be noted that Lord's remarks about fixed textuality were made specifically about the twentieth century South Slavic oral tradition that came under strong literary influence, and where a particular notion of the fixed text clearly affected oral tradition from written sphere and, as it were, marked its decline. Cases of "classical" Somali or medieval Scandinavian and Celtic genres show that certain oral traditions are less flexible and rely on memorization far more than is the case with South Slavic or Homeric epic. This would indicate that we could differentiate between the tendency towards word-for-word memorization that is intersubjectively maintained through social practice in certain, although relatively rare, oral traditions, from the conception of a fixed text that objectively exist in written form outside of a given oral tradition, which affects the oral tradition through literary influence.

While strict distinction between improvisation and memorization therefore seems to be false, as Frogg recently persuasively argued (2011, esp. 23–24), it does not invalidate the investigation of the consequences of interplays between our basic notions of literary fixity and oral flexibility in a given tradition and particular cultural practice. Even scholars like Ruth Finnegan, who argues against the strict distinction between memorization and composition in performance, still admit that "[a]s soon as one looks hard at the notion of exact verbal reproduction over long periods of time, it becomes clear that there is very little evidence for it" (1977: 140).<sup>1</sup> Ian Morris summarizes the point as follows:

The idea of exact reproduction that we hold, as members of a literate society, does not exist in oral cultures... certain controls over elements of plot and devices of epic distance... will apply, but neither the poet nor his hearers wish for more than this. This observation has been made by nearly all ethnographers interested in oral poetry and is one of the most securely established generalizations (Morris 1986: 85).

In any case, South Slavic tradition enables us to follow how the notion of a fixed text that exists in a written form directly affects oral performances and particular oral singers, and some typical examples of this interplay are given below.

---

<sup>1</sup> To be sure, the principle of composition in performance does not necessarily need to be recognized as such by the oral singers themselves. As far as the South Slavic context is concerned, singers interviewed by Parry and Lord typically claim to reproduce the songs exactly as they have heard them. For instance, Đemail Zogić even boasted of being able to memorize the song of another singer immediately after the performance. However, Parry's and Lord's records showed that when Zogić actually performed the song he had just heard from another singer, the two versions differed considerably, and that even Zogić's own version changed to a certain extent in later performances over the years (see Lord 1960: 27–8).

Perhaps, as I indicated earlier, it is impossible to capture literally the moment when a singer actually “begins to think of really fixed lines”. But in South Slavic tradition we often have on our disposal various songs with the same subject, documented from different singers from the eighteenth to the early twentieth century. The newer variants of these songs are sometimes apparently influenced by the ones from previously published popular collections. In such instances, comparative analysis enables us to determine quite accurately to what extent are these newer songs actually the product of composition during performance in oral traditional language.

### **Basic Characteristics of Transitional Texts**

Distinguishing between oral traditional and literary style and approach, Parry and Lord initially claimed that texts can be either oral or literary, and denied the possibility of transitive or mixed forms. In his seminal work *The Singer of Tales*, Lord explicitly refuted the possibility of transitional texts:

It is worthy of emphasis that the question we have asked ourselves is whether there can be such a thing as a transitional *text*; not a *period* of transition between oral and written style, or between illiteracy and literacy, but a *text*, product of the creative brain of a single individual. [...] I believe that the answer must be negative, because the two techniques are, I submit, contradictory and mutually exclusive (1960: 129).

This conclusion followed from Parry’s and Lord’s general understanding of oral tradition and their fundamental hypothesis about the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* as oral-dictated texts. Emphasizing the oral-formulaic character of the Homeric epic, they imagined Homer as a traditional oral singer. As Foley later commented, “only if Homer were himself an unlettered bard, so went the original explanation, could he have composed the epic. Since there could be no ‘transitional text’, the only recourse for writing would be dictation to an amanuensis” (1997: 162).<sup>2</sup>

Such strict distinction between oral traditional and literary style soon became subject to criticism. Continued analyses of the Medieval and Old English poetry, for which no data about

---

<sup>2</sup> Jensen’s more recent contesting of transitional texts apparently stems from this basic presumption about Homeric epics as oral compositions of a singular brilliant oral poet: “the mastery with which the poet of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* handles huge poems is based not on card indexes or anything of that nature, but on his professionally trained memory and creative powers... My conclusion is that what Lord was fighting, when he declared that transitional texts are excluded on principle, was important and worth fighting against... because Homerists have been unwilling to accept oral tradition as the proper framework for understanding the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*” (1998: 111–112).

their origin and documentation have been preserved, showed that they typically display both oral-formulaic and literary characteristics (Stevick 1962, Campbell 1966, Curschmann 1967, Campbell 1978). In several articles, John Miletich conducted an elaborate microstructural stylistic analysis in order to distinguish between oral and literary style in South Slav and ancient and medieval traditions in general. Lord criticized Miletich for bypassing the question of formula in his analyses (Lord 1986a, esp. 481–491) but he also went on to reconsider his original views and recognized that “there seem to be texts that can be called either transitional or belonging to the first stage of written literature” (1986a: 479–480). Lord admitted that his initial approach to such texts by analysing the density of formulas as a test of their orality “was too simplistic to cover the variety of situations in the medieval milieu”, and that one also has to consider their oral-traditionality and the oral-traditionality of the structures or systems to which they belong (1986a: 481). Commenting on this article, Foley made a further remark that one cannot generalize freely about “the transition”, and instructs that it must be recognized that the nature and results of the merger depend on the life history of the individual and the role of literacy in his/her culture (1988: 55). Meanwhile, much has been done in terms of analysing relations and interpellations between oral and written traditions in South Slavic context (Miletich and Pešić 1976, Bošković-Stulli 1983, Petrović 1988, ), but the term transitional text somehow disappeared from these discussions.

I shall now focus on the South Slavic oral tradition before addressing wider issues in the concluding part of the paper. As suggested, there is an obvious advantage of discussing transitional texts in the South Slavic tradition in comparison to the Medieval European and Homeric context; as Lord says, “we have enough information in the South Slavic material to make that determination. There is an abundance of pure oral-traditional South Slavic verse extending over several centuries” (1986a: 493). It enables us to reconstruct a genuine oral traditional style and phraseology, and to depict a number of traditional subjects, formulas and themes. In addition, already the earliest published collections of folk songs from the first half of the nineteenth century usually contain data about the singers, contributors, editors and collectors. Such data are usually not comprehensive, but they nevertheless contain some background information about the date and place of collection, the name of its singer and his/her short biography. All this allows us to examine such a text, just as Foley and Lord instruct, in the context of a singer’s biography, the role of literacy in his/her culture, and the overall oral-traditionality of structures and systems adopted in the songs. Upon revisiting some of Lord’s analyses of several distinctive cases of such contacts and mergers, I will distinguish

transitional texts composed by literate poets from those representing textualised performances of oral singers.

### **Transitional Texts in South Slavic Tradition Composed by Literate Authors**

The first group scrutinised by Lord are South Slavic texts written by literate authors well versed in traditional style and manner. As mentioned earlier, his initial rejection of transitional texts meant that they therefore could only be either oral or literary. Consequently, in *The Singer of Tales* he described as literary works the collections that adopt many traditional elements but were written by literate authors, like *Ogledalo srbsko* (*Serbian Mirror*, 1846) edited by Montenegrin Bishop-Prince Petar Petrović Njegoš, or *Razgovor ugodni naroda slovinskoga* (*A Pleasant Discourse of the Slavic People*, 1756) published by a Franciscan monk Andrija Kačić Miošić: “strikingly close though they may sometimes be to the folk epic, [they] are nevertheless definitely written works” (1960: 132). In later articles, Lord adopts a different attitude towards such works, and suggests that Njegoš passed from a traditional singer in his early years to a literary poet (1986b: 19–64, 1995: 212–238). Firstly, Lord takes into consideration several early songs by Njegoš published by his tutor, the prominent Serbian poet and collector of folk songs Sima Milutinović Sarajlija in his collection of Montenegrin oral songs *Pjevanija Crnogorska i Hercegovačka* (*Montenegrin and Herzegovinian Songbook*, 1837). Following the analyses of these songs by Vido Latković (1963: 32–38), Lord quotes the opening verses of the songs “Crmnici” (“The Crmnici”, No. 25) and “Mali Radojica” (“Little Radojica”, No. 56) and concludes that they are written entirely in traditional form. These songs are thus oral traditional songs that young Njegoš, like any Montenegrin of his time, had learned during his youth in a society with a strong oral epic tradition. Several other songs in the collection, Lord suggests, Njegoš learn not from other singers but composed them anew in the traditional manner. Lord focuses on a song called “Nova pjesna crnogorska o vojni Rusah i Turakah početoj u 1828. godu” (“New Montenegrin Song of the War between the Russians and Turks that started in 1828”) and indicates that it has much in common with traditional songs about recent events sung by illiterate local singers but also contains certain nontraditional elements. As he explains, in “Nova pjesna crnogorska”

there are elements not belonging to traditional style which reflect the cult of the gusle and the influence of Serbian nationalism. After a contrived evocation to the vila asking that she “bring together all voices into the gusle,” the song itself opens with a statement of date, “In one thousand eight hundred / and half of the twenty-seventh year,” an element not found in truly traditional epic (1995: 234).



Because of these nontraditional features, Lord argues, “we are justified in considering the period of Njegoš’s output of ‘new songs’ written by himself and not learned from singers, as transitional between the oral style and the written” (1995: 234). Lord then briefly follows Njegoš’s literary evolution and considers his later famous works like *Luča Mikrokozma* (*The Ray of Microcosm*, 1845) and *Gorski vijenac* (*The Mountain Wreath*, 1847). Even though they were also predominantly written in epic decasyllable, with occasional use of formulas and other elements of traditional style, Lord concludes that they are nonetheless clearly written, literary works composed by an educated poet. Njegoš’s literary work and career, therefore, offer a variety of forms, from genuine oral traditional songs and transitional texts to literary epics inspired by the oral tradition (1995: 225).

Lord finds a similar diversity of texts with varying degrees of traditionality in Kačić’s *Razgovor ugodni naroda slovinskoga*. Like Njegoš, Kačić was immersed in the traditional style from his youth and, as he himself relates, travelled with *gusle* in his hands “from Skadar to Zadar, from Mostar to Kotari” (“od Skadra do Zadra, od Mostara do Kotara”, 1988: 16). In the spirit of Enlightenment, Kačić composed his *Razgovor* in the style of traditional poetry in order to make them accessible to the larger audience. However, even though Kačić liked the traditional epic songs, he was suspicious of their historical veracity and wrote his *Razgovor* as a unified history of the South Slavs that seems to be founded more on available chronicles, histories, documents and personal accounts than on folk epics. Scholars usually consider only two out of 157 songs from Kačić’s *Razgovor*, “Ženidba Sibirjanin Janka” (“The Wedding of Sibirjanin Janko”) and “Dragoman Divojka” (“Dragoman Girl”), to be genuine oral traditional songs. In addition to being fully traditional with regard to their manner and style, both appear after Kačić’s explicit comment that the two songs were widespread among the South Slavs, although perhaps not completely reliable as historical sources (see: Pantić 2002: 195–207). Lord goes further in examining Kačić’s style and input and analyses in more detail the relation between traditional and nontraditional elements in the songs from *Razgovor*. Considering in particular the beginning of the first song, entitled “Pisma Radovana i Mjelovana” (“The Song of Radovan and Mjelovan”), Lord shows that its opening lines are fully traditional and have many parallels in other South Slavic oral traditional songs. However, Lord continues, Kačić then introduces certain nontraditional elements, such as the consistent rhyming in the verses:

U knjizi ga lipo pozdravljaše,	In the letter he greeted him well
ter ovako starac bjesidaše,	and thus the old man said:
“Mjelovane, sva je vjeka na te!	“Mjelovan, long life to you!

probudi se, biće bolje za te!”

Wake up, it will be better for you!”

(Lord’s translation.)

Furthermore, Lord argues that in addition to end rhyme, the correspondence between the characters bears other characteristics of the literary epistolary style of the time. His conclusion is that “the letters from Kačić No. I stem from that literary genre, not from traditional epic, although the formulas of the frame are traditional” (Lord 1995: 229).

The analyses of Njegoš’s and Kačić’s works thus led Lord to change his previous claims and to conclude that “there *are* [italics A.L.] transitional texts in South Slavic epic, probably several kinds”; some “were written by authors who were either members themselves of the traditional community or had become immersed in the traditional poetry to the point that they could compose as a member of that community, even if they had been brought up in a very written literary milieu.” (Lord 1986b: 34) Certain texts that, like the opening song from Kačić’s *Razgovor*, show a tendency towards consistent rhyming couplets and have a recognizable literary origin are, as Lord says, rather literary than transitional. Others were written in the traditional style, which makes such a differentiation much harder: “This is so true of Kačić that many of his poems are indistinguishable from genuine oral traditional songs. In those, he shows himself as an outsider who has become an insider, or who can compose as one” (Lord: 1995: 231). It appears that Lord here applies the term transitional text only to particular texts that successfully merge both forms, which were written by literate authors raised in the traditional oral milieu or exceptionally well versed in oral traditional style. In other words, it seems that in Lord’s view transitional text is more than a mere imitation of oral tradition – in a way, it needs to be both oral traditional and literary, but not to the point where literary elements and nontraditional subjects and perspective quite clearly dominate over traditional ones.

To sum up, Lord’s analyses enable us to capture a wide group of South Slavic texts, written or composed by literate poets well immersed in oral traditional manner and style, by differentiating three distinct cases. Only insofar as a literate poet acts purely as collector-performer and accurately reproduces oral traditional song without his/her significant editorial and artistic input, can such a text be taken as oral traditional; such are “Ženidba Sibirjanin Janka” and “Dragoman Divojka” from Kačić’s *Razgovor*, or “Crmničani” and “Mali Radojica” from Milutinović’s *Pjevanija* performed by young Njegoš. If, however, such a text is written in a literary manner, then it should be described as a written literary text, as is the case with Njegoš’s later works or songs from Kačić’s *Razgovor* with recognizable literary origin and style. Finally, if such a text resembles oral traditional songs by both its subjects and style, it

might be classified as transitional text; it contains a distinctive combination of, on the one hand, subjects, themes, oral formulas and formulaic expressions that are part of oral tradition and are commonly used by traditional singers and, on the other, literary features introduced by an educated poet. According to Lord's discussion, Njegoš's "Nova pjesma crnogorska" and many songs from Kačić's *Razgovor* belong to this group.<sup>3</sup>

Meanwhile, the songs from this third group are not the only instance of transitional texts in the South Slavic tradition. A more detailed analysis, I submit, would show that a number of other examples could be found among apparently doctored texts from Njegoš's *Ogledalo srbsko* and in other later South Slavic collections for which Foley's term oral-derived texts for "the manuscript or tablet works of finally uncertain provenance that nonetheless show oral traditional characteristics" seems particularly suitable (1991: 5). In this respect, they resemble works that Honko labels as semiliterary epic, such as Lönnrot's *Kalevala* or Kreutzvald's *Kalevipoeg*, which contain significant editorial input on the overall level, but still retain 'the strong imprint of traditions underneath these epics' (Honko 1998: 12). Insofar as songs from such collections are not simple mystification of oral tradition such as Prosper Mérimée's *La Guzla, ou Choir de Poesies Illyriques recueillies dans la Dalmatie, la Croatie et l'Herzegovine* (1827) or Václav Hanka's allegedly Czech national poems *Rukopis Královédvorský (Kralovedvorska Manuscript, 1817)* and *Libušin Soud (Libusa's Judgement, 1817)*, but compiled and altered by educated authors immersed in a given oral tradition, they too can be approached from the perspective of transitional texts.

### **Transitional South Slavic Texts Documented from Oral Singers**

Another question that stems from the previous discussion would be the following one: is a reverse process possible? That is, can an already fixed and published text become adopted or readopted by oral tradition? Alan Jabbour postulated such case in the context of Old English poetry, and proposed the definition of transitional text "as a text which, though appropriated from written into memorial tradition, has not yet been subjected to the full gamut of traditional modification and remains close to its written exemplar" (1969: 181). The problem with this

---

<sup>3</sup> I am not sure, however, that so many of Kačić's poems are, as Lord says, "indistinguishable from genuine oral traditional songs", and I think that their detailed analysis would likely reveal certain literary features and thus confirm their transitional character. But, even if we assume that Lord is right on this matter, it would make no difference to their generic status. Kačić uses oral-formulaic language and style in a different medium to produce a written, fixed literary text in the manner of folk epic, not for the purpose of composition in performance or free recomposition of a general theme like oral singer does.

description, as Jabbour himself readily admits, is its speculative nature: “We can never be sure that the memorial interpretation just presented, or any other interpretation, actually fits the facts of Old English tradition. The facts which have not been lost forever are imbedded in debatable hints, ambiguous suggestions, and fragments of evidence” (Jabbour 1969: 182).

South Slavic context provides a safer ground for such discussion, and enables us to identify transitional texts documented from singers who adopt a notion of fixed textuality but also retain to some extent the principle of composition in performance. This consideration, therefore, provides a more systematic account of a possible merger between the worlds of literacy and orality and indicates the ways in which the elements of literary culture can be introduced in an oral tradition by the singers themselves. Lord was fully aware of the enormous influence of the popular published collections on the singers that he and Parry met during their fieldwork. In the article entitled “The Influence of a Fixed Text” (Lord 1991: 170–185), he classified the songs from Parry’s collection into three categories. While the first are independent of the published tradition and “‘pure’ in their traditional orality”, the second are a mixture of the adopted and traditional elements: “even when a singer who can write copies it, he makes changes, tending to express some lines in the formulas to which he is most accustomed in his own singing. Even a copyist he remains to some extent a traditional singer” (Lord 1991: 183). In distinction, texts from the third group are “nothing more than relics of epic tradition and clear cases of direct copying or word-for-word memorization” (Lord 1991: 171).

Recorded cases show that South Slavic singers can respond to published songs in different ways. Avdo Međedović’s poem “Ženidba Smailagić Meha” (“The Wedding of Smailagić Meho”) offers an example of a genuine oral traditional song produced from an already published text. Međedović was an exceptional singer, the most talented of all Yugoslav singers Parry and Lord worked with. Although Međedović was an illiterate traditional singer, he sometimes used published collections to learn new songs. This is how he learned the song “Ženidba Smailagić Meha”, which was read to him by his friend from a late nineteenth-century collection of folk songs published by Friedrich S. Krauss (1886). When Međedović later performed his version, he added more elements of ornamentation, developed the characters and expanded the song from 2200 verses to over 12000 verses. Thus, although the source of the song is clearly in the published collection, in this particular case this fact hardly lessens its oral traditional character. Međedović, as Lord says, ‘did not consider text in the book as anything more than the performance of another singer’ (1960: 79); the result is the same as if the singer

had heard it from another singer as a part of the living oral tradition. It differs only by the distribution of the song from one traditional singer to another being achieved with the aid of a different medium.

Matija Murko describes a completely different outcome of an encounter between an oral singer and the previously published song:

In early 1928 singer T. Vučić, having been invited by me to sing the poem ‘Majka Jugovića’ for the Seminar for Slavic Philology in Prague, asked for the text collected by Vuk Karadžić, which he studied assiduously before appearing in public (Murko 1990: 124)

In other words, although Tanasije Vučić was a distinguished traditional singer who performed his songs according to the rules of oral tradition, in this particular case he behaved contrary to his usual practice. The formal character and scholarly context of his performance, as well as, it appears, his appreciation for this particular, famous song published by Karadžić a century ago, all induced him to treat it as a fixed text and to try to reproduce it as accurately as possible. In other words, the singer in this case departed from the authority of oral tradition, which is impersonal, in the name of the authority of Karadžić’s version established in literary tradition. Thus, although his performance was still oral in the literal sense, it did not actually follow the principle of composition in performance – the notion that there is an authoritative version that should be accurately reproduced is essentially an idea from a literary world.

I would, therefore, classify as transitional those texts that represent performances of the second type in Lord’s discussion. Such texts offer a mixture between fixed text and song orally composed in performance; they were written down or recorded from the singers who adopt the notion of fixed textuality and exact reproduction, but also continue to some extent to follow the principle of composition during performance. In addition to Parry’s and Lord’s recordings, comprehensive early twentieth-century collections, such as those of Novica Šaulić, Nikola Kašiković and Andrija Luburić for example, contain many instances of this type.<sup>4</sup> Typically, these texts present the versions of popular songs that closely resemble Karadžić’s texts but still

---

<sup>4</sup> Šaulić, Novica 1927–1929. *Srpske narodne pjesme. Iz zbirke Novice Šaulića*, III vols. Beograd: Grafički institut “Narodna misao”. Kašiković, Nikola. *Srpske narodne junačke pjesme iz Bosne i Hercegovine*. Beograd: Arhiv SANU (Etnografska zbirka). No. 245: *Zaostavština Andrije Luburića*. Beograd: Arhiv SANU (Etnografska zbirka). No. 355; *Zbirka Andrije Luburića*, Beograd: Arhiv Srbije. AL-4, AL-6, AL-7, AL-8, AL-9, AL-10.

retain performative features that provide evidences of the contemporary oral tradition of a certain region and its singers.

All aforementioned cases examine only singers influenced by the textualised performances of other singers, that is, previously published traditional oral songs. What would be their response to literary epics, such as those from Kačić's *Razgovor*? According to Lord's dictum, we would expect of traditional singers to appropriate literary features to some extent according to their oral practice, introducing more oral-formulaic elements into literary features like frequent parallel rhymed verses and unusual phraseology. In the following section, I shall argue that this is exactly how an early-nineteenth century oral singer, Đuro Milutinović Crnogorac, performed originally literary song about the battle against Mahmut Pasha. As the earliest example of this sort for which sufficient background information is available, this case enables us to go further from the previous twentieth-century examples of the merger between oral tradition and the already firmly established written culture, into a period of the emerging literary influence on the predominantly oral Montenegrin society of the time.<sup>5</sup>

### **Comparative Analysis of the Songs about the Battle against Mahmut Pasha**

Karadžić wrote down this song from a live performance of Montenegrin singer Đuro Milutinović Crnogorac around 1820 in central Serbia and published it as folk song in his collection of *Narodne srpske pjesme* in 1823 (see: Karadžić 1986, No. 10). Afterwards, Karadžić realized that this song was originally composed in the manner of oral songs by the Montenegrin Bishop-Prince Petar I, the uncle of the previously mentioned Petar II Petrović Njegoš. Like his more famous nephew, Petar I was also well immersed in local oral tradition, and occasionally composed such songs about the relatively recent events, celebrating the role that his ancestors and he himself had in the Montenegrin struggle against the Turks. His most popular compositions of this sort were the songs about the Montenegrin battles against a Turkish dignitary Mahmut Pasha from Skadar fought in 1796, as these were documented in several versions throughout the nineteenth century (Banašević 1951: 275–299, Zuković 1988: 145–168). A particularly suitable for our comparison is a version that Sima Milutinović

---

<sup>5</sup> Older examples of transitional texts in South Slavic tradition can certainly also be identified in the collections dating from the sixteenth to the eighteenth century. Collections like that of Bogišić or the Erlangen manuscripts and popular manuscript songsbooks from the southern parts of Habsburg Empire, have all been compiled in the areas where written literature and oral tradition coexisted for centuries (see Pantić 2002). Nonetheless, given that in these cases we lack reliable information about their textualization and singers, I have focused here on the songs from the nineteenth century onwards.

Sarajlija documented from the Montenegrin priest Rade Knežević and published it under the title “Boj u Martiniće Crnogoracah s Kara-Mahmutom Bušatlijom” (Montenegrin Battle of Martinići against Mahmut Pasha Bušatlija) in his *Pjevanija* (Milutinović 1990, No. 168). Namely, Sima Milutinović had collected his version in Montenegro in the late 1827 or 1828, that is, during Bishop Petar’s lifetime and only several years after Karadžić’s song was published. As it appears, during this period these songs became adopted by a more advanced members of the Montenegrin society rather than by illiterate local oral singers. Being a priest, Rade Knežević belonged to a still comparatively narrow group of literate Montenegrins of the time, and Đuro Milutinović also received some education both before and after he became blind at the age of sixteen after suffering from small-pox (Durković-Jakšić 1952: 141–156). Thus, even though the Bishop’s autographs were not preserved, it appears that literacy played an important part in the composition and distribution of these songs.

The analysis will show that the version from Milutinović’s *Pjevanija* (*Pjevanija* version henceforth) displays more literary and nontraditional elements. Four categories of differences of Karadžić’s version in respect to the *Pjevanija* version will be identified: a) the absence of the exact dating of events, b) the absence of verses with the wider knowledge of historical context unusual for the traditional song, c) the transformation of the nontraditional verses and phrases into traditional lines and formulaic expressions, and d) the decrease in number of rhymed verses.<sup>6</sup>

I mentioned earlier Lord’s conclusion that “the statement of date is an element not found in truly traditional epic” (1995: 234).<sup>7</sup> The absence of a precise dating of the events in Karadžić’s version can thus be taken as the first notable difference between the two songs. Already the first two lines in the *Pjevanija* version: “In the year one thousand / seven hundred and ninety

---

<sup>6</sup> Categories taken into consideration here are, of course, illustrative rather than exhaustive. For a more detailed and nuanced analysis of oral vs. literary features see Miletich (1974, 1976, 1978, 1988). However, it is worth pointing out to Lord’s critique of Miletich for bypassing the question of formula in his analyses (Lord 1986a, esp. 481–491). In any instance, as I argue here, stylistic differences alone cannot provide definitive answers in the discussion on transitional texts, and need to be accommodated to the oral-formulaic theory and supplemented by contextual evidences about a given song and the tradition it belongs to.

<sup>7</sup> This is a valid point for the songs with recurrent themes transmitted by oral singers for generations, which we commonly associate with South Slavic oral tradition. In the chronicle songs from certain areas more exposed to literate culture, such as the “Frontier Songs” which describe contemporary eighteenth- and nineteenth century battles and events in the region of the Habsburg Military Border, it is not so uncommon to find a statement of date in the opening lines (see: Matićki 1974). Nevertheless, in the songs about the battles against Mahmut Pasha analyzed in this article (chapter/essay), we still find a statement of date (that had been omitted) excluded in the more traditional versions. Moreover, this statement here has a form of a nominal phrase distributed across two consecutive lines, which is another literary tendency untypical for South Slavic decasyllable.

six” (“Na tisuću i sedme stotine / devedeset i šeste godine”) are thus nontraditional. In addition, the *Pjevanija* version contains another nontraditional element of a similar nature. The singer specifies that the battle took place “On the eleventh of July / on the Saint Euphemia’s day” (“na julijski dan jedanaesti, / baš na praznik svete Jefimije”). As already pointed out, both the specification of the exact date of the battle and the mention of this relatively minor and not widely known Christian saint indicate an educated author from the clerical circles (Banašević 1951: 283). Both couplets are absent from Karadžić’s version, which opens without mentioning precise date and its place in the Christian calendar.

The second prominent difference between the two versions is wider knowledge of the historical context and international relations in the *Pjevanija* version. In Karadžić’s version, we typically find such information to be reduced or completely absent. A single example is taken as an illustration of this point. Revealing his plans to the Turkish representatives, vizier Mehmet explains that the moment has come for them to capture the Coastal territory:

A sad nejma u Boki Kotorskoj  
 Principova broda nikakvoga,  
 Ni golema u Primorje momka,  
 No sve pođe u Taliju ravnu  
 Da čuvaju Mletke od Francezah,  
 Kojizi su naši prijatelji,  
 Oni će nam u pomoći doći,  
 Kako su mi skoro obećali  
 Na dogovor što smo svijjećali.

Sad ne ima u Boku Kotorsku  
 U njoj nema momka nijednoga,  
 Sve je pošlo u Taliju ravnu,  
 Baš da brani Mletke od Francuza;

For the moment, in the Bay of Kotor  
 Not a single Principal’s ship is found,  
 There are no brave men on the Coast  
 For they all went to Italy  
 To protect the Venetians from the French,  
 Who are our friends and allies,  
 They will come to our rescue,  
 As they recently promised to me  
 During the summit that we held.<sup>8</sup>  
 (Milutinović 1990: 682)

At the moment, in the Bay of Kotor  
 Not a single man is found,  
 They all went to Italy  
 To defend the Venetians from the French.  
 (Karadžić 1986: 67)

---

<sup>8</sup> All translations from the two songs are mine.



Even though both versions have quite a similar formulaic opening (with insignificant alteration of: “A sad nema” / “u njoj nema”) and content, the differences in perspective and outlook between them are prominent. In the *Pjevanija* version Vizier Mehmet explains to the distinguished Turks that there are no Venetian ships due to their preoccupation with the French forces in Italy. Furthermore, he mentions the French as their allies and, basically, refers to their diplomatic contacts and agreement over the allied action. Such verses, containing a thorough knowledge of the international relations and revealing information apparently inaccessible to the traditional singer, are absent from Karadžić’s version. Hence there is no reference to the Venetian Dodge (*princip*) and to the diplomatic and military alliance of the French with Mahmut Pasha. Karadžić’s version therefore adopts these elements to a lesser degree than the *Pjevanija* version and appears as more traditional.

The two quotations also differ in respect to their usage of traditional stylistic devices, which are more frequently applied in Karadžić’s version. In the first line of the aforementioned passage from the *Pjevanija* version, the usage of locative (“u Boki Kotorskoj”) suggests an educated author with the knowledge of grammar. Karadžić’s singer, on the other hand, uses accusative (“u Boku Kotorску”) as a characteristic feature of the local dialect but also as a kind of distinctive device in the traditional songs. While in some cases traditional singer uses locative instead of accusative to fill in a missing syllable, in others s/he inversely applies accusative for locative to achieve euphony (“u Boku Kotorску”) and to transform geographic marker into formulaic expression. Thus although the occasional examples of locative are not uncommon for the oral singers, they are far more inclined to use accusative instead of locative in their songs.

In addition, the opening of Karadžić’s version contains repetitions and retardations characteristic for the oral performance, such as: “Now there is no” / “In it there is no” (“Sad nema” / “U njoj nema”). In distinction, the line of thought in the *Pjevanija* version is barely disrupted by the decasyllable. The sentence progresses without interruption from one line to another and encompasses several verses. This characteristic is commonly found throughout the song. For example, the lines 1–4 and 5–7 in the *Pjevanija version* can be read as two separate sentences:

Na tisuću i sedme stotine  
devedeset i šeste godine  
Mahmut vezir sovjet učinio  
u bijelu Skadru na Bojanu.

In the year of one thousand  
seven hundred and ninety six  
Vizier Mahmut called a meeting  
In the white Skadar upon Bojana.

Svu gospodu tursku izabranu  
na divan je bio sakupio,  
pa im 'vako Mahmut govorio:  
(Milutinović 1990: 682)

All notable Turkish masters  
he summoned to an assembly  
and then addressed them as follows:

Although the expression is separated into decasyllable verse with the tendency towards rhymed couplets, opening lines basically convey two complete sentences. Karadžić's version, on the other hand, typically displays a series of repetitions and retardations characteristic for the oral performance, like in the lines 1, 3 and 5: "Vizier Mahmut called a meeting [...] / at the meeting he summoned [...] / When the Vizier summoned them" ("Mahmut vezir vijeć učinio [...] / Na vijeću vezir sakupio [...] / Kada ih je vezir sakupio"). These verses are very similar and basically reformulate the same idea. Such repetitions are typical signs of composition in performance, providing the singer with a kind of short rests or retardations that enable him to proceed further. While it can be objected that similar stylistic devices can perhaps be employed deliberately by educated poets as well, a number of similar examples, found throughout Karadžić's version, present the persuasive evidences of the partial transformation of nontraditional elements in the manner of traditional oral song.

Finally, aforementioned verses also illustrate the decreasing number of rhymed verses in Karadžić's version compared with the one from Sima Milutinović. In the above example, the verses from the *Pjevanija* version show a tendency towards consistent rhyme: aabccb. Out of seven rhymed verses, the verses 3, 6 and 7 have corresponding participle endings, which is a quite common form of rhyming in traditional songs. Verses 1–2 and 4–5, however, contain rhymed couplets of nouns, with full rhyme that encompasses several syllables. In the corresponding verses from Karadžić's version, we find only the rhyming of participle endings in the lines 1–3 and 5–6. This is typical for the two songs in general. Đuro Milutinović Crnogorac behaves as traditional oral singer, avoiding rhyming and parallel rhymed couplets. Consequently, in Karadžić's version corresponding rhymed verses from the *Pjevanija* version are typically excluded, or have different word order and grammatical person. Several typical cases are listed:

Crnogorci, moja braćo draga,  
Nuto nama nenadnoga vraga!  
Evo me je knjiga dopanula.  
[...]  
Crnu goru i Primorje ravno,  
Kakono smo žudeli odavno.

Crnogorci, moja braćo draga!  
Evo nas je knjiga dopanula.  
[...]  
Crnu goru i Primorje ravno  
Kojeno smo odavna žudeli.

[...]  
Ali evo moje rane ljute,  
Brđani mi zatvoriše pute.  
(Milutinović 1990: 682–684)

Montenegrins, my dear brothers,  
We are facing real troubles!  
I have received a letter.

[...]  
Montenegro and the Adriatic Coast  
That we desire the most.

[...]  
But I am still suffering the most,  
From the Brđani who keep their roads closed.

(Milutinović 1990: 682–684)

[...]  
Nego evo moje rane ljute  
Brđani mi pute zatvoriše.  
(Karadžić 1986: 67–69)

Montenegrins, my dear brothers,  
We have received a letter.

[...]  
Montenegro and the Adriatic Coast  
That we desire for so long.

[...]  
For I am still suffering the most,  
From the Brđani who closed their  
roads.

(Karadžić 1986: 67–69)

While the rhyming in oral traditional South Slavic songs has a very limited range and is strictly subjected to the traditional diction and style, both songs about the battle against Mahmut Pasha published in Sima Milutinović's and Karadžić's collections contain an exceptionally high number of rhymed verses. The *Pjevanija* version, in addition, contains whole chains of rhymed verses. Alongside with the mentioned septet at the beginning, most prominent examples are the verses 9–14, 27–30, 37–40, 90–94, 97–101, 148–151, 184–189, 211–215 and concluding octet with four rhymed couplets. In total, at least 85 out of 256 verses in the *Pjevanija* version are rhymed, and many of them contain a proper rhyme. In Karadžić's version the total number of rhymed verses is also exceptionally high – approximately 57 out of 293 verses, but still much lower in comparison to the *Pjevanija* version. In other words, while in the *Pjevanija* version one third of the verses are rhymed, in Karadžić's version that number decreases to around one fifth of all the verses. Most often, rhymed lines in Karadžić's version are couplets with the corresponding participle or verb endings (*gathered / addressed* [*sakupio / govorio*], *crossed / arrived* [*pregaziše / dohodiše*] etc.) – as many as 22. Karadžić's singer, also, uses leonine rhyme, but only in clearly formulaic expressions or geographic *topoi* (like in the verses “The time has come” (“Vr’jeme dođe, udarit’ se hoće”) or “From Sjenica and from Mitrovica / and beautiful town of Đakovica” (“Od Sjenice i od Mitrovice / I lijepe šehar Đakovice”). Consecutive series of parallel rhymed verses are especially rare. While the *Pjevanija* version, in addition to the opening septet and concluding octet, contains three rhymed quatrains, four quintets and one sextet, Karadžić's version has a single quartet. Nevertheless, even Karadžić's version only partially succeeds in absorbing the nontraditional elements and adjusting them to

traditional phraseology. Thus, it occasionally contains the lines with proper rhyme that encompasses several syllables (25–26, 40–41, 113–114, 255–256). Altogether, the total number of rhymed verses in Karadžić's version in general remains significantly higher than in genuine oral traditional songs and other songs collected from the same singer, where it stays below ten percent of all the verses.

On a more general level, *Pjevanija* version contains a number of features that speak strongly in favor of its essentially nonperformative character; such are the verses that appear to be more appropriate for literary style than to oral manner (41–43, 128–129, 200–209). In accordance with the previous discussion, these verses either have a more traditional form or are simply absent from Karadžić's version. This all shows that Karadžić's version compared with the *Pjevanija* version contains strong tendency of reproducing those verses that appear as traditional and excluding or transforming nontraditional verses and other literary characteristics in general.

To sum up, the evidences presented in previous analysis shows that the *Pjevanija* version is essentially a literary epic, a poetic composition written in a manner and style of traditional epic songs, while Karadžić's version contains much more traditional elements. I would, therefore, classify *Pjevanija* version as a literary text written by an educated poet in a manner of traditional oral songs, and Karadžić's version as a transitional text that organically combines oral and literary features. It exemplifies another type of transitional texts, documented from oral singers who adopted or appropriated texts composed outside oral tradition in nontraditional manner. In other words, even though they are not originally a product of oral tradition itself, insofar as they have been in circulation they should be included into consideration of a given oral tradition.

Such transitional texts are commonly found in the later part of the nineteenth century and first decades of the twentieth century, when South Slavic oral tradition came under a stronger impact of literary culture. As the boundary separating originally written compositions and oral songs became softer, it became easier for these literary epics to find its ways in the repertoire of oral singers. For example, Murko's field research of the 1930s Herzegovinian oral tradition showed that much of the repertoire of local oral singers comprised songs originally composed by literate authors in traditional manner and style, such as those from Maksim Šobajić's *Osveta Kosovska (The Revenge for Kosovo, 1875)*. Local singers thus adopted these songs and

performed them in oral form, and Murko rightfully considered them in describing contemporary oral tradition.

But, can such nontraditional texts ever be fully appropriated by oral tradition? In other words, can an originally literary text become a genuine oral traditional song? Even though such scenario seems hypothetically possible, I am not aware of such a case in South Slavic context and I think that it is unlikely that an adequate example could be found among the songs about newer events. These songs were documented relatively soon after being composed, and thus could not have been thoroughly reinterpreted by oral tradition over a longer period, although they sometimes had limited circulation among different oral singers. Thus, as much as the songs about the battles against Mahmut Pasha from Karadžić's collection show traditional characteristics, they still retain certain recognizably nontraditional elements in regard to their style, outlook and the role of Bishop Petar in the plot. What is more, with the increasing influence of literary culture on South Slavic oral tradition in the later period, it became even less likely for the songs about recent events to be frequently and continuously recomposed in each performance by several generations of oral singers.

As far as the songs about older heroes and events are concerned, the problem is that we lack such compelling evidence of their nontraditional origin. To be sure, in certain songs about Marko Kraljević and the Kosovo battle, such as those describing Marko's capture of Kostur or the quarrel between Miloš Obilić and Vuk Branković, one recognizes subjects described in the old chronicles or monastic literary tradition. But it is still far from saying that such texts actually existed as oral songs, and that these songs originally contained strong literary features that later became fully appropriated by oral tradition. In any case, available evidence from a more recent period shows that originally literary songs were performed in oral form and even became popular among oral singers, but still retained quite recognizable traces of their nontraditional origin and thus deserve a distinct generic label from genuine oral traditional songs.

In short, I also consider as transitional those texts from South Slavic collections that appear to combine the notion of fixed textuality with performative features and display the aforementioned stylistic characteristics. These texts are strongly influenced by previously published collections or traditional-like songs composed by literate authors, but also show oral features arising from the singer's usage of formulaic language and composition during performance. Like transitional texts of the first type, they are not simple imitations of oral songs, but are closely related to local oral tradition and fuse with it. Of course, it would be

unjustified to make general claims about oral tradition based solely on such texts, but, as I think, our picture of a given oral tradition or a certain period would be incomplete if we exclude them altogether from our consideration.

### **Towards a Consistent Theoretical Model of Transitional Texts**

After original “strong thesis” that oral and literary modes are mutually exclusive, oral theory relatively soon acknowledged that there is no great divide separating oral and written literature, and that interchange and merger between the two spheres are quite common (Finnegan 1977, Foley 1988: 16–18). Still, while *periods* of transition from oral to literary culture and transitional *figures* (such as Andrija Kačić Miošić and Petar Petrović Njegoš II) that passed from oral to literary culture have readily been acknowledged (Lord 1986b, 1995), less has been done to identify the actual transitional texts. South Slavic oral tradition proved to be particularly valuable for such consideration: being textualized in a relatively recent period, it contains information about its singers, contributors and editors, and thus provides solid evidence of how the transitional texts originated and by whom. In several articles written during the 1980s, Lord thus adopted the category of transitional texts to denote a group of South Slavic texts written by literate authors raised in the traditional oral milieu. Although Lord did not offer a systematic account or classification of such texts, he nevertheless examined several forms of merger between oral and written sphere and identified some distinctive cases and groups.

This essay argued that transitional South Slavic texts emerged in two ways. In the first case, they were composed by literate authors well versed in traditional style and technique. Such transitional texts are, for example, certain songs published by poets raised in traditional milieu like Petar Petrović Njegoš and Andrija Kačić Miošić; even though these works were published by educated writers, they stem from local tradition and merge oral traditional features with literary style. Secondly, I considered as transitional those texts documented when singers performed orally previously published text or a nontraditional text composed in the manner of oral song. It is indicated that oral singers can respond to published songs in various ways. If they show appreciation to their “author” and try to reproduce it accurately, we are already on the terrain of the literary world. However, insofar as they remain traditional singers, their performance will involve elements of oral singing – that is, they are likely to appropriate some of the literary features such as statement of date, parallel rhymed verses or unusual phraseology to an oral formulaic style and outlook or to improvise certain elements instead of copying them directly. If the result of their performance shows such an appropriation of literary features in

oral traditional manner and style, it is best described as a transitional text. The variety of South Slavic cases discussed in this article shows that transitional texts cannot be simply discarded as aberrant phenomena or artificial product of obtrusive editing. Found throughout South Slavic tradition, they became more prominent with the increasing influence of literacy and published collections from the second half of the nineteenth century, and testify to a prolonged and productive interchange between oral and written tradition. My approach to such texts was to analyse their style and phraseology, in the context of our previous knowledge of this tradition, as well as their outlook and contextual evidences about their documentation and singers. Consideration of oral traditions where these data are available provides, I believe, a consistent theoretical model of transitional texts for further comparative studies of the contacts between orality and literacy, which promises new insights into older traditions and collections where we lack such information about the conditions and circumstances of their textualization.

## Literature

- Banašević, Nikola 1951. Pisme o najstarijoj crnogorskoj istoriji u "Pjevaniji" Sime Milutinovića. In *Zbornik radova X*. Beograd: Institut za proučavanje književnosti. Pp. 275–299.
- Bošković-Stulli, Maja 1983. *Usmena književnost nekad i danas*. Beograd: XX vek.
- Campbell, Jackson 1966. Learned Rhetoric in Old English Poetry. *Modern Philology* 63 (3): 189–201.
- Campbell, Jackson 1978. Adaptation of Classical Rhetoric in Old English Literature. In James J. Murphy (ed.) *Medieval Eloquence. Studies in the Theory and Practise of Medieval Rhetoric*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press. Pp. 173–197.
- Curschmann, Michael 1967. Oral Poetry in Medieval English, French, and German Literature. Some Notes on Recent Research. *Speculum* 42 (1): 36–52.
- Durković-Jakšić, Ljubomir 1952, Đura Milutinović (1770-1844). *Istorijski časopis, organ Istoriskog instituta SANU* 3: 141–156.
- Finnegan, Ruth 1977. *Oral Poetry. Its Nature, Significance and Social Context*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Finnegan, Ruth 1992. *Oral Tradition and the Verbal Arts. A Guide to Research Practices*. London: Routledge.
- Foley, John Miles 1997. Oral Tradition and its Implications. In Barry Powell and Ian Morris (eds.) *A New Companion to Homer*. Leiden: Brill. Pp: 146–173.
- Foley, John Miles 1988. *The Theory of Oral Composition: History and Methodology*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Foley, John Miles 1991. *Traditional Oral Epic: The Odyssey, Beowulf, and the Serbo-Croatian Return Song*. Los Angeles: University of California Press.
- Frog. 2011. *Alvíssmál* and Orality I: Formula, Alliteration and Categories of Mythic Being. *Arkiv för Nordisk Filologi* 126: 17–71.
- Jabbour, Allan 1969. Memorial Transmission in Old English Poetry. *The Chaucer Review* 3 (3): 174–190.
- Jensen, Minna Skafte 1998. A. B. Lord's Concept of Transitional Texts in Relation to the Homeric Epics. In: Lauri Honko, Jawaharlal Handoo & John Miles Foley (eds.) *The Epic. Oral and Written*. Mysore. Central Institute of Indian Languages. Pp. 94–114.

- Jensen, Minna Skafte 2008. The Oral-Formulaic Theory Revisited. In Else Mundal and Jonas Wellendorf (eds.) *Oral Art Forms and their Passage into Writing*. Copenhagen: Museum Tusulanum Press. Pp. 43–52.
- Kačić, Andrija Miošić 1988 [1756] *Razgovor ugodni narodna slovinskoga*. Zagreb: Liber.
- Karadžić, Vuk Stefanović 1986. *Srpske narodne pjesme IV*. Collected works VII. Beograd: Prosveta.
- Kraus, Fridrih Salomo 1886. *Smailagić Meho: pjesan naših muhamedovaca*. Dubrovnik: D. Pretner.
- Latković, Vido 1963. *Petar Petrović Njegoš*. Beograd: Nolit.
- Lord, Albert Bates 1960. *The Singer of Tales*. Harvard Studies in Comparative Literature 24. Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press.
- Lord, Albert Bates 1986a. Perspectives on Recent Work on the Oral Traditional Formula. *Oral Tradition* 1 (3): 467–503.
- Lord, Albert Bates 1986b. The Merging of Two Worlds. Oral and Written Poetry as Carriers of Ancient Values. In John Miles Foley (ed.) *Oral Tradition in Literature. Interpretation in Context*. Columbia: University of Missouri Press. Pp. 19–64.
- Lord, Albert Bates 1988. The Nature of Oral Poetry. In John Miles Foley (ed.) *Comparative Research on Oral Traditions. A Memorial for Milman Parry*. Columbus: Ohio: Slavica Publishers. Pp. 313–349.
- Lord, Albert Bates 1991. *Epic Singers and Oral Tradition*. Ithaca/London: Cornell University Press.
- Lord, Albert Bates 1995. *The Singer Resumes the Tale*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
- Maticki, Miodrag 1974. *Srpskohrvatska graničarska epika*, Beograd: Institut za književnost i umetnost.
- Miletich, John 1974. Narrative Style in Spanish and Slavic Traditional Narrative Poetry: Implications for the Study of the Romance Epic. *Olifant* 2 (2): 109–128.
- Miletich, John 1978. Oral-Traditional Style and Learned Literature: A New Perspective. *Poetics and the Theory of Literature* 3: 345–56.
- Miletich, John 1988. Oral Style/Written Style in Ancient and Medieval Literature: Differentiation and Aesthetics. In Svetozar Petrović (ed.) *Usmeno i pisano/pismeno u književnosti i kulturi*. Novi Sad: Vojvođanska akademija nauka i umetnosti. Pp. 99–108.
- Milutinović, Sima Sarajlija 1990 [1837]. *Pjevanija Crnogorska i hercegovačka*. Nikšić: Univerzitetska riječ.
- Mirković, Dragutin and Pešić, Radmila 1976. *Odnosi između usmene i pisane književnosti*. Beograd: Naučni sastanak slavista u Vukove dane 2.
- Morris, Ian 1986. The Use and Abuse of Homer. *Classical Antiquity* 5 (1): 81–138.
- Murko, Matija 1990. The Singers and their Epic Songs. *Oral Tradition* 5 (1): 107–130.
- Pantić, Miroslav 2002. *Narodne pesme u zapisima XV-XVIII veka*. Beograd: Prosveta.
- Parry, Milman 1971. *The Making of the Homeric Verse*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Petrović, Petar Njegoš 1981 [1846]. *Ogledalo srpsko*. Beograd: Prosveta/Cetinje: Obod.
- Petrović, Svetozar (ed.) 1988. *Usmeno i pisano/pismeno u književnosti i kulturi*, Novi Sad: Vojvođanska akademija nauka i umetnosti.
- Stevick, Robert 1962. The Oral-Formulaic Analyses of Old English Verse. *Speculum* 37 (3): 382–389.
- Zuković, Ljubomir 1988. *Vukovi pevači iz Crne Gore*. Beograd: Rad.